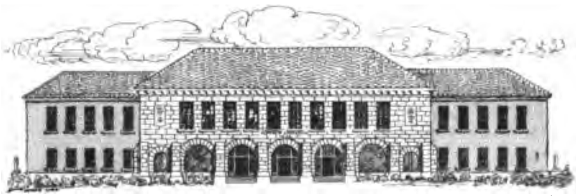


Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

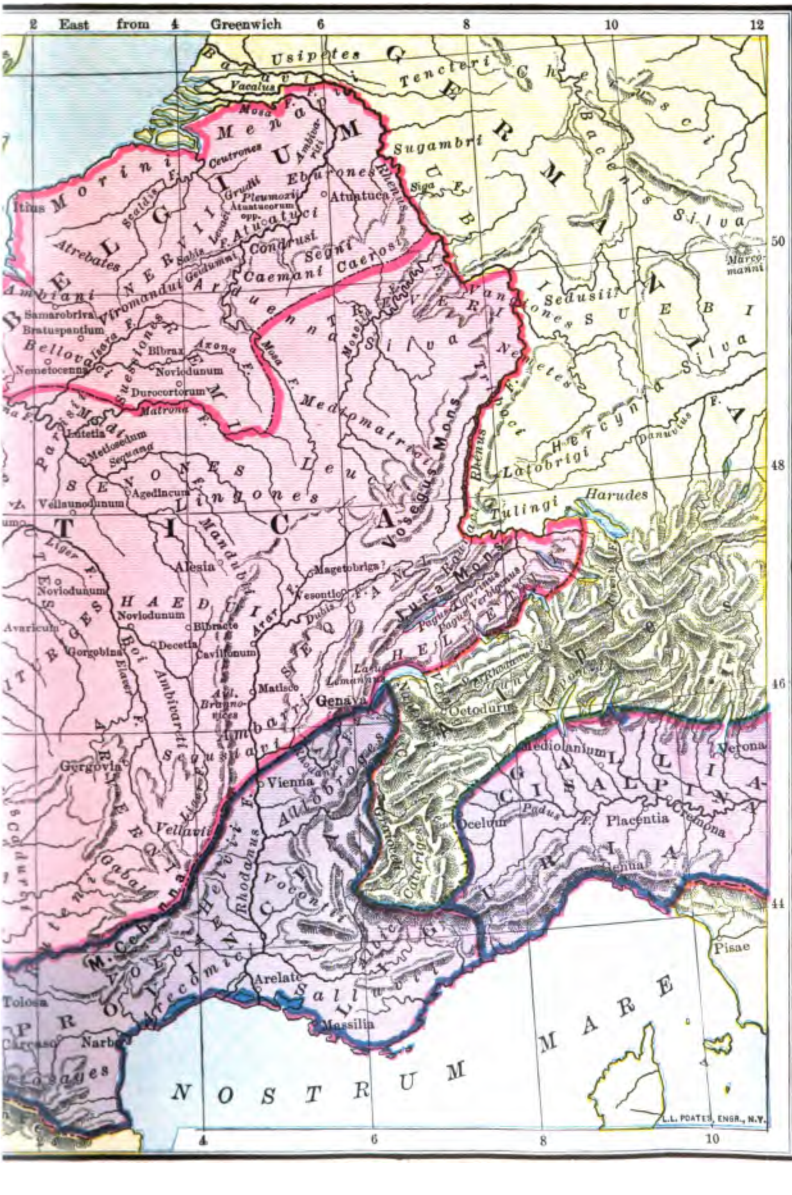
EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY



East from Greenwich
GERMANIA
Usipetes
Tencteri
Batavi
Vacalus
Sugambri
Ubii
Siga F.
Chatti
Bacenis Silva
Marcomanni
Sedusii
Suebi
Silva
Vangiones
Nemetes
Triboci
Hercynia Silva
Danuvius F.
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Harudes
BELGIUM
Menapii
Mosa F.
Morini
Ceutrones
Ambivariti
Eburones
Grudii
Pleumoxii
Atuatucorum opp.
Atuatuca
Atuatuci
Itius
Scaldis F.
Levaci
Atrebates
Nervii
Sabis F.
Geidumni
Condrusi
Segni
Caerosi
Caemani
Ambiani
Viromandui
Arduenna Silva
Rhenus F.
Treveri
Samarobriva
Bratuspantium
Bellovaci
Isara F.
Suessiones
Remi
Bibrax
Axona F.
Noviodunum
Nemetocenna
Durocortorum
Matrona F.
Mosella F.
Mediomatrici
Vosegus Mons
Meldi
Lutetia
Metiosedum
Sequana
Parisii
Senones
Agedincum
Vellaunodunum
Lingones
Leuci
GALLIA
CELTICA
Liger F.
Mandubii
Alesia
Magetobriga?
Sequani
Vesontio
Dubis F.
Jura Mons
Rauraci
Pagus Tigurinus
Pagus Verbigenus
Helvetii
Lacus Lemannus
Noviodunum
Bituriges
Avaricum
Haedui
Noviodunum
Bibracte
Decetia
Cavillonum
Arar F.
Boi
Gorgobina
Elaver F.
Ambivariti
Aul. Brannovices
Matisco
Genava
Nantuates
Octodurus
Rhodanus
Lepontii
Alpes
Arverni
Gergovia
Segusiavi
Ambarri
Allobroges
Vienna
Isara F.
Mediolanium
Verona
Gallia Cisalpina
Padus
Placentia
Cremona
Ocelum
Caturiges
Garoceli
Vellavii
Gabali
Cadurci
Helvii
Rhodanus F.
Vocontii
Liguria
Genua
Pisae
M. Cebenna
Volcae Arecomici
Arelate
Salluvii
Massilia
Provincia
Tolosa
Carcaso
Narbo
Sotiates
Mare Nostrum
L.L. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

CAESAR

EPISODES FROM

THE GALLIC AND THE CIVIL WARS

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY

BY

MAURICE W. MATHER, PH.D.
FORMERLY INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

PREFACE

A BOOK of selections from Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic and the Civil Wars* will be welcomed by many teachers. In most schools the reading of the whole of Caesar's extant writings is quite out of the question. A selection must be made, and the method of selection which is most likely to produce the best results with the pupil is to take from the different books those episodes which are of greatest interest and importance.

It is still customary in many schools to limit the study of Caesar to the *Gallic War*, or even to the first four books of this work. Some of the most interesting portions of Caesar's writings are thus entirely neglected. The description of Britain and the Britons in the Fifth Book of the *Gallic War* and the comparison of the Gauls and the Germans in the Sixth Book are not only instructive, as the earliest sources of information on these peoples, but entertaining as well. No more amusing fairy tale can be found in any Latin serviceable for schools than Caesar's sober account of some of the animals in the Hercynian Forest. The failure at Gergovia — the only repulse suffered by Caesar's army in Gaul when led by him in person — and the successful siege of Alesia against an overwhelming force from without and a strong army from within, commanded by the intrepid Vercingetorix, greatest of all the Gauls, are episodes of the utmost interest.

The *Civil War* is often altogether unknown to pupils. And yet no work of antiquity is of greater historical importance or merit, and few narratives are more interesting than the story in the Third Book of the struggle between Caesar and Pompey.

Many teachers who would be glad to devote to the *Civil W*
a part of the time spent on the study of Caesar have bee
deterred by the necessity of buying an additional text-book, a
expense which they have felt to be unwarranted, owing to th
short time during which it could be used.

In this volume some of the most interesting and importa
parts of both the *Gallic* and the *Civil War* are presented. Th
selections from the *Gallic War* are equivalent in amount to th
first four books. From the *Civil War* about two thirds a
much is taken. To facilitate reference, all chapters are num
bered as in complete editions of Caesar.

The notes on the last three books of the *Gallic War* and o
the *Civil War* are specially full, for the greater assistance o
those who may find themselves, in these selections, on unfa
miliar ground. The notes on the First and the Second Book
of the *Gallic War* have been prepared with an eye to the need
of those classes which begin their study of Caesar with eithe
book. Preceding the notes on each book is a summary of th
entire book. The summaries of those parts not included i
this volume are inclosed in brackets.

The Latin text of the *Gallic War* is in the main that of Meu
sel's school edition (Berlin, 1894), and of the *Civil War* that o
Ellger's revision of Paul (Leipzig, 1898). The principal varia
tions from either of these authorities are in details of spelling
In the *Civil War*, 2, 29, Menge's reading *iactaverant* has bee
inserted to avoid a lacuna; and the conjectures accepted b
Ellger in 3, 6, of *iumenta* for *impedimenta* of the Mss., and i
3, 97, of *locis aequis* for the usual reading *iugis eius*, have no
been adopted.

"Hidden quantities" are marked in accordance with the
revised edition of Lane's Grammar. A decided advance has
been made in this troublesome subject by the agreement which
was reached in the marking of almost all words by the editors
of the revised Lane, the new Allen and Greenough, and the
Hale and Buck grammars, all of which appeared in 1903.

It is believed that all teachers and pupils will welcome the innovation in the Vocabulary of printing in full the principal parts of verbs and the genitive of nouns, except in the first conjugation of verbs and in such nouns of the first, second, and fourth declensions as offer no possibility of mistake.

For the long indirect quotations of the *Gallic War*, 1, 13, and 14, and for the more difficult passages earlier, the direct discourse has been given in the Notes; but this help has not been supplied in later passages, as it is desirable for the pupil to be thrown on his own resources a little even in the early stages of his study, and it is easily possible to make indirect discourse too much of a bugbear.

On the Plan of the battle with the Nervii (*B.G.* 2, 18 ff.) the positions usually assigned to the xth and the ixth legions have been reversed, so that the ixth shall be stationed on the extreme left. This harmonizes better with the statement in Chapter 21 that Caesar, when he first started out to encourage his troops, came by chance first to the xth legion; for we may assume that he had been engaged up to that moment about the site of the camp. It is also at least probable, from the order in which Caesar mentions the legions in Chapter 23 (namely, ix and x, xi and viii, xii and vii), that this was their arrangement in the line; for it is clear from Chapters 25 and 26 that the viith legion was on the extreme right (see Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, p. 660).

In the brief treatment of Caesar's army no attempt has been made at completeness. Only such information has been supplied as is needed to make the selections in this book intelligible. Probably not one in a hundred of the readers of Grant's *Memoirs* has even an elementary knowledge of army tactics. Why should it be considered any more necessary to be thoroughly posted in Roman military antiquities in order to read Caesar with appreciation and enjoyment?

The sources of the illustrations are sufficiently indicated, for the most part, in the list, pp. 11 ff. Figures 8, 24, and 38 are

photographs of casts in the Scott Collection at Harvard Un versity. Figure 26 has been drawn specially for this book b Mr. Gleeson. Figure 35, a photograph of the bust of Caesar i the British Museum, has been included because of the fam which this head has long enjoyed, although its authenticity as likeness of Caesar is doubtful.

It is a pleasure to acknowledge with gratitude the man helpful suggestions and criticisms received from the editors o the series to which this book belongs. Cordial thanks are als due Mr. Eugene W. Harter, of the Erasmus Hall High School Brooklyn, and Mr. H. T. Rich, of the Boston Latin School, fron whose experience and scholarship the Notes have derived valu able improvements. Mr. N. W. Helm, of the Phillips Exete Academy, has given generous assistance in proof-reading.

M. W. M.

CAMBRIDGE,
April, 1905.

CONTENTS

ILLUSTRATIONS

BOOKS USED

Baumeister, Denkmäler des Klassischen Altertums.

Bernouilli, Römische Ikonographie.

Brunn and Arndt, Griechische und Römische Porträts.

Chatelain, Paléographie des Classiques Latins.

Daremberg and Saglio, Dictionnaire des Antiquités Grecques et Romaines.

Duruy, History of Rome.

Froehner, La Colonne Trajane.

von Göler, Caesars Gallischer Krieg.

Lanciani, New Tales of Old Rome.

Lindenschmit, Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres.

Napoleon III, History of Julius Caesar, Atlas.

Oehler, Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bello Gallico.

Rüstow, Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars.

Schreiber, Atlas of Classical Antiquities.

MAPS AND PLANS

INTRODUCTION

LIFE OF CAESAR

"That Julius Caesar was a famous man." — SHAKSPERE, *Richard III*, 3, 1, 84.

Caesar's many-sided greatness.

1. In beginning the study of Caesar, it is well to remember that we are dealing with one of the greatest characters of all time. He not only laid the foundations of the Roman Empire, which survived, with various changes, until the abdication of Francis II, in 1806; but by his conquest of Gaul, which Freeman (*General Sketch of European History*, 1874, p. 77) calls "one of the most important events in the history of the world," he paved the way for Roman civilization in western Europe, and is properly considered the founder of modern France. Although we are tempted to think of him principally as a successful general, he is distinguished above Alexander, Hannibal, Napoleon, or Grant, in that he showed unusual ability in many other lines as well. As an orator he had gained favorable notice before he was twenty-five years of age, and in the judgment of Quintilian (10, 1, 114), an excellent Roman critic, he might have rivaled even Cicero, if he had devoted himself to the art of oratory. His style as a writer is given high praise by Cicero (*Brutus*, 262), and yet his literary productions were composed rapidly, and in the midst of an exceedingly busy life of affairs. It is as a statesman and practical politician, however, that Caesar deserves the greatest renown. He appears to have been the only man of his time to see the impossibility of holding the Roman government together under the old senatorial rule, in which corruption and violence often rode supreme over all justice or right. Caesar's strongest claim to honor rests on the clear-

sighted, firm course he pursued in restoring order out of the ch of civil war, and in securing a just and wise reform administrat in many departments of the Roman domain.

The word *Caesar* is perpetuated in the German *Kaiser* a possibly in the Russian *Czar*, both of which mean 'emper The name of the month in which Julius Caesar was born changed, in his honor, from *Quinctilis* to *Iulius*, and is preserved English, French, and several other modern languages.

Birth and boyhood. 2. *Gaius Iulius Caesar* was born July 12, probal in the year 102 B.C.[1] On his father's side he claim descent from the mythical founders of the Roman sta and his paternal grandmother's family traced its ancestry to Anc Marcius, reputed to be the fourth king of Rome.

Caesar was fortunate in having a good mother, who watch over her boy and guided his education so carefully that she named by Tacitus (*Dialogus*, 28) side by side with Cornelia, t mother of the Gracchi, as a model of motherly devotion. It m have been due to her wisdom that he was not, like most Rom boys at that time, intrusted to the instruction of a Greek slave, b was given a tutor from Gaul (probably Cisalpine Gaul, now nort ern Italy), a well-educated, refined man, named Gnipho, to who influence he may have partly owed his lifelong interest in the Ga lic peoples. It is easy to suppose, too, that many of Caesa gentler characteristics, which distinguished him from most men his day, were inherited from his mother.

Early democratic tendencies. 3. Caesar's political activities were early enlist by the democratic party against the nobility of th senate. He must have been somewhat influenced b the career of his uncle, the great Marius, through whose suppo

[1] This is the year for which Mommsen (*History of Rome*, edition of 1895, IV, 278–28 argues, chiefly on the ground that if we accept the traditional date, 100 B.C., Caesar held t aedileship, praetorship, and consulship, two years before the legal age. Had this been t case, we should expect some reference to it in ancient writers. It seems unlikely too; for that time Caesar had not attained to such distinction as to make it probable that he w exempted from the regular workings of the law.



FIG. 1.—CAESAR : PISA

he was appointed a priest of Jupiter when a mere boy, and still more by his marriage in 83 B.C. to Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, a prominent democratic politician. **Loyalty to his wife.** His loyalty to his young wife when Sulla, the head of the senatorial party, ordered him, the next year, to put her away, illustrates two traits of his character which were often displayed throughout his life; namely, his strong will, and his faithfulness to friends. He was outlawed and obliged to go into hiding for a time. Once he was caught, and escaped with his life only by bribing his captor. But influential friends interceded, and Sulla finally pardoned him, prophesying that he would one day be the ruin of the aristocracy, for in him there were many Mariuses.

Wins the civic crown. 4. Feeling that there was no security for him in Rome, Caesar went to Asia Minor, where he gained his first military experience, and won the civic crown, equivalent to a medal of honor, for saving the life of a fellow-soldier. Upon Sulla's death, in 78 B.C., he returned to Rome, and soon attracted public attention by the skill with which he conducted the prosecution, for extortion, of two provincial governors. **Studies oratory.** In 76 B.C., wishing to perfect his oratorical talent, he studied at Rhodes under the famous teacher Molon. On his way thither he **Captured by pirates.** was captured by pirates near Miletus, and for thirty-eight days, while the ransom money was being collected, he was held a prisoner. He joined in their sports, wrote verses and speeches for their amusement, and if they failed to admire his



FIG. 2. — Coin showing Civic Crown.

efforts, called them to their faces barbarous and illiterate, ar threatened to crucify them. Upon his release, he procured shi at Miletus, took the pirates by surprise, recovered his ranso money, and carried out the threat which he had jestingly mac when he was in their power.

Pontiff, military tribune, quaestor, aedile.

5. In 74 B.C., after being chosen to the religiou office of pontiff, he returned to Rome, and was soo elected to his first public magistracy, the militar tribunate. In 70 B.C. he supported the democrati measures of the consuls Pompey and Crassus, whereb the Sullan constitution, which had made the senate supreme, wa overthrown. In 68 B.C. he served as quaestor in Further Spair Three years later, as curule aedile, he had control of public fes tivals, and improved to the utmost the opportunity of winning th favor of the populace by giving lavish exhibitions and elaborat gladiatorial contests. He also restored the statue and trophies o Marius, which had been destroyed by Sulla. When he laid dowr the aedileship, he was the hero of the democratic party, and wa practically certain of being elected, at the earliest legal age, to the highest offices of the government.

Chief pontiff. The Catiline conspiracy.

6. In 63 B.C. Caesar was elected chief pontiff, and thus became the head of the Roman religion. This office was held for life, and was considered a great prize. It kept a man constantly before the eyes of the people, and enabled him to exert no little control over the government through the management of the calendar. When Caesar left home on the morning of the election, he kissed his mother and told her he should return as chief pontiff or not at all. This was the year of Cicero's consulship, made forever memorable by the overthrow of Catiline's conspiracy. Caesar was charged by some of his political enemies with being implicated in it, and may very well have sympathized with the attempt to weaken the rule of the aristocracy; but the most radical schemes of the revolutionists, involving murders and arson, can hardly have been

countenanced by a man of his usually humane and merciful character. In the end, he stood with his party in advising against the adoption of the unconstitutional death penalty for the conspirators.

Praetor. Propraetor. The first triumvirate. Consul.

7. After holding the praetorship, a judicial office, for the year 62 B.C., Caesar served as propraetor in Further Spain. There he gained much useful military experience and won such successes that he was entitled to celebrate a triumph upon his return to Rome. This honor he renounced, however, owing to certain legal difficulties, in order to stand as a candidate for the consulship for 59 B.C. His election to this office was effected partly by his great popularity with the common people, and partly by a masterly stroke of politics, by which he formed the so-called First Triumvirate,[1] a union of himself with Pompey, the greatest general, and Crassus, the wealthiest man of Rome, for the purpose of promoting their own interests in spite of the obstructive senate. Bibulus, Caesar's colleague in the consulship, representing the aristocrats, strove to thwart all his plans, until utterly beaten at every turn he at last shut himself up at home for the rest of the year, thus giving the wits a chance to say that the consuls were Julius and Caesar, instead of Caesar and Bibulus. Laws were then passed ratifying Pompey's acts in the East and granting farms to his discharged veterans. Through Caesar's influence, abstracts of all debates in the senate were posted in the forum, and more stringent laws against extortion in the provinces were carried. Other important legislative work was accomplished, by the aid of the popular assembly, regardless of the inefficient and jealous senate. During the year the union with Pompey was strengthened by his marriage to Caesar's beautiful and accomplished daughter Julia. At about the same time Caesar married his third wife. Cornelia (§ 3) had died nine years before, and a second wife, owing to a

[1] This was not a board established by law, but a "steering committee" privately arranged by these three politicians.

scandalous report, was divorced in 62 B.C., with the well-know remark, "Caesar's wife must be above suspicion."

Proconsul in Gaul. 8. The senate hoped that at the end of his consu ship Caesar could be buried in obscurity and his legis lation undone. But the triumvirate, which had been formed t guard against any such contingency, obtained for him, through th vote of the people, an appointment for five years, with the com mand of three legions, to the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul (north ern Italy above the Rubicon) and Illyricum. The senate, seein the way in which the wind of popular favor was blowing, added th Roman province in Transalpine Gaul (southern France, callec Provincia on the map) and one legion. Nobody realized tha this last appointment was to open the way for one of the mos successful and famous military careers in history. The commanc to defend the province against attacks from without gave him the excuse for his campaigns in central and northern Gaul during the next eight years, which resulted in the complete subjugation of the whole territory. Caesar himself described the campaigns of the years 58–52 B.C.,[1] but the exploits of 51 B.C., which made the victory secure, were narrated by Hirtius, one of Caesar's faithful lieutenants. During these years both Britain and Germany were entered for the first time by a Roman army.

The conference at Lucca. 9. In the spring of 56 B.C. Caesar met his colleagues of the triumvirate at Lucca, on the frontier of his Cisalpine province, to lay plans for a continuance of their policies. This conference was attended by all the principal men of the democratic party. It was decided that Caesar's governorship of Gaul should be extended for another term of five years, while Pompey and Crassus, after holding the consulship for 55 B.C., were each to receive a governorship for five years, Pompey in Spain, Crassus in Syria.

[1] For these campaigns, see the summary at the head of the notes on each book of the *Gallic War*.

End of the triumvirate. 10. In 54 B.C. Crassus departed for Syria, and was killed the next year at the battle of Carrhae. Pompey intrusted his province to a lieutenant, and remained, contrary to all precedent, at Rome. In this year his beloved wife Julia died, and thus a strong bond of sympathy and interest between him and Caesar was broken. With the death of Crassus the triumvirate was at an end, and the gulf separating the two survivors constantly widened. In 52 B.C. Pompey was made sole consul to restore order from the anarchy which had prevailed in the city the past few years. He thus found himself the champion of the senatorial party, which was opposed to Caesar and hoped to get him out of the way, as soon as his term of office should expire, by overthrowing his political measures and even bringing him to trial for his unconstitutional proceedings during his governorship.

Efforts to prevent Caesar's second consulship. 11. Caesar's only safeguard against the attacks of his political foes lay in his election as consul for 48 B.C.; for, according to Roman law, so long as a man held office he could not be tried for his official acts. As early as 56 B.C., at the Lucca conference, the triumvirs had arranged that upon the expiration of his command in Gaul he should at once enter the consulship, and a law was put through in 52 B.C. exempting him from the requirement by which all candidates for office had to declare themselves in person seventeen days before the election; for during his proconsulship he could not legally come into Italy from his province. This exemption was annulled, however, a little later through Pompey's influence, and Caesar's enemies in the senate endeavored during the years 51 and 50 B.C. to deprive him of his proconsulship before the legal expiration of his term at the close of 49 B.C. At the same time the army under Pompey's command was strengthened by various measures.

Civil war begun. 12. Caesar made more than one attempt to come to a compromise with the senate, and even offered to give

up his governorship and disband his army if Pompey would do likewise. He would then come to Rome and stand for the consulship in the regular way. His proposals were met by the senate early in January, 49 B.C., with the demand that he give up his provinces and dismiss his troops before a certain day on pain of being declared a traitor. A few days later, by a decree of the senate, the country was declared to be in danger, and Pompey and other magistrates were given full power to provide for its defense. The Caesarean tribunes, one of whom was Mark Antony, finding their right of veto overridden and their very lives endangered, fled in disguise to Caesar; and this violation by the senate of the sacred office of tribune gave Caesar the opportunity, which he was not slow to seize, to pose as the protector of the constitution against the lawless attacks of the senate. Seeing that war or political ruin were the alternatives before him, Caesar, being assured of the allegiance of his soldiers (only Labienus, his ablest and most trusted officer, deserted him), crossed the Rubicon, the little stream separating his province from Italy, and civil war was begun.

The Civil War. Caesar supreme.

13. Caesar's clear-sighted grasp of a situation and his rapidity of action were never better displayed than in the first year of the Civil War. By October, 49 B.C., Italy, Sicily and Sardinia, Spain, and Marseilles had all been won to his side. In August of the next year he completely defeated Pompey at Pharsalus in Thessaly. Going to Alexandria in Egypt in pursuit of Pompey, he was detained until the summer of 47 B.C. by an uprising which, though insignificant in itself, nearly cost him his life.[1] While there he came under the spell of the famous Cleopatra. Before returning to Rome he settled affairs in Asia, winning at Zela in Pontus such an easy victory that he sent home the well-known message, "Veni, vidi, vici." Arriving in Italy before anybody dreamed of his approach, he set

[1] For these campaigns, see the summaries of the three books of the *Civil War*, pp. 382–384, 397–398.

about restoring order and confidence in the government and in business lines. But in a few weeks he had to take the field again, this time in Africa, where the Pompeians had gathered a strong army. In the battle of Thapsus, fought in April, 46 B.C., Caesar won a decisive victory. Labienus, his old friend and lieutenant, with Pompey's son Sextus and other survivors, escaped to Spain, where at Munda, in March, 45 B.C., the final conflict of the war resulted in the complete overthrow of the Pompeians. Caesar was now the undisputed master of the whole Roman dominion.

Caesar's wise and just rule.

14. The senate and people lavished honors and titles upon the conqueror. He was made dictator for life, having already thrice received the appointment for shorter terms. The title of Imperator was given him, signifying that he held supreme military and civil power throughout the empire. He controlled all legislation through the tribunician powers which were conferred upon him. The censorial power gave him complete management of the senate, and oversight of the conduct of all the citizens. He used his prerogatives for the most part wisely and well. The senate, which in its old form had outlived its usefulness, was remodeled, its numbers were largely increased, and even provincials and worthy men of low rank were admitted to its membership. A beginning was made in the disbanding of the legions and settling them on farms in Italy and the provinces. Bankruptcy laws were passed, granting justice both to debtors and creditors. Free distribution of corn, which helped to pauperize thousands of the poor, was better organized, and the number of recipients reduced by more than a half. For the relief of Rome and Italy colonization was projected on a large scale. Carthage and Corinth, which had been destroyed by Rome a hundred years before, were rebuilt shortly after Caesar's death in accordance with his plans. An effort was made to reduce the evils of slavery and provide for the employment of a greater number of free men. Provincial administration was much improved and a just system of

taxation was inaugurated. As early as 49 B.C. Caesar gave to the Gauls between the Po and the Alps the full Roman citizenship and he afterwards conferred the same or similar rights on more distant communities, as Cadiz in Spain and some districts in Transalpine Gaul. The calendar, which was nearly two months out of the way, was reformed on scientific principles, and with only slight modification remains in use to-day. And these are only a few of the many projects which he had in mind for the betterment of the government in many parts of the empire. His rule promised a great improvement over the senatorial system of government, which had too often fostered the interests of the aristocratic and capitalist classes and neglected the welfare of the people taken as a whole.

Caesar's assassination. 15. Although Caesar had shown the utmost generosity and clemency towards the men who had fought against him in the Civil War, there were naturally many among them who could not accept peaceably the idea of an absolute monarchy. Disgruntled politicians, too, who felt that they had been slighted in the distribution of the offices, capitalists and others whose dreams of wealth had been balked by his financial legislation, unpractical lovers of the old republican forms, and some who could not forgive him because he had reduced them to the necessity of being forgiven by him, were all restless under the new yoke. A conspiracy comprising about sixty men, among them several of his intimate friends, was finally formed, and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., he was assassinated at a meeting of the senate.[1] An act more useless or less justified by results the world has seldom seen. The empire was plunged once more into civil war, from which it was liberated only after thirteen years of strife and bloodshed, when Caesar's grandnephew and heir became sole ruler and established firmly the principle of absolutism which the greatest of the Caesars had set up.

[1] Shakspere's *Julius Caesar* gives an interesting imaginative account, based upon Plutarch, of the plot and assassination.

Personal appearance. Character. Religious views. Deification.

16. Caesar is said by Suetonius (*Life of Caesar*, 45) to have been tall and of light complexion. He had a commanding presence, dark eyes, large mouth, and a high forehead. He was extremely fastidious about his dress and personal appearance. A premature baldness gave him not a little uneasiness. He was strong and active, excelled in athletics, and was capable of an astonishing amount of work without relaxation.

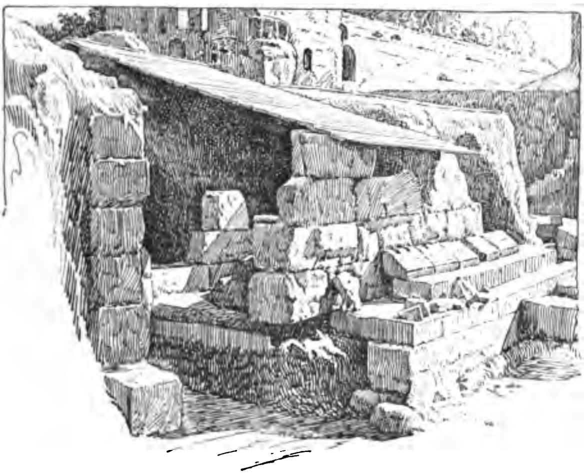


FIG. 3. — The Spot where the Body of Caesar was Cremated. From Lanciani's *New Tales of Old Rome.*

By permission of Messrs. Houghton, Mifflin & Co.

In energy and swiftness of action he has never been surpassed, frequently appearing in front of an army when he was supposed to be hundreds of miles away. Even in hardship and disaster his courage was firm, and he inspired his men with perfect confidence in his judgment and ability as a commander. He won their devotion, too, by his willingness to share their dangers and privations, his hearty commendation of merit, and his interest in their

personal welfare. More than once he saved the day by leaving his horse and fighting side by side with his men. Although in accordance with the custom of the time he allowed his soldiers occasionally to indulge in unnecessary cruelty against a vanquished foe, yet he is distinguished above all his contemporaries for his mercy and readiness to forgive his fellow-countrymen who took sides against him. His fairness is seen in his writings, where he praises even his barbarian enemies, as the Helvetii and the Nervii.

Although the republican constitution was overthrown by Caesar, he cannot be regarded as a usurping tyrant seeking power merely to satisfy his own ambition. It was only after exhausting every means to obtain a peaceable settlement with Pompey and the senate that he began the Civil War. The alternative to fighting was complete political ruin for himself, and the triumph of the senatorial party, which had been showing itself for years less and less worthy of conducting the government. When victory placed the sole power in his hands, he saw clearly and truly that the only way to effect the reforms which the just interests of the whole people, poor as well as rich, provincials or Romans, demanded, was to keep the reins in his own hands and to use the officials and the senate simply as functionaries to carry out his will. That he rose to absolute power in accordance with a well-matured plan formed years before is not likely; but he was a constructive statesman, capable of taking advantage of circumstances and of directing them towards the end which his discernment saw was essential for the public welfare.

In religion Caesar was a freethinker. Like most educated men of the time he could not believe in the national gods, Jupiter, Juno, and the rest. Although he showed favor to the Jews at Alexandria and elsewhere, it is not to be supposed that he knew anything of their God, in whom modern civilized peoples believe; and the Christian religion was not yet founded. He appears, however, to have trusted somewhat in an overruling power, which he called Fortune. Death he thought should not be feared, as it

brings no misery, but sets men free from the troubles of this life. He laughed at the signs which worried the superstitious. When he was disembarking in Africa for the brief campaign which was ended with his victory at Thapsus, he stumbled and fell, but giving a good turn to what others considered an unlucky omen he said, "I seize thee, Africa."

In the year after his death by a solemn vote of the senate this freethinker was enrolled among the gods and given the name Divus Iulius. The people thought that he was proved to have become a god by the appearance of a comet in the heavens at the celebration, in his honor, of the games of Venus Genetrix, who was considered to be the ancestral goddess of the Julian family.

Caesar's writings. 17. Caesar's literary activity covered a wide field. In his early years and again near the close of his life he dabbled in poetry, although not with marked success. His only extant verses are in praise of the comic poet Terence. In oratory Caesar was surpassed only by Cicero, who praises his style highly (*Brutus*, 252). One winter during a journey from Cisalpine Gaul to his army he composed a grammatical treatise. He wrote a book on astronomy, probably in connection with the reform of the calendar. After the suicide of the sturdy but narrow-minded republican, Cato of Utica, Caesar attacked him in a pamphlet replying to Cicero's panegyric. A collection of notable and witty sayings was also published by Caesar, and for many years after his death his official despatches and many of his private letters to Cicero, Balbus, and other friends, were extant. Of all these works only the merest fragments are preserved.

By great good fortune we have, however, Caesar's most important works, namely, the Commentaries on the Gallic and the Civil Wars. The *Gallic War* describes Caesar's campaigns in Gaul during the years 58–52 B.C., and was probably published in 51 B.C. The events of each year are related in a single book. The campaign of 51 B.C., in which the Gauls were completely subjugated, was described by Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers, who

also recounts the attempts made at Rome in 50 B.C. by Caesar's opponents to prevent his having a second consulship in 48 B.C. The *Civil War*, which was published after Caesar's death, treats in detail the events of 49 and 48 B.C., from the outbreak of the war till the Alexandrine uprising. It thus includes Caesar's conquests in Italy, Spain, and Thessaly, the capture of Marseilles, the loss of Curio's army in Africa, and the unsuccessful blockade of Pompey near Dyrrachium. The narrative ends abruptly, and doubtless Caesar meant to carry it farther with the account of the Alexandrine, Asiatic, African, and Spanish campaigns, which had occupied him intermittently through 47–45 B.C.

Caesar's account of the Gallic and the Civil wars is one of the most valuable military histories ever written. The style is singularly clear and direct, free from all rhetorical or literary artifices, and from the time of Cicero to the present day has been considered the best model of simple unaffected Latinity. Caesar's purpose was not so much to write history himself as to furnish historians with the materials for writing; but Cicero says (*Brutus*, 262) that by his pure and clear brevity he discouraged others from attempting to improve on his work. Doubtless he wished to make his exposition favorable to himself, and presumably he concealed some of his mistakes. Apparently, too, he was sometimes misled by the reports of others, and in a few details his memory may have played him false; but for the most part his statements can be accepted with confidence.

The Commentaries have always been read and studied by military men. Napoleon recommended them to all aspiring officers, and Lord Wolseley, recently commander-in-chief of the British army, says that the words of Caesar will suggest to a soldier of to-day "reflections that he may afterwards recall with advantage as applicable to modern campaigns." At the battle of San Jacinto (April, 1836), by which Texas won its independence from Mexico in a victory strikingly like some of Caesar's achievements, the commander of the Texans was the picturesque old frontiersman,

General Sam Houston, who had been a diligent student of Caesar's Commentaries.

> "A wonderful man was this Caesar!
>
> * * * * * * *
>
> Who could both write and fight, and in both was equally skillful!"
>
> — LONGFELLOW, *The Courtship of Miles Standish*, Part II.

Caesar in later literature. 18. In English literature Caesar holds only an obscure place. Even in Shakspere's *Julius Caesar*, the most important work in which he appears prominently, he can hardly be called the hero of the play. While Brutus, Cassius, and Antony are all idealized, Caesar is pictured as weak, vacillating, and superstitious. And yet Shakspere held no mean opinion of him, as can be seen from such lines as

> "Caesar was mighty, bold, royal, and loving." — *Julius Caesar*, 3, 1, 127.
>
> "There be many Caesars ere such another Julius." — *Cymbeline*, 3, 1, 11.

Chaucer, in the *Monk's Tale*, tells of Caesar's murder, wrongly putting it on the Capitol, a detail in which he is followed by Shakspere, who makes Polonius say (*Hamlet*, 3, 2, 97), "I did enact Julius Caesar: I was killed i' the Capitol; Brutus killed me." There is a record as early as 1562 of a performance at Whitehall of a play entitled *Julius Caesar*, but this entry is possibly mythical. In 1582 a Latin play, *Caesar Interfectus*, by Dr. Eedes, was acted at Oxford. It is to this performance that Polonius refers in *Hamlet;* and probably the familiar "Et tu, Brute" first occurred in the Latin play, although Shakspere is more likely to have taken it from the *True Tragedy of Richard, Duke of York* (1595).

After Shakspere's play appeared (probably 1600–1601), an unsuccessful counterblast, called *Caesar's Fall*, was written by Webster, Middleton, Munday, and Drayton. In 1604 Alexander's *Julius Caesar* appeared. A puppet-play of 1605 was founded on Shakspere's play. In 1719 Davenant and Dryden altered

Shakspere's play to conform to the tastes of the day. No play of Shakspere is more popular or has been translated into more languages than *Julius Caesar*. The Duke of Buckingham's two plays, *The Tragedy of Caesar* and *The Tragedy of Brutus*, were printed in 1722, but neither was ever acted.

A different period of Caesar's life is presented in Fletcher's tragedy *The False One* (about 1620), which deals with Caesar's experiences in Egypt after the battle of Pharsalus (§ 13). His relations with Cleopatra give the principal interest to the plot. An adaptation of this play was produced in 1724 by Colley Cibber, whose *Caesar in Egypt* shows a nobler and more idealized characterization of both Caesar and Cleopatra. Pompey's murder and Caesar's narrow escape from destruction in the war with Ptolemy are important episodes of both plays.

The only novel in which Caesar holds a prominent part is *A Friend of Caesar* (1900), written by an American, Mr. William Stearns Davis, and even here the interest of the story centers round other characters.

In the literatures of other languages Caesar has exerted even less influence than in English. In 1550 the French scholar Muret (generally called Muretus) published a poem in Latin called *Julius Caesar*, which consisted largely of anecdotes taken from Suetonius. Among Voltaire's early tragedies are his *Brutus* and *La Mort de César*, neither of which compares favorably with Shakspere's play. A German school teacher, Nicodemus Frischlin, produced in 1588 a Latin play, the *Helvetiogermani*, which relates the story, given in the first book of the *Gallic War*, of the campaigns against the Helvetii and the Germans under Ariovistus. In the comedy *Julius Redivivus*, Frischlin represents Caesar and Cicero visiting the upper world in his own day at Strassburg. It contains passages based on Caesar's account of the Germans in the sixth book of the *Gallic War*. Petrarch, the Italian poet of the fourteenth century, wrote a life of Caesar, which follows closely the ancient sources, and in the account of the Gallic and the Civil wars is

based on Caesar's own books. Louis XIV of France translated the first twenty-nine chapters of the first book of the *Gallic War*, containing the narrative of the Helvetian campaign. Auguste Barbier's play, *Jules César* (1848), is of no special merit. A patriotic and historical poem, *Vercingétorix et César*, by J. Pautet, was published in 1865.

Though his influence in literature has been small, Caesar has always been a familiar name to school children in all lands where Latin forms an essential part of the educational system. The simple, clear style of his writings, as well as the interest of the narrative itself and the greatness of the author, make it improbable that Caesar's influence in this direction will ever wane.

"O Julius Caesar, thou art mighty yet!" — *Julius Caesar*, 5, 3, 94.

LIFE OF POMPEY

Birth. Early exploits. Joins the senatorial party.

19. Pompey's career illustrates the extremes of fortune. Rising in the height of his successes to such honor as no Roman before him had ever won, he finally became a fugitive, seeking safety wherever it might be found, and met death at the hands of a cowardly assassin.

Gnaeus Pompey was born September 29, 106 B.C., not quite nine months after the birth of his friend and political supporter, Cicero, and about four years earlier than his rival and conqueror, Caesar. While a mere boy he saw service in his father's army, and at the age of twenty-three so distinguished himself as an independent commander, in behalf of the senatorial or aristocratic party, that Sulla, the greatest general of the time, saluted him with the complimentary title of Imperator, a most extraordinary honor for a man so young. During the next two years, he commanded with such success against the popular or democratic forces in Italy, Sicily, and Africa, that Sulla greeted him on his return

with the surname of Magnus, or the Great, and after some reluctance permitted him to celebrate a triumph. This was the first time that such an honor was granted a man who had not held any public office, and who, consequently, was not a member of the senate.

Commands against Lepidus and Sertorius. 20. Upon Sulla's death, in 78 B.C., the democratic consul, Lepidus, tried to overthrow the Sullan constitution, which had put all the government in the hands of the aristocratic party. Pompey was given command against Lepidus and soon drove him out of Italy. In the next year he was sent by the senate to aid Metellus in the war against Sertorius in Spain. Sertorius declared that a ferule was the only weapon he should need with which to whip this lad, if he were not afraid of the old woman Metellus; and in fact he would have worsted Pompey in pitched battle more than once if Metellus had not come to the rescue. Finally in 72 B.C. Sertorius was treacherously assassinated by his own officers, and Pompey found no difficulty in defeating his successor and bringing the war to a close. On his return to Italy he met and cut to pieces five thousand fugitive slaves from the army of Spartacus, who had been overthrown by Crassus. For this exploit he egotistically claimed that, while Crassus had conquered the slaves in battle, he had plucked up the whole war by the roots.

First consulship. 21. Although he had not yet reached the legal age, and had held none of the lower offices, Pompey was elected consul with Crassus for the year 70 B.C. He won the favor of the popular party by restoring to the tribunate the powers it had possessed before Sulla's reforms, and by taking away from the senate the exclusive right of sitting on juries in the law courts. Caesar supported these democratic measures and was glad to see the senate alienated from the popular hero. During this year Pompey received his formal discharge from military service, declaring at the ceremony that he had served the full number of campaigns prescribed by law, and all under himself as general.



FIG. 4.—POMPEY : COPENHAGEN

Wars with the pirates and with Mithridates.

22. For the next two years Pompey lived in retirement, but in 67 B.C., upon the proposal of the tribune Gabinius, he was given by vote of the people, in spite of strong opposition from the senate, an extraordinary command against the pirates, with absolute control over the whole Mediterranean and its shores for fifty miles inland. The pirates had carried things with a high hand for many years, destroying fleets, plundering cities and temples, taking Roman officials prisoner, and above all cutting off Rome's corn supply from the provinces. In three months Pompey cleared the sea of pirates, making commerce secure once more and restoring plenty and cheap prices to the capital.

Through this astonishing success Pompey became by far the most distinguished man of the time. The following year the tribune Manilius proposed that he should be given charge of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus in Asia Minor, who had been warring with the Romans for more than twenty years. Pompey brought this troublesome and dangerous war to an end in 63 B.C., and reorganized the states of Asia, adding several new provinces to the Roman domain and increasing the revenues of the treasury by more than a half. One of his achievements was the capture of Jerusalem and the reduction of Judea to a Roman dependency. When he returned home in 62 B.C., he might easily have seized the supreme power with the help of his army and the political support of the people. But shrinking from such violation of the constitution, he dismissed his legions as soon as he landed in Italy, and was thus left at the mercy of the jealous senate, which long refused to grant him a triumph, to ratify his acts in the East, or to assign farms to his veterans.

Friendly relations with Caesar.

23. When Caesar returned from Spain in 60 B.C., his chief ambition was to secure the consulship for the following year. Taking advantage of the feud between his friend Pompey and the senate, he formed the First Triumvirate (§ 7) with Pompey and Crassus for the purpose of

forwarding their own interests in spite of senatorial opposition. Early in his consulship he secured the ratification of Pompey's settlement of the East and the assignment of lands for his veterans.

The friendship of the two men was sealed by the marriage of Pompey to Caesar's daughter Julia. When the people had voted to Caesar the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, it was Pompey who proposed in the senate that Transalpine Gaul should be added to Caesar's province.

In 57 B.C. Pompey was made commissioner for five years of the corn supply throughout the empire, a position of high honor but little power. His request to be intrusted with the restoration of the exiled Ptolemy Auletes to the throne of Egypt was refused by the senate.

At the Lucca conference in 56 B.C. (§ 9) Pompey and Crassus were designated as consuls for 55 B.C., and Pompey was to receive the governorship of Spain for the five years following. He appears to have felt, however, that his influence, which had been waning as Caesar's had been growing during the last few years, would be endangered if he left Italy. Consequently, under the pretext of administering the corn supply, and disregarding all precedent, he committed his province to lieutenants and remained near Rome.

The break with Caesar.

24. When Julia died in September, 54 B.C., a strong tie between Pompey and Caesar was broken, and with the death of Crassus the next year the community of interests which had held the triumvirate together was at an end (§ 10). Still no open rupture occurred, and in 53 B.C. Pompey loaned Caesar a legion to be used in Gaul. Anarchy prevailed at Rome, elections even could not be held regularly, and at the beginning of 52 B.C. such disorder followed the murder of Clodius, Caesar's demagogue supporter, that Pompey was made sole consul by the senate.

This action made him the leader of the senatorial party, and put an end to the union of eighteen years' duration with Caesar.

During the year Pompey married Cornelia, daughter of Metellus Scipio, a bitter enemy of Caesar, and on August 1 he made his father-in-law his colleague in the consulship for the rest of the year. In the next two years Pompey and the enemies of Caesar in the senate were intriguing to prevent Caesar from receiving a second consulship in 48 B.C., and refusing all of Caesar's overtures for peaceable settlement of the rivalry between himself and Pompey (§§ 11, 12).

In the fall of 50 B.C., upon the false report that Caesar was collecting his troops in upper Italy, the consul Marcellus with both consuls elect, all fanatically opposed to Caesar, ordered Pompey, on their own responsibility and therefore unconstitutionally, to defend his country, using the forces then under his command and, if necessary, levying more. Pompey was so overconfident, being deceived partly by extravagant demonstrations throughout Italy over his recovery from a severe illness, and partly by the assertions of certain officers that Caesar's soldiers would desert as soon as war began, that he neglected all proper precautions, boasting that, whenever he stamped with his foot in any part of Italy, troops enough would arise in an instant.

The civil war. Pompey's defeat.

25. When, in January, 49 B.C., the implacable senate, refusing all of Caesar's proposals, declared the country to be in danger, and summoned Pompey and the other magistrates to its defense (§ 12), Pompey was found to be far less ready for action than his rival. Upon learning that Caesar had crossed the Rubicon and that town after town was passing into his hands, all Rome was filled with the wildest confusion. Wholly unprepared for fighting, Pompey and his supporters fled in hot haste to Brundisium, whence the two consuls and part of the army at once embarked for Dyrrachium, and Pompey himself with the rest of his troops followed a few weeks later, when Caesar arrived before the town.

Making his headquarters at Dyrrachium, Pompey spent the year 49 B.C. in strengthening his fleet and collecting men and

supplies of every sort from all the countries of the East, where his name had been one to conjure with ever since his exploits in the Mithridatic War. When Caesar, after his victorious campaigns in Italy and Spain,[1] arrived in Epirus at the beginning of the next year, his little army was no match for Pompey's in numbers or equipment. But while Caesar's troops were veterans, who had learned to put implicit confidence in their general and were ready to do and dare the utmost in his behalf, Pompey was hampered by the jealousies and feuds of the many nobles and magistrates in his suite, each one of whom wanted a share in the direction of affairs.

Although Caesar's daring attempt to blockade Pompey near Dyrrachium was a failure, he amply atoned for this reverse a few weeks later by his crushing defeat of the Pompeians at Pharsalus (August 9, 48 B.C.).

Flight and death. 26. Pompey himself fled with a handful of companions. Coming to the sea, he spent the night in a fisherman's cottage, and next morning obtained passage in a merchant ship for Lesbos, where his wife and younger son were sojourning during the war.

The pathetic meeting with his wife is related by Plutarch. She had been led to believe that his success at Dyrrachium had decided the war in his favor. When she learned that he had come as a fugitive with a single ship, and that not his own, she fell in a swoon. Upon recovering her senses, she was brought to Pompey, who tried to console her with philosophical reflections. "It behooves us, who are mortals born," he said, "to endure these events, and to try fortune yet again; neither is it any less possible to recover our former state than it was to fall from that into this."

Taking his wife and a few friends on board, Pompey proceeded on his way. After mature deliberation he decided to seek refuge with the Egyptian king, whose father had been restored to his

[1] See the summary of Book First of the *Civil War*, p. 382 f.

throne through Pompey's favor. The young king's ministers, hoping to win Caesar's favor, had him treacherously murdered before the eyes of his wife and friends, as he was stepping ashore. The body, which was left lying on the sand, was burned by a freedman of Pompey, who had accompanied him to land. The funeral pile was made from planks of an old fishing boat. The head was reserved as a trophy for Caesar, who, when he saw it, turned away in disgust and sorrow, and afterwards had two of the guilty ministers punished with death.

Pompey died September 28, 48 B.C., the thirteenth anniversary of his triumph for the victory over Mithridates, and one day before he would have been fifty-eight years old. He was an honest man in an age of corruption and crookedness, a good husband and father, and a capable military officer. But he was not gifted with Caesar's strong character and power of leadership, and if he had been victorious at Pharsalus, there can be no doubt that he would have been the mere tool of the bloodthirsty, unscrupulous aristocrats, who were eager only to enrich themselves at the expense of their political and personal enemies, in utter disregard of the welfare of the state as a whole.

CAESAR'S ARMY

The legion. 27. The tactical unit in the Roman army was the legion, the full strength of which was theoretically 6000 men. But, as in modern armies, the effective fighting strength was constantly changing, owing to sickness, desertions, or losses in battle. It is estimated that Caesar's legions never much exceeded 5000 men, and at the battle of Pharsalus, as we know from his own statement (*B.C.* 3, 89), they averaged only 2750. Like modern corps and regiments, the legions were designated by numbers, as first, tenth, etc.

The legionary soldier was a Roman citizen of the lower classes. He enlisted for twenty years, and at the expiration of his term

was rewarded with money, often with a farm, thus being assured of a competence for the rest of his days, just as in our own times veterans are given pensions and government positions. Veterans were often invited by a general to reënter the service for one or more campaigns. They were exempt from all the harder duties, and received liberal pay and rewards. Caesar paid his legionaries at first 120, afterwards 225, denarii (about $40) a year, but the purchasing value of money was greater then than now. In addition to their pay, soldiers received a share of the booty, and gifts from the general, after successful campaigns. They were trained to a variety of duties, and could fortify a camp, build bridges, or repair ships, as readily as they could fight. They constituted the heavy infantry of the army.

Divisions of the legion. 28. The legion was divided into ten tactical units called cohorts, each cohort comprising three maniples, or companies, and each maniple being again subdivided into two centuries, or platoons. Accordingly, there were thirty maniples and sixty centuries in each legion. The best men of the legion were in the first cohort.

The auxiliaries. 29. While the brunt of the fighting fell on the legions, there was a considerable body of light infantry (*peditēs levis armātūrae*) always attached to the army. These were never Romans, but were furnished by allied or subject states upon the requisition of the commander, or were hired from independent nations. They comprised the slingers (*funditōrēs*) and archers (*sagittāriī*). They had only light defensive armor or none at all. In battle they were stationed at the wings, and were depended on merely to make a show of numbers or to help in confusing the enemy at the first attack.

The cavalry. 30. The cavalry also belonged to the auxiliaries, being raised altogether from allied and subject states. Caesar's cavalry was composed of Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards. The Germans were by far the most effective. Horsemen were no match for infantry in actual conflict, but they were useful for

defending the legions from flank attacks, for reconnoitring, and especially in the pursuit of a defeated enemy.

The general. 31. Caesar as governor of a province had absolute command of his army. Although he possessed the *imperium*, or supreme power, from the moment of entering upon his office, the title of *imperātor*, general-in-chief, was given by his soldiers after his first victory, which was won over the Helvetians in 58 B.C.

The lieutenants. 32. The lieutenants (*lēgātī*) were members of the Roman senate, appointed by that body on the nomination of the general. They could be detailed by the general for any service, civil or military. Caesar appointed his lieutenants to the command of single legions. Occasionally a lieutenant was given temporarily an independent command of two or more legions, with the title of *lēgātus prō praetōre* ('lieutenant acting as commander'). Among Caesar's most capable lieutenants were Labienus, who deserted him at the beginning of the Civil War, Publius Crassus, son of the triumvir, Quintus Cicero, the orator's brother, and Mark Antony, who afterwards shared with Octavian the rule of the Roman world.

The quaestor. 33. Every governor of a province had a quaestor assigned to him by lot. These officials, elected annually at Rome, had charge of the finances of the province, the pay, equipment, and supplies of the army, and the management of the booty. Caesar occasionally put a quaestor in command of one or more legions.

The commander-in-chief with his lieutenants, quaestor, and a large number of aids and guards, formed the general staff of the army.

The tribunes. 34. The tribunes were young men of equestrian rank, who obtained appointment from the general himself through family and political influences. Being without military experience and usually remaining with the army only a short time, they were of less value than the lieutenants. Their command in

battle was apparently limited to small detachments of one or more cohorts. They presided over courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. They also had numerous administrative duties, such as maintaining the discipline of the camp, attending to the levying or discharge of troops, and assisting the quaestor in providing supplies and equipment. There were six tribunes to each legion.

The centurions. 35. Most important of the subordinate officers were the centurions. Unlike the superior officers they were professional soldiers, having been promoted from the ranks through merit. As their name implies they were commanders of centuries. Accordingly there were sixty in each legion, six in each cohort, and two in each maniple (§ 28).

Of the six centurions in each cohort the two belonging to the first maniple were called *pīlus prior* and *pīlus posterior;* the two belonging to the second maniple, *prīnceps prior* and *prīnceps posterior;* and the two of the third maniple, *hastātus prior* and *hastātus posterior.* The *pīlus prior* must have commanded the whole cohort, and within each maniple the *prior*, or senior, centurion was doubtless in charge.

The cohort to which a centurion belonged was indicated by prefixing the proper numeral. The lowest centurion of the tenth cohort of any legion was *decimus hastātus posterior*, the fourth centurion of the fifth cohort was *quīntus prīnceps posterior*, the first centurion of the first cohort was *prīmus pīlus prior*, generally abbreviated to *prīmipīlus.*

The *prīmipīlus* was the chief centurion of the legion and ranked next to the lieutenant, its commanding officer. This was the highest rank to which any centurion could aspire. The six centurions of the first cohort, called *centuriōnēs prīmōrum ōrdinum*, outranked all the others and enjoyed the special confidence of their superiors, being the only centurions invited to the councils of war. The centurions of the tenth cohort were the lowest in rank (*centuriōnēs īnfimōrum ōrdinum*), and the order of promotion was probably

through the six grades of the tenth cohort, then of the ninth, the eighth, and so on to the first. Men of special bravery were sometimes promoted over the heads of their superiors. Caesar tells of advancing a worthy centurion from a position in the eighth cohort to the rank of *prīmipīlus*, the highest in the whole legion.

The council of war. 36. The commanding officer frequently invited to a council of war his lieutenants, quaestor, tribunes, and centurions of highest rank. This body could merely advise. The general was perfectly free to go contrary to its judgment.

The prefects. 37. The prefects were officers of the auxiliary troops, whether infantry or cavalry. The subordinate prefects were generally of the same nationality as their men, but the highest prefects were Romans. The engineering operations of the army were also in charge of an officer called prefect of engineers.

Armor. 38. The legionary soldier was protected by a helmet (*galea* or *cassis*), which was adorned with a crest, and left the face exposed; a leather cuirass (*lōrīca*), reënforced with strips of metal; and a shield (*scūtum*) of cylindrical shape, made of wood covered with hide. Probably a greave (*ocrea*) was worn on the right shin, the left was sufficiently protected by the shield.

Weapons. 39. The weapons of the legionary were the javelin (*pīlum*) and the sword (*gladius*). The javelin, which was about six feet long, consisted of a wooden shaft in which was fitted a long slender iron hardened only at the point. When the weapon struck, the iron bent and thus made it unserviceable for the enemy's use. The javelins were hurled with great force and accuracy by the charging soldiers when they were about seventy-five or one hundred feet from the enemy. In the hand-to-hand encounter which followed, the weapon used was the sword, about two feet long, double-edged, and sharp-pointed. It was carried on the right side suspended from a belt passing over the left shoulder.

The standards. 40. The standard of the legion was a silver or bronze eagle (*aquila*), with outstretched wings, carried on a

long pole. It was borne by the *aquilifer* under the special charge of the chief centurion (*prīmipīlus*).

Each maniple had its standard (*signum*), of varying forms so that the soldiers could easily distinguish their own. Animals were the commonest devices, and streamers or metal ornaments were often attached. The cohort had no separate standard.

The cavalry and the auxiliary infantry had rectangular flags or banners (*vexilla*) of different colors. A *vexillum* was also kept flying at the general's quarters.

Rations. 41. Wheat was the favorite food of the Roman soldiers, about two pounds forming one day's ration. On one occasion in the Civil War, rations for three weeks were issued, but ordinarily the soldier received his allowance every fortnight. The grinding and cooking were the work of the soldiers themselves. Variety of diet could be obtained by trading with the sutlers, who attended the army in considerable numbers. Meat was only sparingly eaten.

The baggage. 42. On the march each soldier carried his own personal baggage, containing rations, clothing, cooking and intrenching utensils, arms, etc., all tied in a secure bundle (*sarcina*) and fastened to a forked stick slung over the shoulder. This pack must have weighed, according to the amount of rations, from thirty to sixty pounds.

The general baggage of the legion, including tents, artillery, provisions, hand-mills for grinding the grain, etc., was carried by pack-animals (*iūmenta*) or on wagons. From four hundred to five hundred pack-animals must have been required for each legion. The baggage train was such a hindrance to the army on the march that it was called *impedīmenta*.

The camp. Its fortifications. 43. The Roman army always spent the night in a carefully built camp (*castra*). The shape of the camp was as nearly square or rectangular as the nature of the ground allowed. The favorite site was a gently sloping hill, which would give a commanding position against an enemy, and near which

could be found an abundance of water and fodder, with wood for fuel and for fortification. The place was selected, and the plan of the camp marked out, by scouts sent on ahead. When the army came up, men were at once detailed to complete the work.

A ditch (*fossa*) was dug round the outer line of the camp, the dirt being thrown up on the inner side to form a rampart (*vāllum*). The dimensions of ditch and rampart varied according to circumstances, but ordinarily the ditch was about nine feet wide at the top and seven feet deep, the rampart about six feet high and six feet broad at the top. On the outer edge of the rampart stakes (*vāllī*) were planted close together, making a fence, some four feet high, from behind which the defenders hurled their weapons down upon their assailants. Towers and other defenses were sometimes added to the rampart.

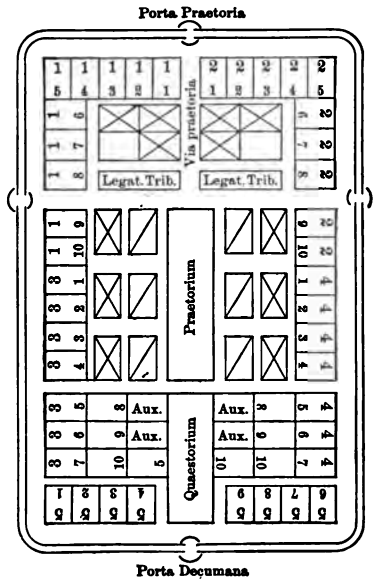


FIG. 5.—Plan of a Roman Camp.

Interior of the camp. 44. In the middle of the camp was a roomy open space, in which were the general's quarters (*praetōrium*), the tribunal from which he addressed his troops, and the altar for sacrificing. The quaestor's quarters were just behind the *praetōrium*. From the *praetōrium* a street ran to the main entrance of the camp (*porta praetōria*) in the middle of the front rampart. Directly opposite this entrance, in the rear wall of the camp, was the *porta decumāna*. Each of the side walls also had an entrance connected by a wide street passing in front of the

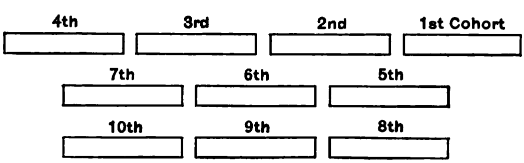
praetōrium. All the troops, both infantry and cavalry, had their regular positions in camp, so that every man could find his own quarters without any confusion.

The winter camp (*hīberna*) was constructed on the same plan, but as it was a permanent home of the soldiers for several months, its fortifications were ordinarily stronger, and thatch-covered huts took the place of tents.

The gates were always securely guarded, and their defense was made easier by the arrangement of the entrance, whereby any one attempting to enter exposed his right side, which was unprotected by the shield.

The march. 45. The day's march usually began at sunrise and was completed about noon. Sixteen or seventeen miles made an ordinary march, but Caesar's army was famous for forced marches (*magna itinera*), of twenty-five miles or more, by which the enemy were often taken completely by surprise. The vanguard (*prīmum agmen*) consisted of cavalry and light infantry. The legions followed at a suitable distance, each legion preceding its own baggage (*impedīmenta*), except in times of danger, when the baggage of the whole army was united. A strong force of infantry brought up the rear (*novissimum agmen*). Occasionally, in the immediate proximity of the enemy and over level ground, the army marched in three parallel columns, and could thus be quickly formed into the triple line of battle (*triplex aciēs*).

The battle. 46. The legion was generally drawn up for battle in three lines (*triplex aciēs*). The number of cohorts in each line varied according to circumstances, but the normal arrangement was probably with four cohorts, side by side, in the first line, and three in each of the other two.



The three maniples of each cohort stood side by side, the second century of each maniple behind the first. If two or more legions were in line, they stood beside each other, perhaps with a slight interval between, but it is unlikely that there was any interval between the cohorts in the first line of a single legion. Cavalry and auxiliaries were generally stationed on the extreme wings of the army.

Occasionally the army was drawn up in a double line (*duplex aciēs*), with five cohorts in each, and more rarely, as at Pharsalus (*B.C.* 3, 89), a fourth line was formed as a special reserve. Other formations were occasionally adopted as circumstances demanded.

The first line began the battle, charging the enemy at full speed. When they came within range, the soldiers hurled their spears upon the enemy's line, and then fought hand to hand with the sword. The men of the second line gradually worked their way into the fight, taking the places of the killed and wounded. As a man became exhausted he fell back, giving way to a fresh man of the second line until rested enough to resume fighting. The third line was held as a reserve to be launched on the enemy at a critical moment or to support the first two lines in any way desired.

The siege. 47. The Romans exercised great ingenuity in taking walled towns. If the fortifications were weak, an assault was tried at once. The walls were cleared of defenders by showers of well-aimed missiles, the ditch round the town was filled with earth and brush, the gates and walls were demolished at the most convenient points, or scaling-ladders were run up, and the capture (*expugnātiō*) of the town was speedily accomplished.

Some towns were so strong in their position that they could be taken only by a blockade (*obsidiō*), which might continue until the besieged were starved into submission. Caesar's investment of Alesia, in 52 B.C., was one of the most remarkable military operations of all time.

If a town was strongly defended, but not inaccessible in loca-

tion, a regular siege (*oppugnātiō*) was begun, with elaborate preparations culminating in an assault. A siege mound (*agger*) of timber and earth was built, starting from a point nearly, or quite, out of range of the enemy's missiles, and rising in height as it approached the wall of the town. The builders were protected by high movable fences and by rows of sheds (*vīneae*) along the sides of the mound. Stronger sheds (*mūsculī*) were used as the work came near the wall. Archers and slingers, and sharpshooters with artillery for hurling stones or shooting darts, also endeavored to prevent the enemy from manning the walls. Sometimes the mound equaled the height of the wall; in this case the invaders rushed along the mound and entered the town without much difficulty. Sometimes it was raised only high enough to admit more easily of using scaling-ladders (*scālae*) or towers (*turrēs*). The towers were huge structures on wheels, built up, story upon story, to overtop the enemy's wall. From them missiles could be hurled into the town, or drawbridges thrown out, on which soldiers passed across to occupy the wall and seize the town. Mines (*cunīculī*) were sometimes dug to give entrance to the town. Whenever a breach had been made in the wall, ranks of men, holding their shields so that they overlapped and formed a tortoise-covering (*testūdō*) above their heads, ran up and tried to force an entrance.

The besieged tried in every way to thwart the assailant. Sometimes the siege mound was undermined or set on fire. The sheds, too, unless they were well protected by strong coverings and green hides, were liable to be destroyed by fire or heavy stones. The implements for demolishing the walls were occasionally caught in nooses and hauled into the city. Sorties were made when possible in the effort to drive the enemy away and to destroy his works.

The fleet. 48. The Romans had no distinct naval service, but the fighting men of a fleet, both officers and privates, were drawn from the legions. The tactics were comparatively simple, consisting mainly of ramming an enemy's vessel with the

sharp metal-covered beak (*rōstrum*) and sinking it, or of running alongside and grappling it while the legionaries sprang on board and engaged in a hand-to-hand combat. Towers were sometimes erected on a ship from which missiles could be sent down on the enemy.

The ships of war (*nāvēs longae*) were about eight times as long as broad. They had only one or two sails, being propelled mainly by rowers, and were capable of high speed. The commonest form was the trireme (*trirēmis*), in which the rowers sat on three levels or banks. The rudders were two large oars, one on each side, at the stern. For carrying troops or supplies, transports (*nāvēs onerāriae*) were used. These were only about four times as long as broad, and were consequently steadier, but far slower, than the ships of war. They were propelled mainly by sails.

A FEW USEFUL BOOKS FOR THE STUDY OF CAESAR

Fowler, W. W. *Julius Caesar.* Heroes of the Nations series, N.Y. and London, 1892. The best account of Caesar's life and influence, popular but scholarly.

Froude, J. A. *Caesar, a Sketch.* N.Y., 1879 and (Harper, cheap edition) 1881. An interesting but partisan history of Roman politics and of Caesar. Unfair towards Cicero.

Trollope, A. *The Commentaries of Caesar.* Edinburgh and London, 1870, Philadelphia, 1875. An account, book by book, of the Gallic and the Civil wars.

Dodge, Col. T. A. *Caesar.* Boston and N.Y., 1892. A history of the art of war among the Romans, with a detailed description of Caesar's campaigns.

Holmes, T. R. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.* London and N.Y., 1899. An excellent narrative of the Gallic War, with abundant discussions of many knotty points.

Napoléon III. *Histoire de Jules César.* Paris and N.Y., 1865–1866; translation, London and N.Y., 1865. To be used with caution. Has a valuable atlas, containing maps of Gaul in sections, and plans of battles.

Stoffel, Col. E. G. H. C. *Histoire de Jules César, Guerre Civile.* Paris, 1887. Continues Napoleon's work.

Heuzey, L. *Les Opérations Militaires de Jules César.* Paris, 1886. A study of Caesar's operations in Macedonia, Illyricum, Epirus, and Thessaly, in the Civil War. Good maps.

Scott, F. J. *Portraitures of Julius Caesar.* London and N.Y., 1903. Has a brief sketch of Caesar's life, followed by a description of all the known coins, busts, and statues which purport to give his likeness. Many plates and cuts.

Baring-Gould, S. *Tragedy of the Caesars.* London, 1892. Vol. I gives an entertaining narrative of Caesar, with the most important busts and statues of Caesar, Pompey, and others.

Boissier, G. *Cicero and his Friends.* N.Y. and London, 1897. Pages 209–302 treat of Caesar's relations with Cicero.

Suetonius. *Lives of the Caesars.* Alexander Thomson's translation, revised by T. Forester. London, 1896. The life of Julius Caesar is one of the most reliable of the ancient sources.

Plutarch. *Lives*, Vol. IV. Clough's translation. Boston, 1881. The life of Caesar is interesting, but not to be depended on where it conflicts with other sources.

Mommsen, T. *History of Rome*. N.Y., 1895. Vols. IV and V have a full and highly laudatory account of Caesar, who is Mommsen's hero.

Holm, A. *History of Greece*. London and N.Y., 1894–1898. Vol. IV, Ch. 28, and especially Note 2, may be read as an antidote to Mommsen.

Oehler, R. *Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern De Bello Gallico*. Leipzig, 1890. Has useful pictures and maps.

Kraner-Dittenberger. *De Bello Gallico*. Berlin, 1890. Includes the eighth book by Hirtius. The best annotated edition for those who can read German.

Kraner-Hoffmann. *De Bello Civili*. Berlin, 1890. Similar in plan to the last-named book.

Benoist et Dosson. *Jules César, Commentaires sur la Guerre des Gaules*. Paris, 1899. Useful for its notes on history, geography, and antiquities.

Meusel, H. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Berlin, 1887–1893. A list of all words in Caesar's writings, including proper names, and stating all the passages in which each word occurs.

Davis, W. S. *A Friend of Caesar*. N.Y., 1900. A novel of the time of the Civil War. Gives a satisfactory picture of Caesar, and will be read with interest and profit.

C. IVLI CAESARIS

BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMVS

1. MAIN DIVISIONS OF GAUL

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur;

pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

2–29. THE HELVETIAN WAR, 58 B.C.

Plots of Orgetorix, a Helvetian noble

The Helvetii plan a migration into Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīllia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere



FIG. 6.—CAESAR : CAPITOLINE

cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant.

Intrigues of Orgetorix with Gallic nobles.

Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Trial and death of Orgetorix.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīllia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārē-

tur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Preparations of the Helvetii for departure

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsum molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allo-

The route through the Roman Province is chosen.

brogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar opposes the Helvetian plans

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī.

The Helvetii ask Caesar's permission to go through the Province.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

An attempted invasion of the Province is repulsed.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīllia passuum XVIIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.



Caesar's Defenses along the Rhone.

The Sequanian route is granted them through the intercession of Dumnorix.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mit-

tunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrīctās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.



FIG. 7.—A Roman Legionary.

Caesar brings more troops from Italy.

10. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs

superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Haedui and others ask Caesar's protection from the Helvetii.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Caesar annihilates one canton of the Helvetii at the Saône.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen

Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

The Helvetii send an embassy to Caesar.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trāns-

īssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

Caesar's terms and Divico's proud reply.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī

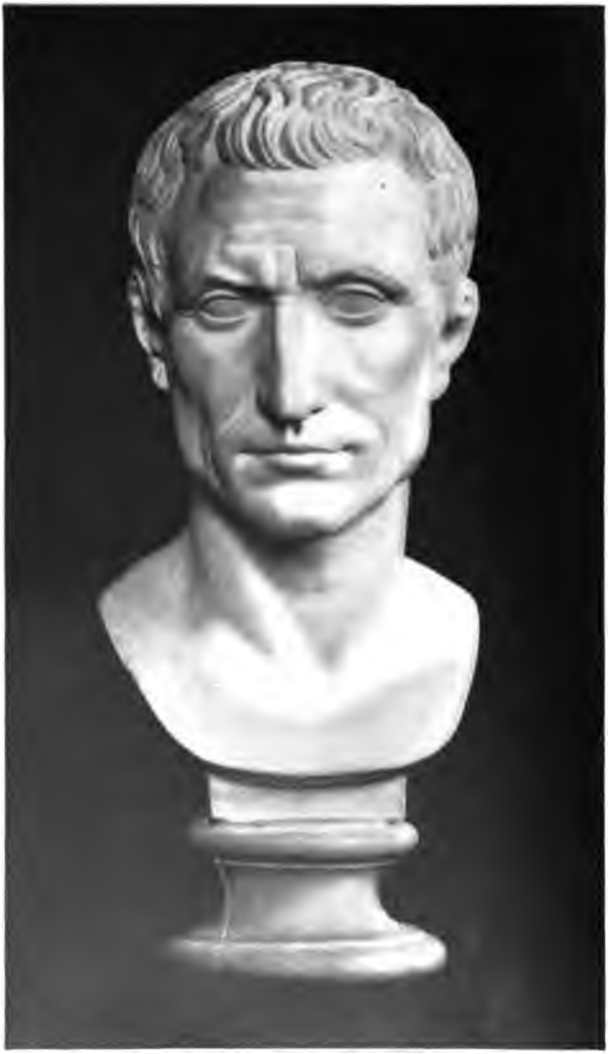


Fig. 8.—CAESAR : CHIARAMONTI

populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

The Helvetii continue their march followed closely by Caesar.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīllium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīllibus passuum interesset.

Hostility to Caesar among the Haedui

The Haedui fail to furnish grain.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem 'vergobretum' appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus explains that there is an anti-Roman faction among the Haedui.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

Dumnorix is the chief of this faction.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex

sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat; dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redempta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus, — nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs

cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Caesar pardons Dumnorix out of regard for his brother Diviciacus.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propter eā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā volun-

tāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Subjugation of the Helvetii

Caesar prepares for battle.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīllia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

A battle is prevented by the mistake of Considius.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī

cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīllia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.



FIG. 9. — **Gallic Armor and Standards.**

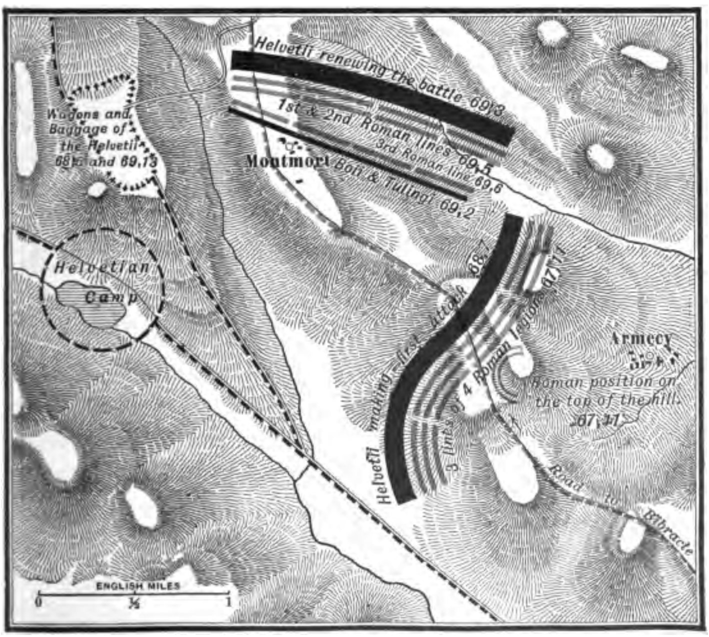
Caesar marches away for supplies and is followed by the Helvetii.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīllibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Hel-

vētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar offers battle. The Helvetii make a brave stand, but are defeated and sue for peace.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō



The Battle with the Helvetii.

duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōnfertissimā aciē reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Caesar, prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrīctīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt.



FIG. 8.—A Legionary in Full Armor.

Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīllibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant

et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīllia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum

essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Six thousand Helvetii, endeavoring to escape to Germany, are put to death.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīllia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse existimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

The rest are ordered to return home.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

Census of the Helvetii before and after the migration.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīllia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīllia XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīllia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīllia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīllium C et X.

LIBER SECVNDVS

15–28. DEFEAT OF THE NERVII, 57 B.C.

Caesar learns that the Nervii and their allies are defiant.

15. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīllia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii plan to attack the Romans before they can pitch camp.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt, atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter CC īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās

petum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs VI quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

Discipline of Caesar's army.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, — scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs



FIG. 11. — Vexillum.

exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Caesar encourages his men. Difficulties of their position.

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspēxit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.



FIG. 12.—Galea.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī

poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The Atrebates and Viromandui are routed, but the Nervii gain the Roman camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Panic of the Roman cavalry and camp-followers. Desertion of the Treveri.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul

eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.



FIG. 13.—A Centurion.

Caesar enters the battle in person.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et

rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod summittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.



FIG. 14. — A Standard-bearer.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Reënforcements from Labienus turn the tide of battle, and the Nervii are almost annihilated.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque

in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

Submission of the Nervian survivors.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīllibus LX vix ad D quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

LIBER TERTIVS

1–6. WAR WITH ALPINE TRIBES, END OF 57 B.C.

Galba is sent into the Alps to open a road for trade. He establishes winter quarters.

1. Cum in Italiam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs

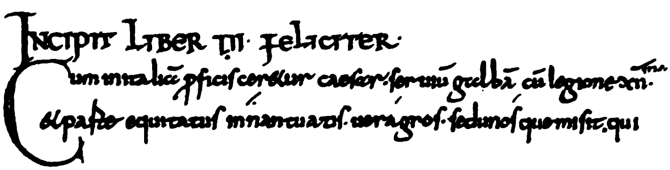


FIG. 15.— Beginning of the Third Book of the Gallic War, from a manuscript of the tenth century. Reduced one half.

locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs

montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

Uprising of the mountain tribes.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque quī impenderent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

A council of the Romans votes to fortify the camp.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter

opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut, impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls make a sudden attack and are all but successful.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs VI continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīli-

tum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Though finally victorious, Galba retreats to the Province.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum mīllibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7–19. REVOLT OF THE AREMORICAN STATES, 56 B.C.

Subjugation of the Veneti

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyri-

cum profectus esset quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est.

Causes of the outbreak. The Veneti take the lead.

Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia — eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā lībertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre, quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Caesar's measures to prevent a spread of the defection.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic

mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas, Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Situation of the Venetan towns.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō, magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Comparison of the Venetan and the Roman ships.

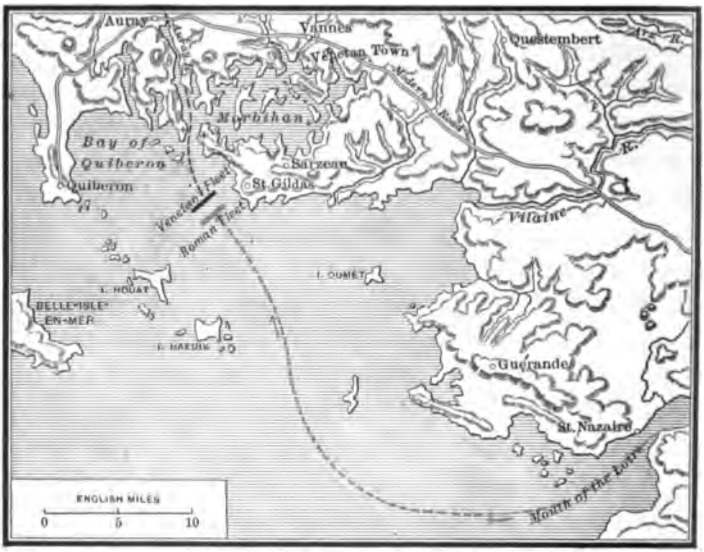
13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae, atque item puppēs, ad magnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīnctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim iīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab

The naval battle. Roman ingenuity and valor overcome the enemy's advantage in ships.

hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent.



The War with the Veneti.

Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae adfīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā

mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

Submission of the Veneti. Their severe punishment.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad

modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Collapse of the Aremorican revolt

Sabinus among the Venelli. He avoids an engagement.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīllium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

By pretending fear he encourages the enemy to an attack.

18. Hāc cōnfirmātā opīniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet, neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur; superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cūnctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab iīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

His victory is followed by the surrender of all the rebellious states.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatī-

gātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt.

Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20–27. THE CAMPAIGN IN AQUITANIA, 56 B.C.

Crassus is attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum est tertia pars Galliae aestimanda, cum intellegeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt; deinde, equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās

in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

He defeats them and captures their town.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cuius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.



FIG. 17. — Vinea.

Adiatunnus and his devoted followers.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī 'solduriōs' appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum iīs fruantur quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est

quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitḗs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus determines to strike another blow before the enemy get too strong.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūnctandum exīstimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs

cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs commeātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī, et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īnfirmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūnctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

The camp of the enemy is taken and three-fourths of them are slain.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam

intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī, aut quid reī gererētur cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīllium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian tribes submit.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

28–29. EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII, 56 B.C.

The enemy take refuge in forests and swamps, whence they harry the Romans.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvā-

rum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et, complūribus interfectīs, longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit; et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.

Caesar is forced by continuous rains to retire. He goes into winter quarters.

LIBER QVARTVS

1–19. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS, 55 B.C.

War with the Usipetes and Tencteri

Supremacy of the Suebi in Germany. Their customs.

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīllia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, — quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, — et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine

hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē sīgnificārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīllia passuum c agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem

gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfirmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, driven from home by the Suebi, cross the Rhine and occupy the Menapian territory.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēncterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque, omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt, atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Caesar, knowing the inconstancy of the Gauls, determines to prevent their alliance with the Germans.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et

viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta respondeant.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent; omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cōgnōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfirmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

Caesar receives a defiant message from the Germans.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre, neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam

Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

The Germans, being ordered to leave Gaul, try to gain time by negotiations.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius inde mīllibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trē-

verōrum citātus fertur, et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, — multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

The Germans, obtaining a truce, treacherously attack and rout the Roman cavalry.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīllibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīllibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent; et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspēxērunt, quōrum erat V mīllium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent quod iī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare

discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

Two brave Aquitanians.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Caesar delays his attack no longer.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī per dolum atque īnsidiās, petītā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum īnfirmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēī māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōri-

busque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus, illōs retinērī iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

The Germans are utterly routed and most of them perish.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex

tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx mīllium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

Caesar crosses the Rhine

Reasons for the expedition.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānspor-

tāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Caesar's bridge over the Rhine.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbā-

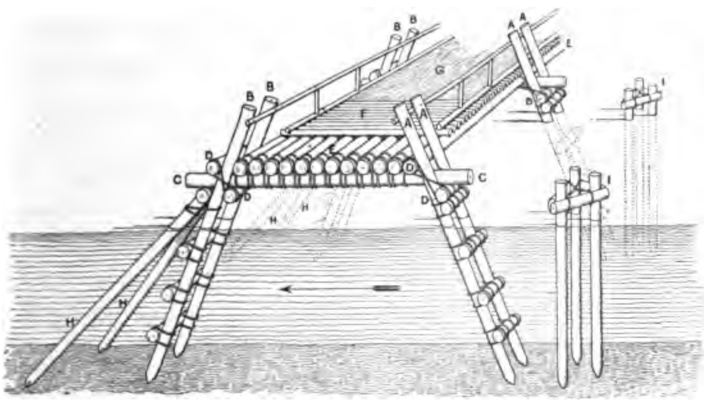


FIG. 18. — Caesar's Bridge over the Rhine.

A, Tigna bina sesquipedalia.	*D*, Fibulae.	*G*, Crates.
B, Tigna iis contraria.	*E*, Derecta materia.	*H*, Sublicae pro ariete subiectae.
C, Trabs bipedalis.	*F*, Longurii.	*I*, Sublicae supra pontem immissae.

tur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipe-

dālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat festūcīsque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

Caesar enters Germany, and after eighteen days returns to Gaul.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā

comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tēncterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibīdem dēcertāre cōnstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20–36. CAESAR'S FIRST EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN, 55 B.C.

The advantages of such a visit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat, et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi

ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

Volusenus is sent to reconnoitre. Envoys come from several states of Britain.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim cōnsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs hortētur-

que ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

The Morini make their peace with Caesar. His arrangements for departure.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

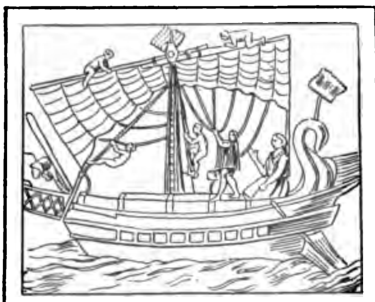


FIG. 19. — A Transport.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīllibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum

Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menap atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī n vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum c eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre ius

The fleet reaches Britain.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā s vit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum pa tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in om bus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspē Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angu mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēl adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōne locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tri nīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnō set et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlit ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae c rem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīı sīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secund datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīllia passuum VII eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstit

The landing is stoutly resisted.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgn praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērum genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cō subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter ma tūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīliti

autem, īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac summovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō."



FIG. 20. — The Eagle-bearer.

Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

After a hard struggle the Romans rout the enemy.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia, mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspēxerat hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons promise to submit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō

factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Caesar's fleet is almost destroyed by a storm. His perilous situation.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suī cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque

armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deërant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons plan to take advantage of his distress.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deësse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

He repairs the fleet.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

Treacherous attack on a Roman foraging party.

32 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Manner of fighting with war chariots.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum,

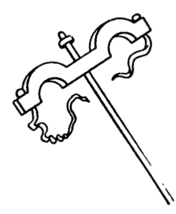


FIG. 20. — Iugum.

stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

The Romans are relieved. Another attack is planned.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

The Britons are defeated and offer their submission. Caesar returns to Gaul.

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō

secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī īnfirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

37–38. SECOND WAR WITH THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII, 55 B.C.

The Morini attack the Romans and are reduced to submission.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīllia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque an hōrīs IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs vulnerib ceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.

The Menapii are again plundered.

Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum ·xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

LIBER QVINTVS

1–23. SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

Preparations on both sides for the campaign

A fleet is prepared during the winter, and in the spring is ordered to assemble at Port Itius.

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet.

* * * * * * *

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā

circiter DC eius generis, cuius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās XXVIII invenit īnstrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātīs mīlitibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīllium passuum XXX ā continentī; huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relinquit.

* * * * * * *

Caesar reaches Britain and lands his troops without opposition.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīllibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspēxit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus, sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō erant vīsae

tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictīs et equitibus ccc quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīllia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius

The first engagement is favorable to the Romans.


FIG. 22.—Testudo.

Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

The fleet, damaged by a storm, is repaired and drawn up on shore.

10. Postrīdiē eius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coörtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs adflīctās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiīs cōgnōverat cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit ut quam plūrimās possit iīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs.

Cassivellaunus is appointed commander of the Britons.

Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī

bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīllia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

Description of Britain

The peoples, resources, and climate of Britain.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab iīs quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īsdem nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex cīvi-



FIG. 23. — Silver denarius, struck 38–36 B.C., enlarged to twice the original size. Obverse: head of Caesar. Reverse: standard, eagle, plow, scepter.

tātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus,

in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Its form, size, and relative position. The neighboring islands.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter mīllia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīllium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīllium passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīllium passuum.

Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, — quae regiō est maritima omnis, — neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne

vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed quī sunt ex iīs nātī eōrum habentur līberī quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

The Britons submit to Caesar

British methods of fighting prove troublesome to the Romans.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus summissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad

huius generis hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

Caesar wins an important victory.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

He crosses the Thames and ravages the country, but the enemy avoid a battle.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās

esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque, Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīllibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effunderet, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

One tribe after another submits to Caesar.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, — cuius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt

ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Cassivellaunus's stronghold is stormed by the Romans.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus. Locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

An attack on the Roman naval camp fails. Cassivellaunus surrenders.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt.



FIG. 24.—CAESAR: PARMA

Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae mīlitēs portāret dēsīderārētur; at ex iīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs conlocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā inītā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

* * * * * * *

44. TWO BRAVE CENTURIONS

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt.

Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

LIBER SEXTVS

11–24. CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND OF THE GERMANS

Customs of the Gauls

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

Two parties exist in every state.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

The heads of these parties were formerly the Haedui and the Sequani, after Caesar's arrival the Haedui and the Remi.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterīus factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterīus Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant.

Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat.

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod iī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two classes of the nobility. The common folk mostly slaves.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs.

The druids are priests and judges for the people.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt.

Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt, eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur; et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Their immunities and teachings.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs exci-

tātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights are all warriors.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs, quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent (administrīsque ad ea sacrificia

druidibus ūtuntur), quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The Gallic gods.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra, hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

Reputed origin. Reckoning of time. Filial respect.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn

numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsum et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hoc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Dowries. Husbands and wives. Funeral customs.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent, et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

Public matters are under the control of the magistrates.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad



FIG. 25.—CAESAR: BERLIN

facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Customs of the Germans

The gods. Social customs.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt.

Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt maximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī statūram, alī vīrēs, nervōsque cōnfirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vīcēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus; cuius reī nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur, magnā corporis parte nūdā.

Tenure of lands.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant poten-

tiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

War. Free-booting. Hospitality.

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omnīumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.

Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

Decadence of the Gauls; rise of the Germans.

24. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam

trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātim adsuēfactī superārī multīsque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

25–28. THE HERCYNIAN FOREST AND ITS FAUNA

Vast extent of the forest.

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō VIIII diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnēs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adīsse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

The reindeer.

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.



FIG. 26 — Reindeer (left) and European Elk.

The elk.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflīctae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō

cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfirmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The wild ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspēxērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent; et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

LIBER SEPTIMVS

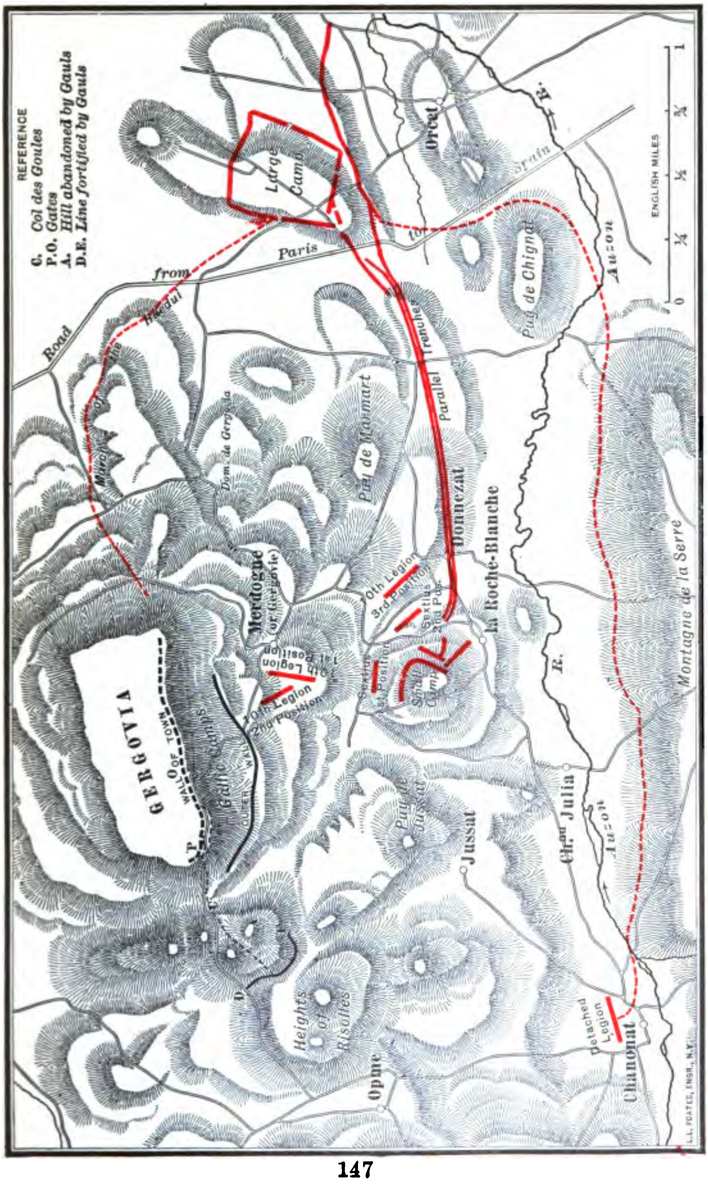
43–53. CAESAR'S DISASTROUS ENGAGEMENT AT GERGOVIA, 52 B.C.

Caesar desires to withdraw from Gergovia without appearance of flight.

43. Ipse maiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inībat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

He learns that the enemy are engrossed in building a new line of defense.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Admīrātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum magnus ad eum cotīdiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre, nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene circumvāllātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur. Ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ā Vercingetorīge ēvocātōs.



THE SIEGE OF GERGOVIA

Diverting the enemy's attention, he plans an attack on their camp.

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce magnum numerum impedīmentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus, equitum speciē ac simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra; neque tantō spatiō, certī quid esset, explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem ūnam eōdem iugō mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōnstituit locō silvīsque occultat. Augētur Gallīs suspīciō, atque omnēs illō ad mūnītiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur.

Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōnspicātus, tēctīs īnsīgnibus suōrum occultātīsque sīgnīs mīlitāribus, rārōs mīlitēs, nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex maiōribus castrīs in minōra trādūcit, lēgātīsque quōs singulīs legiōnibus praefēcerat quid fierī velit ostendit; in prīmīs monet ut contineant mīlitēs nē studiō pugnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit; hoc ūnā celeritāte posse vītārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proelī. Hīs rēbus expositīs sīgnum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

Capture of the camp.

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex

grandibus saxīs vi pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant.

Mīlitēs datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, vulnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

Caesar recalls his men, but they strive to take the town.

47. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptuī canī iussit; legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat, continuō sīgna cōnstitērunt. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs nōn audītō sonō tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur; sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum sibi exīstimābant quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent; neque fīnem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portīsque appropinquārunt.

Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant, et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent; nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae, quem inter

suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārēs atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

The enemy are largely reënforced. Caesar summons reserves.

48. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum magna multitūdō convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quō minus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur terrēret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōnstiterat, ēventum pugnae exspectābat.

Terror of the Romans upon the arrival of the Haedui. Bravery of Petronius.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pugnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs

distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, ac tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod īnsīgne pactum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant.

Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī de mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs quī illum secūtī erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite." Simul in mediōs hostēs inrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum summōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs, "Frūstrā," inquit, "meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite." Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salūtī fuit.

Repulse of the Romans with heavy loss.

51. Nostrī cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi prīmum plānitiem attigērunt, īnfestīs contrā hostēs sīgnīs cōnstitērunt. Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsīderātī.

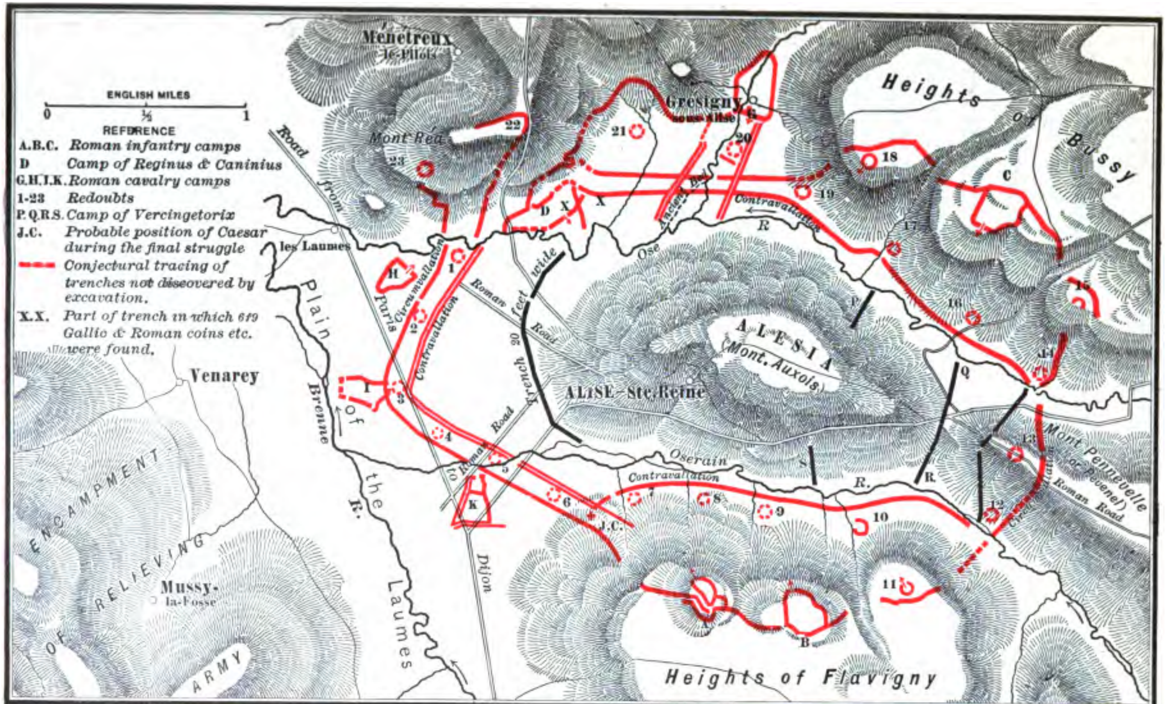
Caesar censures the rashness of his men though praising their valor.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque sīgnō recipiendī datō cōnstitissent, neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, — quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātam victōriam dīmīsisset nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī magnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam adrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī magnitūdinem dēsīderāre.

After offering battle, which is refused by the enemy, Caesar retires into the Haeduan territory.

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem cōnfirmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfirmandōs factum exīstimāns in Haeduōs mōvit castra.

* * * * * * *



THE SIEGE OF ALESIA

69–90. CONFLICT AT ALESIA WITH AN ALLIED ARMY OF ALL THE GAULS, 52 B.C.

Preparations of both sides for a decisive contest

Alesia. Defenses of the Gauls and of the Romans.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīllia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem VI pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīllia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

The Romans win a cavalry engagement.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus III mīllia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs summittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō

vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix summons aid from all Gaul. His straitened circumstances.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīllia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.

Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō conlocāverat, in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Caesar invests Alesia with an elaborate line of works.

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs, Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit. Fossam pedum XX dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem patēret quantum

summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit hōc cōnsiliō (quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur), nē dē imprōvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent.

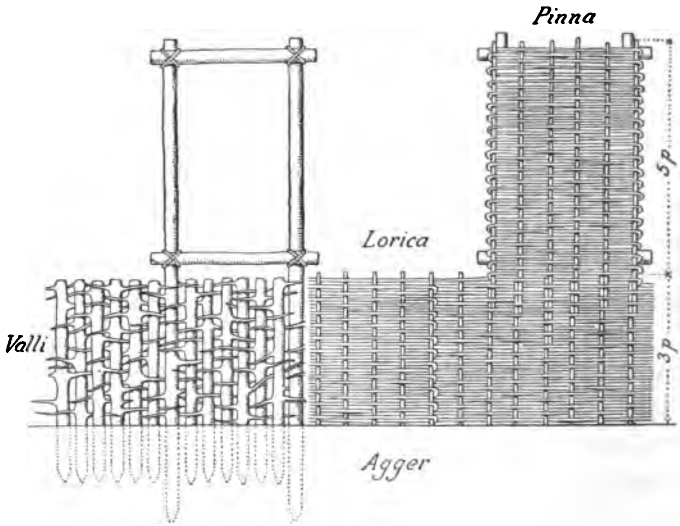


FIG. 27. — The Defenses on Caesar's Rampart before Alesia.

Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine, perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit.

Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum exstrūxit; huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent; et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent.

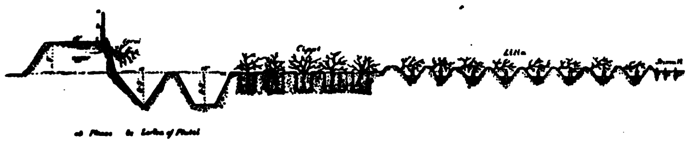


FIG. 28. — Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia.

Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīsīs, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnfimō revīnctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeustī dēmittēbantur, ita ut nōn amplius digitīs IIII ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īnfimō solō

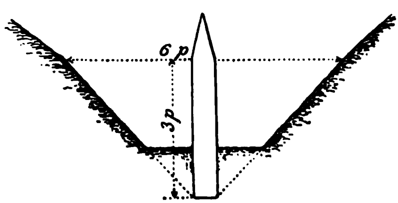


FIG. 29. — Lilium.

vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

Coāctīs equitum mīllibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

The besieged in Alesia are on the verge of starvation. A barbarous proposal for relief is rejected. The Mandubii are forced to leave the town.

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis, "Nihil," inquit, "dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū

prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum mīllibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.

"An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī,

magnāque inlātā calamitāte, fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur īgnōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar, dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs, recipī prohibēbat.

The arrival of the relieving army brings hope to the besieged.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem quam in longitūdinem mīllia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus complent, pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspec-

tus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

The Gauls are completely defeated and Vercingetorix surrenders

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.

The Romans win a sharp battle.

Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra

īnsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls make a vain attack by night on Caesar's works.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs ademptō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs summittēbant.



FIG. 32. — Glans. Inscribed FERI, and on the other side POMP (for *Pompeium*), *i.e.* Strike Pompey.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus ac-

ceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The final struggle. Movements of the army of relief.

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt; locōrum perītos adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīllia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere post montem sē occultāvit, mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

The Romans are attacked on all sides.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus, ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

The desperate nature of the conflict.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium summittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs, et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Caesar goes about encouraging and directing his men in every part of the field.

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī succum-

bant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnītiōnum, loca praerupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

The Gauls are utterly defeated. The army of relief disperses.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, quō īnsīgnī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō, excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arver-

nus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.


FIG. 33. — A General wearing the Cloak.

The besieged army surrenders. Vercingetorix is delivered up to Caesar.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

The Haedui and Arverni are favored. Assignment of the army to winter quarters. Thanksgiving at Rome.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter xx mīllia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.

T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cōgnitīs, Rōmae diērum xx supplicātiō redditur.

C. IVLI CAESARIS

BELLI CIVILIS

LIBER SECVNDVS

23–44. CURIO'S DISASTROUS CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA, AUGUST, 49 B.C.

His first operations are successful

Curio's landing in Africa is unopposed.

23. Īsdem temporibus C. Cūriō in Āfricam profectus ex Siciliā, etiam ab initiō cōpiās P. Attī Vārī dēspiciēns, duās legiōnēs ex IIII quās accēperat ā Caesare, D equitēs trānsportābat, bīduōque et nocte in nāvigātiōne cōnsūmptā appellit ad eum locum quī appellātur Anquillāria. Hīc locus abest ā Clupeā passuum XXII mīllia, habetque nōn incommodam aestāte statiōnem, et duōbus ēminentibus prōmunturiīs continētur. Huius adventum L. Caesar fīlius cum X longīs nāvibus ad Clupeam praestōlāns, quās nāvēs Uticae ex praedōnum bellō subductās P. Attius reficiendās huius bellī causā cūrāverat, veritus nāvium multitūdinem ex altō refūgerat appulsāque ad proximum lītus trirēme cōnstrātā et in lītore relictā pedibus Hadrūmētum profūgerat. Id oppidum C. Cōnsidius Longus ūnīus legiōnis praesidiō tuēbātur. Reliquae Caesaris nāvēs vīsā eius fugā sē Hadrūmētum

recēpērunt. Hunc secūtus Mārcius Rūfus quaestor nāvibus XII, quās praesidiō onerāriīs nāvibus Cūriō ex Siciliā ēdūxerat, postquam in lītore relictam nāvem cōnspēxit, hanc remulcō abstrāxit, ipse ad C. Cūriōnem cum classe rediit.



Curio's Campaign in Africa.

24. Cūriō Mārcium Uticam nāvibus praemittit; ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficīscitur bīduīque iter prōgressus ad flūmen Bagradam pervenit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum cum legiōnibus relinquit; ipse cum equitātū antecēdit ad Castra explōranda Cornēlia, quod is locus peridōneus castrīs habēbātur. Id autem est iugum dērēctum, ēminēns in mare, utrāque ex parte praeruptum atque asperum, sed tamen paulō lēniōre fastīgiō ab eā parte quae ad Uticam vergit; abest dērēctō

Curio sets out for Utica, where the Pompeian force under Varus is encamped. He reconnoitres Camp Cornelia.

itinere ab Uticā paulō amplius passūs mīlle. Sed hōc itinere est fōns, quō mare succēdit, longē ut lātēque is locus restāgnet; quem sī quī vītāre voluerint, sex mīllium circuitū in oppidum perveniunt.

Curio routs a troop of Varus's Numidian allies, and takes possession of 200 transports.

25. Hōc explōrātō locō Cūriō castra Vārī cōnspicit mūrō oppidōque coniūncta ad portam quae appellātur Bellica, admodum mūnīta nātūrā locī, ūnā ex parte ipsō oppidō Uticā, alterā theātrō quod est ante oppidum, substrūctiōnibus eius operis maximīs aditū ad castra difficilī et angustō. Simul animadvertit multa undique portārī atque agī plēnissimīs viīs, quae repentīnī tumultūs timōre ex agrīs in urbem cōnferēbantur. Hūc equitātum mittit ut dīriperet atque habēret locō praedae; eōdemque tempore hīs rēbus subsidiō DC equitēs Numidae ex oppidō peditēsque CCCC mittuntur ā Vārō, quōs auxilī causā rēx Iuba paucīs diēbus ante Uticam mīserat. Huic et paternum hospitium cum Pompēiō et simultās cum Cūriōne intercēdēbat, quod tribūnus plēbis lēgem prōmulgāverat quā lēge rēgnum Iubae pūblicāverat. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō prīmum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre potuērunt, sed interfectīs circiter CXX reliquī sē in castra ad oppidum recēpērunt. Interim adventū longārum nāvium Cūriō prōnūntiārī onerāriīs nāvibus iubet quae stābant ad Uticam numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium habitūrum locō quī nōn ex vēstīgiō ad Castra Cornēlia nāvēs trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā, temporis pūnctō sublātīs ancorīs omnēs Uticam relinquunt et quō imperātum est trānseunt. Quae rēs omnium rērum cōpiā complēvit exercitum.

26. Hīs rēbus gestīs Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit atque ūniversī exercitūs conclāmātiōne imperātor appellātur, posterōque diē Uticam exercitum dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō equitēs ex statiōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ab rēge missa Uticam venīre; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et vēstīgiō temporis prīmum agmen erat in cōnspectū. Novitāte reī Cūriō permōtus praemittit equitēs quī prīmum impetum sustineant ac morentur; ipse celeriter ab opere dēductīs legiōnibus aciem īnstruit. Equitēsque committunt proelium, et, priusquam plānē legiōnēs explicārī et cōnsistere possent, tōta auxilia rēgis impedīta ac perturbāta, quod nūllō ōrdine et sine timōre iter fēcerant, in fugam coniciunt, equitātūque omnī ferē incolumī, quod sē per lītora celeriter in oppidum recipit, magnum peditum numerum interficiunt.

Curio encamps near Utica. A second successful skirmish.

Signs of defection in Curio's army

27. Proximā nocte centuriōnēs Marsī duo ex castrīs Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suīs XXII ad Attium Vārum perfugiunt. Hī, sīve vērē quam habuerant opīniōnem ad eum perferunt, sīve etiam auribus Vārī serviunt (nam quae volumus, ea crēdimus libenter, et quae sentīmus ipsī reliquōs sentīre spērāmus), cōnfirmant quidem certē tōtīus exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse ā Cūriōne, maximēque opus esse in cōnspectum exercitūs venīre et conloquendī dare facultātem. Quā opīniōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque

Two deserters assure Varus that Curio's whole army is disaffected.

ūnā valle nōn magnā interiectā suās uterque cōpiās īnstruit.

An attempt to induce Curio's soldiers to desert is almost successful.

28. Erat in exercitū Vārī Sextus Quīnctīlius Vārus, quem fuisse Corfīnī suprā dēmōnstrātum est. Hīc dīmissus ā Caesare in Āfricam vēnerat, legiōnēsque eās trādūxerat Cūrio quās superiōribus temporibus Corfīniō recēperat Caesar, adeō ut paucīs mūtātīs centuriōnibus īdem ōrdinēs manipulīque cōnstārent. Hanc nactus appellātiōnis causam Quīnctīlius circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque obsecrāre mīlitēs coepit nē prīmam sacrāmentī quod apud Domitium atque apud sē quaestōrem dīxissent memoriam dēpōnerent, neu contrā eōs arma ferrent quī eādem essent ūsī fortūnā eademque in obsidiōne perpessī, neu prō hīs pugnārent ā quibus cum contumēliā perfugae appellārentur. Hūc pauca ad spem largītiōnis addidit, quae ab suā līberālitāte, sī sē atque Attium secūtī essent, exspectāre dēbērent. Hāc habitā ōrātiōne nūllam in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit sīgnificātiō, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās redūcit.

29. At in castrīs Cūriōnis magnus omnium incessit timor animīs; is variīs hominum sermōnibus celeriter augētur. Ūnusquisque enim opīniōnēs fingēbat et ad id quod ab aliō audierat suī aliquid timōris addēbat. Hoc ubi ūnō auctōre ad plūrēs permānāverat atque alius aliī trādiderat, plūrēs auctōrēs eius reī vidēbantur. Erat cīvīle bellum; genus hominum cui quod libēret licēret facere, et sequī quod vellet; legiōnēs eae quae paulō ante apud adversāriōs fuerant (nam recentia Caesaris beneficia imminuerat mānsuētūdō quā cōnferrentur in mūnicipia etiam dīversīs partibus coniūncta); aequē enim ex Marsīs Paelignīsque

veniēbant et quī superiōre nocte perfūgerant et quī in contuberniīs centuriōnēs mīlitēsque remānserant. Nōn nūllī graviōra iactāverant. Sermōnēs mīlitum dubiī dūrius accipiēbantur, nōn nūlla etiam ab iīs quī dīligentiōrēs vidērī volēbant fingēbantur.

Curio holds a council of war, in which opinions are divided between an immediate attack and a retreat.

30. Quibus dē causīs cōnsiliō convocātō dē summā rērum dēlīberāre incipit. Erant sententiae quae cōnandum omnibus modīs castraque Vārī oppugnanda cēnsērent, quod huius modī mīlitum cōnsiliīs ōtium maximē cōnsentāneum esse arbitrārentur; postrēmō praestāre dīcēbant per virtūtem in pugnā bellī fortūnam experīrī quam dēsertōs et circumventōs ab suīs gravissimum supplicium perpetī. Erant quī cēnsērent dē tertiā vigiliā in Castra Cornēlia recēdendum, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interiectō mīlitum mentēs sānārentur, simul, sī quid gravius accidisset, magnā multitūdine nāvium et tūtior et facilior in Siciliam receptus darētur.

Curio speaks against both plans.

31. Cūriō utrumque improbāns cōnsilium, quantum alterī sententiae deësset animī, tantum alterī superesse dīcēbat: hōs turpissimae fugae ratiōnem habēre, illōs etiam inīquō locō dīmicandum putāre. "Quā enim," inquit, "fīdūciā et opere et nātūrā locī mūnītissima castra expugnārī posse cōnfīdimus? At vērō quid prōficimus, sī acceptō magnō dētrīmentō ab oppugnātiōne castrōrum discēdimus? Quasi nōn et fēlīcitās rērum gestārum exercitūs benevolentiam imperātōribus et rēs adversae odia concilient! Castrōrum autem mūtātiō quid habet nisi turpem fugam et dēspērātiōnem omnium rērum et aliēnātiōnem exercitūs? Nam neque pudentēs

suspicārī oportet sibi parum crēdī neque improbōs scīre sēsē timērī, quod illīs licentiam timor augeat noster, hīs suspīciō studia dēminuat. Quod sī iam," inquit, "haec explōrāta habeāmus quae dē exercitūs aliēnātiōne dīcuntur, — quae quidem ego aut omnīnō falsa aut certē minōra opīniōne esse cōnfīdō, — quantō haec dissimulāre et occultāre quam per nōs cōnfirmāre praestet! An nōn, utī corporis vulnera, ita exercitūs incommoda sunt tegenda, nē spem adversāriīs augeāmus? — At etiam ut mediā nocte proficīscāmur addunt; quō maiōrem, crēdō, licentiam habeant quī peccāre cōnentur. Namque huius modī rēs aut pudōre aut metū tenentur, quibus rēbus nox maximē adversāria est. Quārē neque tantī sum animī ut sine spē castra oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī timōris utī spē dēficiam; atque omnia prius experienda arbitror magnāque ex parte iam mē ūnā vōbīscum dē rē iūdicium factūrum cōnfīdō."

Curio addresses his soldiers, and wins back their allegiance.

32. Dīmissō cōnsiliō cōntiōnem advocat mīlitum. Commemorat quō sit eōrum ūsus studiō ad Corfīnium Caesar, ut magnam partem Italiae beneficiō atque auctōritāte eōrum suam fēcerit. "Vōs enim vestrumque factum," inquit, "omnia deinceps mūnicipia sunt secūta, neque sine causā et Caesar amīcissimē dē vōbīs et illī gravissimē iūdicāvērunt: Pompēius enim nūllō proeliō pulsus, vestrī factī praeiūdiciō dēmōtus Italiā excessit; Caesar mē, quem sibi cārissimum habuit, prōvinciās Siciliam atque Āfricam, sine quibus urbem atque Italiam tuērī non potest, vestrae fideī commīsit.

"At sunt quī vōs hortentur ut ā nōbīs dēscīscātis. Quid



Fig. 34.—CAESAR: NAPLES

enim est illīs optātius quam ūnō tempore et nōs circumvenīre et vōs nefāriō scelere obstringere? aut quid īrātī gravius dē vōbīs sancīre possunt quam ut eōs prōdātis quī sē vōbīs omnia dēbēre iūdicant, in eōrum potestātem veniātis quī sē per vōs perīsse exīstimant? An vērō in Hispāniā rēs gestās Caesaris nōn audīstis? duōs pulsōs exercitūs, duōs superātōs ducēs, duās receptās prōvinciās? haec ācta diēbus XL quibus in cōnspectum adversāriōrum vēnerit Caesar? An quī incolumēs resistere nōn potuērunt perditī resistent? Vōs autem incertā victōriā Caesarem secūtī dīiūdicātā iam bellī fortūnā victōs sequēminī, cum vestrī officī praemia percipere dēbeātis? Dēsertōs enim sē ac prōditōs ā vōbīs dīcunt et priōris sacrāmentī mentiōnem faciunt. Vōsne vērō L. Domitium, an vōs Domitius dēseruit? Nōnne extrēmam patī fortūnam parātōs prōiēcit ille? nōn sibi clam vōbīs salūtem fugā petīvit? nōn prōditī per illum Caesaris beneficiō estis cōnservātī? Sacrāmentō quidem vōs tenēre quī potuit, cum prōiectīs fascibus et dēpositō imperiō prīvātus et captus ipse in aliēnam vēnisset potestātem? Fingitur nova religiō, ut, eō neglēctō sacrāmentō quō tenēminī, respiciātis illud quod dēditiōne ducis et capitis dēminūtiōne sublātum est.

"At, crēdō, Caesarem probātis, in mē offenditis: quī dē meīs in vōs meritīs praedicātūrus nōn sum, quae sunt adhūc et meā voluntāte et vestrā exspectātiōne leviōra; sed tamen suī labōris mīlitēs semper ēventū bellī praemia petīvērunt, quī quālis sit futūrus nē vōs quidem dubitātis; dīligentiam quidem nostram aut, quem ad fīnem adhūc rēs prōcessit, fortūnam cūr praeteream? An paenitet vōs, quod salvum atque incolumem exercitum nūllā omnīnō

Fabius ā proximīs mīlitibus circumventus interficitur. At fugientium multitūdine ac turbā portae castrōrum occupantur atque iter impedītur, plūrēsque in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut in fugā intereunt; neque multum āfuit quīn etiam castrīs expellerentur, ac nōn nūllī prōtinus eōdem cursū in oppidum contendērunt. Sed cum locī nātūra et mūnītiō castrōrum aditum prohibēbat, tum quod ad proelium ēgressī Cūriōnis mīlitēs iīs rēbus indigēbant quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant ūsuī. Itaque Cūriō exercitum in castra redūcit suīs omnibus praeter Fabium incolumibus, ex numerō adversāriōrum circiter DC interfectīs ac mīlle vulnerātīs; quī omnēs discessū Cūriōnis multīque praetereā per simulātiōnem vulnerum ex castrīs in oppidum propter timōrem sēsē recipiunt. Quā rē animadversā Vārus et terrōre exercitūs cōgnitō, būcinātōre in castrīs et paucīs ad speciem tabernāculīs relictīs, dē tertiā vigiliā silentiō exercitum in oppidum redūcit.

The townspeople are on the point of surrendering to Curio when word comes that Juba is approaching with strong reënforcements.

36. Posterō diē Cūriō obsidēre Uticam vāllōque circummūnīre īnstituit. Erat in oppidō multitūdō īnsolēns bellī diūturnitāte ōtī, Uticēnsēs prō quibusdam Caesaris in sē beneficiīs illī amīcissimī, conventus quī ex variīs generibus cōnstāret, terror ex superiōribus proeliīs magnus. Itaque dē dēditiōne omnēs iam palam loquēbantur, et cum P. Attiō agēbant nē suā pertināciā omnium fortūnās perturbārī vellet. Haec cum agerentur, nūntiī praemissī ab rēge Iubā vēnērunt, quī illum adesse cum magnīs cōpiīs dīcerent et dē custōdiā ac dēfēnsiōne urbis hortārentur. Quae rēs eōrum perterritōs animōs cōnfirmāvit.

Annihilation of Curio's army by Juba

Curio withdraws to Camp Cornelia and sends to Sicily for reënforcements.

37. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī, sed aliquamdiū fidēs fierī nōn poterat; tantam habēbat suārum rērum fīdūciam. Iamque Caesaris in Hispāniā rēs secundae in Āfricam nūntiīs ac litterīs perferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus sublātus nihil contrā sē rēgem nīsūrum exīstimābat. Sed ubi certīs auctōribus comperit minus v et xx mīllibus longē ab Uticā eius cōpiās abesse, relictīs mūnītiōnibus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc frūmentum comportāre, māteriam cōnferre coepit, statimque in Siciliam mīsit, utī duae legiōnēs reliquusque equitātus ad sē mitterētur. Castra erant ad bellum dūcendum aptissima nātūrā locī et mūnītiōne et maris propinquitāte et aquae et salis cōpiā, cuius magna vīs iam ex proximīs erat salīnīs eō congesta. Nōn māteria multitūdine arborum, nōn frūmentum, cuius erant plēnissimī agrī, dēficere poterat. Itaque omnium suōrum cōnsēnsū Cūriō reliquās cōpiās exspectāre et bellum dūcere parābat.

Supposing the king's main force to have been detained, Curio routs the advance guard under Saburra and pursues with his whole army.

38. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus probātīsque cōnsiliīs ex perfugīs quibusdam oppidānīs audit Iubam revocātum fīnitimō bellō et contrōversiīs Leptitānōrum restitisse in rēgnō, Saburram, eius praefectum, cum mediocribus cōpiīs missum Uticae appropinquāre. Hīs auctōribus temere crēdēns cōnsilium commūtat et proeliō rem committere cōnstituit. Multum ad hanc rem probandam adiuvat adulēscentia, magnitūdō animī, superiōris temporis prōventus, fīdūcia reī bene gerendae. Hīs rēbus impulsus

equitātum omnem prīmā nocte ad castra hostium mittit ad flūmen Bagradam. Quibus praeerat Saburra, dē quō ante erat audītum; sed rēx cum omnibus cōpiīs sequēbātur et VI mīllium passuum intervāllō ā Saburrā cōnsēderat. Equitēs missī noctū iter cōnficiunt, imprūdentēs atque inopīnantēs hostēs adgrediuntur. Numidae enim quādam barbarā cōnsuētūdine nūllīs ōrdinibus passim cōnsēderant. Hōs oppressōs somnō et dispersōs adortī magnum eōrum numerum interficiunt; multī perterritī profugiunt. Quō factō ad Cūriōnem equitēs revertuntur captīvōsque ad eum dēdūcunt.

39. Cūriō cum omnibus cōpiīs quārtā vigiliā exierat cohortibus V castrīs praesidiō relictīs. Prōgressus mīllia passuum VI equitēs convēnit, rem gestam cōgnōvit. Ē captīvīs quaerit quis castrīs ad Bagradam praesit; respondent Saburram. Reliqua studiō itineris cōnficiendī quaerere praetermittit, proximaque respiciēns sīgna, "Vidētisne," inquit, "mīlitēs, captīvōrum ōrātiōnem cum perfugīs convenīre? abesse rēgem, exiguās esse cōpiās missās, quae paucīs equitibus parēs esse nōn potuerint? Proinde ad praedam, ad glōriam properāte, ut iam dē praemiīs vestrīs et dē referendā grātiā cōgitāre incipiāmus." Erant per sē magna quae gesserant equitēs, praesertim cum eōrum exiguus numerus cum tantā multitūdine Numidārum cōnferrētur; haec tamen ab ipsīs īnflātius commemorābantur, ut dē suīs hominēs laudibus libenter praedicant. Multa praetereā spolia praeferēbantur, captī hominēs equīque prōdūcēbantur; ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, hoc omnibus victōriam morārī vidērētur: ita speī Cūriōnis mīlitum studia nōn deērant. Equitēs sequī iubet sēsē iterque

accelerat, ut quam maximē ex fugā perterritōs adorīrī posset. At illī itinere tōtīus noctis cōnfectī subsequī nōn poterant, atque aliī aliō locō resistēbant. Nē haec quidem rēs Cūriōnem ad spem morābātur.

Saburra receives aid from Juba. His plan of battle is to lure the Romans on by feigning retreat.

40. Iuba certior factus ā Saburrā dē nocturnō proeliō II mīllia Hispānōrum et Gallōrum equitum, quōs suae custōdiae causā circum sē habēre cōnsuērat, et peditum eam partem cui maximē cōnfīdēbat Saburrae summittit; ipse cum reliquīs cōpiīs elephantīsque LX lentius subsequitur. Suspicātus ē praemissīs equitibus ipsum adfore Cūriōnem Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque īnstruit atque hīs imperat ut simulātiōne timōris paulātim cēdant ac pedem referant; sēsē, cum opus esset, sīgnum proelī datūrum et quod rem postulāre cōgnōvisset imperātūrum. Cūriō, ad superiōrem spem additā praesentis temporis opīniōne, hostēs fugere arbitrātus cōpiās ex locīs superiōribus in campum dēdūcit.

When the Romans are worn out by a vain pursuit, Saburra finally joins battle.

41. Quibus ex locīs cum longius esset prōgressus, cōnfectō iam labōre exercitū XVI mīllium spatiō cōnstitit. Saburra aciem cōnstituit et circumīre ōrdinēs atque hortārī incipit; sed peditātū dumtaxat procul ad speciem ūtitur, equitēs in aciem immittit. Nōn deēst negōtiō Cūriō suōsque hortātur ut spem omnem in virtūte repōnant. Nē mīlitibus quidem ut dēfessīs neque equitibus ut paucīs et labōre cōnfectīs studium ad pugnandum virtūsque deērat; sed hī erant numerō CC, reliquī in itinere substiterant. Hī quamcumque in partem impetum fēcerant, hostēs locō cēdere cōgēbant, sed neque longius fugientēs prōsequī neque vehe-

mentius equōs incitāre poterant. At equitātus hostium ab utrōque cornū circumīre aciem nostram et āversōs prōterere incipit. Cum cohortēs ex aciē prōcucurrissent, Numidae integrī celeritāte impetum nostrōrum effugiēbant rūrsusque ad ōrdinēs suōs sē recipientēs circumībant et ab aciē exclūdēbant. Sīc neque in locō manēre ōrdinēsque servāre neque prōcurrere et cāsum subīre tūtum vidēbātur. Hostium cōpiae summissīs ab rēge auxiliīs crēbrō augēbantur; nostrōs vīrēs lassitūdine dēficiēbant, simul iī quī vulnera accēperant neque aciē excēdere neque in locum tūtum referrī poterant, quod tōta aciēs equitātū hostium circumdata tenēbātur. Hī dē suā salūte dēspērantēs, ut extrēmō vītae tempore hominēs facere cōnsuērunt, aut suam mortem miserābantur aut parentēs suōs commendābant, sī quōs ex eō perīculō fortūna servāre potuisset. Plēna erant omnia timōris et lūctūs.

Curio and almost his whole army perish.

42. Cūriō ubi perterritīs omnibus neque cohortātiōnēs suās neque precēs audīrī intellegit, ūnam ut in miserīs rēbus spem reliquam salūtis esse arbitrātus proximōs collēs capere ūniversōs atque eō sīgna ferre iubet. Hōs quoque praeoccupat missus ā Saburrā equitātus. Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt, et partim fugientēs ab equitātū interficiuntur, partim integrī prōcumbunt. Hortātur Cūriōnem Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucīs equitibus circumsistēns, ut fugā salūtem petat atque in castra contendat, et sē ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē, āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare fideī commissum accēperit, in eius cōnspectum reversūrum cōnfirmat, atque ācriter proeliāns interficitur. Equitēs ex proeliō

perpaucī sē recipiunt; sed iī quōs ad novissimum agmen equōrum reficiendōrum causā substitisse dēmōnstrātum est, fugā tōtīus exercitūs procul animadversā, sēsē incolumēs in castra cōnferunt. Mīlitēs ad ūnum omnēs interficiuntur.

Panic among Curio's soldiers who had been left to guard the camp.

43. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Mārcius Rūfus quaestor in castrīs relictus ā Cūriōne cohortātur suōs nē animō dēficiant. Illī ōrant atque obsecrant ut in Siciliam nāvibus reportentur. Pollicētur magistrīsque imperat nāvium ut prīmō vespere omnēs scaphās ad lītus appulsās habeant. Sed tantus fuit omnium terror ut aliī adesse cōpiās Iubae dīcerent, aliī cum legiōnibus īnstāre Vārum iamque sē pulverem venientium cernere (quārum rērum nihil omnīnō acciderat), aliī classem hostium celeriter advolātūram suspicārentur. Itaque perterritīs omnibus sibi quisque cōnsulēbat. Quī in classe erant proficīscī properābant. Hōrum fuga nāvium onerāriārum magistrōs incitābat; paucī lēnunculī ad officium imperiumque conveniēbant. Sed tanta erat complētīs lītoribus contentiō quī potissimum ex magnō numerō cōnscenderent, ut multitūdine atque onere nōn nūllī dēprimerentur, reliquī ob timōrem propius adīre tardārentur.

A few escape to Sicily, the rest fall into the hands of Juba.

44. Quibus rēbus accidit ut paucī mīlitēs patrēsque familiae, quī aut grātiā aut misericordiā valērent aut ad nāvēs adnāre possent, receptī in Siciliam incolumēs pervenīrent. Reliquae cōpiae missīs ad Vārum noctū lēgātōrum numerō centuriōnibus sēsē eī dēdidērunt. Quārum cohortium mīlitēs posterō diē ante oppidum Iuba cōnspicātus, suam esse praedicāns praedam, magnam partem eōrum interficī iussit, paucōs relictōs in rēgnum praemīsit, cum Vārus suam fidem ab eō

laedī quererētur neque resistere audēret. Ipse equō in oppidum invectus prōsequentibus complūribus senātōribus, quō in numerō erat Ser. Sulpicius et Licinius Damasippus, quae fierī vellet Uticae cōnstituit atque imperāvit, diēbusque post paucīs sē in rēgnum cum omnibus cōpiīs recēpit.

LIBER TERTIVS

1–5. PREPARATIONS FOR THE CAMPAIGN IN THE EAST, 49 B.C.

Caesar at Rome and Brundisium in December

Caesar is elected consul for 48 B.C. Measures for the relief both of debtors and of creditors, and also of men who had been unjustly convicted of bribery.

1. Dictātōre habente comitia Caesare cōnsulēs creantur Iūlius Caesar et P. Servīlius; is enim erat annus quō per lēgēs eī cōnsulem fierī licēret. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs, cum fidēs tōtā Italiā esset angustior neque crēditae pecūniae solverentur, cōnstituit ut arbitrī darentur; per eōs fierent aestimātiōnēs possessiōnum et rērum, quantī quaeque eārum ante bellum fuisset, atque eae crēditōribus trāderentur. Hoc et ad timōrem novārum tabulārum tollendum minuendumve, quī ferē bella et cīvīlēs dissēnsiōnēs sequī cōnsuēvit, et ad dēbitōrum tuendam exīstimātiōnem esse aptissimum exīstimāvit. Itemque praetōribus tribūnīsque plēbis rogātiōnēs ad populum ferentibus, nōn nūllōs ambitūs Pompēiā lēge damnātōs illīs temporibus quibus in urbe praesidia legiōnum Pompēius habuerat (quae iūdicia aliīs audientibus iūdicibus, aliīs sententiam ferentibus singulīs diēbus erant perfecta) in integrum restituit, quī sē illī initiō cīvīlis bellī obtulerant, sī suā operā in bellō ūtī vellet — pro-

inde aestimāns ac sī ūsus esset, quoniam suī fēcissent potestātem. Statuerat enim prius hōs iūdiciō populī dēbēre restituī quam suō beneficiō vidērī receptōs, nē aut ingrātus in referendā grātiā aut adrogāns in praeripiendō populī beneficiō vidērētur.

Caesar goes to Brundisium and prepares to cross over to Greece. Size and condition of his army.

2. Hīs rēbus et fēriīs Latīnīs comitiīsque omnibus perficiendīs XI diēs tribuit dictātūrāque sē abdicat et ab urbe proficīscitur Brundisiumque pervenit. Eō legiōnēs XII, equitātum omnem venīre iusserat. Sed tantum nāvium repperit ut angustē LXX cohortēs legiōnāriōrum mīlitum, DC equitēs trānsportārī possent. Hoc ūnum Caesarī ad celeritātem cōnficiendī bellī dēfuit. Atque eae ipsae cōpiae hōc īnfrequentiōrēs impōnuntur, quod multī Gallicīs tot bellīs dēfēcerant, longumque iter ex Hispāniā magnum numerum dētinuerat, et gravis autumnus in Āpūliā circumque Brundisium ex salūberrimīs Galliae et Hispāniae regiōnibus omnem exercitum valētūdine temptāverat.

Pompey's preparations during the year

Pompey's supplies of ships and money.

3. Pompēius annuum spatium ad comparandās cōpiās nactus, quod vacuum ā bellō atque ab hoste ōtiōsum fuerat, magnam ex Asiā Cycladibusque īnsulīs, Corcȳrā, Athēnīs, Pontō, Bīthȳniā, Syriā, Ciliciā, Phoenīcē, Aegyptō classem coēgerat, magnam omnibus locīs aedificandam cūrāverat; magnam imperātam Asiae, Syriae rēgibusque omnibus et dynastīs et tetrarchīs et līberīs Achāiae populīs pecūniam exēgerat, magnam societātēs eārum prōvinciārum quās ipse obtinēbat sibi numerāre coēgerat.

Enumeration of his land forces.

4. Legiōnēs cōnfēcerat cīvium Rōmānōrum VIIII: V ex Italiā, quās trādūxerat; ūnam ex Ciliciā veterānam, quam factam ex duābus gemellam appellābat; ūnam ex Crētā et Macedoniā ex veterānīs mīlitibus quī dīmissī ā superiōribus imperātōribus in hīs prōvinciīs cōnsēderant; duās ex Asiā, quās Lentulus cōnsul cōnscrībendās cūrāverat. Praetereā magnum numerum ex Thessaliā, Boeōtiā, Achāiā Ēpīrōque supplēmentī nōmine in legiōnēs distribuerat; hīs Antōniānōs mīlitēs admiscuerat. Praeter hās exspectābat cum Scīpiōne ex Syriā legiōnēs II. Sagittāriōs Crētā, Lacedaemone, ex Pontō atque Syriā reliquīsque cīvitātibus III mīllium numerō habēbat, funditōrum cohortēs sescēnāriās II, equitum VII mīllia. Ex quibus DC Gallōs Dēiotarus addūxerat, D Ariobarzānēs ex Cappadociā; ad eundem numerum Cotys ex Thrāciā dederat et Sadalam fīlium mīserat; ex Macedoniā CC erant, quibus Rhascypolis praeerat, excellentī virtūte; D Alexandrīā, Gallōs Germānōsque, quōs ibi A. Gabīnius praesidī causā apud rēgem Ptolomaeum relīquerat, Pompēius fīlius cum classe addūxerat; DCCC ex servīs suīs pāstōrumque suōrum numerō coēgerat; CCC Tarcondārius Castor et Domnilāus ex Gallograeciā dederant (hōrum alter ūnā vēnerat, alter fīlium mīserat); CC ex Syriā ā Commāgēnō Antiochō, cui magna Pompēius praemia tribuerat, missī erant, in hīs plērīque hippotoxotae. Hūc Dardanōs, Bessōs partim mercēnnāriōs, partim imperiō aut grātiā comparātōs, item Macedonēs, Thessalōs ac reliquārum gentium et cīvitātum adiēcerat, atque eum quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus numerum explēverat.

His grain supplies. Disposition of his forces for the winter. Officers of his fleet.

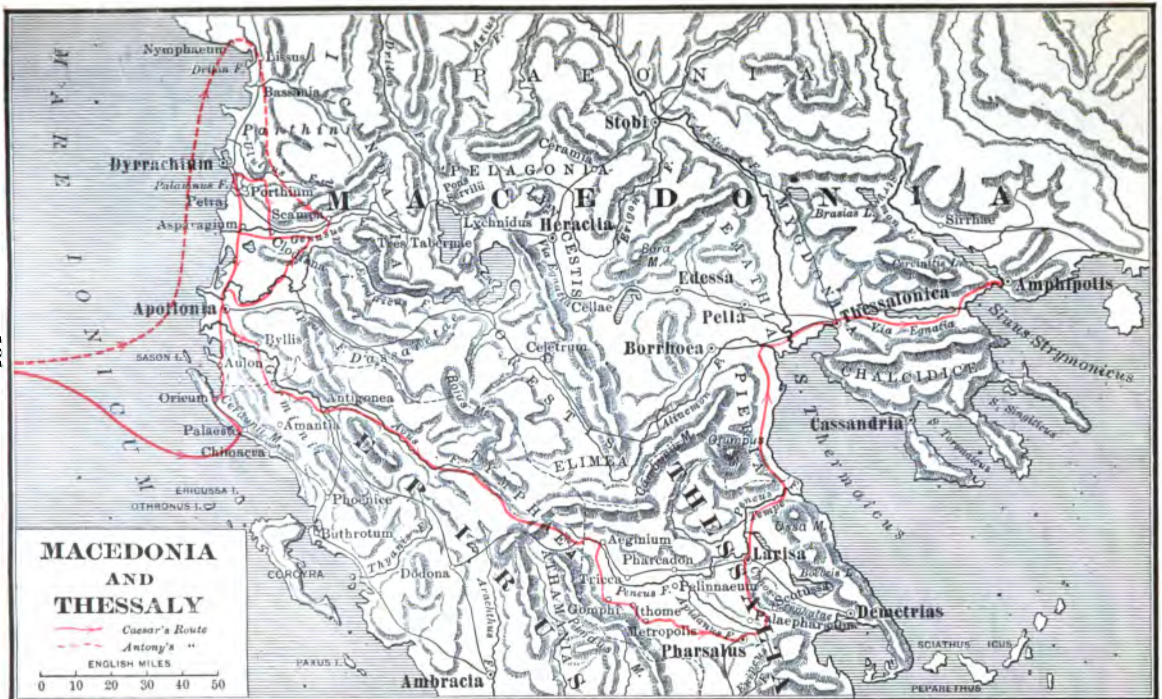
5. Frūmentī vim maximam ex Thessaliā, Asiā, Aegyptō, Crētā, Cȳrēnīs reliquīsque regiōnibus comparāverat. Hiemāre Dyrrachī, Apollōniae omnibusque oppidīs maritimīs cōnstituerat, ut mare trānsīre Caesarem prohibēret; eiusque reī causā omnī ōrā maritimā classem disposuerat. Praeerat Aegyptiīs nāvibus Pompēius fīlius, Asiāticīs D. Laelius et C. Triārius, Syriacīs C. Cassius, Rhodiīs C. Mārcellus cum C. Copōniō, Liburnicae atque Achāicae classī Scrībōnius Libō et M. Octāvius. Tōtī tamen officiō maritimō M. Bibulus praepositus cūncta administrābat; ad hunc summa imperī respiciēbat.

6–30. THE EASTERN CAMPAIGN UNTIL ANTONY'S UNION WITH CAESAR, JAN.–APR., 48 B.C.

Caesar's unexpected arrival in Epirus

Caesar crosses with seven legions from Brundisium to Palaeste, January 4–5.

6. Caesar ut Brundisium vēnit, cōntiōnātus apud mīlitēs, quoniam prope ad fīnem labōrum ac perīculōrum esset perventum, aequō animō mancipia atque impedīmenta in Italiā relinquerent, ipsī expedītī nāvēs cōnscenderent, quō maior numerus mīlitum posset impōnī, omniaque ex victōriā et ex suā līberālitāte spērārent, conclāmantibus omnibus imperāret quod vellet, quodcumque imperāvisset sē aequō animō esse factūrōs, II. Nōn. Iān. nāvēs solvit. Impositae, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, legiōnēs VII. Postrīdiē terram attigit Cerauniōrum saxa inter et alia loca perīculōsa quiētam nactus statiōnem; et portūs omnēs timēns, quod tenērī ab adversāriīs arbitrābantur, ad eum locum quī appellābātur



MACEDONIA AND THESSALY

Palaestē, omnibus navibus ad ūnam incolumibus, mīlitēs exposuit.

His landing is unopposed.

7. Erant Ōricī Lucrētius Vespillō et Minucius Rūfus cum Asiāticīs nāvibus XVIII, quibus iussū D. Laelī praeerant, M. Bibulus cum nāvibus CX Corcȳrae. Sed neque illī sibi cōnfīsī ex portū prōdīre sunt ausī, cum Caesar omnīnō XII nāvēs longās praesidiō dūxisset, in quibus erant cōnstrātae IIII, neque Bibulus impedītīs nāvibus dispersīsque rēmigibus satis mātūrē occurrit, quod prius ad continentem vīsus est Caesar quam dē eius adventū fāma omnīnō in eās regiōnēs perferrētur.

Caesar's ships, while returning for the rest of his troops, are attacked and part of them burned by Bibulus, who then stations a guard along the whole coast.

8. Expositīs mīlitibus nāvēs eādem nocte Brundisium ā Caesare remittuntur, ut reliquae legiōnēs equitātusque trānsportārī possent. Huic officiō praepositus erat Fūfius Calēnus lēgātus, quī celeritātem in trānsportandīs legiōnibus adhibēret. Sed sērius ā terrā prōvectae nāvēs neque ūsae nocturnā aurā in redeundō offendērunt. Bibulus enim Corcȳrae certior factus dē adventū Caesaris, spērāns alicui sē partī onustārum nāvium occurrere posse, inānibus occurrit et nactus circiter XXX in eās indīligentiae suae atque errōris īrācundiam ērūpit omnēsque incendit eōdemque ignī nautās dominōsque nāvium interfēcit, magnitūdine poenae reliquōs dēterrērī spērāns. Hōc cōnfectō negōtiō ā Sāsōnis ad Curicī portum statiōnēs lītoraque omnia longē lātēque classibus occupāvit, custōdiīsque dīligentius dispositīs ipse gravissimā hieme in nāvibus excubāns neque ūllum labōrem aut mūnus dēspiciēns, aequē subsīdēns et exspectāns sī in Caesaris congressum cōpiārum venīre posset. . . .

* * * * * * *



FIG. 35.—CAESAR: BRITISH MUSEUM

First military operations of Caesar and Pompey. Caesar's efforts for peace negotiations

Caesar had commissioned Vibullius in the previous summer to bear proposals for peace to Pompey.

10. Dēmōnstrāvimus L. Vibullium Rūfum, Pompēī praefectum, bis in potestātem pervēnisse Caesaris atque ab eō esse dīmissum, semel ad Corfīnium, iterum in Hispāniā. Hunc prō suīs beneficiīs Caesar idōneum iūdicāverat quem cum mandātīs ad Cn. Pompēium mitteret, eundemque apud Cn. Pompēium auctōritātem habēre intellegēbat. Erat autem haec summa mandātōrum: Dēbēre utrumque pertināciae fīnem facere et ab armīs discēdere neque amplius fortūnam perīclitārī. Satis esse magna utrimque incommoda accepta, quae prō disciplīnā et praeceptīs habēre possent ut reliquōs cāsūs timērent: illum āmissā Siciliā et Sardiniā duābusque Hispāniīs et cohortibus in Italiā atque Hispāniā cīvium Rōmānōrum centum atque xxx; sē morte Cūriōnis et dētrīmentō Āfricānī exercitūs, Antōnī mīlitumque dēditiōne ad Curictam. Proinde cīvibus ac reī pūblicae parcerent, cum quantum in bellō fortūna posset iam ipsī incommodīs suīs satis essent documentō. Hoc ūnum esse tempus dē pāce agendī, dum sibi uterque cōnfīderet et parēs ambō vidērentur; sī vērō alterī paulum modo tribuisset fortūna, nōn esse ūsūrum condiciōnibus pācis eum quī superior vidērētur, neque fore aequā parte contentum quī sē omnia habitūrum cōnfīderet. Condiciōnēs pācis, quoniam anteā convenīre nōn potuissent, Rōmae ab senātū et ā populō petī dēbēre. Id interesse reī pūblicae et ipsīs placēre oportēre. Sī uterque in cōntiōne statim iūrāvisset sē trīduō proximō exercitum

dīmissūrum, dēpositīs armīs auxiliīsque, quibus nunc cōnfīderent, necessāriō populī senātūsque iūdiciō fore utrumque contentum. Haec quō facilius Pompēiō probārī possent, omnēs suās terrestrēs cōpiās urbiumque praesidia dēductūrum.

Vibullius, who had been waiting at Corcyra for Pompey's return from eastern Macedonia, upon hearing of Caesar's arrival in Epirus, at once hastens to Pompey with the news.

11. Vibullius expositus Corcȳrae nōn minus necessārium esse exīstimāvit dē repentīnō adventū Caesaris Pompēium fierī certiōrem, utī ad id cōnsilium capere posset, quam dē mandātīs agī; atque ideō continuātō noctem ac diem itinere atque omnibus hospitiīs mūtātīs ad celeritātem iūmentīs ad Pompēium contendit, ut adesse Caesarem nūntiāret. Pompēius erat eō tempore in Candāviā iterque ex Macedoniā in hīberna Apollōniam Dyrrachiumque habēbat. Sed rē novā perturbātus maiōribus itineribus Apollōniam petere coepit, nē Caesar ōrae maritimae cīvitātēs occupāret. At ille expositīs mīlitibus eōdem diē Ōricum proficīscitur.

Caesar marches to Oricum, which is surrendered without fighting.

Quō cum vēnisset, L. Torquātus, quī iussū Pompēī oppidō praeerat praesidiumque ibi Parthīnōrum habēbat, cōnātus portīs clausīs oppidum dēfendere, cum Graecōs mūrum ascendere atque arma capere iubēret, illī autem sē contrā imperium populī Rōmānī pugnātūrōs negārent, oppidānī etiam suā sponte Caesarem recipere cōnārentur, dēspērātīs omnibus auxiliīs portās aperuit et sē atque oppidum Caesarī dēdidit, incolumisque ab eō cōnservātus est.

Apollonia and other towns are surrendered to Caesar.

12. Receptō Caesar Ōricō nūllā interpositā morā Apollōniam proficīscitur. Eius adventū audītō L. Staberius, quī ibi praeerat, aquam comportāre in arcem atque eam mūnīre ob-

sidēsque ab Apollōniātibus exigere coepit. Illī vērō datūrōs sē negāre neque portās cōnsulī praeclūsūrōs, neque sibi iūdicium sūmptūrōs contrā atque omnis Italia populusque Rōmānus iūdicāvisset. Quōrum cōgnitā voluntāte clam profugit Apollōniā Staberius. Illī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt oppidōque recipiunt. Hōs sequuntur Byllidēnsēs et Amantīnī et reliquae fīnitimae cīvitātēs tōtaque Ēpīros, et lēgātīs ad Caesarem missīs quae imperāret factūrōs pollicentur.

Pompey cuts Caesar off from Dyrrachium. Both armies encamp for the winter on opposite banks of the Apsus.

13. At Pompēius cōgnitīs hīs rēbus quae erant Ōricī atque Apollōniae gestae, Dyrrachiō timēns diurnīs eō nocturnīsque itineribus contendit. Simul Caesar appropinquāre dīcēbātur, tantusque terror incidit eius exercitūs, quod properāns noctem diēī coniūnxerat neque iter intermīserat, ut paene omnēs ex Ēpīrō fīnitimīsque regiōnibus sīgna relinquerent, complūrēs arma prōicerent ac fugae simile iter vidērētur. Sed cum prope Dyrrachium Pompēius cōnstitisset castraque mētārī iussisset, perterritō etiam tum exercitū prīnceps Labiēnus prōcēdit iūratque sē eum nōn dēsertūrum eundemque cāsum subitūrum, quemcumque eī fortūna tribuisset. Hoc idem reliquī iūrant lēgātī; hōs tribūnī mīlitum centuriōnēsque sequuntur, atque idem omnis exercitus iūrat. Caesar, praeceptō itinere ad Dyrrachium, fīnem properandī facit castraque ad flūmen Apsum pōnit in fīnibus Apollōniātium, castellīs vīcīsque bene meritae cīvitātis ut esset praesidiō; ibique reliquārum ex Italiā legiōnum adventum exspectāre et sub pellibus hiemāre cōnstituit. Hoc idem Pompēius fēcit et trāns flūmen Apsum positīs castrīs eō cōpiās omnēs auxiliaque condūxit.

Caesar warns his fleet at Brundisium that the enemy are patrolling the whole coast.

14. Calēnus legiōnibus equitibusque Brundisī in nāvēs impositīs, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, quantum nāvium facultātem habēbat, nāvēs solvit, paulumque ā portū prōgressus litterās ā Caesare accēpit, quibus est certior factus portūs lītoraque omnia classibus adversāriōrum tenērī. Quō cōgnitō sē in portum recipit nāvēsque omnēs revocat. Ūna ex hīs, quae persevērāvit neque imperiō Calēnī obtemperāvit, quod erat sine mīlitibus prīvātōque cōnsiliō administrābātur, dēlāta Ōricum atque ā Bibulo expugnāta est; quī dē servīs līberīsque omnibus ad impūberēs supplicium sūmit et ad ūnum interficit. Ita in exiguō tempore magnōque cāsū tōtīus exercitūs salūs cōnstitit.

Privation on Pompey's ships. Libo and Bibulus request an interview with Caesar.

15. Bibulus, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, erat cum classe ad Ōricum, et sīcutī marī portibusque Caesarem prohibēbat, ita ipse omnī terrā eārum regiōnum prohibēbātur: praesidiīs enim dispositīs omnia lītora ā Caesare tenēbantur, neque lignandī atque aquandī neque nāvēs ad terram dēligandī potestās fīēbat. Erat rēs in magnā difficultāte, summīsque angustiīs rērum necessāriārum premēbantur, adeō ut cōgerentur sīcutī reliquum commeātum ita ligna atque aquam Corcȳrā nāvibus onerāriīs supportāre; atque etiam ūnō tempore accidit ut, difficiliōribus ūsī tempestātibus, ex pellibus quibus erant tēctae nāvēs nocturnum excipere rōrem cōgerentur. Quās tamen difficultātēs patienter atque aequō animō ferēbant, neque sibi nūdanda lītora et relinquendōs portūs exīstimābant.

Sed cum essent in quibus dēmōnstrāvī angustiīs, ac sē Libō cum Bibulō coniūnxisset, loquuntur ambō ex nāvibus

cum M'. Acīliō et Stātiō Murcō lēgātīs, quōrum alter oppidīs maritimīs, alter praesidiīs terrestribus praeerat, velle sē dē maximīs rēbus cum Caesare loquī, sī sibi eius reī facultās dētur. Hūc addunt pauca reī cōnfirmandae causā, ut dē compositiōne āctūrī vidērentur. Interim postulant ut sint indūtiae, atque ab iīs impetrant. Magnum enim quod adferēbant vidēbātur, et Caesarem idem summē sciēbant cupere, et prōfectum aliquid Vibullī mandātīs exīstimābātur.

Libo proposes that negotiations for peace be opened with Pompey, and that meanwhile a truce be granted.

16. Caesar eō tempore cum legiōne ūnā profectus ad recipiendās ulteriōrēs cīvitātēs et rem frūmentāriam expediendam, quā angustā ūtēbātur, erat ad Būthrōtum, oppositum Corcȳrae. Ibi certior ab Acīliō et Murcō per litterās factus dē postulātīs Libōnis et Bibulī legiōnem relinquit, ipse Ōricum revertitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ēvocantur illī ad conloquium. Prōdit Libō atque excūsat Bibulum, quod is īrācundiā summā erat inimīcitiāsque habēbat etiam prīvātās cum Caesare ex aedīlitāte et praetūrā conceptās: ob eam causam conloquium vītāsse, nē rēs maximae speī maximaeque ūtilitātis eius īrācundiā impedīrentur. Suam summam esse ac fuisse semper voluntātem ut compōnerētur atque ab armīs discēderētur, sed potestātem eius reī nūllam habēre, proptereā quod dē cōnsilī sententiā summam bellī rērumque omnium Pompēiō permīserint. Sed postulātīs Caesaris cōgnitīs missūrōs ad Pompēium, atque illum reliqua per sē āctūrum hortantibus ipsīs. Intereā manērent indūtiae dum ab illō redīrī posset, nēve alter alterī nocēret. Hūc addit pauca dē causā et dē cōpiīs auxiliīsque suīs.

Caesar drops the negotiations, seeing that they are only a pretext for the sake of relieving the fleet.

17. Quibus dē rēbus neque tum respondendum Caesar exīstimāvit, neque nunc ut memoriae prōdantur satis causae putāmus. Postulābat Caesar ut lēgātōs sibi ad Pompēium sine perīculō mittere licēret, idque ipsī fore reciperent aut acceptōs per sē ad eum perdūcerent. Quod ad indūtiās pertinēret, sīc bellī ratiōnem esse dīvīsam ut illī classe nāvēs auxiliaque sua impedīrent, ipse ut aquā terrāque eōs prohibēret. Sī hoc sibi remittī vellent, remitterent ipsī dē maritimīs custōdiīs; sī illud tenērent, sē quoque id retentūrum. Nihilō minus tamen agī posse dē compositiōne, ut haec nōn remitterentur, neque hanc rem illī esse impedīmentō. Libō neque lēgātōs Caesaris recipere neque perīculum praestāre eōrum, sed tōtam rem ad Pompēium reicere ūnum, īnstāre dē indūtiīs vehementissimēque contendere. Quem ubi Caesar intellēxit praesentis perīculī atque inopiae vītandae causā omnem ōrātiōnem īnstituisse neque ūllam spem aut condiciōnem pācis adferre, ad reliquam cōgitātiōnem bellī sēsē recēpit.

Death of Bibulus on shipboard. Pompey's rejection of the peace proposals made through Vibullius.

18. Bibulus multōs diēs terrā prohibitus et graviōre morbō ex frīgore ac labōre implicitus, cum neque cūrārī posset neque susceptum officium dēserere vellet, vim morbī sustinēre nōn potuit. Eō mortuō ad nēminem ūnum summa imperī rediit, sed sēparātim suam quisque classem ad arbitrium suum administrābat. Vibullius sēdātō tumultū quem repentīnus adventus Caesaris concitāverat, ubi prīmum ē rē vīsum est, adhibitō Libōne et L. Luccēiō et Theophane, quibuscum commūnicāre dē maximīs rēbus Pompēius cōnsuēverat, dē mandātīs

Caesaris agere īnstituit. Quem ingressum in sermōnem Pompēius interpellāvit et loquī plūra prohibuit. "Quid mihi," inquit, "aut vītā aut cīvitāte opus est quam beneficiō Caesaris habēre vidēbor? Cuius reī opīniō tollī nōn poterit, cum in Italiam, ex quā profectus sum, reductus exīstimābor." Bellō perfectō ab iīs Caesar haec facta cōgnōvit quī sermōnī interfuērunt. Cōnātus tamen nihilō minus est aliīs ratiōnibus per conloquia dē pāce agere.

Another effort of Caesar for peace is defeated by Labienus.

19. Inter bīna castra Pompēī atque Caesaris ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus, crēbraque inter sē conloquia mīlitēs habēbant, neque ūllum interim tēlum per pactiōnēs loquentium trāiciēbātur. Mittit P. Vatīnium lēgātum ad rīpam ipsam flūminis, quī ea quae maximē ad pācem pertinēre vidērentur ageret. Is crēbrō magnā vōce prōnūntiāvit licēretne cīvibus ad cīvēs tūtō lēgātōs mittere, quod etiam fugitīvīs ab saltū Pȳrēnaeō praedōnibusque licuisset, praesertim cum id agerent, nē cīvēs cum cīvibus armīs dēcertārent? Multa suppliciter locūtus est, ut dē suā atque omnium salūte dēbēbat, silentiōque ab utrīsque mīlitibus audītus. Respōnsum est ab alterā parte A. Varrōnem profitērī sē alterō diē ad conloquium ventūrum atque ūnā vīsūrum quem ad modum tūtō lēgātī venīre et quae vellent expōnere possent; certumque eī reī tempus cōnstituitur. Quō cum īsset posterō diē Vatīnius, magna utrimque multitūdō convēnit; magnaque erat exspectātiō eius reī, atque omnium animī intentī esse ad pācem vidēbantur. Quā ex frequentiā T. Labiēnus prōdit; is omissō Varrōne obloquī dē pāce atque altercārī cum Vatīniō incipit. Quōrum mediam certātiōnem interrumpunt subitō undique tēla

missa; quae ille obtēctus armīs mīlitum vītāvit: vulnerantur tamen complūres, in hīs Cornēlius Balbus, M. Plōtius, L. Tīburtius, centuriōnēs mīlitēsque nōn nūllī. Tum Labiēnus: "Dēsinite ergō dē compositiōne loquī; nam nōbīs nisi Caesaris capite relātō pāx esse nūlla potest."

*   *   *   *   *   *   *

Libo blockades Caesar's fleet at Brundisium, and destroys a few of his ships.

23. Libō, profectus ab Ōricō cum classe cui praeerat nāvium L, Brundisium vēnit īnsulamque quae contrā portum Brundisīnum est occupāvit, quod praestāre arbitrābātur ūnum locum, quā necessārius nostrīs erat ēgressus, quam omnia lītora ac portūs custōdiā classis tuērī. Hīc repentīnō adventū nāvēs onerāriās quāsdam nactus incendit et ūnam frūmentō onustam abdūxit magnumque nostrīs terrōrem iniēcit, et noctū mīlitibus ac sagittāriīs in terrā expositīs praesidium equitum dēiēcit, et adeō locī opportūnitāte prōfēcit utī ad Pompēium litterās mitteret, nāvēs reliquās, sī vellet, subdūcī et reficī iubēret; suā classe auxilia sēsē Caesaris prohibitūrum.

Antony compels Libo to give up the blockade.

24. Erat eō tempore Antōnius Brundisī. Is virtūte mīlitum cōnfīsus scaphās nāvium magnārum circiter LX crātibus pluteīsque contēxit eōque mīlitēs dēlēctōs imposuit atque eās in lītore plūribus locīs sēparātim disposuit nāvēsque trirēmēs duās, quās Brundisī faciendās cūrāverat, per causam exercendōrum rēmigum ad faucēs portūs prōdīre iussit. Hās cum audācius prōgressās Libō vīdisset, spērāns intercipī posse quadrirēmēs V ad eās mīsit. Quae cum nāvibus nostrīs appropinquāssent, nostrī interiōrem in portum refu-

giēbant, illī studiō incitātī incautius sequēbantur. Iam ex omnibus partibus subitō Antōniānae scaphae sīgnō datō sē in hostēs incitāvērunt, prīmōque impetū ūnam ex hīs quadrirēmibus cum rēmigibus dēfēnsōribusque suīs cēpērunt, reliquās turpiter refugere coēgērunt. Ad hoc dētrīmentum accessit ut equitibus per ōram maritimam ab Antōniō dispositīs aquārī prohibērentur. Quā necessitāte et īgnōminiā permōtus Libō discessit ā Brundisiō obsessiōnemque nostrōrum omīsit.

Antony joins Caesar

Caesar gives strict orders for his fleet at Brundisium to cross at the first opportunity.

25. Multī iam mēnsēs erant et hiems praecipitāverat, neque Brundisiō nāvēs legiōnēsque ad Caesarem veniēbant. Ac nōn nūllae eius reī praetermissae occāsiōnēs Caesarī vidēbantur, quod certī saepe flāverant ventī, quibus necessāriō committendum exīstimābat. Quantōque eius amplius prōcesserat temporis, tantō erant alacriōrēs ad custōdiās quī classibus praeerant, maiōremque fīdūciam prohibendī habēbant; et crēbrīs Pompēī litterīs īnstīgābantur, quoniam prīmō venientem Caesarem nōn prohibuissent, at reliquōs eius exitūs impedīrent; dūriusque cotīdiē tempus ad trānsportandum lēniōribus ventīs exspectābant. Quibus rēbus permōtus Caesar Brundisium ad suōs sevērius scrīpsit, nactī idōneum ventum nē occāsiōnem nāvigandī dīmitterent, sīve ad lītora Apollōniātium sīve ad Labeātium cursum dērigere atque eō nāvēs ēicere possent. Haec ā custōdiīs classium loca maximē vacābant, quae sē longius ā portibus committere nōn audērent.

26. Illī adhibitā audāciā et virtūte, administrantibus M. Antōniō et Fūfiō Calēnō, multum ipsīs mīlitibus hortanti-

The crossing is safely made in spite of the enemy's pursuit.

bus neque ūllum perīculum prō salūte Caesaris recūsantibus, nactī austrum nāvēs solvunt atque alterō diē Apollōniam praetervehuntur. Quī cum essent ex continentī vīsī, Cōpōnius, quī Dyrrachī classī Rhodiae praeerat, nāvēs ex portū ēdūcit; et cum iam nostrīs remissiōre ventō appropinquāsset, īdem auster incrēbruit nostrīsque praesidiō fuit. Neque vērō ille ob eam causam cōnātū dēsistēbat, sed labōre et persevērantiā nautārum sē vim tempestātis superāre posse spērābat, praetervectōsque Dyrrachium magnā vī ventī nihilō sētius sequēbātur. Nostrī ūsī fortūnae beneficiō tamen impetum classis timēbant, sī forte ventus remīsisset; et nactī portum quī appellātur Nymphaeum, ultrā Lissum mīllia passuum III, eō nāvēs intrōdūxērunt (quī portus ab Āfricō tegēbātur, ab austrō nōn ērat tūtus), leviusque tempestātis quam classis perīculum aestimāvērunt. Quō simul atque intrō est itum, incrēdibilī fēlīcitāte auster, quī per bīduum flāverat, in Āfricum sē vertit.

The pursuers are wrecked by a storm.

27. Hīc subitam commūtātiōnem fortūnae vidēre licuit: quī modo sibi timuerant, hōs tūtissimus portus recipiēbat; quī nostrīs nāvibus perīculum intulerant dē suō timēre cōgēbantur; itaque tempore commūtātō tempestās et nostrōs tēxit et nāvēs Rhodiās adflīxit, ut ad ūnam omnēs, cōnstrātae numerō XVI, ēlīderentur et naufragiō interīrent, et ex magnō rēmigum prōpugnātōrumque numerō pars ad scopulōs adlīsa interficerētur, pars ab nostrīs dētraherētur; quōs omnēs cōnservātōs Caesar domum remīsit.

28. Nostrae nāvēs duae tardius cursū cōnfectō in noctem coniectae, cum īgnōrārent quem locum reliquae cēpis-

Fortunes of two of Caesar's ships which had been belated.

sent, contrā Lissum in ancorīs cōnstitērunt. Hās scaphīs minōribusque nāvigiīs complūribus suīs missīs Otācilius Crassus, quī Lissī praeerat, expugnāre parābat; simul dē dēditiōne eōrum agēbat et incolumitātem dēditīs pollicēbātur. Hārum altera nāvium ccxx ē lēgiōne tīrōnum sustulerat, altera ex veterānā paulō minus cc. Hīc cōgnōscī licuit quantum esset hominibus praesidī in animī firmitūdine. Tīrōnēs enim multitūdine nāvium perterritī et salō nauseāque cōnfectī, iūre iūrandō acceptō nihil iīs nocitūrōs hostēs, sē Otāciliō dēdidērunt; quī omnēs ad eum prōductī contrā religiōnem iūris iūrandī in eius cōnspectū crūdēlissimē interficiuntur. At veterānae legiōnis mīlitēs, item cōnflīctātī et tempestātis et sentīnae vitiīs, neque ex prīstinā virtūte remittendum aliquid putāvērunt, et tractandīs condiciōnibus et simulātiōne dēditiōnis extractō prīmō noctis tempore, gubernātōrem in terram nāvem ēicere cōgunt; ipsī idōneum locum nactī reliquam noctis partem ibi cōnfēcērunt, et lūce prīmā missīs ad eōs ab Otāciliō equitibus quī eam partem ōrae maritimae adservābant, circiter cccc, quīque eōs armātī ex praesidiō secūtī sunt, sē dēfendērunt et nōn nūllīs eōrum interfectīs incolumēs sē ad nostrōs recēpērunt.

Antony is welcomed at Lissus. He sends ships to Brundisium for the rest of his army, and notifies Caesar of his landing.

29. Quō factō conventus cīvium Rōmānōrum quī Lissum obtinēbant, quod oppidum iīs anteā Caesar attribuerat mūniendumque cūrāverat, Antōnium recēpit omnibusque rēbus iūvit. Otācilius sibi timēns ex oppidō fūgit et ad Pompēium pervēnit. Expositīs omnibus cōpiīs Antōnius, quārum erat summa veterānārum trium legiōnum ūnīusque tīrōnum et equitum dccc, plērās-

que nāvēs in Italiam remittit ad reliquōs mīlitēs equitēsque trānsportandōs; pontōnēs, quod est genus nāvium



FIG. 36. — Coins of Antony.

Gallicārum, Lissī relinquit hōc cōnsiliō, ut, sī forte Pompēius vacuam exīstimāns Italiam eō trāiēcisset exercitum, — quae opīniō erat ēdita in vulgus, — aliquam Caesar ad īnsequendum facultātem habēret, nūntiōsque ad eum celeriter mittit quibus regiōnibus exercitum exposuisset et quid mīlitum trānsvēxisset.

Caesar and Pompey both march towards Antony. Union of Caesar and Antony. Pompey encamps near Asparagium.

30. Haec eōdem ferē tempore Caesar atque Pompēius cōgnōscunt. Nam praetervectās Apollōniam Dyrrachiumque nāvēs vīderant ipsī, ut iter secundō austrō dērēxerant, sed quō essent inde dēlātae prīmīs diēbus īgnōrābant. Cōgnitāque rē dīversa sibi ambō cōnsilia capiunt: Caesar, ut quam prīmum sē cum Antōniō coniungeret, Pompēius, ut venientī in itinere sē oppōneret, sī imprūdentem ex īnsidiīs adorīrī posset; eōdemque diē uterque eōrum ex castrīs statīvīs ā flūmine Apsō exercitum ēdūcunt, Pompēius clam et noctū, Caesar palam atque interdiū. Sed Caesarī circuitū maiōre iter erat longius adversō flūmine ut vadō trānsīre posset; Pompēius expedītō itinere, quod flūmen eī trānseundum nōn erat, magnīs itineribus ad Antōnium contendit. Atque

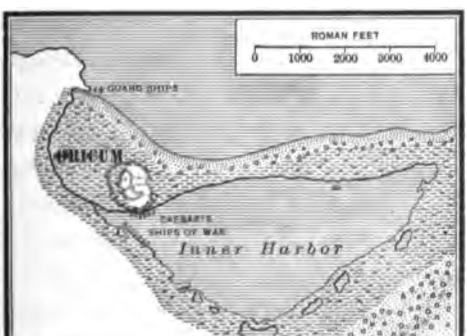
ubi eum appropinquāre cōgnōvit, idōneum locum nactus, ibi cōpiās conlocāvit suōsque omnēs castrīs continuit ignēsque fierī prohibuit, quō occultior esset eius adventus. Haec ad Antōnium statim per Graecōs dēferuntur. Ille missīs ad Caesarem nūntiīs eum diem sēsē castrīs tenuit; alterō diē ad eum pervēnit Caesar. Cuius adventū cōgnitō Pompēius, nē duōbus circumclūderētur exercitibus, ex eō locō discēdit omnibusque cōpiīs ad Asparāgium Dyrrachīnōrum pervenit atque ibi idōneō locō castra pōnit.

* * * * * * *

39–40. DESTRUCTION OF CAESAR'S FLEET, APRIL, 48 B.C.

39. Dēductīs ōrā maritimā praesidiīs Caesar, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, III cohortēs Ōricī oppidī tuendī causā relīquit, īsdemque custōdiam nāvium longārum trādidit quās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Huic officiō oppidōque M'. Acīlius lēgātus praeerat. Is nāvēs nostrās interiōrem in portum post op-

Caesar's ships of war are carefully guarded in the harbor of Oricum.



Oricum.

pidum redūxit et ad terram dēligāvit, faucibusque portūs nāvem onerāriam summersam obiēcit et huic alteram coniūnxit; super quam turrem effectam ad ipsum introitum portūs opposuit et mīlitibus complēvit tuendamque ad omnēs repentīnōs cāsūs trādidit.

Pompey's son destroys these ships, and also the transports at Lissus.

40. Quibus cōgnitīs rēbus Cn. Pompēius fīlius, quī classī Aegyptiae praeerat, ad Ōricum vēnit, summersamque nāvem remulcō multīsque contendēns fūnibus abdūxit, atque alteram nāvem, quae erat ad custōdiam ab Acīliō posita, plūribus adgressus nāvibus, in quibus ad lībram fēcerat turrēs, ut ex superiōre pugnāns locō integrōsque semper dēfatīgātīs summittēns et reliquīs partibus simul ex terrā scālīs et classe moenia oppidī temptāns, utī adversāriōrum manūs dīdūceret, labōre et multitūdine tēlōrum nostrōs vīcit, dēiectīsque dēfēnsōribus, quī omnēs scaphīs exceptī refūgerant, eam nāvem expugnāvit. Eōdemque tempore ex alterā parte mōle tenuī nātūrālī obiectā, quae paene īnsulam oppidum effēcerat, IIII birēmēs subiectīs scutulīs impulsās vectibus in interiōrem portum trādūxit. Ita ex utrāque parte nāvēs longās adgressus quae erant dēligātae ad terram atque inānēs, IIII ex hīs abdūxit, reliquās incendit. Hōc cōnfectō negōtiō D. Laelium ab Asiāticā classe abductum relinquit, quī commeātūs Byllide atque Amantiā importārī in oppidum prohibeat. Ipse Lissum profectus nāvēs onerāriās XXX ā M. Antōniō relictās intrā portum adgressus omnēs incendit; Lissum expugnāre cōnātus, dēfendentibus cīvibus Rōmānīs quī eius conventus erant mīlitibusque quōs praesidī causā mīserat Caesar, trīduum morātus paucīs in oppugnātiōne āmissīs rē īnfectā inde discessit.

41–72. CAESAR'S UNSUCCESSFUL BLOCKADE OF POMPEY NEAR DYRRACHIUM, APRIL–JULY, 48 B.C.

Circumstances leading to the blockade

Caesar is unable to draw Pompey into an engagement, but succeeds in cutting him off from his base of supplies at Dyrrachium.

41. Caesar postquam Pompēium ad Asparāgium esse cōgnōvit, eōdem cum exercitū profectus expugnātō in itinere oppidō Parthīnōrum, in quō Pompēius praesidium habēbat, tertiō diē ad Pompēium pervēnit iūxtāque eum castra posuit, et postrīdiē ēductīs omnibus cōpiīs aciē īnstrūctā dēcernendī potestātem Pompēiō fēcit. Ubi illum suīs locīs sē tenēre animadvertit, reductō in castra exercitū aliud sibi cōnsilium capiendum exīstimāvit. Itaque posterō diē omnibus cōpiīs magnō circuitū difficilī angustōque itinere Dyrrachium profectus est, spērāns Pompēium aut Dyrrachium compellī aut ab eō interclūdī posse, quod omnem commeātum tōtumque bellī apparātum eō contulisset; ut accidit. Pompēius enim prīmō īgnōrāns eius cōnsilium, quod dīversō ab eā regiōne itinere profectum vidēbat, angustiīs reī frūmentāriae compulsum discessisse exīstimābat; posteā per explōrātōrēs certior factus castra mōvit, breviōre itinere sē occurrere eī posse spērāns. Quod fore suspicātus Caesar, mīlitēs adhortātus ut aequō animō labōrem ferrent, parvam partem noctis itinere intermissō māne Dyrrachium vēnit, cum prīmum agmen Pompēī procul cernerētur, atque ibi castra posuit.

42. Pompēius interclūsus Dyrrachiō, ubi prōpositum tenēre nōn potuit, secundō ūsus cōnsiliō ēditō locō, quī appellātur Petra aditumque habet nāvibus mediocrem

coāctīs aut ex centōnibus aut ex coriīs tunicās aut tegimenta fēcerant, quibus tēla vītārent.

* * * * * * *

Suffering in Caesar's army from lack of food. The brave spirit of his men.

47. Erat nova et inūsitāta bellī ratiō, cum tantō castellōrum numerō tantōque spatiō et tantīs mūnītiōnibus et tōtō obsidiōnis genere, tum etiam reliquīs rēbus. Nam quīcumque alterum obsidēre cōnātī sunt, perculsōs atque īnfirmōs hostēs aut proeliō superātōs aut aliquā offēnsiōne permōtōs continuērunt, cum ipsī numerō equitum mīlitumque praestārent; causa autem obsidiōnis haec ferē esse cōnsuērat, ut frūmentō hostēs prohibērent. At tum integrās atque incolumēs cōpiās Caesar īnferiōre mīlitum numerō continēbat, cum illī omnium rērum cōpiā abundārent. Cotīdiē enim magnus undique nāvium numerus conveniēbat, quae commeātum supportārent, neque ūllus flāre ventus poterat quīn aliquā ex parte secundum cursum habērent; ipse autem cōnsūmptīs omnibus longē lātēque frūmentīs summīs erat in angustiīs. Sed tamen haec singulārī patientiā mīlitēs ferēbant. Recordābantur enim eadem sē superiōre annō in Hispāniā perpessōs labōre et patientiā maximum bellum cōnfēcisse; meminerant ad Alesiam magnam sē inopiam perpessōs, multō etiam maiōrem ad Avaricum, maximārum sē gentium victōrēs discessisse. Nōn illī hordeum quīn darētur, nōn legūmina recūsābant; pecus vērō, cuius reī summa erat ex Ēpīrō cōpia, magnō in honōre habēbant.

A substitute for bread.

48. Est etiam genus rādīcis inventum ab iīs quī convaluerant ex vulneribus, quod appellātur chara; quod admixtum lacte multum inopiam levābat. Id

ad similitūdinem pānis efficiēbant. Eius erat magna cōpia. Ex hōc effectōs pānēs, cum in conloquiīs Pompēiānī famem nostrīs obiectārent, vulgō in eōs iaciēbant, ut spem eōrum minuerent.

The hardships of Pompey's situation.

49. Iamque frūmenta mātūrēscere incipiēbant, atque ipsa spēs inopiam sustentābat, quod celeriter sē habitūrōs cōpiam cōnfīdēbant; crēbraeque vōcēs mīlitum in circulīs conloquiīsque audiēbantur prius sē cortice ex arboribus vīctūrōs quam Pompēium ē manibus dīmissūrōs. Libenter etiam ex perfugīs cōgnōscēbant equōs eōrum tolerārī, reliqua vērō iūmenta interīsse; ūtī autem ipsōs valētūdine nōn bonā, cum angustiīs locī et odōre taetrō ex multitūdine cadāverum et cotīdiānīs labōribus īnsuētōs operum, tum aquae summā inopiā adfectōs. Omnia enim flūmina atque omnēs rīvōs quī ad mare pertinēbant Caesar aut āverterat aut magnīs operibus obstrūxerat; atque ut erant loca montuōsa et aspera, angustās vallium faucēs sublicīs in terram dēmissīs praesaepserat terramque adgesserat, ut aquam continērent. Ita illī necessāriō loca sequī dēmissa ac palūstria et puteōs fodere cōgēbantur, atque hunc labōrem ad cotīdiānam operam addēbant; quī tamen fontēs ā quibusdam praesidiīs aberant longius et celeriter aestibus exārēscēbant. At Caesaris exercitus optimā valētūdine ūtēbātur, cumque aquae cōpiā tum commeātūs omnī genere praeter frūmentum abundābat; cui reī cotīdiē melius occurrere tempus maiōremque spem mātūritāte frūmentōrum prōpōnī vidēbant.



FIG. 37.—Coins of Pompey.

Attacks by night on Caesar's lines.

50. In novō genere bellī novae ab utrīsque bellandī ratiōnēs reperiēbantur. Illī cum animadvertissent ex ignibus noctū cohortēs nostrās ad mūnītiōnēs excubāre, silentiō adgressī ūniversī intrā mūnītiōnem sagittās coniciēbant et sē cōnfestim ad suōs recipiēbant. Quibus rēbus nostrī ūsū doctī haec reperiēbant remedia, ut aliō locō ignēs facerent, aliō excubārent.

* * * * * * *

An attack on one of Caesar's forts is repulsed by Sulla. Pompey's new camp.

51. Interim certior factus P. Sulla, quem discēdēns castrīs praefēcerat Caesar, auxiliō cohortī vēnit cum legiōnibus duābus; cuius adventū facile sunt repulsī Pompēiānī. Neque vērō cōnspectum aut impetum nostrōrum tulērunt, prīmīsque dēiectīs reliquī sē vertērunt et locō cessērunt. Sed īnsequentēs nostrōs nē longius prōgrederentur Sulla revocāvit. At plērīque exīstimant, sī ācrius īnsequī voluisset, bellum eō diē potuisse fīnīrī. Cuius cōnsilium nōn reprehendendum vidētur. Aliae enim sunt lēgātī partēs atque imperātōris; alter omnia agere ad praescrīptum, alter līberē ad summam rērum cōnsulere dēbet. Sulla ā Caesare in castrīs relictus, līberātīs suīs, hōc fuit contentus, neque proeliō dēcertāre voluit, — quae rēs tamen fortasse aliquem reciperet cāsum, — nē imperātōriās sibi partēs sūmpsisse vidērētur. Pompēiānīs magnam rēs ad receptum difficultātem adferēbat. Nam ex inīquō prōgressī locō in summō cōnstiterant; sī per dēclīve sēsē reciperent, nostrōs ex superiōre īnsequentēs locō verēbantur; neque multum ad sōlis occāsum temporis supererat, spē enim cōnficiendī negōtī prope in noctem rem dūxerant. Ita necessāriō atque ex tempore captō cōnsiliō Pompēius tumulum



FIG. 38.—CAESAR : BESANÇON

quendam occupāvit quī tantum aberat ā nostrō castellō ut tēlum tormentumve missum adigī nōn posset. Hōc cōnsēdit locō atque eum commūnīvit, omnēsque ibi cōpiās continuit.

52. Eōdem tempore duōbus praetereā locīs pugnātum est — nam plūra castella Pompēius pariter distinendae manūs causā temptāverat, nē ex proximīs praesidiīs succurrī posset —: ūnō locō Volcācius Tullus impetum legiōnis sustinuit cohortibus tribus atque eam locō dēpulit; alterō Germānī mūnītiōnēs nostrās ingressī complūribus interfectīs sēsē ad suōs incolumēs recēpērunt.

Two other forts are attacked at the same time.

53. Ita ūnō diē VI proeliīs factīs, tribus ad Dyrrachium, tribus ad mūnītiōnēs, cum hōrum omnium ratiō habērētur, ad duo mīllia numerō ex Pompēiānīs cecidisse reperiēbāmus, ēvocātōs centuriōnēsque complūrēs (in eō fuit numerō Valerius Flaccus L. fīlius, eius quī praetor Asiam obtinuerat); sīgnaque sunt mīlitāria VI relāta. Nostrī nōn amplius XX omnibus sunt proeliīs dēsīderātī. Sed in castellō illō nēmō fuit omnīnō mīlitum quīn vulnerārētur, quattuorque ex octāvā cohorte centuriōnēs oculōs āmīsērunt; et cum labōris suī perīculīque testimōnium adferre vellent mīlitēs, mīllia sagittārum circiter XXX in castellum coniecta Caesarī renūntiāvērunt, scūtōque ad eum relātō Scaevae centuriōnis inventa sunt in eō forāmina CXXX. Quem Caesar, ut erat dē sē meritus et dē rē pūblicā, dōnātum mīllibus CC conlaudātumque ab octāvīs ōrdinibus ad prīmipīlum sē trādūcere prōnūntiāvit (eius enim operā castellum magnā ex parte cōnservātum esse cōnstābat) cohortemque prae-

The losses of one day. Caesar's rewards to his soldiers.

tereā duplicī stīpendiō, frūmentō, veste, cibāriīs mīlitāribusque dōnīs amplissimē dōnāvit.

Pompey returns to his first camp at Petra hill.

54. Pompēius noctū magnīs additīs mūnītiōnibus reliquīs diēbus turrēs exstrūxit, et in altitūdinem pedum xv ēlātīs operibus vīneīs omnem partem castrōrum obtēxit; et quīnque intermissīs diēbus noctem subnūbilam nactus, obstrūctīs omnibus castrōrum portīs et ad impediendum obiectīs vectibus, tertiā initā vigiliā silentiō exercitum ēdūxit et sē in antīquās mūnītiōnēs recēpit.

Caesar seeks a battle in vain.

55. Omnibus deinceps diēbus Caesar exercitum in aciem aequum in locum prōdūxit, sī Pompēius proeliō dēcertāre vellet, ut paene castrīs Pompēī legiōnēs subiceret; tantumque ā vāllō eius prīma aciēs aberat, utī nē tēla tormentave adigī possent. Pompēius autem ut fāmam opīniōnemque hominum tenēret, sīc prō castrīs exercitum cōnstituēbat ut tertia aciēs vāllum contingeret, omnis quidem īnstrūctus exercitus tēlīs ex vāllō abiectīs prōtegī posset.

* * * * * * *

Pompey breaks the line of blockade

Through the failure of fodder, Pompey is driven to attempt to break the blockade.

58. Caesar quō facilius equitātum Pompēiānum ad Dyrrachium continēret et pābulātiōne prohibēret, aditūs duōs, quōs esse angustōs dēmōnstrāvimus, magnīs operibus praemūnīvit castellaque hīs locīs posuit. Pompēius ubi nihil prōficī equitātū cōgnōvit, paucīs intermissīs diēbus rūrsus eum nāvibus ad sē intrā mūnītiōnēs recēpit. Erat summa inopia pābulī, adeō ut foliīs ex arboribus strīctīs et tenerīs

harundinum rādīcibus contūsīs equōs alerent. Frūmenta enim quae fuerant intrā mūnītiōnēs sata cōnsūmpserant; cōgēbantur Corcȳrā atque Acarnāniā longō interiectō nāvigātiōnis spatiō pābulum supportāre, quodque erat eius reī minor cōpia, hordeō adaugēre atque hīs ratiōnibus equitātum tolerāre. Sed postquam nōn modo hordeum pābulumque omnibus locīs herbaeque dēsectae, sed etiam frōns ex arboribus dēficiēbat, corruptīs equīs māciē cōnandum sibi aliquid Pompēius dē ēruptiōne exīstimāvit.

Two Gauls holding positions of trust in Caesar's army prove dishonest.

59. Erant apud Caesarem ex equitum numerō Allobrogēs II frātrēs, Roucillus et Egus, Adbucillī fīliī, quī prīncipātum in cīvitāte multīs annīs obtinuerat, singulārī virtūte hominēs, quōrum operā Caesar omnibus Gallicīs bellīs optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. Hīs domī ob hās causās amplissimōs magistrātūs mandāverat atque eōs extrā ōrdinem in senātum legendōs cūrāverat, agrōsque in Galliā ex hostibus captōs praemiaque reī pecuāriae magna tribuerat locuplētēsque ex egentibus fēcerat. Hī propter virtūtem nōn sōlum apud Caesarem in honōre erant, sed etiam apud exercitum cārī habēbantur; sed frētī amīcitiā Caesaris et stultā ac barbarā adrogantiā ēlātī dēspiciēbant suōs, stīpendiumque equitum fraudābant et praedam omnem domum āvertēbant. Quibus illī rēbus permōtī ūniversī Caesarem adiērunt palamque dē eōrum iniūriīs sunt questī, et ad cētera addidērunt falsum ab iīs equitum numerum dēferrī, quōrum stīpendium āverterent.

60. Caesar neque tempus illud animadversiōnis esse exīstimāns et multa virtūtī eōrum concēdēns rem tōtam sustulit; illōs sēcrētō castīgāvit quod quaestuī equitēs

Angered by Caesar's censure and the contempt of their comrades they desert to Pompey.

habērent, monuitque ut ex suā amīcitiā omnia exspectārent et ex praeteritīs suīs officiīs reliqua spērārent. Magnam tamen haec rēs illīs offēnsiōnem et contemptiōnem ad omnēs attulit, idque ita esse cum ex aliōrum obiectātiōnibus, tum etiam ex domesticō iūdiciō atque animī cōnscientiā intellegēbant. Quō pudōre adductī et fortasse nōn sē līberārī sed in aliud tempus reservārī arbitrātī, discēdere ā nōbīs et novam temptāre fortūnam novāsque amīcitiās experīrī cōnstituērunt: et cum paucīs conlocūtī clientibus suīs, quibus tantum facinus committere audēbant, prīmum cōnātī sunt praefectum equitum C. Volusēnum interficere (ut posteā bellō cōnfectō cōgnitum est), ut cum mūnere aliquō perfūgisse ad Pompēium vidērentur; postquam id facinus difficilius vīsum est neque facultās perficiendī dabātur, quam maximās potuērunt pecūniās mūtuātī, proinde ac sī suīs satisfacere et fraudāta restituere vellent, multīs coemptīs equīs ad Pompēium trānsiērunt cum iīs quōs suī cōnsilī participēs habēbant.



FIG. 39.— Iumentum.

61. Quōs Pompēius, quod erant honestō locō nātī et

Welcomed by Pompey they give him much useful information.

īnstrūctī līberāliter, magnōque comitātū et multīs iūmentīs vēnerant, virīque fortēs habēbantur et in honōre apud Caesarem fuerant, quodque hoc novum et praeter consuētūdinem acciderat, omnia sua praesidia circumdūxit atque ostentāvit. Nam ante id tempus nēmō aut mīles aut eques ā Caesare ad Pompēium trānsierat, cum paene cotīdiē ā Pompēiō ad Caesarem perfugerent, vulgō vērō ūniversī in Ēpīrō atque Aetōliā cōnscrīptī mīlitēs eārumque regiōnum omnium quae ā Caesare tenēbantur. Sed hī cōgnitīs omnibus rēbus, seu quid in mūnītiōnibus perfectum nōn erat, seu quid ā perītiōribus reī mīlitāris dēsīderārī vidēbātur, temporibusque rērum et spatiīs locōrum et custōdiārum variā dīligentiā animadversā, prout cuiusque eōrum quī negōtiīs praeerant aut nātūra aut studium ferēbat, haec ad Pompēium omnia dētulērunt.

Pompey arranges to attack Caesar's line at its southernmost part near the sea.

62. Quibus ille cōgnitīs, ēruptiōnis iam ante captō cōnsiliō, ut dēmōnstrātum est, tegimenta galeīs mīlitēs ex vīminibus facere atque aggerem iubet comportāre. Hīs parātīs rēbus magnum numerum levis armātūrae et sagittāriōrum aggeremque omnem noctū in scaphās et nāvēs āctuāriās impōnit; dē mediā nocte cohortēs LX ex maximīs castrīs praesidiīsque dēductās ad eam partem mūnītiōnum dūcit quae pertinēbat ad mare longissimēque ā maximīs castrīs Caesaris aberat. Eōdem nāvēs quās dēmōnstrāvimus aggere et levis armātūrae mīlitibus complētās, quāsque ad Dyrrachium nāvēs longās habēbat, mittit, et quid ā quōque fierī velit praecipit. Ad eās mūnītiōnēs Caesar Lentulum Mārcellīnum quaestōrem cum legiōne nōnā positum habēbat;

huic, quod valētūdine minus commodā ūtēbātur, Fulvium Postumum adiūtōrem summīserat.

Caesar's double line of works at this point is attacked from within and without.

63. Erat eō locō fossa pedum xv et vāllum contrā hostem in altitūdinem pedum x, tantundemque eius vāllī agger in lātitūdinem patēbat; ab eō intermissō spatiō pedum DC alter conversus in contrāriam partem erat vāllus humiliōre paulō mūnītiōne. Hoc enim superiōribus diēbus timēns



Caesar's Siege of Pompey near Dyrrachium.

Caesar, nē nāvibus nostrī circumvenīrentur, duplicem eō locō fēcerat vāllum, ut, sī ancipitī proeliō dīmicārētur, posset resistī. Sed operum magnitūdō et continēns omnium diērum labor, quod mīllia passuum in circuitū XVII mūnītiōne erat complexus, perficiendī spatium nōn dabat. Itaque contrā mare trānsversum vāllum, quī hās duās

mūnītiōnēs coniungeret, nōndum perfēcerat. Quae rēs nōta erat Pompēiō, dēlāta per Allobrogas perfugās, magnumque nostrīs adlātūra erat incommodum. Nam ut ad mare II cohortēs nōnae legiōnis in excubiīs erant, accessēre subitō prīmā lūce Pompēiānī; simul nāvibus circumvectī mīlitēs in exteriōrem vāllum tēla iaciēbant fossāsque aggere complēbant, et legiōnāriī interiōris mūnītiōnis dēfēnsōrēs, scālīs admōtīs, tormentīs cuiusque generis tēlīsque terrēbant, magnaque multitūdō sagittāriōrum ab utrāque parte circumfundēbātur. Multum autem ab ictū lapidum, quod ūnum nostrīs erat tēlum, vīminea tegimenta galeīs imposita dēfendēbant. Itaque cum omnibus rēbus nostrī premerentur atque aegrē resisterent, animadversum est vitium mūnītiōnis, quod suprā dēmōnstrātum est, atque inter duōs vāllōs, quā perfectum opus nōn erat, Pompēiānī expositī in āversōs nostrōs impetum fēcērunt atque ex utrāque mūnītiōne dēiectōs terga vertere coēgērunt.

Panic of Caesar's men Bravery of a standard-bearer.

64. Hōc tumultū nūntiātō Mārcellīnus cohortēs subsidiō nostrīs labōrantibus summittit ex castrīs. Quae fugientēs cōnspicātae neque illōs suō adventū cōnfirmāre potuērunt neque ipsae hostium impetum tulērunt. Itaque quodcumque addēbātur subsidī, id corruptum timōre fugientium terrōrem et perīculum augēbat; hominum enim multitūdine receptus impediēbātur. In eō proeliō cum gravī vulnere esset adfectus aquilifer et ā vīribus dēficerētur, cōnspicātus perterritōs nostrōs, "Hanc ego," inquit, "et vīvus multōs per annōs magnā dīligentiā dēfendī et nunc moriēns eādem fidē Caesarī restituō. Nōlīte, obsecrō, committere, quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit, ut reī mīlitāris dēde-

cus admittātur, incolumemque ad eum dēferte." Hōc cāsū aquila cōnservātur omnibus prīmae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectīs praeter prīncipem priōrem.

Antony and Caesar come to the rescue. Pompey and Caesar encamp outside the line of circumvallation.

65. Iamque Pompēiānī magnā cum caede nostrōrum castrīs Mārcellīnī appropinquābant nōn mediocrī terrōre inlātō reliquīs cohortibus; et M. Antōnius, quī proximum locum praesidiōrum tenēbat, eā rē nūntiātā cum cohortibus XII dēscendēns ex locō superiōre cernēbātur. Cuius adventus Pompēiānōs compressit nostrōsque firmāvit, ut sē ex maximō timōre colligerent. Neque multō post Caesar sīgnificātiōne per castella fūmō factā, ut erat superiōris temporis cōnsuētūdō, dēductīs quibusdam cohortibus ex praesidiīs eōdem vēnit. Quī cōgnitō dētrīmentō, cum animadvertisset Pompēium extrā mūnītiōnēs ēgressum secundum mare manēre, ut līberē pābulārī posset nec minus aditum nāvibus habēret, commūtātā ratiōne bellī, quoniam prōpositum nōn tenuerat, castra iūxtā Pompēium mūnīrī iussit.

Pompey sends one legion to occupy an old camp within Caesar's lines.

66. Quā perfectā mūnītiōne animadversum est ab speculātōribus Caesaris cohortēs quāsdam, quod īnstar legiōnis vidērētur, esse post silvam et in vetera castra dūcī. Castrōrum hīc situs erat. Superiōribus diēbus nōna Caesaris legiō, cum sē obiēcisset Pompēiānīs cōpiīs, atque opere, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, collēs circummūnīret, castra eō locō posuit. Haec silvam quandam contingēbant neque longius ā marī passibus CCC aberant. Post mūtātō cōnsiliō quibusdam dē causīs Caesar paulō ultrā eum locum castra trānstulerat, paucīsque intermissīs diēbus eadem haec Pompēius occu-



FIG. 40.—MARK ANTONY: VATICAN

pāverat et, quod eō locō plūrēs erat legiōnēs habitūrus, relictō interiōre vāllō maiōrem adiēcerat mūnītiōnem. Ita minōra castra inclūsa maiōribus castellī atque arcis locum obtinēbant. Item ab angulō castrōrum sinistrō mūnītiōnem ad flūmen perdūxerat circiter passuum CCCC, quō līberius ac minōre perīculō mīlitēs aquārentur. Sed is quoque mūtātō cōnsiliō quibusdam dē causīs, quās commemorārī necesse nōn est, eō locō excesserat. Ita complūrēs diēs inānia mānserant castra; mūnītiōnēs quidem omnēs integrae erant.

Caesar successfully attacks this camp with his left wing.

67. Eō sīgna legiōnis lāta speculātōrēs Caesarī renūntiārunt. Hoc idem vīsum ex superiōribus quīdam castellīs cōnfirmāvērunt. Is locus aberat ā novīs Pompēī castrīs circiter passūs quīngentōs. Hanc legiōnem spērāns Caesar sē opprimere posse, et cupiēns eius diēī dētrīmentum sarcīre, relīquit in opere cohortēs duās quae speciem mūnientium praebērent; ipse dīversō itinere quam potuit occultissimē reliquās cohortēs, numerō XXXIII, in quibus erat legiō nōna multīs āmissīs centuriōnibus dēminūtōque mīlitum numerō, ad legiōnem Pompēī castraque duplicī aciē ēdūxit. Neque eum prīma opīniō fefellit. Nam et pervēnit priusquam Pompēius sentīre posset, et tametsī erant mūnītiōnēs castrōrum magnae, tamen sinistrō cornū, ubi erat ipse, celeriter adgressus Pompēiānōs ex vāllō dēturbāvit. Erat obiectus portae ēricius. Hīc paulisper est pugnātum, cum inrumpere nostrī cōnārentur, illī castra dēfenderent, fortissimē T. Pullōne, cuius operā prōditum exercitum C. Antōnī dēmōnstrāvimus, eō locō prōpugnante. Sed tamen nostrī virtūte vīcērunt, excīsōque ēriciō prīmō in maiōra castra, post etiam

in castellum, quod erat inclūsum maiōribus castrīs, inrūpērunt, quod eō pulsa legiō sēsē recēperat, et nōn nūllōs ibi repugnantēs interfēcērunt.

An error of his right wing and cavalry proves costly.

68. Sed fortūna, quae plūrimum potest cum in reliquīs rēbus tum praecipuē in bellō, parvīs mōmentīs magnās rērum commūtātiōnēs efficit; ut tum accidit. Mūnītiōnem enim, quam pertinēre ā castrīs ad flūmen suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, dextrī Caesaris cornūs cohortēs īgnōrantiā locī sunt secūtae, cum portam quaererent castrōrumque eam mūnītiōnem esse arbitrārentur. Quod cum esset animadversum coniūnctam esse flūminī, prōrutīs mūnītiōnibus dēfendente nūllō trānscendērunt, omnisque noster equitātus eās cohortēs est secūtus.

Upon Pompey's arrival Caesar's men are panic-stricken and flee with heavy loss.

69. Interim Pompēius, hāc satis longā interiectā morā, eā rē nūntiātā v legiōnēs ab opere dēductās subsidiō suīs dūxit; eōdemque tempore equitātus eius nostrīs equitibus appropinquābat, et aciēs īnstrūcta ā nostrīs quī castra occupāverant cernēbātur; omniaque sunt subitō mūtāta. Pompēiāna legiō celeris spē subsidī cōnfirmāta ab decumānā portā resistere cōnābātur atque ultrō in nostrōs impetum faciēbat; equitātus Caesaris, quod angustō itinere per aggerēs ascendēbat, receptuī suō timēns initium fugae faciēbat; dextrum cornū, quod erat ā sinistrō sēclūsum, terrōre equitum animadversō, nē intrā mūnītiōnem opprimerētur, eā parte quam prōruerat sēsē recipiēbat, ac plērīque ex hīs, nē in angustiās inciderent, ex x pedum mūnītiōne sē in fossās praecipitābant, prīmīsque oppressīs reliquī per hōrum corpora salūtem sibi atque exitum pariēbant; sinistrī cornūs mīlitēs cum ex vāllō Pompēium adesse et suōs fugere cer-

nerent, veritī nē angustiīs interclūderentur, cum extrā et intus hostem habērent, eōdem quō vēnerant receptū sibi cōnsulēbant, omniaque erant tumultūs, timōris, fugae plēna, adeō ut, cum Caesar sīgniferum quendam manū prēnderet et cōnsistere iubēret, aliī, idem iussī, sequī eundem cursum contenderent, aliī metū etiam sīgna dīmitterent, neque quisquam omnīnō cōnsisteret.

Causes of Caesar's escape from annihilation.

70. Hīs tantīs malīs haec subsidia succurrēbant, quō minus omnis dēlērētur exercitus, quod Pompēius īnsidiās timēns, crēdō (quod haec praeter spem acciderant eius, quī paulō ante ex castrīs fugientēs suōs cōnspēxerat), mūnītiōnibus appropinquāre aliquamdiū nōn audēbat, equitēsque eius angustiīs atque hīs ā Caesaris mīlitibus occupātīs ad īnsequendum tardābantur. Ita parvae rēs magnum in utramque partem mōmentum habuērunt. Mūnītiōnēs enim ā castrīs ad flūmen perductae, expugnātīs iam castrīs Pompēī, propriam expedītamque Caesaris victōriam interpellāvērunt; eadem rēs celeritāte īnsequentium tardātā nostrīs salūtem attulit.

Caesar's losses. Cruelty of Labienus.

71. Duōbus hīs ūnīus diēī proeliīs Caesar dēsīderāvit mīlitēs DCCCCLX et equitēs CC, in quibus Tūticānum Gallum senātōris fīlium, nōtōs equitēs Rōmānōs C. Flegīnātem Placentiā, A. Grānium Puteolīs, M. Sacrātivirum Capuā, tribūnōs mīlitum et centuriōnēs XXXII — sed hōrum omnium pars magna in fossīs mūnītiōnis et flūminis rīpīs oppressa suōrum terrōre ac fugā sine ūllō vulnere interiit —; sīgnaque sunt mīlitāria āmissa XXXII.

Pompēius eō proeliō imperātor est appellātus. Hōc nōmine abstinuit, atque ita sē posteā salūtārī passus est, sed neque in litterīs praescrībere est solitus neque in fasci-

bus īnsīgnia laureae praetulit. At Labiēnus, cum ab eō impetrāvisset ut sibi captīvōs trādī iubēret, omnēs prōductōs ostentātiōnis, ut vidēbātur, causā, quō maior perfugae fidēs habērētur, commīlitōnēs appellāns et magnā verbōrum contumēliā interrogāns solērentne veterānī mīlitēs fugere, in omnium cōnspectū interfēcit.

Premature rejoicing of the Pompeians.

72. Hīs rēbus tantum fīdūciae ac spīritūs Pompēiānīs accessit ut nōn dē ratiōne bellī cōgitārent, sed vīcisse iam sibi vidērentur. Nōn illī paucitātem nostrōrum mīlitum, nōn inīquitātem locī atque angustiās praeoccupātīs castrīs et ancipitem terrōrem intrā extrāque mūnītiōnēs, nōn abscīsum in duās partēs exercitum, cum altera alterī auxilium ferre nōn posset, causae fuisse cōgitābant. Nōn ad haec addēbant nōn concursū ācriter factō, nōn proeliō dīmicātum, sibique ipsōs multitūdine atque angustiīs maius attulisse dētrīmentum quam ab hoste accēpissent. Nōn dēnique commūnēs bellī cāsūs recordābantur, quam parvulae saepe causae vel falsae suspīciōnis vel terrōris repentīnī vel obiectae religiōnis magna dētrīmenta intulissent, quotiēns vel ducis vitiō vel culpā tribūnī in exercitū esset offēnsum; sed proinde ac sī virtūte vīcissent neque ūlla commūtātiō rērum posset accidere, per orbem terrārum fāmā ac litterīs victōriam eius diēī concelebrābant.

73–99. THE CAMPAIGN IN THESSALY, JULY–AUGUST, 48 B.C.

Caesar retreats into Thessaly

Caesar urges his soldiers not to be disheartened.

73. Caesar ab superiōribus cōnsiliīs dēpulsus omnem sibi commūtandam bellī ratiōnem exīstimāvit. Itaque ūnō tempore praesidiīs omnibus

dēductīs et oppugnātiōne dīmissā, coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū cōntiōnem apud mīlitēs habuit; hortātusque est nē ea quae accidissent graviter ferrent, nēve hīs rēbus terrērentur, multīsque secundīs proeliīs ūnum adversum et id mediocre oppōnerent. Habendam fortūnae grātiam, quod Italiam sine aliquō vulnere recēpissent, quod duās Hispāniās bellicōsissimōrum hominum perītissimīs atque exercitātissimīs ducibus pācāvissent, quod fīnitimās frūmentāriāsque prōvinciās in potestātem redēgissent; dēnique recordārī dēbēre quā fēlīcitāte inter mediās hostium classēs, opplētīs nōn sōlum portibus sed etiam lītoribus, omnēs incolumēs essent trānsportātī. Sī nōn omnia caderent secunda, fortūnam esse industriā sublevandam. Quod esset acceptum dētrīmentī, cuiusvīs potius quam suae culpae dēbēre tribuī. Locum sē aequum ad dīmicandum dedisse, potītum sē esse hostium castrīs, expulisse ac superāsse repugnantēs. Sed sīve ipsōrum perturbātiō sīve error aliquis sīve etiam fortūna partam iam praesentemque victōriam interpellāvisset, dandam omnibus operam ut acceptum incommodum virtūte sarcīrētur; quod sī esset factum, futūrum ut dētrīmentum in bonum verteret, utī ad Gergoviam accidisset, atque iī quī ante dīmicāre timuissent ultrō sē proeliō offerrent.

Encouraging effect of his speech.

74. Hāc habitā cōntiōne nōn nūllōs sīgniferōs īgnōminiā notāvit ac locō mōvit. Exercituī quidem omnī tantus incessit ex incommodō dolor tantumque studium īnfāmiae sarciendae, ut nēmō aut tribūnī aut centuriōnis imperium dēsīderāret et sibi quisque etiam poenae locō graviōrēs impōneret labōrēs, simulque omnēs ardērent cupiditāte pugnandī, cum superiōris etiam ōrdinis nōn nūllī ratiōne permōtī manendum eō locō et rem

proeliō committendam exīstimārent. Contrā ea Caesar neque satis mīlitibus perterritīs cōnfīdēbat spatiumque interpōnendum ad recreandōs animōs putābat, et refectīs mūnītiōnibus magnopere reī frūmentāriae timēbat.

Caesar abandons the siege, and retreats towards Apollonia pursued by Pompey.

75. Itaque nūllā interpositā morā, sauciōrum modo et aegrōrum habitā ratiōne, impedīmenta omnia silentiō prīmā nocte ex castrīs Apollōniam praemīsit ac conquiēscere ante iter cōnfectum vetuit. Hīs ūna legiō missa praesidiō est. Hīs explicitīs rēbus duās in castrīs legiōnēs retinuit, reliquās dē quārtā vigiliā complūribus portīs ēductās eōdem itinere praemīsit; parvōque spatiō intermissō, ut et mīlitāre īnstitūtum servārētur et quam sērissimē eius· profectiō cōgnōscerētur, conclāmārī iussit, statimque ēgressus et novissimum agmen cōnsecūtus celeriter ex cōnspectū discessit. Neque vērō Pompēius cōgnitō cōnsiliō eius moram ūllam ad īnsequendum intulit, sed eōdem diē, spectāns sī in itinere impedītōs et perterritōs dēprehendere posset, exercitum ē castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque praemīsit ad novissimum agmen dēmorandum, neque cōnsequī potuit, quod multum expedītō itinere antecesserat Caesar. Sed cum ventum esset ad flūmen Genusum, quod rīpīs erat impedītīs, cōnsecūtus equitātus novissimōs proeliō dētinēbat. Huic suōs Caesar equitēs opposuit expedītōsque antesīgnānōs admiscuit cccc; quī tantum prōfēcērunt ut equestrī proeliō commissō pellerent omnēs complūrēsque interficerent, ipsī incolumēs sē ad agmen reciperent.

76. Cōnfectō iūstō itinere eius diēī quod prōposuerat Caesar trāductōque exercitū flūmen Genusum veteribus

suīs in castrīs contrā Asparāgium cōnsēdit, mīlitēsque omnēs intrā vāllum castrōrum continuit equitātumque per causam pābulandī ēmissum cōnfestim decumānā portā in castra sē recipere iussit. Similī ratiōne Pompēius cōnfectō eius diēī itinere in suīs veteribus castrīs ad Asparāgium cōnsēdit. Eius mīlitēs, quod ab opere integrīs mūnītiōnibus vacābant, aliī lignandī pābulandīque causā longius prōgrediēbantur, aliī, quod subitō cōnsilium profectiōnis cēperant magnā parte impedīmentōrum et sarcinārum relictā, ad haec repetenda invītātī propinquitāte superiōrum castrōrum, dēpositīs in contuberniō armīs vāllum relinquēbant. Quibus ad sequendum impedītīs, quod fore prōvīderat, Caesar merīdiānō ferē tempore sīgnō profectiōnis datō exercitum ēdūcit, duplicātōque eius diēī itinere VIII mīllia passuum ex eō locō prōcēdit; quod facere Pompēius discessū mīlitum nōn potuit.

Caesar by a trick gets a long start of Pompey.

77. Posterō diē Caesar similiter praemissīs prīmā nocte impedīmentīs dē quārtā vigiliā ipse ēgreditur, ut, sī qua esset imposita dīmicandī necessitās, subitum cāsum expedītō exercitū subīret. Hoc idem reliquīs fēcit diēbus. Quibus rēbus perfectum est ut altissimīs flūminibus atque impedītissimīs itineribus nūllum acciperet incommodum. Pompēius enim prīmī diēī morā inlātā et reliquōrum diērum frūstrā labōre susceptō, cum sē magnīs itineribus extenderet et praegressōs cōnsequī cuperet, quārto diē fīnem sequendī fēcit atque aliud sibi cōnsilium capiendum exīstimāvit.

Pompey at length gives up the pursuit.

78. Caesarī ad sauciōs dēpōnendōs, stīpendium exercituī dandum, sociōs cōnfirmandōs, praesidium urbibus relin-

Caesar reaches Apollonia and hastens thence to Thessaly. Reasons of Caesar and of Pompey for going to Thessaly.

quendum, necesse erat adīre Apollōniam. Sed hīs rēbus tantum temporis tribuit quantum erat properantī necesse; timēns Domitiō, nē adventū Pompēī praeoccupārētur, ad eum omnī celeritāte et studiō incitātus ferēbātur. Tōtīus autem reī cōnsilium hīs ratiōnibus explicābat: ut, sī Pompēius eōdem contenderet, abductum illum ā marī, atque ab iīs cōpiīs quās Dyrrachī comparāverat frūmentī ac commeātūs abstractum, parī condiciōne bellī sēcum dēcertāre cōgeret; sī in Italiam trānsīret, coniūnctō exercitū cum Domitiō per Īllyricum Italiae subsidiō proficīscerētur; sī Apollōniam Ōricumque oppugnāre et sē omnī maritimā ōrā exclūdere cōnārētur, obsessō Scīpiōne necessāriō illum suīs auxilium ferre cōgeret. Itaque praemissīs nūntiīs ad Cn. Domitium Caesar scrīpsit et quid fierī vellet ostendit, praesidiōque Apollōniae cohortium IIII, Lissī I, III Ōricī relictō, quīque erant ex vulneribus aegrī dēpositīs, per Ēpīrum atque Athamāniam iter facere coepit.

Pompēius quoque dē Caesaris cōnsiliō coniectūrā iūdicāns ad Scīpiōnem properandum sibi exīstimābat: sī Caesar iter illō habēret, ut subsidium Scīpiōnī ferret; sī ab ōrā maritimā Ōriciāque discēdere nōllet, quod legiōnēs equitātumque ex Italiā spērāret, ipse ut omnibus cōpiīs Domitium adgrederētur.

Caesar finds the country hostile. Domitius's narrow escape from Pompey and union with Caesar.

79. Hīs dē causīs uterque eōrum celeritātī studēbat, et suīs ut esset auxiliō, et ad opprimendōs adversāriōs nē occāsiōnī temporis deësset. Sed Caesarem Apollōnia ā dērēctō itinere āverterat, Pompēius per Candāviam iter in Macedoniam expedītum habēbat. Accessit

etiam ex imprōvīsō aliud incommodum, quod Domitius, cum diēs complūrēs castrīs Scīpiōnis castra conlāta habuisset, reī frūmentāriae causā ab eō discesserat et Hēraclīam, quae est subiecta Candāviae, iter fēcerat, ut ipsa fortūna illum obicere Pompēiō vidērētur. Haec ad id tempus Caesar īgnōrābat. Simul ā Pompēiō litterīs per omnēs prōvinciās cīvitātēsque dīmissīs dē proeliō ad Dyrrachium factō, ēlātius īnflātiusque multō quam rēs erat gesta fāma percrēbruerat pulsum fugere Caesarem paene omnibus cōpiīs āmissīs. Haec itinera īnfesta reddiderat, haec cīvitātēs nōn nūllās ab eius amīcitiā āvertēbat. Quibus accidit rēbus ut plūribus dīmissī itineribus ā Caesare ad Domitium et ā Domitiō ad Caesarem nūllā ratiōne iter cōnficere possent. Sed Allobrogēs, Roucillī atque Egī familiārēs, quōs perfūgisse ad Pompēium dēmōnstrāvimus, cōnspicātī in itinere explōrātōrēs Domitī, seu prīstinā suā cōnsuētūdine, quod ūnā in Galliā bella gesserant, seu glōriā ēlātī, cūncta, ut erant ācta, exposuērunt, et Caesaris profectiōnem, adventum Pompēī docuērunt. Ā quibus Domitius certior factus, vix IIII hōrārum spatiō antecēdēns, hostium beneficiō perīculum vītāvit, et ad Aeginium, quod est adiectum appositumque Thessaliae, Caesarī venientī occurrit.

Caesar takes Gomphi by storm.

80. Coniūnctō exercitū Caesar Gomphōs pervēnit, quod est oppidum prīmum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō; quae gēns paucīs ante mēnsibus ultrō ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserat ut suīs omnibus facultātibus ūterētur; praesidiumque ab eō mīlitum petierat. Sed eō fāma iam praecucurrerat, quam suprā docuimus, dē proeliō Dyrrachīnō, quod multīs auxerat

partibus. Itaque Androsthenēs, praetor Thessaliae, cum sē victōriae Pompēī comitem esse māllet quam socium Caesaris in rēbus adversīs, omnem ex agrīs multitūdinem servōrum ac līberōrum in oppidum cōgit portāsque praeclūdit, et ad Scīpiōnem Pompēiumque nūntiōs mittit ut sibi subsidiō veniant: sē cōnfīdere mūnītiōnibus oppidī,



FIG. 41.— Attack on a Walled Town.

sī celeriter succurrātur; longinquam oppugnātiōnem sustinēre nōn posse. Scīpiō discessū exercituum ā Dyrrachiō cōgnitō Lārīsam legiōnēs addūxerat; Pompēius nōndum Thessaliae appropinquābat. Caesar castrīs mūnītīs scālās mūsculōsque ad repentīnam oppugnātiōnem fierī et crātēs parārī iussit. Quibus rēbus effectīs cohortātus mīlitēs docuit quantum ūsum habēret ad sublevandam omnium rērum inopiam potīrī oppidō plēnō atque opulentō, simul

reliquīs cīvitātibus huius urbis exemplō īnferrī terrōrem et id fierī celeriter priusquam auxilia concurrerent. Itaque ūsus singulārī mīlitum studiō, eōdem quō vēnerat diē post hōram nōnam oppidum altissimīs moenibus oppugnāre adgressus, ante sōlis occāsum expugnāvit et ad dīripiendum mīlitibus concessit, statimque ab oppidō castra mōvit et Mētropolim vēnit sīc ut nūntiōs expugnātī oppidī fāmamque antecēderet.

The rest of Thessaly submits. Caesar encamps in the plain of Pharsalus.

81. Mētropolītae prīmō eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō īsdem permōtī rūmōribus portās clausērunt mūrōsque armātīs complēvērunt; sed posteā cāsū cīvitātis Gomphēnsis cōgnitō ex captīvīs quōs Caesar ad mūrum prōdūcendōs cūrāverat, portās aperuērunt. Quibus dīligentissimē cōnservātīs, conlātā fortūnā Mētropolītum cum cāsū Gomphēnsium, nūlla Thessaliae fuit cīvitās praeter Lārīsaeōs, quī minīs Scīpiōnis terrēbantur, quīn Caesarī pārēret atque imperāta faceret. Ille idōneum locum in agrīs nactus, quō prope iam mātūra erant frūmenta, ibi adventum exspectāre Pompēī eōque omnem bellī ratiōnem cōnferre cōnstituit.

Pompey encamps near Caesar. Confidence of his army

Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly. His followers dispute over the distribution of the spoils and of the offices at Rome as if the war were already over.

82. Pompēius paucīs post diēbus in Thessaliam pervenit, cōntiōnātusque apud cūnctum exercitum suīs agit grātiās, Scīpiōnis mīlitēs cohortātur ut partā iam victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptīsque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum Scīpiōne honōrem partītur, classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illī iubet praetōrium tendī. Auctīs cōpiīs Pompēī duōbusque magnīs exercitibus con-

iūnctīs prīstina omnium cōnfirmātur opīniō et spēs victōriae augētur adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, id morārī reditum in Italiam vidērētur; et, sī quandō quid Pompēius tardius aut cōnsīderātius faceret, ūnīus superesse negōtium diēī, sed illum dēlectārī imperiō et cōnsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dīcerent. Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiīs ac dē sacerdōtiīs contendēbant, in annōsque cōnsulātum dēfīniēbant, aliī domōs bonaque eōrum quī in castrīs erant Caesaris petēbant; magnaque inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia oportēretne Lūcīlī Hirrī, quod is ā Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, proximīs comitiīs praetōriīs absentis ratiōnem habērī, cum eius necessāriī fidem implōrārent Pompēī praestāret quod proficīscentī recēpisset, nē per eius auctōritātem dēceptus vidērētur; reliquī in labōre parī ac perīculō nē ūnus omnēs antecēderet recūsārent.

83. Iam dē sacerdōtiō Caesaris Domitius, Scīpiō, Spintherque Lentulus cotīdiānīs contentiōnibus ad gravissimās verbōrum contumēliās palam dēscendērunt, cum Lentulus aetātis honōrem ostentāret, Domitius urbānam grātiam dignitātemque iactāret, Scīpiō adfīnitāte Pompēī cōnfīderet. Postulāvit etiam L. Afrānium prōditiōnis exercitūs Acutius Rūfus apud Pompēium; et L. Domitius in cōnsiliō dīxit placēre sibi bellō cōnfectō ternās tabellās darī ad iūdicandum iīs quī ōrdinis essent senātōriī bellōque ūnā cum ipsīs interfuissent, sententiāsque dē singulīs ferrī quī Rōmae remānsissent quīque intrā praesidia Pompēī fuissent neque operam in rē mīlitārī praestitissent: ūnam fore tabellam quā līberandōs omnī perīculō cēnsērent; alteram quā capitis damnārent; tertiam quā pecūniā multārent.

Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suīs aut dē praemiīs pecūniae aut dē persequendīs inimīcitiīs agēbant; neque quibus ratiōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum ūtī victōriā dēbērent cōgitābant.

Caesar repeatedly offers battle. A favorable cavalry skirmish.

84. Rē frūmentāriā praeparātā cōnfirmātīsque mīlitibus, et satis longō spatiō temporis ā Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs intermissō quō satis perspectum habēre mīlitum animum vidērētur, temptandum Caesar exīstimāvit quidnam Pompēius prōpositī aut voluntātis ad dīmicandum habēret. Itaque ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit aciemque īnstrūxit, prīmō suīs locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompēī longius, continentibus vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suīs collibusque Pompēiānīs aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōnfirmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat. Superius tamen īnstitūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus esset īnferior, adulēscentēs atque expedītōs ex antesīgnānīs ēlēctōs mūtātīs ad pernīcitātem armīs inter equitēs proeliārī iubēret, quī cotīdiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque eius generis proeliōrum percēperant. Hīs erat rēbus effectum ut equitum mīlle etiam apertiōribus locīs VII mīllium Pompēiānōrum impetum, cum esset ūsus, sustinēre audērent, neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Itaque etiam per eōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus quōs perfūgisse ad Pompēium suprā docuimus cum quibusdam interfēcit.

Caesar is about to change his tactics when Pompey decides to fight.

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad īnfimās rādīcēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Ille nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlicī

posse Pompēium exīstimāns hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendīs castrīs plūribusque adeundīs locīs commodiōre frūmentātiōne ūterētur, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dīmicandī nancīscerētur et īnsolitum ad labōrem Pompēī exercitum cotīdiānīs itineribus dēfatīgāret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, sīgnō iam profectiōnis datō tabernāculīsque dētēnsīs, animadversum est paulō ante iter extrā cotīdiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēī prōgressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dīmicārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, "Differendum est," inquit, "iter in praesentia nōbīs et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sīcut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō sīmus ad dīmicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus;" cōnfestimque expedītās cōpiās ēdūcit.

Pompey's scheme for winning an easy victory.

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cōgnitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Atque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōris diēī dīxerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērīque admīrātī, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōnsilī meī accipite, quō firmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs (idque mihi factūrōs cōnfirmāvērunt) ut, cum propius esset accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō adgrederentur, et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine perīculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō parātī in posterum diem

et, cum iam fieret dīmicandī potestās, ut saepe rogitāvissent, nē suam neu reliquōrum opīniōnem fallerent.

Labienus speaks disparagingly of Caesar's army.

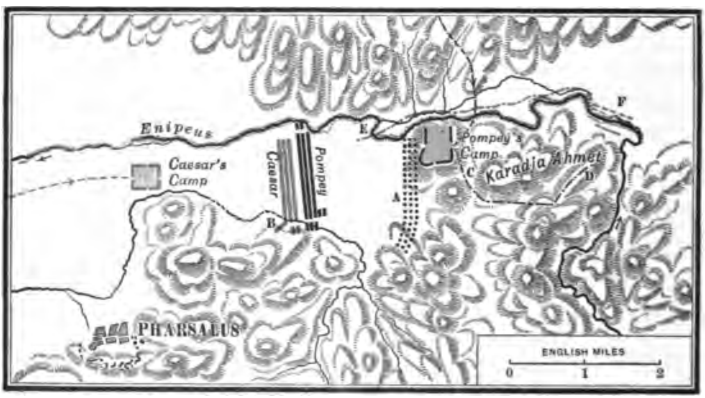
87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompēī cōnsilium summīs laudibus efferret, "Nōlī," inquit, "exīstimāre, Pompēī, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvīcerit. Omnibus interfuī proeliīs neque temere incōgnitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illīus exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit, quod accidere tot proeliīs fuit necesse, multōs autumnī pestilentia in Italiā cōnsūmpsit, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in continentī. An nōn audīstis ex iīs quī per causam valētūdinis remānsērunt cohortēs esse Brundisī factās? Hae cōpiae quās vidētis ex dīlēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plērīque sunt ex colōniīs Trānspadānīs. Ac tamen quod fuit rōboris duōbus proeliīs Dyrrachīnīs interiit." Haec cum dīxisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus est. Hunc laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec cum ācta essent in cōnsiliō, magnā spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfirmārī vidēbātur.

The battle of Pharsalus, Aug. 9, 48 B.C.

Size and arrangement of Pompey's army.

88. Caesar cum Pompēī castrīs appropinquāsset, ad hunc modum aciem eius īnstrūctam animadvertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōnsultō: quārum ūna prīma, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō

ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūncta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius exīstimābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcerat numerumque cohortium CX explēverat. Haec erant numerō mīllia XLV. Ēvocātōrum circiter duo mīllia, quae ex beneficiāriīs superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant, tōtā aciē dispertierat. Reliquās cohortēs VII castrīs propinquīsque castellīs praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam impedītīs rīpīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūnctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū adiēcerat.



The Battle of Pharsalus.

A, Position taken by Pompey for several days, 233, 28.
B, Caesar's fourth line, 237, 13.
C, Route of the fugitives from Pompey's camp, 240, 28 ff.
D, Height occupied by the Pompeians after the battle, 242, 1.
E, Place of Caesar's crossing the river, 241, 28.
F, Caesar's lines blocking the retreat of the Pompeians, 242, 4.

Size and arrangement of Caesar's army.

89. Caesar superius īnstitūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsī erat Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta, et huic sīc adiūnxerat octāvam ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat, quārum summa erat mīllium XXII; cohortēs VII castrīs praesidiō relīquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat; ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Simul iīs rēbus animadversīs quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitūdine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex hīs quārtam īnstituit equitātuīque opposuit, et quid fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque eius diēī victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul tertiae aciēī quārtaeque imperāvit, nē iniussū suō concurreret: sē, cum id fierī vellet, vexillo sīgnum datūrum.

Caesar harangues his army and gives the signal for battle.

90. Exercitum cum mīlitārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetuī temporis officia praedicāret, imprīmīs commemorāvit testibus sē mīlitibus ūtī posse quantō studiō pācem petīsset; quae per Vatīnium in conloquiīs, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset, quibus modīs ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendīs lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūtī mīlitum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū prīvāre voluisse. Hāc habitā ōrātiōne exposcentibus mīlitibus et studiō pugnae ardentibus tubā sīgnum dedit.

The charge is led by a reenlisted veteran.

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir singulārī

virtūte. Hīc sīgnō datō, "Sequiminī mē," inquit, "manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī quam īnstituistis operam date. Ūnum hoc proelium superest; quō cōnfectō et ille suam dignitātem et nōs nostram lībertātem recuperābimus." Simul respiciēns Caesarem, "Faciam," inquit, "hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vīvō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās." Haec cum dīxisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum laetī mīlitēs circiter cxx voluntāriī eiusdem centuriae sunt prōsecūtī.

Pompey awaits the attack without charging.

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī ut satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suīs praedīxerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neque sē locō movērent, aciemque eius distrahī paterentur; idque admonitū C. Triārī fēcisse dīcēbātur, ut prīmus incursus vīsque mīlitum īnfringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suīs ōrdinibus dispositī dispersōs adorīrentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat in locō retentīs mīlitibus quam sī ipsī immissīs pīlīs occurrissent; simul fore ut duplicātō cursū Caesaris mīlitēs exanimārentur et lassitūdine cōnficerentur. Quod nōbīs quidem nūllā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō vidētur, propterea quod est quaedam animī incitātiō atque alacritās nātūrāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antīquitus īnstitūtum est ut sīgna undique concinerent clāmōremque ūniversī tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs incitārī exīstimāvērunt.

The battle. Rout of the Pompeians.

93. Sed nostrī mīlitēs datō sīgnō cum īnfestīs pīlīs prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompēiānīs, ūsū perītī ac superiōri-

bus pugnīs exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt, nē cōnsūmptīs vīribus appropinquārent; parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō Pompēiānī huic reī dēfuērunt. Nam et pīla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs suōs cōnservārunt pīlīsque missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēī cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō sagittāriōrum sē profūdit; quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit: equitēsque Pompēī hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circumīre coepērunt. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēī, quam īnstituerat VIII cohortium numerō, dedit sīgnum. Illae celeriter prōcucurrērunt īnfestīsque sīgnīs tantā vī in Pompēī equitēs impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret, omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō cēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtīs omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī suō praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū, pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānīs, circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortae.

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit quīn ab iīs cohortibus quae contrā equitātum in

quārtā aciē conlocātae essent initium victōriae orerētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs mīlitibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim prīmum equitātus est pulsus, ab īsdem facta caedēs sagittāriōrum ac funditōrum, ab īsdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum. Sed Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit atque eam partem cui maximē cōnfīdēbat perterritam animadvertit, aliīs quoque diffīsus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit, et iīs centuriōnibus quōs in statiōne ad praetōriam portam posuerat clārē, ut mīlitēs exaudīrent, "Tuēminī," inquit, "castra et dēfendite dīligenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia cōnfirmō." Haec cum dīxisset, sē in praetōrium contulit summae reī diffīdēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

Pompey's camp is captured.

95. Caesar Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs nūllum spatium perterritīs darī oportēre exīstimāns mīlitēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū (nam ad merīdiem rēs erat prōducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī imperiō pāruērunt. Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarīsque auxiliīs. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlitēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, dīmissīs plērīque armīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō cōnstiterant multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī vulneribus locum relīquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

Appearance of the camp. Pompey's escape.

96. In castrīs Pompēī vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, L. etiam Lentulī et nōn nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriae fīdūciam dēsīgnārent; ut facile exīstimārī posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēī timuisse, quī nōn necessāriās conquīrerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercituī Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui saepe omnia ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent. Pompēius, cum iam intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētractīs īnsīgnibus imperātōriīs decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū equitum XXX ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum sē opīniōnem fefellisse ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

Caesar pursues the enemy and compels them to surrender.

97. Caesar castrīs potītus ā mīlitibus contendit nē in praedā occupātī reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circummūnīre īnstituit. Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō, relictō monte ūniversī iugīs eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompēī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IIII sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit et prōgressus mīllia passuum VI aciem īnstrūxit. Quā rē animadversā Pom-

pēiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtīus diēī continentī labōre erant cōnfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere illī dē dēditiōne missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum iīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt.

Caesar's clemency toward his vanquished foes.

98. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs quī in monte cōnsēderant ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passīsque palmīs prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit, et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit, mīlitibusque suīs commendāvit nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsīderārent. Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sēcum dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit, eōdemque diē Lārīsam pervēnit.

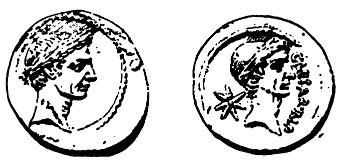


FIG. 42. — Coins of Caesar.

The losses of both sides.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius CC mīlitēs dēsīderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter XXX āmīsit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficīscēns dīxerat. Sīc enim Caesar exīstimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat. Ex Pompēiānō exercitū

circiter mīllia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōnem vēnērunt amplius mīllia xxiiii (namque etiam cohortēs quae praesidiō castellīs fuerant sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multī praetereā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs refūgērunt; sīgnaque mīlitāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta clxxx et aquilae viiii. L. Domitius ex castrīs in montem refugiēns, cum vīrēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

* * * * * * *

102–104. POMPEY'S FLIGHT AND DEATH, AUGUST–SEPTEMBER, 48 B.C.

Pursued by Caesar Pompey sails from Amphipolis to Mytilene, Cilicia, and Cyprus.

102. Caesar omnibus rēbus relictīs persequendum sibi Pompējum exīstimāvit, quāscumque in partēs ex fugā sē recēpisset, nē rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset. Ita quantumcumque itineris equitātū cōnficere poterat cotīdiē prōgrediēbātur, legiōnemque ūnam minōribus itineribus subsequī iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēī nōmine Amphipolī prōpositum, utī omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs, Graecī cīvēsque Rōmānī, iūrandī causā convenīrent. Id utrum āvertendae suspīciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset, ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an novīs dīlēctibus, sī nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre cōnārētur, exīstimārī nōn poterat. Ipse ad ancoram ūnam noctem cōnstitit, et vocātīs ad sē Amphipolī hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs corrogātā, cōgnitō Caesaris adventū ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās paucīs diēbus vēnit. Bīduum tempestāte retentus nāvibus additīs āctuāriīs in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit. Ibi cōgnōscit cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium cīviumque

Rōmānōrum quī illīc negōtiārentur arcem captam esse exclūdendī suī causā, nūntiōsque dīmissōs ad eōs quī sē ex fugā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs recēpisse dīcerentur, nē Antiochīam adīrent: id sī fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis perīculō futūrum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, quī superiōre annō cōnsul fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōnsulārī ac nōn nūllīs aliīs acciderat Rhodī; quī cum ex fugā Pompēium sequerentur atque in īnsulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū receptī nōn erant, missīsque ad eōs nūntiīs ex hīs locīs discēderent, contrā voluntātem suam nāvēs solverant. Iamque dē Caesaris adventū fāma ad cīvitātēs perferēbātur.

Pompey arrives at Pelusium and begs King Ptolemy's protection.

103. Quibus cōgnitīs rēbus Pompēius dēpositō adeundae Syriae cōnsiliō, pecūniā ā societātibus sublātā et ā quibusdam prīvātīs sūmptā, et aeris magnō pondere ad mīlitārem ūsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque mīllibus hominum armātīs, quōs partim ex familiīs societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suīs quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs exīstimābat, Pēlūsium pervēnit. Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolomaeus, puer aetāte, magnīs cōpiīs cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat; castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castrīs distābant. Ad eum Pompēius mīsit, ut prō hospitiō atque amīcitiā patris Alexandrīam reciperētur atque illīus opibus in calamitāte tegerētur. Sed quī ab eō missī erant, cōnfectō lēgātiōnis officiō, līberius cum mīlitibus rēgiīs conloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēī mīlitēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā

Gabīnius Alexandrīam trādūxerat bellōque cōnfectō apud Ptolomaeum, patrem puerī, relīquerat.

He is treacherously murdered by order of the king's counsellors.

104. Hīs tum cōgnitīs rēbus amīcī rēgis, quī propter aetātem eius in prōcūrātiōne erant rēgnī, sīve timōre adductī, ut posteā praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgiō nē Pompēius Alexandrīam Aegyptumque occupāret, sīve dēspectā eius fortūnā (ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amīcīs inimīcī exsistunt), iīs quī erant ab eō missī palam līberāliter respondērunt, eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsī clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulārī hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum mīlitum, ad interficiendum Pompēium mīsērunt. Ab hīs līberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōtitiā Septimī prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum apud eum ōrdinem dūxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suīs; ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā necātur.

105–107. CAESAR IN ASIA AND ALEXANDRIA, SEPTEMBER–OCTOBER, 48 B.C.

Caesar rescues the treasure of Diana's temple at Ephesus. Prodigies which occurred on the day of the battle of Pharsalus.

105. Caesar cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque reī causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut hīs testibus in sūmendā pecūniā ūterētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris profūgisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniae Caesar auxilium tulit.

* * * * * * *

Item cōnstābat Ēlide in templō Minervae, repetītīs atque numerātīs diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fēcisset simulācrum Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocātum esset et ante ad simulācrum Minervae spectāvisset, ad valvās sē templī līmenque convertisse. Eōdemque diē Antiochīae in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmor et sīgnōrum sonus exaudītus est ut in mūrīs armāta cīvitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolomāide accidit, Pergamīque in occultīs locīs ac reconditīs templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adīre fās nūllī est, quae Graecī adyta appellant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallibus in templō Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palmam per eōs diēs inter coagmenta lapidum ex pavīmentō exstitisse ostendēbātur.

Caesar's arrival at Alexandria. Street brawls.

106. Caesar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus, cum audīsset Pompēium Cyprī vīsum, coniectāns eum in Aegyptum iter habēre propter necessitūdinēs rēgum reliquāsque eius locī opportūnitātēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequī iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q. Fūfiō lēgātō ēvocāverat, equitibusque DCCC et nāvibus longīs Rhodiīs X et Asiāticīs paucīs Alexandrīam pervēnit. In hīs erant legiōnibus hominum mīllia tria CC; reliquī vulneribus ex proeliīs et labōre ac magnitūdine itineris cōnfectī cōnsequī nōn potuerant. Sed Caesar cōnfīsus fāmā rērum gestārum īnfirmīs auxiliīs proficīscī nōn dubitāverat, aequē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore exīstimāns. Alexandrīae dē Pompēī morte cōgnōscit; atque ibi prīmum ē nāvī ēgrediēns clāmōrem mīlitum audit, quōs rēx in oppidō praesidī causā relīquerat, et concursum ad sē fierī videt, quod fascēs anteferrentur. In hōc omnis multitūdō maiestātem rēgiam minuī praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō

tumultū crēbrae continentibus diēbus ex concursū multitūdinis concitātiōnēs fīēbant, complūrēsque mīlitēs huius urbis omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

Caesar summons two legions from Asia, and undertakes to settle the quarrel of Ptolemy and Cleopatra.

107. Quibus rēbus animadversīs legiōnēs sibi duās ex Asiā addūcī iussit, quās ex Pompēiānīs mīlitibus cōnfēcerat. Ipse enim necessāriō etēsiīs tenēbātur, quī nāvigantibus Alexandrīā flant adversissimī ventī. Interim contrōversiās rēgum ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōnsul, pertinēre exīstimāns, atque eō magis, quod superiōre cōnsulātū cum patre Ptolomaeō et lēge et senātūs cōnsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem Ptolomaeum atque eius sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs quōs habērent dīmittere et dē contrōversiīs iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armīs disceptāre.

PAGE 51, LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. **Gallia**: Transalpine Gaul exclusive of the Roman province (*Provincia*, see Introd. § 8). — **est . . . divisa**: a common use of the perf. pass. to denote a present state ('is divided') resulting from the action of the perfect ('has been divided')[1]; *dividitur* would denote a present action ('is being divided'). — **omnis**: 'as a whole.' — **unam**: *partem* was as easily supplied in thought by the Roman as 'part' is by us in the translation.

51, 2. **Belgae**: their territory included northeastern France as well as modern Belgium. Form the habit at the outset of consulting the map (see frontispiece) for all places and peoples mentioned in the text. — **aliam**: 'another,' not 'a second,' which would be *alteram*. See both words in the Vocab. — **qui** = *ii qui*; *ii* is a third subject of *incolunt*. The antecedent of a rel. pron. is often omitted if it can be readily understood from the context.[2] In translating *unam . . . qui*, the Latin order of thought may be preserved by making the accusatives the subjects, 'one is inhabited by the Belgae, another by the Aquitani, the third by those who,' etc. — **lingua**: abl. of means.[3]

51, 3. **Celtae**: the Celts formed an important division of the Aryan or Indo-European group of nations. The Britons and North Italians were Celts, as are the Irish and Highland Scotch of to-day. The English belong to the Teutonic or Germanic division of the Indo-European family. — **lingua**: abl. of specification.[4] The Celts spoke Celtic, the Belgae a corruption of Celtic and German, while among the Aquitanians, who were not of the Indo-European family, some tribes probably spoke Iberian, and some Basque. This latter language still survives in northwestern Spain.

51, 4. **inter se**: 'from each other.'[5] Latin has no reciprocal pronoun ('each other, one another'), but expresses the reciprocal idea most commonly by *inter* with the personal pronouns. — **Gallos**: this

References to the text are made by pages and lines. Grammatical references are grouped in footnotes. H. = Harkness's Complete Grammar, references to the Standard Grammar being in parentheses; L.M. = Lane and Morgan's School Latin Grammar; A. = Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar, references to the old grammar being in parentheses; G. = Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar; B. = Bennett's Latin Grammar.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	640, 3 (550, N. 2)		495 (291, *b*)	250, R. 2	337, 2
2	399, 4 (445, 6)	823	307, *c* (200, *c*)	621	251, 1
3	476 (420)	645	409 (248, *c*, 1)	401	218
4	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
5	502, 1 (448, N.)	1047	301, *f* (196, *f*)	221	245

word, as its position at the beginning of the sentence shows,[1] is more important in the thought than *Garumna*. Preserve this emphasis in translation by making it the subject; see on *qui*, l. 2. — **ab Aquitanis . . . a Belgis**: observe that before vowels *ab* is always used, while before consonants *a* is usual.

51, 5. **Garumna flumen**: compare this order with *flumen Rhenum* in l. 18, and with the omission of *flumen* with *Matrona* and *Sequana*. English has the same variety of usage, as, 'the Ohio River, the River Rhine or the Rhine, the Potomac.' — **dividit**: the verb is singular[2] because the two rivers form one continuous boundary.

51, 6. **Horum**: partit. gen. with a superlative.[3] This word stands first in its sentence, not for emphasis, but to make clear the connection of the thought with the preceding sentences.[4]

51, 7. **cultu**: 'civilization,' referring to outward characteristics, dress, deportment, etc. — **humanitate**, 'refinement,' applying to the mind or feelings. — Doubtless the province owed some of its civilization to the Romans, who had governed it since 120 B.C.; but probably more was due to the influence of Marseilles (Massilia), which had been founded by Greek colonists about 600 B.C., and had for centuries been an important commercial center. It was not subject to Rome, but had been a faithful ally for two hundred years. — **minime . . . saepe**: 'very seldom.'

51, 8. **mercatores**: Massiliot traders.

51, 9. **ad effeminandos animos pertinent**: 'tend to weaken character,'[5] lit., 'to the character to-be-weakened'; *ad* belongs with *animos*, which is limited by the gerundive. The principal import was wine, of which the natives were so passionately fond that for a jar of it they would even trade a child.

51, 10. **quibuscum**: *cum* always follows a rel. in Caesar. In other writers it sometimes precedes.[6]

51, 11. **Qua**: 'this';[7] a rel., equivalent to a dem, and never to be translated literally, is very frequent at the beginning of a sentence,

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	665, 1 (561, i)	1147	597 (344)	672, 2	349
2	392, 4 (463, ii, 3)	471	317, *b* (205, *b*)	211, R. 1	255, 3
3	442 (397, 3)	560	346, *a*, 2 (216, *a*, 2)	372	201, 1
4	669, 1	1151			350, 9
5	628 (544, 1)	995	506 (300 & N.)	427	339, 2
6	182, 2 (187, 2)	668	150, *d* & N. (104, *e*)	413, R. 1	142, 4
7	510 (453)	843–44	308, *f* & N. (180, *f*)	610	251, 6

being due to the tendency of Latin to preserve closely the connection of the thought. See on *horum*, l. 6. — **causa**: *i.e.* owing to the proximity to Germany. — **Helvetii**: a people of Celtic blood dwelling in what is now Switzerland.

51, 12. **reliquos**: compare in the Vocab. the difference in meaning of *alius*, *ceteri*, *reliquus*. — **virtute**: 'bravery,' see Vocab. For the abl., see on *lingua*, l. 3.

51, 13. **proeliis**: 'skirmishes,' as is implied by *cotidianis*. The abl. denotes manner.[1] — **cum . . . gerunt**: this clause does not define the time of the main verb *contendunt*, but simply adds a fact; *cum* = *et tum* (cf. *qui* = *et is*, etc.). — **suis**: observe the difference in meaning between *suis* and *eorum*. These words are emphasized by their contrast, hence they precede their substantives.[2] — **finibus**: abl. of separation.[3]

51, 15. **Eorum**: refers not to the Helvetii, but to the peoples mentioned in l. 2 f. Latin frequently names the people where English speaks of the country. — **quam**: obj. of *obtinere*, which is a main verb of indir. disc. depending on *dictum est*.[4] When the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is passive and impersonal, its subject is the infinitive (with its subject accusative if it has one, here *Gallos*) of the indirect quotation.[5] — **obtinere**: 'occupy,' cf. in the Vocab. with *occupo*. Be cautious about translating a Latin word by the corresponding English word.

51, 16. **a**: 'at'; the Latin point of view is often that of the place *from* which, where the English is that of the place *at* which.[6] The idea is the same in *ab* ('on the side of') *Sequanis*, l. 17, and *ab . . . finibus*, l. 19.

51, 18. **vergit**: observe on the map the direction of the rivers.

51, 19. **extremis**: 'farthest,' from the province. — **Galliae**: the district just described, not *Gallia omnis* (l. 1).

52, 1. **spectant in**, etc.: 'lie towards the northeast.' This statement, made with reference to the province, is no more exact than the similar statement about Aquitania in l. 4 f. We must remember that Caesar had no such accurate maps at his disposal as we have to-day.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 3 (419, iii)	636	412 (248)	399	220, 1
2	671, 1 (565, 1)	1140	598, *a* (344, *a*)	676 & R. 1	350, 1 & 5, *c*
3	464 (414)	601	401 (243)	390, 2	214, 2
4	642 (523, i)	1023	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
5	615 (538)	971	Cf. 566, *b* (330, *a*, 2)	528, 2	330
6	485, 4 (434, i)		429, *b* (260, *b*)	390, 2, N. 6	

52, 4. **ad Hispaniam**: 'near,' etc., the regular meaning with verbs of rest. — **spectat inter**: like *spectant in* above.

52, 7. CHAPTER 2. **M.**: = *Marco.* Always read and translate an abbreviation in Latin by the word for which it stands, and in reading observe carefully what case is required. In the designation of dates by the names of consuls no connective is used.

52, 8. **consulibus**: abl. abs.[1] with the proper names, 'in the consulship of,' = 61 B.C. The year was usually expressed in this way, or was reckoned from the assumed date (753 B.C.) of the founding of Rome. — **regni**: obj. gen. — **cupiditate**: abl. of cause.[2]

52, 9. **nobilitatis**: a collective abstract for concrete; so Eng. 'nobility' for 'nobles.' — **civitati**: see on **nobilitatis**. *Persuadeo* takes an indir. obj.[3] of the person persuaded; while the dir. obj. is either that which he is persuaded to do, expressed by a substantive clause of purpose with *ut* or *ne*,[4] here *ut . . . exirent*, or that which he is persuaded is a fact, expressed by a clause of indir. disc.,[5] here *perfacile esse*, or by a neuter pronoun, as *id . . . persuasit* in l. 11 f. In translation introduce the substantive clause by 'to,' the indir. disc. by 'that,' 'he persuaded the nation to emigrate . . .: that it was perfectly easy,' etc.

52, 10. **cum omnibus copiis**: 'bag and baggage.' — **exirent**: the imperf. is used, rather than the pres., because the action is past,[6] depending on the perf. *persuasit*; and since purpose clauses, from their very nature, express action not completed at the time of the main act, the imperf. (its name signifies incompletion) is used rather than the plpf., which denotes action completed in the past. The plural is used because *civitati* implies *civibus*.[7] — **perfacile**: predicate with *esse*, agreeing[8] with the subject *potiri*.

52, 11. **omnibus**: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. compound verb.[9] — **praestarent**: subj. with causal *cum*.[10] The tense

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	489 (431, 4)	639	419, *a* (255, *a*)	409–10	227, 1
2	475 (416, N. 1)	613	404, *b* (245. *b*)	408, N. 2	219
3	426, 2 (385, ii)	530–31	367 (227)	346, R. 2	187, ii, *a*
4	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1
5	565, 6		579, ftn. (330, *e*)	546, R. 1	
6	543; 545, ii, 1 (491; 493, 1)	804	484, *b* (286, R. *b*)	510	267, 2 & 3
7	389, 1 (461, 1)	472	317, *d* (205, *c*, 1)	211, R. 1 (*a*)	254, 4, *a*
8	394, 4 (438, 3)	972	289, *d* (189, *d*)	422 & N. 3	Cf. 327, 1, ex. 1
9	429 (386)	532	370 & *a* (228 & N. 1)	347 & R. 2	187, iii, 1
10	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2

(representing a pres. subj. of dir. disc.) depends on *persuasit* (see on *exirent*, l. 10), the *subordinate* verbs of a quotation being thrown into the past by a past introductory verb. Cf. Eng. 'he says that he is going if he *can*,' but 'he said that he was going if he *could*.' Observe, however, that while in Eng. the *main* verb of a quotation also follows the sequence of the introductory verb ('says that he *is*, said that he *was*'), the Latin infin. is not thus changed, but remains in its original tense (*perfacile esse* representing *perfacile est*). — **imperio**: abl. of means,[1] serving as obj. of *potiri*. — **Id**: 'of this,' dir. obj. of *persuasit*, see on **civitati**, l. 9. For its position, see on *horum*, 51, 6.

52, 12. **hoc** (lit., 'on this account'[2]) **facilius . . . quod**: 'more easily from the fact that'; the causal clause is in apposition with *hoc*. The indic. is used because Caesar states this as his own reason. — **undique**: 'on (lit., 'from') all sides'; see on *a*, 51, 16, and cf. *una ex parte*, 'on one side.'

52, 14. **altera**: not 'another'; see on *aliam*, 51, 2.

52, 17. **nostram**: cf. *nostra*, 51, 3. — **His rebus fiebat**: 'the result of this was' (lit., 'because of these things it was being brought about'). Note the imperfects in the rest of this chapter, describing a state of things.

52, 18. **ut . . . vagarentur**: substantive clause of result, subject of *fiebat*.[3] — **minus late**: 'not as widely as they desired.' — **finitimis**: essential complement or indir. obj. of a transitive compound verb[4]; cf. *omnibus*, l. 11.

52, 19. **qua ex parte**: 'and on this point.' — **homines, etc.**: 'being men fond of warfare'; in predicate apposition with the subject. — **bellandi**: obj. gen. with an adj. of desire.[5]

52, 20. **Pro multitudine hominum**: 'for (= in proportion to) their great population,' given as 263,000, see 71, 7. The Swiss, in a somewhat larger territory, number about 3,000,000; but they are a peaceable nation.

52, 21. **belli, etc.**: 'for bravery in war.' Latin sometimes uses two nouns with a conj. instead of one noun limited by the other; this is

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	477, 1 (421, i)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1
2	475 (416, N. 1)	612	404 (245)	408	219
3	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, *a*, 2)	553, 3	297, 2
4	429, 1 (386, 1)	534	370, *a*, N. 1 (228, N. 2)	347, R. 3	187, iii, 2
5	451, 1 (399, i, 1)	573, (*a*)	349, *a* (218, *a*)	374, N. 5	204, 1

called hendiadys. The gens. are subjective,[1] being the source of the renown (*gloria*).

52, 22. millia passuum: 'miles.' The sing. 'mile' is *mille passus* = $4854\frac{1}{6}$ Eng. feet, thus being about $\frac{11}{12}$ of an Eng. mile (5280 ft.). *Passuum* is partit. gen.[2] — **CCXL**: *ducenta quadraginta.* Always use the Latin words in reading numerals.

52, 23. CLXXX: *centum octoginta.* As this dimension is about a hundred miles too large, it is probable that Caesar wrote LXXX, and that the reading of the Mss. is due to a scribe's mistake, arising perhaps from the influence of the previous number.

52, 24. CHAPTER 3. **auctoritate**: 'influence,' not 'authority.'

52, 25. ea quae: 'such things as,' a meaning regularly followed by the subj. of characteristic. — **proficiscendum**: compare this verbal substantive (the gerund) with the verbal adjective (the gerundive) *effeminandos* in 51, 9. Observe that the gerund has no object, while the gerundive agrees with its apparent object.[3] — **pertinerent**: subj. in a rel. sentence of characteristic,[4] regularly introduced by the idea 'such as, of a sort that,' etc. Cf. *ea quae . . . pertinent*, 51, 8 f., 'things which tend,' not 'of a sort that tend.' — **comparare, etc.**: complementary infin.,[5] obj. of *constituerunt.*

52, 26. quam maximum: 'the greatest possible.'[6]

52, 27. ut . . . suppeteret: pure purpose,[7] not an obj. clause like *ut . . . exirent*, l. 9 f.

53, 3. sibi: dat. of interest or reference[8] with *satis esse.* — **in**: with acc. of temporal expressions = 'for.'

53, 4. lege: 'a resolution,' passed in a public assembly. — **confirmant**: 'fix,' pres. of vivid narration or hist. pres.[9]

53, 5. dux: predicate nom.[10] — **Is**: with slight emphasis, 'this man.' Unless the subject changes, it is usually not expressed except for emphasis.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	440, 1 (396, ii)	553	343, N. 1 (213, 1)	362	199
2	442 (397, 2)	560	346, *a*, 2 (216, *a*, 2)	370	201, 1
3	623–24 (541, 543)	988–89	501–03 (295–96)	426, N. 1; 427	338, 3; 339, 1
4	591, 1 (503, i)	836	535 (320)	631, 1	283, 1
5	565, 5 (498, i, N.)	896	563, *d* (331, *d*)	546, N. 3; 423, N. 2	328, 1
6	159, 2 (170, 2)	679	291, *c* (93, *b*)	303	240, 3
7	568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545, 1	282, 1
8	425, 4 (384, 1, 2)	537	376 (235)	350, 2	188, 1
9	532, 3 (467, iii)	733	469 (276, *d*)	229	259, 3
10	393 (362, 2, 2)	460	393, *a* (239, 1, N. 2)	206	168, 2, *b*

53, 6. **civitates**: states, or clans, of Gaul whose aid he wished to gain. — Observe the annalistic (a subdivision of historical) presents,[1] beginning with *deligitur* and recurring throughout this chapter. They give, as it were, a memorandum of the efforts and success of Orgetorix.

53, 8. **obtinuerat**: see on *obtinere*, 51, 15.

53, 9. **amicus**: The Roman senate sometimes voted this honor to rulers as a reward for past services or as an incentive to future favors. — **ut . . . occuparet**: cf. *ut . . . exirent*, 52, 9 f., and see note on *civitati*, ib. The sequence[2] depends on *persuadet*, the action of which is past, although stated as present. — **regnum**: 'the power of a king.' Monarchy had been abolished in most of the Gallic states.

53, 10. **ante**: 'at an earlier time'; cf. the force of the tense in *obtinuerat*, implying that he no longer possessed it. — **habuerit**: Caesar intimates by the use of the subjunctive that the clause *quod . . . habuerit* is indirectly quoted from the actual instructions of Orgetorix to Casticus. The force of the quotation can be given in translation thus, 'which, as he said, his father had held.' Such a quotation, merely indicated by the subjunctive, and not dependent on a formal verb of saying, may be called implied, or informal, indirect discourse.[3] The pluperfect tense might be expected, in secondary sequence with *occuparet*, but the present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used in secondary sequence to preserve the tense (not the mood) of the direct statement.[4]

53, 11. **qui**: refers, not as usual to the person last named, but to the more prominent one. — **principatum**: 'chief prominence,' not implying official authority. Officially the Haeduan state was in alliance with Rome, but at this time, owing to the failure of Rome to aid the Haeduans against their oppressors, the anti-Roman party, headed by Dumnorix, was predominant. Diviciacus was a leader of the party favorable to Rome, and was one of Caesar's most trusted allies. Three years before, he had been in Rome, and Cicero implies in his work *On Divination* (1, 41, 90) that he had conversed with him about Gallic religious customs.

53, 12. **plebi** (dat. with the adj.[5]) **acceptus**: 'popular with the masses.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1		734	469, *a*		
2	546 (495, ii)	805	485, *e* (287, *e*)	511, R. 1	268, 3
3	649, i (528, 1)	791	592, 1 (341, *b*)	508, 3	323
4	644, 1 (525, 1)	806	585, *b*, N. (336, B, *a*, N. 1)	Cf. 513, N. 2	268, 7, *a*
5	434 (391)	536	384 (234, *a*)	359	192, 1

53, 13. **ut idem conaretur**: 'to make the same attempt'; cf. *ut . . . exirent*, 52, 9 f.

53, 14. **Perfacile . . . esse . . . perficere**: cf. *perfacile esse . . . potiri*, 52, 10 f. — **factu**: supine,[1] best omitted here in translation. — **illis probat**: 'he shows them.'

53, 16. **obtenturus esset**: 'he was intending to be in possession of';[2] for the sequence, dependent on *probat* (not on *esse*[3]), cf. *occuparet*, l. 10. — **esse**: dependent on the idea of saying implied in *probat*; 'adding that,' etc. — **dubium**: predicate adj., the subject of *esse* being the clause *quin . . . possent*. — **Galliae**: partit. gen.[4] with *plurimum*.

53, 17. **possent**: the mood depends on *quin*,[5] the tense (*possint* in the direct form) on *probat*.

53, 18. **regna**: 'the power of kings'; pl., referring to a *regnum* in each state. — **conciliaturum**: the fut. infin. often omits *esse*.

53, 19. **fidem et ius iurandum**: 'their promise and oath.' — **regno occupato**: abl. abs. expressing time,[6] 'after seizing royal power.' — **per . . . populos**: limits *potiri*, and refers to the states to which these three plotters belonged.

53, 20. **firmissimos**: 'most stable.' — **Galliae**: the only instance in Caesar of a gen. with *potiri*;[7] for the usual construction, see *imperio*, 52, 11.

53, 22. CHAPTER 4. **res**: 'plot'; vary the translation of *res* according to the context.

53, 23. **Moribus**: abl. of manner.[8] — **ex**: 'in'; cf. the similar difference between Latin and Eng. idiom in *initium capit a*, 51, 16, and see note on *a*.

53, 24. **damnatum**, etc.: 'if convicted, the punishment was to befall him of being burned with fire.' *Damnatum*, used with conditional force,[9] limits an implied *eum*, the obj. of *sequi*, but an unemphasized pron. limited by an adj. or part. is commonly omitted. *Poenam* is the

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	635, 1 (547, N. 1)	1007	510 (303)	436, N. 2	340, 2
2	531 (466, N.)	749	158, *b* & N. (113, *b* & N.)	247	115
3	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, *a*
4	443 (397, 4)	560	346, *a*, 2 (216, *a*, 2)	372, N. 3	201, 1
5	595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558, *a* (332, *g*, R.)	555, 2	298
6	489, 1 (431, 2)	640	419 (255, *d*, 1)	410	227, 2, *a*
7	458, 3 (410, v, 3)	593	357, *a* (223, *a*)	407, *d*	212, 2
8	473, 3 (419, iii)	636	412 (248)	399	220, 3
9	638, 2 (549, 2)	1017 (*e*)	496 (292)	667	337, 2, *b*

subject of *sequi*, and *poenam sequi* is the subject of *oportebat*.[1] *Ut* . . *cremaretur* is a subst. clause of result in apposition with *poenam*.[2]

53, 25. **igni**: Caesar appears not to have used *igne*.[3] Burning was not an uncommon punishment among the Gauls; see 139, 6. — **Die**: abl. of time when; note the gender.[4] — **causae**: obj. gen. with *dictionis*, which itself is poss. gen. with *die*.

53, 26. **familiam**: 'slaves.' — **ad . . . decem**: this phrase is in apposition with *familiam*, *ad* being an adv. — **hominum**: for the gen., see note on *millia passuum*, 52, 22.

53, 27. **clientes**: these were free supporters, but the *obaerati* had been enslaved for debt; cf. 136, 27 ff.

53, 28. **eodem**: adv.

53, 29. **ne . . . eripuit**: 'he escaped standing trial';[5] by the crowd of retainers he overawed the court. — **Cum . . . conaretur**: 'when . . . was endeavoring'; observe carefully this very common construction.[6] With *cum*, 'when,' the imperf. and plpf. subj. describe subordinate circumstances under which a past main action occurred. The imperf. represents the subordinate circumstance as going on, the plpf. as completed, at the time of the main action.

53, 30. **ius**: the right of punishing traitors.

54, 2. **neque abest suspicio**: 'and there is not wanting ground for believing.' As this is equivalent to 'and there is not much doubt,' the dependent clause (appositive, cf. *ut igni cremaretur*, 53, 25) is introduced by *quin*; see on *possent*, 53, 17.

54, 3. **ipse**: in Latin idiom the intensive pron. emphasizes the subject, in English the object. — **consciverit**: note the tense, representing the suicide as complete at the time of the *present* verb *abest*.[7]

54, 4. CHAPTER 5. **nihilo**: abl. of the amount of difference.[8] — **id . . . facere**: 'to carry out the resolution which they had formed.'

54, 5. **ut . . . exeant**: 'of going forth,' in apposition with *id*, and

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	615, 1 (538, 1)	971–72	452 (270)	535	330
2	571, 4 (501, iii)	902	561, *a*; 570 (329; 332, *f*)	557	297, 3
3	102, 4 (62, iv)	201	76, *b*, 1 (57, *b*, 1)	57, 2	38
4	135 (123)	231	97, *a* (73)	64	53
5	568 (497, ii)	898	558, *b* (331, *e*, 2)	548	295, 3
6	600, ii, 1 (521, ii, 2)	858	546 (323, 2; 325)	585	288, 1, B
7	543; 545, i, 2 (491; 492, 2)	803	484, *a* (286, R. *a*)	510	267, 2 & 3
8	479, 1 (417, 2)	655	414 (250)	403	223

expressing result.[1] The reasons for migrating, given in 52, 12–23, were just as strong now as before the death of Orgetorix. Perhaps, too, the Helvetii were getting the worst of it in their constant conflicts with the Germans; see 51, 12 f.

54, 6. **Ubi**: 'when,' commonly takes the perf. indic.;[2] cf. *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29 f., and see note. — **rem**: 'move.'

54, 7. **numero**: abl. of specification; see on *lingua*, 51, 3. — **ad**: cf. *ad . . . millia*, 53, 26 f. — **vicos**: 'villages,' without fortifications.

54, 8. **reliqua**, etc.: 'and all isolated buildings besides'; lit., 'the rest (being) isolated buildings.' — **incendunt**: observe the annalistic presents in the rest of the chapter; see on 53, 6.

54, 9. **secum**: *cum* is always enclitic with personal pronouns, and in Caesar with relatives; see on *quibuscum*, 51, 10. — **portaturi erant**: cf. the translation of *obtenturus esset*, 53, 16. — **comburunt**: note the difference in meaning of *incendunt*, l. 8. — **domum**[3]: depends on the verbal subst. *reditionis* (= *redeundi*).

54, 10. **ad . . . subeunda**: see on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

54, 11. **essent**: cf. the sequence with that of *exeant*, l. 5, the latter depending on the *tense* of *conantur*, a pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.), and not on the actual time of its action, which is past. See on *ut . . . occuparet*, 53, 9. — **trium mensum**: gen. of quality,[4] 'a three months' supply of.' — **sibi quemque**: forms of the pers. or poss. reflexive used with *quisque* regularly precede it.[5]

54, 12. **domo**:[6] cf. *domum*, l. 9. — **Rauracis**, etc.: northern neighbors of the Helvetii.

54, 13. **uti**: old form of *ut*, not to be confused with the infin. of *ūtor*. — **usi** and **exustis**: in translation coördinate these participles with *proficiscantur*, 'to adopt . . . , to burn up . . . , and to set out . . . .' Latin uses subordination much more than English. — **consilio**: see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

54, 14. **exustis**: parallel with *usi*, both participles by their tense expressing action prior to that of the principal verb *proficiscantur*; but,

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	571, 4 (501, iii)	904	570 (332, *f*)	557 & N.	297, 3
2	602 (518, N. 1)	881	543 (324)	561	287, 1
3	419, 1 (380, ii, 2, 1)	519	427, 2; cf. 388, *d*, N. 2 (258, *b*; cf. 237, *f*)	337 & N. 5	182, 1, *b*
4	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203, 2
5	675, 2 (569, i, 2)	1069	313, *a*, N.	318, 3	244, 4, *a*
6	462, 4 (412, ii, 1)	608	427, 1 (258, *a*)	390, 2	229, 1, *b*

while ***usi*** is act., ***exustis*** is pass. (and so has to be used here as abl. abs.; ***exusti*** would mean that the men were burned) owing to the lack in Latin of a perf. act. part. except of deponent verbs.[1] Avoid translating the abl. abs. literally. — **una**: adv. — **iis**: refers to the subject of *persuadent*. *Secum* might have been used as an indir. reflexive;[2] but as it could also, like *suis* just before, refer to the subject of *proficiscantur*, the demonstrative is clearer.

54, 16. **oppugnarant**: a contracted form.[3] — **receptos**, etc.: with *Boios*, 'the Boii . . . they take into their own number (*ad se*) and adopt as their (*sibi*) allies.' — **sibi**: dat. of interest or reference.[4]

54, 18. CHAPTER 6. **itineribus**: Caesar frequently repeats the antecedent with the relative;[5] it may be omitted in translation.

54, 19. **possent**: 'might,' characteristic subj.;[6] not 'were able' (= *poterant*), but 'would be able' if they wished. — **unum**: along the north (right) bank of the Rhone, passing through the narrow Pas de l'Écluse (*inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum*) at a distance of nineteen Roman (17½ English) miles from Geneva.

54, 20. **vix qua**, etc.: a rel. regularly begins its clause, but here yields to the highly emphatic *vix*, 'just barely one cart at a time.'[7]

54, 21. **ducerentur**: like *possent*, line 19.

54, 22. **prohibere**: 'prevent a passage.' — **possent**: pure result.[8] — **alterum**: this route presented fewer physical difficulties, but it necessitated crossing the Rhone and marching through the territory of the Allobroges, who were included in the Roman Province.

54, 25. **nuper**: the Allobroges had been made subject to Rome in 121 B.C. A revolt in 61–60 B.C. led to their complete subjugation.

54, 26. **is**: see on *is*, 53, 5. — **locis**: locative abl.[9] — **vado**: 'by ford.'[10] — **transitur**: 'can be crossed,' the potential use of the verb. At present this part of the Rhone is fordable in but one place.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	640, 4 (550, N. 4)	Cf. 319	493, 1 & 2 (113, *c*, N.)	410, R. 1	97, iii
2	504, 3 (449, 1, 2)	1046	300, 2 & *b* (196, *a*, 2 & N.)	521, 5, N. 3	244, 1, ii
3	238 (235)	385	181, *a* (128, *a*, 1)	131, 1	116, 1
4	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, *a*)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
5	399, 1 (445, 8)	822	307, *a* (200, *a*)	615 & N.	251, 3
6	591, 1 (503, i)	836	535 (320)	631, 1	283, 1
7	164, 1 (174, 2, 1)	268; 1080	137, *a* (95, *a*)	97, R. 2	81, 4, *a*
8	570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 1	284, 1
9	485, 2 (425, ii, 2)	626	429, 1 (258, *f*, 1)	385, N. 1	228, 1, *b*
10	476 (420)	645	409 (248, *c*)	401	218

55, 1. **persuasuros**: see on *conciliaturum*, 53, 18. — **bono animo**: 'of kindly feeling,' abl. of quality used predicatively,[1] sc. *esse*.

55, 2. **viderentur**: subj. of subordinate clause in indir. disc.;[2] the sequence depends on the main verb *existimabant*, not on the fut. infin.[3]

55, 3. **ut . . . paterentur**: *cogo*, like *persuadeo* (see on *civitati*, 52, 9), may take an obj. clause of purpose with *ut*;[4] but the infin. is commoner, cf. *dicere coegerunt*, 53, 24. — **eos**: see on *iis*, 54, 14.

55, 4. **die**: see on *itineribus*, 54, 18. For gender, see on *die*, 53, 25, and note the change of gender in the next sentence where the idea of an *appointed* day is dropped.

55, 5. **conveniant**: rel. clause of purpose.[5] For the sequence,[6] cf. *exeant*, 54, 5, and see on *essent*, 54, 11. — **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: read *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*, but translate 'March 28,'[7] though the actual equivalent in terms of our calendar is not certain, owing to the confusion into which the Roman calendar had fallen through the manipulations of the pontiffs, who had charge of it. In 46 B.C. Julius Caesar established a reform which is the basis of our present calendar.

55, 6. **consulibus**: = 58 B.C., see on 52, 8. This Piso was Caesar's father-in-law.

55, 7. CHAPTER 7. **Caesari**: note the emphatic position, and preserve the emphasis in translation by a change of construction, 'Caesar, when it (*id*) had been reported that they were undertaking . . . hastened.' See on *Gallos*, 51, 4. — **nuntiatum esset**: see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. — **eos . . . conari**: in apposition with *id*, and in indir. disc. because it is the fact reported.

55, 8. **facere**: complementary infin.[8] with *conari*; so *proficisci* with *maturat*. Note that the complementary infin. has no subject acc., but denotes another action of the subject of the verb on which it depends. — **urbe**: often = 'Rome,' the city par excellence in a Roman's

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 2, N. 2 (419, 2, 4)	643	415, N. (251, N.)	400	224, 1
2	643 (524)	788	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
3	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, *c*
4	565 (498, ii)	895	563 (331)	553, 2 & N.	295, 1
5	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
6	546 (495, ii)	805	485, *e* (287, *e*)	511, R. 1	268, 3
7	754-55 (642-44)	1171: 1174	631, *d* & *e*; 424, *g* (376, *d* & *e*; 259, *e*)	P. 491-92	371, 5: 372
8	607, N. (533)	954	456 (271)	423	328, 1

eyes. Cf. the modern use of 'town' by people living near large cities, as, 'I've been in town.' — Caesar was outside the city (as is shown by *ab*, not *ex*), for as proconsul (see Introd. § 8), with full military powers, he could not legally enter Rome. This law was a safeguard against usurpation of tyranny by a military commander.

55, 9. **quam maximis potest**: 'by the longest possible'; cf. *quam maximum*, 52, 26, without *potest*. — **itineribus**: abl. of manner. — **ulteriorem**: of Transalpine Gaul, to distinguish it from *Gallia citerior* or *Cisalpina*, in the plain of the Po.

55, 10. **ad**: note this use with the name of a town.[1] — **pervenit**: Plutarch, *Life of Caesar*, ch. 17, says that he arrived on the eighth day. The rapidity of this first move of Caesar in his Gallic campaigns is thoroughly characteristic of him; see Introd. § 16.

55, 11. **imperat**: 'makes requisition for,' with dir. obj. of what is required, and indir. obj. of that on which the demand is made.

55, 12. **legio**: the tenth, which became Caesar's favorite corps. On the Roman legion, see Introd. § 27.

55, 13. **rescindi**: with its subject *pontem* it forms the obj. of *iubet*.[2] Most verbs of ordering take the subjunctive.

55, 14. **Ubi**: see on *ubi*, 54, 6.

55, 15. **nobilissimos**: appositive to *legatos*.

55, 17. **qui**: the antecedent is *legatos*, the clause *cuius . . . obtinebant* being parenthetical. — **dicerent**: 'to say,' rel. clause of purpose, like *conveniant*, l. 5. — **sibi** (possessor[3]) **esse in animo**, etc.: 'that they purposed to march,' lit. 'that to march was to them in mind'; *facere* is subject of *esse*.

55, 19. **nullum**: somewhat emphasized, not by virtue of being at the end of the clause, which is ordinarily not a place of emphasis in the Latin sentence, but partly owing to its separation from *iter*, and partly because it is unusual to have an adj. at the end of a sentence.[4] Its unusual position gives it prominence, whereas a verb at the end is not at all emphasized because that is its commonest place. — **rogare**: sc. *se* as subject; the purpose clause *ut . . . liceat* is the obj.[5]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	418, 4 (380, ii, 1)	517	428, *a* (258, *b*, N. 2)	337, R. 4	182, 3
2	614 (535, ii)	968	563, *a* (331, *a*)	532	331, ii
3	430 (387)	542	373 (231)	349	190
4	665, 2 & 4 (561, ii & iii)	1147; 1149		672, 2 (*a*)	349; 350, 11, *a*
5	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546 & N. 1	295, 1

55, 20. **voluntate**: 'with his approval,' specification.[1] — **liceat**: not changed in mood or tense[2] from its direct form; but *haberent* is subj. merely because it is in a subordinate clause of an indir. quotation, and its tense follows the sequence of *dicerent*.[3] In translating a passage of shifting sequence do not imitate the change. Here make *rogare* and *liceat* conform to *esse* and *haberent*, 'they asked that they might be permitted'; not 'they ask that they may be permitted.' The actual words of the envoys were: *Nobis est* in animo . . . *habemus* nullum; *rogamus* ut *tua* voluntate id *nobis* facere liceat. — **memoria** (abl. of means) **tenebat**: takes indir. disc. like a verb of knowing.

55, 22. **Helvetiis**: *i.e.* the Tigurini, one of the four cantons of the Helvetians. This disaster occurred in 107 B.C. — **sub iugum**: the yoke consisted of two spears set in the ground and a third fastened across them at the tops. To be sent under the yoke was the greatest humiliation a Roman soldier could suffer. On this occasion the officer who signed the degrading terms of capitulation was convicted of treason by the home government. — **concedendum**: sc. *esse*; so with *occisum*, etc., just before. The construction is impers., 'did not think concession should be made' ('it should be conceded').

55, 23. **animo**: abl of quality used attributively; cf. *animo*, l. 1. — **data facultate**: abl. abs., expressing a condition,[4] 'if an opportunity should be given.'

55, 24. **faciundi**: gerundives of the third and fourth conjugations often end in *-undus*.[5] — **iniuria**: stronger than 'injury.'

55, 26. **dum**: 'until,' with the subj. expressing purpose,[6] 'until the men should assemble.'

55, 27. **diem**: 'time.'

55, 28. **vellent**: subj. for the same reason as *haberent*, l. 19; the tense depends on *reverterentur*, which itself depends on *respondit*. — **reverterentur**: for an imperative[7] of the original statement, which was, Diem ad deliberandum *sumam*; si quid *vultis*, ad Idus Apriles *revertimini*.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418, *a* (253, N.)	397	226
2	644, 1 (525, 1)	1032	585, *b* & N. (336, B, *a*, & N. 1)	654 & N.	318
3	547 (495, iii)	807	482, 2 (285, 2)	517	267, 1
4	575, 9 (507, 3, N. 7)	640	420, 4 (255, *d*, 4)	593, 2	227, 2, *b*
5	243 (239)	391	P. 89, ftn. 1 (12, *d*)	130, 8	116, 2
6	603, ii, 2 (519, ii, 2)	921	553 (328)	572	293, iii, 2
7	642 & 4 (523, iii)	1023	588 & N. 1 (339 & N. 1)	652	316

56, 1. CHAPTER 8. **legione, militibus**: abl. of instrument.

56, 5. **millia**: acc. of extent of space. — **XVIIII**: to be read *undeviginti;* this is the distance, following the windings of the river, from Geneva to the Pas de l'Écluse: see on *unum*, 54, 19. — **murum . . . fossamque**: the defenses of Caesar were on the left (south) bank of the Rhone, where traces of them have been found. Only five places, aggregating some three miles in length, required artificial fortification. Elsewhere the abruptness and height of the bank made it hopeless for the Helvetian wagon trains to attempt a passage. At these five places the gentler slope was cut down from the top so as to form a nearly perpendicular wall sixteen feet high, and the dirt being thrown down the bank left a ditch at the foot of the wall. It is estimated that not over three or four days were required for this work. — **pedum**: gen. of quality limiting **murum**; cf. *mensum*, 54, 11.

56, 6. **praesidia**: 'garrisons,' stationed in the forts (*castella*), which were built near the places liable to be attacked.

56, 7. **quo**, etc.: 'that the more easily.'[1] — **se invito**: 'against his will,' abl. abs.; *se* is indir. reflexive.[2]

56, 8. **conarentur**: subj. of attraction[3]; its sequence is due to *posset*, which depends on annalistic (hist.) presents.[4]

56, 9. **dies**: note the gender; see on *die*, 53, 25.

56, 10. **negat se . . . posse**: 'said that he could not' (not 'denied that he could'). — **more**: abl. of cause, 'owing to,' etc.

56, 12. **conentur**: do not preserve the primary sequence[4] in translation, 'if they attempted (not 'attempt') . . . he would (not 'will') prevent' (dir. disc., *si . . . conabimini*, *prohibebo*). — **ea spe deiecti**: 'disappointed in (lit., 'cast down from') that hope.'[5]

56, 15. **si . . . possent**: indir. question[6] depending on *conati*, which, though a participle, may be translated as a finite verb, 'tried to see if they could.' Begin the next clause with 'but.'

56, 16. **operis munitione**: 'by the strength (lit., 'defending') of the works.'

56, 17. **conatu**: for the constr., cf. *spe*, l. 12.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	568, 7 (497, ii, 2)	908	531, *a* (317, *b*)	545, 2	282, 1, *a*
2	504 (449, 1)	1046	300, 2 (196, *a*, 2)	521	244, 1, ii
3	652 (529, ii)	793	593 (342)	629	324
4	546 (495, ii)	805	485, *e* (287, *e*)	511, R. 1	268, 3
5	462 (414)	600	402 (243, *b*)	390, 2	214
6	649, ii, 3 (529, ii, 1, N. 1)	812	576, *a* (334, *f*)	460, 1 (*b*)	300, 3

56, 18. CHAPTER 9. **una**: 'only'; usually stronger than 'one.'— **qua**: instrumental abl., denoting the way by which.[1]

56, 19. **Sequanis invitis**: used like *data facultate*, 55, 23.— **angustias**: see 54, 19.

56, 20. **His**: for its position, see on *horum*, 51, 6. — **sua sponte**: 'by themselves.'

56, 21. **possent**: see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29.

57, 1. **eo deprecatore**: 'through him as mediator,' abl. abs. expressing means.[2] — **impetrarent**: pure purpose.[3]

57, 2. **plurimum poterat**: cf. *plurimum possent*, 53, 16 f.

57, 4. **filiam**, etc.: see 53, 13.

57, 5. **novis rebus**: 'revolution,' essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. verb.[4]

57, 6. **beneficio**: abl. of cause.

57, 7. **rem**: 'mission.'

57, 8. **impetrat ut . . . patiantur**: 'obtains permission for the Helvetii to go,' etc. (lit., 'obtains that they permit,' etc.); the dir. obj. of *impetrat* is the clause with *ut*.[5] So *uti . . . dent* is the obj. of *perficit*.

57, 9. **obsides**: obj. of *dent*; note its emphatic position, see on *Gallos*, 51, 4.

57, 10. **Sequani, Helvetii**: in apposition with the subject of *dent*.

57, 11. **ne . . . prohibeant, ut . . . transeant**: pure purpose, depending on *dent*. With the sequence after the annalistic presents, l. 9 ff., cf. 56, 8. — **itinere**: abl. of separation.

57, 15. CHAPTER 10. **Helvetiis . . . animo**: cf. *sibi esse in animo*, 55, 17 f.

57, 18. **non longe**: about 125 miles, no great distance for a migratory and warlike people to travel, especially when the intervening country was open and easily crossed. To be sure Helvetia was much nearer the province, but the mountains and the Rhone, with its steep banks, made the eastern part of the Roman territory more secure. — **Tolosatium**: the modern Toulouse preserves the name of the ancient city

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	476 (420, 1, 3)	644	429, *a* (258, *g*)	389	218, 9
2	489, 1 (431, 2)	640	419, *a* (255, *a*)	409	227, 1
3	568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545	282, 1
4	424 (384, i)	530	368, 3 (227, *e*, 3)	346, R. 2	187, ii, *a*
5	566 (498, ii)	895	563 (331)	553, 1	295, 1

Tolosa; so Narbonne comes from Narbo, Marseilles from Massilia. But more commonly it is an old tribal name that is preserved in a modern town name, as Parisii in Paris, Santones in Saintes (and in the name of the old province Saintonge), Carnutes in Chartres, etc.

57, 19. **quae civitas**: not 'which state,' but 'a state which,' or, beginning a new sentence, 'This state.'

57, 20. **si fieret**: indir. disc., depending on the secondary tense *intellegebat*.[1] The condition is fut., as the apodosis (fut. infin. *futurum*) shows, but the context alone makes it clear[2] that it is of the form which states the future supposition distinctly and vividly, and so had in the dir. disc. the fut. indic.[3]

57, 22. **ut . . . haberet**: subst. clause of result, subject of *futurum* [esse].[4] The subject of *haberet* is implied from *provinciae*. The tense is due to *intellegebat*,[5] being *habeat* in Caesar's original thought.

57, 23. **locis**: see on *locis*, 54, 26.

57, 25. **munitioni**: essential complement or indir. obj. of a transitive cpd. verb.[6] — **Labienum**: Caesar's most capable lieutenant throughout the Gallic War. At the outbreak of the Civil War he joined Pompey. — **legatum**: see Introd. § 32.

57, 26. **Italiam**: = Cisalpine Gaul, between the Rubicon and the Alps, which, after the subjection of the Celts (222 B.C.), had been rapidly Romanized, and was already considered a part of Italy, although not formally annexed until 43 B.C.

57, 27. **circum**: the soldiers, in accordance with Roman custom, were quartered for the winter near, not within, the city. — **Aquileiam**: an important military and commercial center at the head of the Adriatic. It was destroyed by the Huns under Attila in 452 A.D., the very year in which Venice was founded by fugitives who were seeking refuge from the barbarians.

57, 29. **per Alpes**: he apparently took the Mt. Genèvre pass.

58, 2. **Compluribus . . . pulsis**: the interlocked order, *compluribus proeliis* and *his pulsis* belonging together. Translate the participle as

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	545, ii, 1 (493, 1)	1031	484, *b* (286, R. *b*)	510	267, 2 & 3
2	Cf. 646 & 1 (527, i & ii)	1034–35	589, *a* (337, *a*)	656, 3; cf. 658	319–20
3	574, 1 & 2 (508, 2)	933	516, 1 & *a* (307, 1 & *a*)	595	302, 1
4	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, *a*, 2)	553, 4	297, 2
5	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270
6	429, 1 (386, 1)	534	370 & *a* (228 & *a*)	347	187, iii, 2

active, 'having routed these tribes.'—**ab**: with the name of a town from which distance is measured, 'he arrived on the seventh day from Ocelum'; cf. the use with *longe*.[1]—**citerioris**: see on *ulteriorem*, 55, 9.

58, 3. **extremum**: sc. *oppidum*.

58, 6. **trans Rhodanum**: Caesar crossed the Rhone above its junction with the Saône (Arar), and consequently was east of the Saône and north of the Rhone. The Segusiavi occupied territory on both sides of the Saône. It is estimated that Caesar had taken some fifty or sixty days for his journey to Italy. He now had an army of six legions, aggregating probably not far from 25,000 men (see Introd. § 27), and an unknown number of provincial soldiers (55, 10 f.).

58, 7. CHAPTER 11. **angustias**: the narrow pass of the Écluse (54, 19).

58, 8. **in Haeduorum fines**: not all of the Helvetii had yet crossed the Saône (Arar) and entered the Haeduan country, for a fourth part of them are cut to pieces on the east bank (l. 30 ff.). While their long emigrant train, plundering as it advanced, had gone some 100 miles, Caesar had been to the head of the Adriatic and back, and had levied two new legions in the meantime.

58, 11. **possent**: introduced by causal *cum*.[2]

58, 12, **rogatum**: supine, expressing purpose.[3]—**Ita . . . debuerint**: the tenor of their remarks given in indir. disc., without any introductory verb of saying further than is implied in *rogatum*. In translation supply 'saying' or a similar word.—**Ita se . . . de populo . . . meritos esse**: 'that they have served the people so well.' The Haedui had been allies of Rome since about 123 B.C., and they also claimed kinship with the Romans.

58, 14. **nostri**: with *exercitus*.—**vastari . . . debuerint**: 'ought not to have been ravaged.[4]

58, 15. **debuerint**: result clauses often take the perf.,[5] even in violation of sequence, to emphasize the result as an accomplished fact. With *meritos esse* a secondary sequence would be regular.[6] Of the

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	462, 2 (412, ii, 3)	606	428, *a* (258, *a*, N. 1)	391, R. 1	229, 2
2	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
3	633 (546)	1005	509 (302)	435	340, 1 & *a*
4	618, 2 (537, 1)	980	486, *a* (288, *a*)		270, 2
5	550 (495, vi)	806	485, *c* & N. 1 (287, *c* & R.)	513	268, 6
6	548 (495, iv)	809	585, *a* (336, B, N. 2)	518	268, 2

tenses of the infin. the perf. alone governs sequence; a subj. depending on a pres. or fut. infin. takes its sequence from the main verb; cf. *futurum ut . . . haberet*, 57, 22, and see note.

58, 17. **depopulatis**: perf. participles of deponent verbs are sometimes used passively.[1] Observe that the perf. denotes an action complete at the time of *prohibere*.

58, 18. **Allobroges**: they were subjects of Rome. The Ambarri were allies of the Haedui and therefore friendly to Rome. On these three peoples the Helvetii doubtless inflicted as much injury as they could. They appear to have observed faithfully their agreement with the Sequani (57, 12).

58, 20. **sibi**: possessor. — **solum**: note the *δ*.

58, 21. **reliqui**: partit. gen.[2] with *nihil*, 'nothing left.' — **Quibus**: see on *qua*, 51, 11. — **non exspectandum** [esse] **sibi**:[3] 'that he ought not to wait' (lit., 'that it ought not to be waited by him').

58, 22, **dum . . . pervenirent**: denotes expectation;[4] cf. **dum . . . convenirent**, 55, 26, expressing purpose. — **in Santonos**: = *in Santonum fines* (57, 17), a very common use of tribal names.

58, 24. CHAPTER 12. **Flumen**, etc.: 'there is a river, the Saône.' — **per**: 'through'; in a part of its course, too, it flowed between the Haedui and the Sequani.

58, 26. **lenitate**: abl. of quality[5]; cf. *animo*, 55, 23. — **in . . . fluat**: indir. quest.,[6] depending on *iudicari*, and forming the subject of *possit*.

58, 27. **Id**: not emphatic, but it serves to connect the thought closely with the previous sentence; cf. *his*, 56, 20.

58, 28. **transibant**: probably at a point near Trévoux, about half-way from the junction with the Rhone to Mâcon (Matisco). Note the imperf. tense; the crossing took twenty days (59, 21). — **Ubi**: see on 54, 6.

58, 29. **tres partes**: 'three fourths'; so *quattuor partes*, 'four fifths,' etc. — **partes, flumen**: objs. of a transitive verb compounded with *trans*, *flumen* belonging closely with the prep.[7]

58, 30. **citra**: *i.e.* on the east side.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	222, 2 (231, 2)		190, *b* (135, *b*)	167, N. 2	112, *b*
2	440, 5 (397, 1)	564	346, *a*, 1 (216, *a*, 1)	369	201, 1
3	431 (388)	544	374 (232)	355	189, 1
4	603, ii, 2 (519, ii, 2)	921	553 (328)	572	293, iii, 2
5	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
6	649, ii (529, i)	810	574 (334)	467	300, 1, *a*
7	413 (376)	501	395 (239, *b*)	331, R. 1	179, 1

59, 1. **Ararim**: several names of rivers have the acc. in *-im*.[1]

59, 4. **concīdit**: observe the *ī*. — It is possible, though by no means certain, that the site of this battle is marked by relics of bones, weapons, bracelets, etc., which were found in 1862 near Tıévoux in the valley of the Formans, a small tributary of the Saône.

59, 5. **mandarunt**: see on *oppugnarant*, 54, 16. — **in silvas**: limit of motion, while our idiom expresses place where, 'hid themselves in the woods.'

59, 6. **omnis, divisa est**: as in 51, 1.

59, 8. **unus**: 'alone,' see on **una**, 56, 18. — **domo**: cf. 54, 12.

59, 9. **memoria**: abl. of time within which.[2] — **Cassium**: cf. 55, 21.

59, 10. **casu, consilio**: abl. of cause.

59, 11. **quae pars civitatis . . . ea**: 'that part of the state which,' etc.; the rel. precedes its antecedent *ea*, and the subst. accompanies the rel.[3]

59, 12. **populo**: see on *munitioni*, 57, 25. — **princeps, etc.**: 'was the first[4] to pay the penalty.'

59, 14. **soceri**: this is the Piso mentioned in 55, 6, as consul of this year (58 B.C.). Caesar had married his daughter Calpurnia the year before.

59, 15. **quo Cassium**: sc. *interfecerant*.

59, 18. CHAPTER 13. **ut**: on its position, see on *vix qua*, 54, 20. — **pontem . . . faciendum curat**: 'he had a bridge built.'[5] The bridge was probably a rude structure of logs.

59, 20. **cum . . . intellegerent**: not defining the time (a meaning which requires the indic.) of the main action *mittunt*, but expressing a subordinate circumstance accompanying the main act; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. — **id**: obj. of *fecisse*.

59, 21. **diebus**: time within which. — **ut . . . transirent**: 'namely, the crossing of the river,' a result clause, appositive to *id*; see on *ut . . . exeant*, 54, 5.

59, 23. **bello Cassiano**: abl. of time when.[6] As this war came forty-nine years before (see on *Helvetiis*, 55, 22), Divico must have been an

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	102, 3, N. (62, iii, 1)	Cf. 187	74, *d* (55, *d*)	57, R. 1	38, 1
2	487 (429)	631	423 (256)	393	231
3	399, 3 (445, 9)	821	307, *b* & N. (200, *b* & N.)	616, 620	251, 4, *a*
4	497, 3 (442, N.)		290 (191)	325, R. 5	239; cf. 241, 2
5	622 (544, 2, N. 2)	994	500, 4 (294, *d*)	430	337, 7, *b*, 2
6	486 (429)	630	423 (256)	394, R.	230, 2

old man. If the Helvetii had desired to make terms with Caesar, they would hardly have sent this former conqueror of the Romans, puffed up as he was by his ancient victory.

59, 24. **Si**, etc.: Divico's speech is indirectly quoted.—**Si . . . faceret . . . ituros**: same constr. as *si fieret . . . futurum*, 57, 20.

59, 25. **pacem**: the contrast between the policies of peace and of war is emphasized by the position of *pacem* and *bello*.

59, 26. **partem**: sc. *Galliae*; they of course had no thought of returning home after having emigrated in spite of Caesar.

59, 27. **constituisset**: 'should settle'; the idea is evidently fut.,—for Caesar has not yet settled the Helvetii anywhere,—and the plpf. represents a completed act in a secondary sequence; consequently the dir. disc. had fut. perf. indic.[1]—**perseveraret**: like *faceret*, l. 25.

59, 28. **reminisceretur**: 'let him (or 'he had better') recall to mind'; for imper.[2] *reminiscere* of dir. disc.—**incommodi**: obj. of a verb of remembering.[3]

59, 29. **Quod . . . adortus esset**: 'as to his having attacked'; for *quod . . . adortus es* of the actual speech.[4]

59, 30. **transisssent**: in the perf. system of *eo*, wherever *ii* precedes *s*, contracted forms[5] were preferred; forms with *v* were generally avoided. The subj. is due merely to subordination in indir. disc.

60, 1. **possent**: like *intellegerent*, 59, 22, hence not changed in indir. disc.; and it would not change even if the introductory verb *egit* were a primary tense.—**ne . . . tribueret**: differs from *reminisceretur*, 59, 28, only in being negative; *noli tribuere* was the dir. form.[6]

60, 2. **magnopere . . . tribueret**: 'ascribe too much,' etc.

60, 3. **ut . . . contenderent**: pure result[7] of *ita didicisse*.—**virtute, dolo**, etc.: means. 'That they had learned such doctrines (*ita*) from their fathers and ancestors that they contended by means of valor more than they relied on trickery or ambuscades.'

60, 4. **Quare, etc.**: 'Accordingly he had better not give occasion for that place . . . to take,' etc.—**ne committeret**: like *ne tribueret*, l. 1 f.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	644, 2 (525, 2)	748	484, *c* (286, R., end)	244	269, 1, *b*
2	642, 4 (523, iii, N.)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
3	454 & 1 (406, ii)	588	350, *c* (219)	376	206, 2
4	588, 3, N. (516, ii, 2, N.)	847	572, *a* (333, *a*)	525, 2	299, 2
5	238, 2 (235)	332–33	203, *b* & *c* (128, *a*, 2)	131, 1	116, 1
6	561, 1 (489, 1)	728	588, N. 2 (339, N. 2)	270, R. 2	276, *c*
7	570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 1	284, 1

60, 5. **ut . . . caperet**: result, obj. of *committeret.*[1] — **constitissent**: for fut. perf. of dir. disc., since they had not yet taken their position for battle. — Divico's speech directly quoted would be: Si . . . *faciet*, . . . *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt Helvetii* ubi eos *tu*, *Caesar*, *constitueris* atque esse *volueris*; sin . . . *perseverabis*, *reminiscere* . . . Quod . . . adortus *es*, cum ii qui flumen *transierant* suis . . . possent, *noli* . . . aut *tuae* . . . *tribuere* aut *nos despicere*; *nos* . . . maioribusque *nostris didicimus* ut . . . *contendamus*[2] quam . . . *nitamur*. Quare *noli committere* ut is locus ubi *constiterimus* . . . nomen *capiat* aut memoriam *prodat*.

60, 8. CHAPTER 14. Caesar's answer is likewise indirectly quoted. — **Eo**: 'on that account,' explained by the appositive causal clause *quod* . . . *teneret*.

60, 9. **dubitationis**: partit. gen.[3] with *minus*, 'that less hesitation was allowed him from the fact that (*eo quod*) he remembered,' etc.

60, 10. **eo . . . quo**: amount of difference.[4]

60, 11. **ferre**: sc. *se* as subject. — **merito**: cf. *moribus*, 53, 23. 'He was the more annoyed by them, the less they had happened in accordance with the deserts,' etc.

60, 12. **qui** (see on *qua*, 51, 11) **si**: 'for if they' (*i.e.* the Roman people). — **alicuius**: 'some,' less indefinite than *cuius*, 'any.' — **iniuriae**: obj. gen. with an adj. of knowing; cf. *bellandi*, 52, 19. — **fuisset**: past condition of action non-occurrent or contrary to fact.[5] — **non fuisse**: 'it would not have been'; for *non fuit*[6] of dir. disc.

60, 13. **eo . . . quod**: as in l. 8 f. — **deceptum** [esse]: sc. *eum* (= *populum Romanum*) as subject. — **commissum** [esse] **a se . . . quare timeret**: 'that occasion had been given by them for fearing' ('wherefore they should fear,' rel. clause of result[7]).

60, 15. **Quod** (adverbial acc.,[8] 'as to which') **si**: 'but if.' — **contumeliae**: see on *incommodi*, 59, 28. — **vellet**: 'he (or 'they') were willing,' for *vellem* (or *vellet*) of dir. disc.[9] Whether the subject still

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	571, 3 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1
2	550 (495, vi)	806	485, *c* (287, *c*)	513	268, 7, *a*
3	442 (397, 3)	564	346, *a*, 3 (216, *a*, 3)	369	201, 2
4	479, 1 (423)	655	414, *a* (250, R.)	403	223
5	647 (527, iii)	1037	589, *b*, 1 (337, *b*, 1)	597, R. 4	321, B
6	647, 3; 583, 3 (527, iii, N. 2; 511, 1, N. 3)	940	517, *c* (308, *c*)	597, R. 3	304, 3, *a*
7	591, 2 (500, 1)	836	537, 2 (319, 2)	631	284, 2
8	510, 9; 416, 2 (453, 6; 378, 2)	507	397, *a* (240, *b*)	610, R. 2	185, 2
9	647 (527, iii)	1037	589, *b*, 1 (337, *b*, 1)	597, R. 4	321, B

remains the Roman people, or shifts to Caesar, is not certain. There is the same ambiguity in *eo invito.*

60, 16. **iniuriarum**: obj. gen. with *memoriam*, l. 18. — **quod . . . vexassent**[1]: substantive clauses in apposition with *iniuriarum*, having indic. in dir. disc.[2]

60, 18. **posse**: a purely rhetorical question, not expecting an answer, if it is of the first or third person, is treated in indir. disc. like a declarative sentence and takes the infin.[3] with subject acc. (here *se* implied). 'But if he were willing to forget the old affront, could he also set aside the memory of the fresh wrongs, their having forcibly attempted ('the fact that they had,' etc.) a journey through the province against his will, their having harried the Haedui, the Ambarri, the Allobroges?'

60, 19. **Quod . . . gloriarentur**, etc.: cf. *quod . . . adortus esset*, 59, 29 f. The subject is *Helvetii* implied. — **victoria**: of 107 B.C.

60, 20. **eodem pertinere**: 'as for their boasting, etc, . . . it all tended to the same issue' (as the old affront and the fresh wrongs), *i.e.* to the overthrow of the Helvetii. "Whom the Gods would destroy they first make mad." Caesar doubtless hoped by the bit of moralizing which he indulges in here to increase the confidence of his own soldiers, and to dispirit the enemy.

60, 21. **consuesse**: 'are accustomed.'[4] — **quo**: see on *quo*, 56, 7.

60, 22. **doleant**: 'may suffer,' preserve in translation the primary sequence of the rest of Caesar's speech. — **quos . . . velint**; the rel. clause, as often, precedes its antecedent (*his*); 'to grant unusual prosperity for a season and longer impunity (than would be expected) to those whom,' etc.

60, 24. **Cum**: in reading Latin the meaning of *cum* must be held in suspense until the context makes clear whether it is a preposition or a conjunction, and if the latter, whether it is copulative (*cum . . . tum*, 'not only . . . but also'), temporal, causal, or concessive. *Tamen* following points to concession. — **sint**: not changed from dir. disc.[5]

60, 25. **dentur**: see on *si fieret*, 57, 20. — **ea**: obj. of *facturos* [esse], the subject of which is *eos* implied.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	238 (235)	385	181, *a* (128, *a*, 1)	131, 1	116, 1
2	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, *a*
3	642, 2 (523, ii, 2)	1024	586 (338)	651, R. 1	315, 2
4	299, 2 (297, i, 2)		205, N. 2 (143, N.)	175, 5	262, A
5	598 (515, iii)	863	549 (326)	587	309, 3

60, 26. **Haeduis, Allobrogibus**: indir. objs. of the intr. verb *satisfaciant*. — **ipsis**: = the Haedui; indir. obj. of a transitive cpd. verb. Caesar's speech in dir. disc.: Eo *mihi* . . . *datur* quod eas res quas *vos, legati Helvetii, commemorastis* memoria *teneo*, atque eo gravius *fero* quo . . . *acciderunt*; qui si . . . fuisset, non *fuit* . . .; sed eo *deceptus est* quod . . . *intellegebat* . . . *putabat*. Quod si . . . *vellem* (vellet), num . . . quod *me* (eo) invito iter . . . *temptastis* . . . *vexastis*, memoriam deponere *possum* (*potest*)? Quod *vestra* victoria . . . *gloriamini*, quodque . . . *vos* impune . . . *admiramini*, eodem *pertinet*. *Consuerunt* enim *dii immortales* . . . ulcisci *volunt* . . . . si obsides a *vobis mihi dabuntur*, uti ea quae *pollicemini vos* facturos *intellegam*, et si . . . *intulistis* . . . *satisfacietis*, *ego vobiscum* pacem *faciam*.

60, 30. **consuerint**: not changed from its dir. form; see on l. 5, ftn. 2. — **eius . . . testem**: a parting taunt on the disaster of 107 B.C.

61, 6. CHAPTER 15. **coactum habebat**: it was from the use of *habeo* with a perf. part. that the modern perf. with 'have' arose; but in Caesar's time *habeo* in this combination had its full force, 'have, hold'; so here, 'he held, collected from the province.'[1]

61, 7. **qui videant**: 'to see,' rel. clause of purpose;[2] pl., referring to a collective antecedent. — **quas . . . faciant**: indir. quest., obj. of *videant*.

61, 8. **cupidius**: 'too eagerly.'[3] — **alieno**: 'unfavorable,' *i.e.* 'another's'; opposite of *suo*, 'one's own,' hence 'favorable.'

61, 9. **loco**: see on *locis*, 54, 26.

61, 10. **pauci**, etc.: the rest took to flight led by Dumnorix; see 63, 25. — **proelio**: cause.

61, 11. **equitibus, agmine**: cf. *legione* and *militibus*, 56, 1 f.

61, 13. **proelio**: manner, cf. *proeliis*, 51, 13.

61, 15. **rapinis**: separation. — **prohibere**: obj. of *habebat*, *satis* serving as pred. acc.,[4] 'he deemed it sufficient to hinder,' etc. — **Ita . . . uti**: 'in such manner that.'

61, 17. **primum** [agmen]: 'van.' — **amplius**: neuter comp. adj. used as a subst., subject of *interesset*. — **quinis**: *i.e.* five miles each day. — **millibus**: abl. of comparison.[5]

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	431, 3 (388, 1, N.)	1018	497, *b* (292, *c*)	238	337, 6
2	590 (497, 1)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
3	498 (444, 1)	678	291, *a* (93, *a*)	297, 2	240, 1
4	410, 1 (373, 1)	521	393 (239, 1, *a*)	340	177, 2
5	471 (417)	615	406 (247)	398	217, 1

61, 19. CHAPTER 16. **cotidie**: emphatic from its position; *interim* is not emphatic, but serves to connect the thought with what precedes. — **Haeduos frumentum**: both are objs.[1] of *flagitare*.

61, 20. **essent . . . polliciti**: implied indir. disc. (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), representing as the original demand, 'Give the grain which you have promised' (*estis polliciti*). — **flagitare**: infin. of intimation or hist. infin.,[2] intimating, but not distinctly declaring, repeated or persistent action. 'Meanwhile every day Caesar kept dunning the Haedui for the grain which, as he said, they had promised in the name of the state.'

61, 21. **frigora**: 'cold weather,' 'cold spells';[3] Caesar was used to the early springs of Italy. The climate of Gaul may have been colder than it is now, owing to the great extent of its forests and marshes.

61, 22. **frumenta**: 'grain crops'; the pl. is regularly used of standing grain.

61, 23. **matura**, etc.: it must have been towards the end of June, too early for the harvest in the latitude of Gaul. — **pabuli**: the lack of green fodder was due less to the weather than to the ravages of the Helvetian emigrant train which had just passed over this same route.

61, 24. **frumento**: abl. of means with *uti*.[4] — **flumine**: see on *qua*, 56, 18.

61, 26. **averterant**: westward towards the Santones. At what point they left the Saône is not certain.

61, 27. **Diem**: duration of time. — **ducere**: 'kept putting him off,' cf. *flagitare*, l. 20. *Dicere* is the same constr. — **conferri**, etc.: sc. *frumentum*; 'that it was being collected, was being brought up, was already here.'

62, 1. **diutius**: cf. *cupidius*, 61, 8. — **die**: cf. *itineribus*, 54, 18, and see note.

62, 2. **frumentum**: obj. of *metiri*, which is itself subject[5] of *oporteret*, 'the distribution of grain to the soldiers was due.' See Introd. § 41. — **oporteret**: note the sequence, depending not on *instare*, but on the verb (*intellexit*) which introduces the indir. disc.[6]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	421 (374)	522	396 (239, *c*)	339	178, 1, *a*
2	610, 1 (536, 1, N.)	708–09	463 (275)	647	335
3	138, 2 (130, 2)		100, *c* (75, *c*)	204, N. 5	55, 4, *c*
4	477, 1 (421, i)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1
5	615 (538)	971	452 (270)	422	327, 1
6	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, *a*

62, 4. **Diviciaco, Lisco**: appositives with *principibus*. — **magistratui**: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. verb.[1]

62, 5. **quem**: 'this official,' although the antecedent means 'office.' This shift in meaning by the use of a mere relative is easier in Latin than in English, because *magistratus* = both 'magistrate' and 'magistracy.' — **quem vergobretum**: the pron. is dir. obj., the subst. is pred. obj., of *appellant*;[2] cf. *Haeduos frumentum*, 61, 19.

62, 6. **in suos**: 'over his people.'

62, 7. **quod . . . sublevetur**: implied indir. disc., representing Caesar's charge, as *accuso quod . . . non sublevor*. — **possit**: as with *conferri*, 61, 27, the subject is easily implied.

62, 10. **susceperit**: changed only in person, from *susceperim*.[3] Observe that the pres. *possit*, l. 7, denotes an action incomplete, while the perf. *susceperit* denotes an action complete, at the time of the main verb.[4] — **multo**: cf. *eo*, 60, 10.

62, 13. CHAPTER 17. **quod**: rel. pron., its antecedent being the implied obj. (*id*) of *proponit*.

62, 15. **privatim**: 'as private citizens.' — **plus possint**: cf. *plurimum . . . possent*, 53, 16 f.

62, 17. **ne**[5] **. . . conferant**: 'from bringing in'; for the pl., cf. *videant*, 61, 7.

62, 18. **praestare . . . erepturi**: indir. disc. in apposition with *oratione*; 'saying that it is better,' etc.

62, 20. **debere** : sc. *eos* as subject, referring to the same persons as *multitudinem*, l. 17. — **quin . . . sint erepturi**: observe that subordinate *quin* is used only in dependence upon *negative* expressions of doubting,[6] etc.; cf. *non esse dubium quin*, 53, 16. The periphrastic form expresses more definitely than the pres. subj. the futurity of the action.

62, 21. **superaverint**: perf. subj. for fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc., 'shall succeed in overpowering.' — **una**: adv., cf. 54, 14. — **Haeduis**: dat. of the optional complement, denoting disadvantage;[7] render here by 'from.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347	187, iii, 1
2	410, 1 (373, 1)	521	393 (239, 1, *a*)	340	177, 1
3	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
4	545, i, 1 & 2 (492, 1 & 2)	799	484, *a* (286, R. *a*)	510	267, 3
5	596, 2 (505, ii, 1)	898	558, *b* (331, *e*, 2)	548	295, 3
6	595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558 & *a* (332, *g*, R.)	555, 2	298
7	427 (385, ii, 2)	539	381 (229)	347, R. 5	188, 2, *d*

62, 22. quaeque . . . gerantur: 'and what is being done,' indir. quest.; or possibly rel. clause, with implied antecedent *ea* as second subject of *enuntiari*.

62, 23. a se: Liscus, as chief magistrate.

62, 24. Quin etiam: 'in fact.' — **quod . . . enuntiarit**: see on *quod . . . adortus esset*, 59, 29.

62, 25. fecerit: for the constr., cf. *faciant*, 61, 8.

62, 26. quam diu: 'as long as.'

62, 27. CHAPTER 18. **Dumnorigem**: see on *principatum*, 53, 11.

62, 29. pluribus praesentibus: 'with many present,' abl. abs.

63, 1. dixerat, dicit: Liscus is subject.

63, 2. vera: pred. adj. with *esse*, of which the subject is the indir. disc., ll. 2–22; 'he finds the facts to be.'

63, 3. Ipsum: emphatic, 'that Dumnorix is positively the man' (cf. *designari sentiebat*, 62, 28). — **summa audacia**: 'of the utmost daring'; the abl. of quality always has a limiting adj. or gen.[1]

63, 4. rerum: see on *bellandi*, 52, 19.

63, 5. portoria: 'customs duties,' including not only taxes on imports and exports, but also tolls on all merchandise passing through the country.

63, 6. vectigalia: 'revenues' of all sorts, comprising the customs duties and also taxes on land, buildings, mines, and various industries. — **redempta**: the Haedui apparently, like the Romans, sold at auction the privilege of collecting taxes. The highest bidder paid a lump sum into the state treasury, and then through his agents extorted all he could from the people. The publicans of the New Testament were tax collectors of this sort. — **habere**: 'he has held' ('and still holds' implied); with an expression of duration of time (here *complures annos*) the pres. has the force of a continuing, not of a completed, perfect.[2] *Dumnorigem* continues to be the subject throughout the indir. disc.

63, 8. ad largiendum: gerund denoting purpose,[3] 'for bribery.'

63, 11. domi: loc.[4] — **largiter posse**: cf. *plus possint*, 62, 15.

63, 12. causa: note that with a preceding gen. the meaning is regularly 'for the sake.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
2	533, 1 (467, iii, 2)	732	466 (276, *a*)	230	259, 4
3	628 (542, iii, N. 2)	995	506 (300)	432	338, 3
4	484, 2 (426, 2)	621	427, 3 (258, *d*)	411, R. 2	232, 2

63, 14. **uxorem**: see 53, 13 f. — **ex matre**: 'on the mother's side,' a half-sister.

63, 15. **nuptum**[1] . . . **conlocasse**: 'he has given in marriage.'

63, 16. **Helvetiis**: essential complement or indir. obj. of the two intr. verbs.[2] — **suo nomine**: 'on his own account,' abl. of cause.

63, 18. **Diviciacus**: see on *principatum*, 53, 11.

63, 19. **sit**: belongs with both *deminuta* and *restitutus*, but as usual in such cases is expressed but once. — **Si quid accidat**: 'if anything should happen,' implying misfortune; a fut. supposition in the less vivid form,[3] quoted without change in a primary sequence (depending on *reperit*, l. 2, a près. of vivid narration or hist. pres., which, like *proponit*, 62, 13, is followed by primary sequence[4] throughout the quotation). The apodosis *venire* represents pres. indic. of dir. disc., 'he has the greatest hope.'

63, 20. **obtinendi**: cf. this gerundive, which is a verbal adj. limiting *regni* (lit., 'of a king's power to be obtained,' which we translate 'of obtaining a king's power'), with the gerund *largiendum*, l. 8, which is a verbal subst.

63, 21. **imperio**: 'under the supremacy,' abl. of time when.

63, 23. **quod . . . esset factum**: cf. *quod . . . adortus esset*, 59, 29 f. — **proelium**: see 61, 9 f.

63, 25. **nam . . . praeerat**: a parenthetical explanation, not part of Caesar's discovery, hence dir. disc.[5]

63, 26. **auxilio Caesari**: 'as aid (dat. of purpose[6]) for Caesar' (dat. of interest[7]).

63, 29. CHAPTER 19. **certissimae res**: 'perfectly certain facts.' — **accederent**: often pass. in force. For the mood, cf. *susceperit*, 62, 10. — **quod . . . accusaretur**: 'namely, that he had,' etc., four facts, each introduced by *quod*, and in apposition with *res*; cf. *quod . . . vexassent*, 60, 16 ff. The subjunctives are due to implied indir. disc.;[8] Caesar

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	633, 1 (546, 1)	1005	509 (302)	435	340, 1, *b*
2	426, 4, N. (385, i)	531	367 (227)	346	187, ii, *a*
3	576 (509)	936	516, *b* (307, *b*)	596, 1	303
4	546 (495, ii)	785	485, *e* (287, *e*)	509, *a*	268, 3
5	643, 3 (524, 2, 1)	1028	583 (336, *b*)	628, R. *a*	314, 3
6	433 (390, ii)	548	382, 1 (233, *a*)	356 & N. 1	191, 2, *b*
7	425, 2 (384, 1, 2)	537	376 (235, N.)	350, 2	188, 1
8	649, i (528, 1)	791	592, 3 (341, *d*)	508, 3	323

quotes facts with which he was acquainted at the time he is describing; 'that (as he knew) he had led,' etc.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10.

63, 30. **dandos curasset**: 'had effected an exchange of'; for the constr., see on *pontem . . . faciendum curat*, 59, 18. For the fact, see 57, 9 f.

64, 2. **ipsis**: Caesar and the Haedui. — **magistratu**: Liscus, the vergobret.

64, 3. **accusaretur**: observe the change of tense, 'was,' not 'had been.' — **satis . . . causae** (partit.[1]): 'reason enough.'

64, 4. **quare . . . animadverteret**: 'for him either to take action himself against him' (lit., 'why he should,' etc.), a characteristic clause,[2] changed only in tense (originally pres.) from the dir. disc.

64, 6. **unum**: 'just one (see on 56, 18) consideration,' explained by the clause with *quod* in apposition.

64, 8. **studium**: 'devotion.'

64, 9. **cognoverat**: 'was acquainted with.'[3]

64, 10. **ne . . . offenderet**: complementary or subst. clause, obj. of a verb of fearing.[4] — **eius**: 'of Dumnorix'; pronouns, owing to their variety, are clearer in Latin than in English, and frequently may be best translated by proper names. — **animum**: 'feelings.'

64, 11. **priusquam . . . conaretur**: before attempting.[5]

64, 13. **principem**: 'a (not 'the') leading man.'

64, 14. **omnium rerum**: 'in all matters'; the gen. is the case to express dependence of one subst. upon another, but in English such dependence is often not expressed by 'of.'

64, 15. **eo**: Diviciacus; so *ipso* in l. 16.

64, 16. **sint dicta**: indir. quest.

64, 17. **apud se**: 'before him,' Caesar.

64, 19. **causa cognita, statuat**: 'he may come to a decision after looking into the case.'

64, 20. CHAPTER 20. **complexus**: he falls at Caesar's feet, embracing his knees.

64, 21. **ne quid**, etc.: 'not to come to any too severe (see on *cupidius*, 61, 8) decision against his brother.' Observe that verbs of asking and

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	443 (397, 4)	564	346, *a*, 4 (216, *a*, 4)	369	201, 2
2	591, 4 (503, i)	836	535, *a* (320, *a*)	631, 1	283, 1
3	299, 2 (297, i, 2)		205, N. 2 (143, N.)	236, R.	262, A
4	567 & 1 (498, iii, N. 1)	897	564 (331, *f*)	550, 2	296, 2
5	605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, *b* (327)	577, 1	292, 1, *a*

urging (cf. l. 18 f.) take an obj. clause of purpose, with *ut* or *ne* and the subj.,[1] but not with the infin. as in English. — **Scire se**: 'saying that he knew' (not 'knows,' see on *praestarent*, 52, 11). Observe the sequence of the subjs., which take their time from *coepit*,[2] not from *obsecrare* or any of the infins. within the quotation.

64, 22. **ex eo**: neuter. — **plus . . . doloris**: cf. *satis . . . causae*, l. 3.

64, 23. **ipse**: used like the reflexives (ll. 22, 25, etc.) to refer to the speaker.

64, 24. **ille**: 'Dumnorix,' subject of the next three verbs.

64, 25. **posset**: see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. — **crevisset**: with *propterea quod*. — **quibus . . . nervis**: abl. of means.[3]

64, 27. **fraterno**: equivalent to an obj. gen.[4]

64, 28. **si quid . . . accidisset**: the apodosis *existimaturum* shows that the condition is fut., and the tense, denoting completed action, represents accordingly an original fut. perf. indic.[5] — **ei**: 'Dumnorix.'

64, 29. **cum ipse . . . teneret**: in dir. disc. *cum ego teneo* of pres. definite time,[6] or *cum ego teneam* of cause (cf. *susceperit*, 62, 10).

65, 1. **futurum uti**: 'it would result that'; the subject of *futurum* is the result clause.

65, 3. **pluribus verbis**: 'at greater length.'

65, 5. **faciat**: coördinated with *rogat*, 'begs him cease his entreating,' and equiv. to an obj. clause subordinated by *ut*.[7] — **tanti . . . esse**: 'that his friendship with him is so highly prized.'[8]

65, 6. **eius voluntati . . . condonet**: 'he will overlook . . . out of regard for his wish' (lit., 'will give up . . . to his wish,' indir. obj.).

65, 8. **reprehendat**: cf. *sint dicta*, 64, 16.

65, 10. **suspiciones**: 'suspicious actions,' the pl. being less abstract than the sing., cf. *frigora*, 61, 21.

65, 11. **condonare**: Caesar's leniency with Dumnorix was possibly in part due to his desire to gratify Diviciacus, but doubtless still more to the effect which he hoped to produce on the Gauls in general.

	H.	L M.	A.	G.	B.
1	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1
2	548 (495, iv)	808	585 (336, B)	518	Cf. 270, 1, *a*
3	477 (421, i)	646	410 (249)	407	218, 1
4	437 (395, N. 2)	571	348, *a* (217, *a*)	363, 2	200
5	644, 2 (525, 2)	748	484, *c* (286, R. *b*)	657, 4	319, *a*
6	600, i (521, i)	855	547 (325, N.)	580	289
7	565, 4 (499, 2)	781	565 & N. 1 (331, *f*, R.)	546, R. 2	295, 8
8	448 (404)	576	417 (252, *a*)	380, 1	203, 3

65, 15. CHAPTER 21. **esset**: indir. quest. depending on *cognoscerent*.

65, 16. **in circuitu**: 'all around'; Caesar's scouts were to reconnoitre the mountain on all sides, except of course where the enemy were encamped, and to discover the best means of reaching the heights above the enemy without being observed by them. — **qui cognoscerent misit**: 'sent men to find out'; rel. clauses of purpose[1] often have an indef. antecedent which is so easily understood that it need not be expressed; see on *qui*, 51, 2.

65, 17. **esse**: sc. *ascensum*.

65, 18. **pro praetore**: 'with the rank of commander,' *i.e.* invested with the right to exercise military command in the full authority of a general. A lieutenant would exercise this right only at his commander's pleasure. See Introd. § 32.

65, 19. **ducibus**: 'as guides,' appositive.

65, 20. **consili sit**: 'pertains to his plan,'[2] viz. that Labienus should swoop down on the enemy from the hill while he himself engaged them in front.

65, 22. **rei**: obj. gen. with an adj. of knowing.[3]

65, 23. **Sullae**: against Mithridates, 88–84 B.C.

65, 24. **in**, etc.: 'in that of,' etc. — **Crassi**: against Spartacus, 71 B.C.

65, 26. CHAPTER 22. **teneretur**: cf. this tense, which denotes action still going on, with *cognitus esset*, 66, 1, which denotes action completed, at the time of the main action *accurrit*.

65, 27. **passibus**: better explained as abl. of amount of difference[4] with *abesset* than as abl. of comparison with *longius*.[5]

66, 3. **a . . . insignibus**: 'from . . . ornaments,' such as plumes and horns on the helmets.

66, 5. **erat . . . praeceptum**: impers., 'orders had been given,' the subject being the purpose clause with *ne*.[6]

66, 9. **visae essent**: see on *habuerit*, 53, 10, and *si quid . . . accidisset*, 64, 28.

66, 11. **fieret**: pure purpose.

66, 18. **timore perterritum**: 'panic-stricken.'

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
2	447 (402)	556	343, *b* (214, *c*)	366	198, 3
3	450–51 (399, i, 2)	573	349, *a* (218, *a*)	374, N. 4	204, 1
4	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	425, *b* (257, *b*)	403, N. 1	223
5	471, 4 (417, 1, N. 2)	618	407, *c* (247, *c*)	296, R. 4	217, 3
6	564, ii (499, 3)	894	566 (331, *h*)	546, 2	294

66, 19. **quod**: the implied antecedent is obj. of *renuntiavisse*. — **pro viso**: 'as seen.'

66, 21. **quo consuerat intervallo**: = *eo intervallo*[1] *quo consuerat* (sequi), 'at the usual distance,' *i.e.* five or six miles; see 61, 17.

66, 23. CHAPTER 23. **diei**: poss. gen. limiting *postridie*, which was originally a substantive (lit., 'on that day's following day').

66, 24. **cum**: 'before' (lit., 'when'). — **frumentum**, etc.: see on 62, 2. — **oporteret**: 'was due,' implied indir. disc., Caesar's thought at the time being, *biduum superest cum . . . oportet*.

66, 25. **a Bibracte**: names of towns take a prep. when they denote the place from which distance is measured.[2]

66, 26. **millibus**: see on *passibus*, 65, 27.

66, 27. **XVIII**: = *duodeviginti*.

66, 28. **prospiciendum** [esse]: impers., 'provision must be made.' — **avertit**: he goes northward.

66, 29. **fugitivos**: 'runaway slaves'; deserters are *perfugae* (70, 15) or *transfugae*.

67, 2. **existimarent**: not stated as Caesar's reason, which he is willing to vouch for (with the indic., the mood of facts), but as the reason of the Helvetii which he quotes,[3] the subj. intimating that the statement is a quotation (implied indir. disc.). — **eo magis**: cf. *eo gravius*, 60, 10. — **superioribus**, etc.: abl. abs. expressing concession, 'although they had seized,' etc.

67, 3. **eo quod**: 'from the fact that,' cf. *eo sibi . . . quod*, 60, 8 f. — **re**: abl. of separation.

67, 4. **posse**: sc. *Romanos* as subject.

67, 5. **itinere converso**: 'turned back,' to follow Caesar. — **a**: 'on,' see on *a*, 51, 16.

67, 7. CHAPTER 24. **animum advertit**: has the same meaning and takes the same constructions as the far commoner compound *animadverto* (64, 4 f.). *Id* is the obj.

67, 9. **qui sustineret**: cf. *qui cognoscerent misit*, 65, 16.

67, 10. **in colle medio**:[4] 'half-way up the hill.' — **triplicem aciem**: see Introd. § 46.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	414 (250)	403	223
2	462, 2 (412, ii, 3)	606	428, *a* (258, *a*, N. 1)	391, R. 1	229, 2
3	588, ii (516, ii)	788, 791	540 (321)	541	286, 1
4	497, 4 (440, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1

67, 11. **quattuor**: the one legion which Caesar found in further Gaul on his first arrival (55, 12), and the three legions which he brought later from Aquileia (57, 27). — **summo**: 'top of.'[1]

68, 3. **ab iis**: *i.e.* the two legions of raw recruits from hither Gaul (57, 26 f.) and the auxiliary forces (Introd. § 29). Caesar was doubtless afraid to trust these troops in a pitched battle.

68, 4. **muniri**: in 1886 the remains of an ancient intrenchment were discovered on the hill of Armecy, southeast of Mont Beuvray on which Bibracte stood, and answering to the only indication given by Caesar of the site of the battle, viz. that it was within eighteen Roman miles from Bibracte (66, 25 ff.). In 1889 nine other trenches were discovered containing ashes, charcoal, and crumbling bones; and still more recently fragments of bones, armor, and weapons, have been found near by. The intrenchment is in the shape of a crescent, 300 yards wide from tip to tip, and was evidently hurriedly made to serve only a temporary purpose. There is no doubt that this is the site of Caesar's fortifications.

68, 5. **confertissima acie**: the Gauls fought in close masses, and were thus always at a disadvantage with the open, flexible battle line of the Romans.

68, 6. **phalange**: as they advanced in close order, the men in the front line held their shields before them so that they overlapped, forming an unbroken defense against the enemy's spears.

68, 8. CHAPTER 25. **suo**: sc. *equo remoto*. — **omnium**: *i.e.* of all his officers and staff, not of his cavalry. Caesar's willingness to share danger on an equal footing with his men shows us one reason for their unfailing loyalty to him. See Introd. § 16.

68, 10. **cohortatus**: before a battle a Roman officer regularly addressed words of encouragement to his army.

68, 12. **pilis**: javelins were generally thrown when the enemy were some 75 or 100 feet distant, and with such force and accuracy that the enemy's line was often broken. When the armies came together, the sword was used. See Introd. § 39.

68, 16. **Gallis . . . impedimento quod**: 'the Gauls (dat. of interest[2]) were greatly hampered ('it was for a great hindrance,' dat. of tendency

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	497, 4 (440, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
2	425, 4 (384, 1, 2)	537	376 (235, N.)	350, 1	188, 1

or service[1]) in fighting by the fact that,' etc. The clause with *quod* is subject of *erat*.[2]

68, 20. **inflexisset**: with causal *cum*.[3]

68, 21. **sinistra**, etc.: abl. abs. expressing cause, 'as the left hand (on which the shield was carried) was hampered.'

68, 23. **multi**: 'a great many,' emphasized by its position before *ut*; see on *vix qua*, 54, 20.—**iactato bracchio**: abl. abs. expressing time, 'after tossing the arm about,' in the effort to disentangle the shields.

68, 24. **manu**: abl. of separation.

68, 25. **nudo**: 'unprotected.'—**corpore**: abl. of manner.

68, 28. **passus**: acc. of extent.—**eo**: 'thither.'

68, 29. **Capto . . . et succedentibus**: observe the difference in tense, 'after they had reached the mountain and while our troops were coming up after them.'

69, 1. **novissimis** (= *novissimo agmini*) **praesidio**: cf. *Gallis . . . impedimento*, 68, 16 f.—**ex itinere**: 'right from their march,' without waiting to form a line of battle.—**ab latere aperto**: 'on the exposed flank.' This must have been the left flank here; see plan, p. 67. The flanks of the legionary troops were usually protected by auxiliaries or cavalry.

69, 2. **circumvenire**: depends on *coeperunt*, l. 4.

69, 4. **conversa signa**, etc.: 'changed front and charged in two divisions' (lit., 'bore their turned standards on' the enemy). *Conversa signa* applies only to the third line, as is clear from the next statement; the first and second lines continued to fight with the Helvetii in front, who had already been driven back from their first position (*summotis*), but had returned to the attack as soon as they saw the Boii and Tulingi coming up (*venientes*).

69, 7. CHAPTER 26. **ancipiti proelio**: abl. of manner, 'with a battle of two fronts.'—**diu**, etc.: 'there was long and sharp fighting'; cf. the translation of *erat praeceptum*, 66, 5.

69, 9. **alteri . . . alteri**: 'one party' (the Helvetii) . . . 'the other' (the Boii, etc.); observe the pl., used of two *groups*.—**se . . . receperunt . . . contulerunt**: used of orderly marching, not of a rout.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	433 (390, i)	547	382, 1 (233, *a*)	356 & R. 3	191, 2, *a*
2	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1
3	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2

69, 11. **proelio**: time when.[1] — **hora septima**: about one o'clock; see *hora* in Vocab. — **pugnatum sit**: with concessive *cum*.[2]

69, 12. **aversum**: 'turned in flight.' Caesar generously praises the bravery of the Helvetii; see also 51, 11 f.

69, 13. **pro . . . obiecerant**: 'they had drawn their carts up in front as a rampart.'

69, 14. **loco superiore**: they stood in the carts. — **venientes**: 'as they came up,' with *nostros*.

69, 16. **subiciebant**: 'hurled' (from below).

69, 17. **impedimentis**: see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

69, 18. **captus est**: agrees with the nearer subject.[3]

69, 20. **nocte**: abl. expressing duration.[4] — **Lingonum**: north of the Haedui.

69, 21. **vulnera, sepulturam**: evidently Caesar's victory had been dearly bought.

69, 22. **potuissent**: with causal *cum*.

69, 23. **Lingonas**: cf. *Allobrogas*, 60, 18; this is a Greek acc. ending,[5] and was frequently applied by the Romans to any foreign name, whether Greek or not. — **ne . . . iuvarent**: 'that they were not to aid,' indir. quotation[6] of Caesar's message, *nolite . . . iuvare*.

69, 24. **qui si iuvissent**: 'and if they should,' for *si iuveritis*, fut. perf., of dir. disc.; see on *si quid . . . accidisset*, 64, 28. — **se, etc.**: = *se eodem loco* ('on the same footing') *Lingonas habiturum quo Helvetios haberet*.

69, 28. CHAPTER 27. **Qui**: see on *qua*, 51, 11.

69, 30. **eos**: the Helvetii.

70, 1. **essent**: implied indir. disc. (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), representing *estis* in Caesar's order. — **iussisset**: sc. *Caesar*, an abrupt change of subject, as in 63, 1.

70, 2. **Eo**: as in 68, 28; for its position, see on *horum*, 51, 6. — **pervenit**: observe the perf. indic. with *postquam*.[7] — **servos**: the *fugitivi* of 66, 29.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	486 (429)	630	424, *d* (259, *a*)	393	230, 1
2	598 (515, iii)	863	549 (326)	587	309, 3
3	392 (463, i)	471	317, *c* (205, *d*)	285, 1	255, 2
4	417, 2 (379, 1)	633	424, *b* (256, *b*)	393, 2	231, 1
5	109, 5 (68)	179–80	81, 5 (63, *f*)	66, 4	47, 3
6	642, 4 (523, iii, N.)	1023	588, N. 2 (339, N. 2)	652	316, *a*
7	602, (518, N. 1)	881	543 (324)	561	287, 1

70, 3. **perfugissent**: for *perfugerunt* of the actual demand; cf. *essent*, l. 1.

70, 4. **ea**: neuter, referring to persons and things taken collectively. — **conquiruntur**, etc.: the pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.) is regular with *dum*, meaning 'while.'[1]

70, 6. **perterriti**: agrees with the persons implied in *millia*.[2] — **ne . . . supplicio adficerentur**: 'that[3] they should be visited with punishment' (viz. death).

70, 8. **quod . . . existimarent**: see on *existimarent*, 67, 2.

70, 10. **prima**: denoting a part,[4] as often; cf. *medio* and *summo*, 67, 10 f. — **ad**: 'towards.'

70, 12. CHAPTER 28. **Quod**: cf. *qui*, 69, 28. — **resciit**: note that *ubi* takes the same construction as *postquam*, l. 2; see also 54, 6; 55, 14, etc. — **quorum**: its antecedent is *his*, the indir. obj. of *imperavit*.

70, 13. **uti**, etc.: dir. obj. of *imperavit*. — **sibi**: 'in his eyes,' dat. of relation or reference.[5] — **purgati**: part. used as pred. adj. with the complementary infin.[6]

70, 14. **vellent**: cf. *essent*, l. 1. — **in . . . habuit**: a euphemism; they were put to death or sold into slavery.

70, 16. **in deditionem accepit**: they thus became not only the subjects, but the wards of Rome. — **Helvetios**, etc.: of the tribes named in 54, 12 ff., only the Rauraci are not accounted for. Possibly their name has fallen out of the Mss.

70, 19. **tolerarent**: characteristic.[7]

70, 20. **facerent**: 'furnish.' — **ipsos**: the Helvetii, etc., in distinction from the Allobroges.

70, 22. **ea . . . ratione**: 'on this account.'

70, 23. **ne . . . transirent**: neg. clause of pure purpose.

70, 26. **Boios**: contrasted with the tribes that returned home, hence occupying the most prominent place in the sentence. It is obj. of *conlocarent*. — **petentibus Haeduis**: 'to the request of the Haedui,' indir. obj. of *concessit*.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	604, 1 (467, iii, 4)	917	556 & N. (276, *e*)	229, R.	293, i
2	394, 7 (438, 6)	477	286, *b* (187, *d*)	211, R. 1, *b*	235, B, 2, *c*
3	567, 1 (498, iii, N. 1)	897	564 (331, *f*)	550, 2	296, 2
4	497, 4 (440, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
5	425, 4 (384, 4, N. 3)	546	378 & 1 (235)	352	188, 1
6	612, 1 (536, 2, 1)	957	458 (271, *c*)	206, R. 3	328, 2
7	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, *a* (320, *a*)	631, 2	283, 2

70, 27. **virtute**: pred. abl. of quality with *esse* implied. — **erant cogniti**: sc. *Boi.* — **ut . . . conlocarent**: obj. of *petentibus.*

70, 28. **concessit**: 'he gave his consent.'

70, 29. **parem . . . atque ipsi erant**: 'same . . . as[1] they themselves enjoyed.'

71, 1. CHAPTER 29. **tabulae**: 'tablets,' much like folding slates, but made of wood. The inner surface was coated with wax to hold the writing.

71, 2. **litteris**: 'letters'; the words were Celtic. The Gauls in general knew nothing of Greek, as we see from Caesar's use of it in a secret despatch to one of his officers. The druids were acquainted with the alphabet at least (138, 6); and inscriptions in the Celtic language, but with Greek letters, have been found in southern Gaul. — **et**: connects *repertae* and *relatae.* As usual, the copula (*sunt*) is expressed with only one participle.

71, 4. **qui**: interrog. adj.[2] pron. introducing an indir. quest.

71, 5. **possent**: characteristic. — **pueri**, etc.: sc. *exissent.*

71, 6. **capitum**: 'souls,' depending on *millia.*

71, 8. **ex his**: sc. *summa erat eorum* (antecedent of *qui*).

71, 9. **ad millia CCCLXVIII**: *ad* must be an adv. here, as *millia* is pred. nom., governing the number of the verb.[3] Generally with numerals *ad* may be taken as a prep.

BOOK SECOND

Campaign of 57 B.C. — [In the winter of 58–57 B.C., while Caesar was holding court and attending to other civil duties of his governorship in Cisalpine Gaul, numerous reports reached him that the Belgic tribes, afraid that the Roman arms would next be turned upon them, had all joined a conspiracy against him. With the same rapidity of action which he had shown in the previous year against the Helvetii, Caesar raised two new legions in his Cisalpine province, and at the opening of the campaigning season led his army, now consisting of eight legions and an uncertain number of cavalry and auxiliaries, over

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	657, 1, N. (554, i, 2, N.)	760	324, *c* (156, *a*)	643	341, 1, *c*
2	183, 2 (188, ii, 1)	284	148, *b* (104, *a*)	106, R.	90
3	390 (462)	473	316, *b* (204, *b*)	211, R. 1, *c*	254, 3

the Marne (Matrona) into the territory of the Remi. This tribe at once submitted and became a faithful ally. Bibrax, an important Reman town, was relieved by Caesar from a vigorous assault of the confederate Belgae, who a few days later suffered such a disastrous defeat on the Aisne (Axona) that they dispersed to their homes, soothing their pride with the agreement to rally for the defense of any district that might be invaded by the Romans. In quick succession Caesar entered the countries of the Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani, all of whom surrendered with hardly a show of opposition.]

In the Nervii, however, Caesar met a foe worthy of his steel, who not only scorned all thought of submission and declared that they would not accept any terms of peace, but fought so valiantly on the banks of the Sambre (Sabis) that they all but won a decisive victory from his veteran legions, and Caesar himself was obliged to enter the battle before the day was finally saved. Having lost a large proportion of their army in this battle, the Nervii immediately surrendered, and were kindly treated by Caesar, who warmly admired their splendid courage and ability as warriors.

[The Atuatuci were next attacked. Terrified by the sight of the Roman siege engines, they offered their submission, but making a treacherous assault on the Romans the next night, they were overpowered, and all of them, numbering 53,000 men, women, and children, were sold as slaves. At the same time several maritime tribes of northwestern Gaul were subdued by Crassus, and a number of German states, impressed by the uninterrupted successes of Caesar, sent envoys to promise obedience to all his commands.

In Italy his victories aroused great enthusiasm, and the senate decreed him the unprecedented honor of a thanksgiving service for fifteen days.]

PAGE 72, LINE 1. CHAPTER 15. **Eorum**: = the Ambiani, whose surrender had just been related. This word stands first in the sentence, not for emphasis, but to connect the thought with the preceding sentence.[1] — **quorum**: = *eorum*,[2] 'their'; a rel., equivalent to a dem., and never to be translated literally, is very frequent at the beginning of sentences, being due to the tendency, which is much stronger in Latin than in English, to preserve the connection of the thought.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	669, 1	1151			350, 9
2	510 (453)	843–44	308, *f* & N. (180, *f*)	610	251, 6

72, 2. **cum quaereret**: 'upon inquiring'; see on *cum* . . . *conaretur*, 53, 29.

72, 3. **sic**: 'the following facts'; related in indir. disc., which is introduced in Eng. by 'that.'—**esse** . . . **mercatoribus** (dat. of poss.[1]): 'traders had'; for the fact, cf. 51, 8 f.

72, 4. **pati**: sc. *eos*; the subject of an infin. is not infrequently to be implied from the context, provided its omission causes no ambiguity.—**vini**: partit. gen. with *nihil.*[2]

72, 6. **animos**: 'character.'—**existimarent**: subj. in a subordinate clause of a quotation,[3] representing the pres. indic.[4] of dir. disc. The tense depends on the past introductory verb[5] *reperiebat*, and denotes action not completed[6] at the time of the main verb. Observe that, contrary to Eng. idiom, the infins. in a quotation do not follow the sequence of the introductory verb, but keep the tense they had in dir. disc.; see on *praestarent*, 52, 11.—**esse**: the *eos* implied with *pati* is still the subject.

72, 7. **magnae virtutis**: gen. of quality,[7] equiv. to an adj. and so united to *feros* by *-que.*

72, 8. **qui** . . . **dedidissent**: 'for having surrendered,' a rel. clause expressing cause;[8] hence it had the subj. in dir. disc. The tense, originally perf., follows the sequence of *reperiebat*, and denotes action completed[9] at the time of the main verb.

72, 9. **patriam**: adj.—**sese**: subject of the following infins., referring to the implied subject (*eos*) of *confirmare.*

72, 10. **missuros**: indir. disc. depending on *confirmare*. The tense represents a fut. indic. of their actual declaration. In the fut. infin. *esse* is often omitted.

Caesar's information directly quoted would be: *Nullus est aditus* ad eos mercatoribus; nihil *patiuntur* vini . . . inferri, quod . . . *existimant; sunt homines feri* magnaeque virtutis; *increpitant* atque

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	430 (387)	542	373 (231)	349	190
2	441 (397, 1)	564	346, *a*, 1 (216, *a*, 1)	369	201, 1
3	643 (524)	1026	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
4	588, i (516, i)	851	540 (321)	540	286, 1
5	543 (491)	1031	585; 483 (336, B; 286)	509, 1	318; 267, 2
6	545, ii, 1 (493, 1)	799	484, *b* (286, R. *b*)	510	267, 3
7	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203
8	592 (517)	839	535, *e* (320, *e*)	633	283, 3, *a*
9	545, ii, 2 (493, 2)	799	484, *b* (286, R. *b*)	510	267, 3

incusant . . . qui se . . . *dediderint* . . . *proiecerint*; *confirmant* sese . . . accepturos.

Direct form of the clauses depending on *existimarent*, l. 6, and *confirmare*, l. 9: His rebus *relanquescunt animi* et *remittitur virtus*, and Neque legatos *mittemus* (or *missuri*) neque ullam . . . *accipiemus* (or *accepturi sumus*).

72, 12. CHAPTER 16. **Cum . . . fecisset**: cf. the tense with *cum quaereret*, l. 2, and see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. — **eorum**: the Nervii. Caesar entered their territory from the southwest, and was now north of the Sambre (Sabis). For his route before reaching the Nervii, see summary of Book II, p. 287. — **triduum**: acc. of duration of time.[1] — **inveniebat**: followed by indir. disc. to the end of the chapter.

72, 13. **Sabim**: see on *Ararim*, 59, 1.

72, 14. **millia**: acc. of extent, not affected in construction by *amplius*.[2] — **trans**: on the south bank.

72, 15. **una**: adv.

72, 16. **his** and **uti . . . experirentur**: see on *civitati*, 52, 9.

72, 17. **utrisque**: the pl. is used only of two *groups*. — **persuaserant**: the indic.[3] shows that this is merely an explanation for the reader, and not a part of what Caesar learned from prisoners.

72, 19. **mulieres**; obj. of *coniecisse*, the implied subject of which is *eos*, clearly referring to the Nervii, who are the people most prominent in the narrative. — **quique**: = *eosque qui*, see on *qui*, 51, 2.

72, 20. **eum**: 'a.' — **quo**: 'to which,' adv.

72, 21. **esset**: subj. in a clause of characteristic[4] introduced by a rel. adv. (= *in quem*).

Direct discourse of ll. 13–21: *Sabis flumen . . . abest*; trans id flumen *omnes Nervii consederunt* adventumque . . . *exspectant* . . . *exspectantur* etiam ab iis Atuatucorum *copiae* atque *sunt* in itinere; mulieres quique . . . *videbantur* . . . *coniecerunt*, quo . . . non esset (possibly *sit*, depending on a perf. definite, but secondary sequence is usual[5]).

73, 2. CHAPTER 17. **qui . . . deligant**: 'to select,' rel. clause of

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	417 (379)	513	423 (256)	336	181, 1
2	471, 4 (417. N. 2)	618	407, *c* (247, *c*)	296, R. 4	217, 3
3	643, 3 (524, 2 1)	Cf. 1028	583 (336, *b*)	628, R. (*a*)	314, 3
4	591, 1 (503, i)	836	535 (320)	631, 2	283, 1
5	546 (492, 2, N. 1)	785	485, *a* (287, *a*)	511, R. 3	268, 1

purpose.[1] Cf. the primary sequence,[2] depending on a pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.[3]), with that of *occuparet*, 53, 10. — **castris idoneum**: see Introd. § 43.

73, 3. **Cum . . . facerent**: 'inasmuch as several . . . were following Caesar and marching along with him.' The subj. is regularly used with causal cum.[4] The part., as often, is best translated by a verb. — **ex . . . Gallis**: equivalent to a partit. gen. with *complures*.[5]

73, 5. **ut**: observe that the indic. follows, hence it does not mean 'that.'

73, 6. **eorum . . . perspecta**: 'having observed our army's way of marching in those days'; the Latin gen. is often not to be expressed by 'of,' and the abl. abs. should not be translated literally.

73, 7. **nocte**: abl. of time when.[6]

73, 8. **singulas**: 'each two' (as they marched along one by one).

73, 9. **numerum**: 'amount.'

73, 10. **negoti**: cf. *vini*, 72, 4. — **castra**: used inexactly of the place selected for the camp. — **venisset, abessent**: for fut. perf. and fut. indic.[7] of dir. disc.; for the subj., see on *existimarent*, 72, 6.

73, 11. **spatium**: extent of space.[8] — **hanc**: the *prima legio*. — **sub sarcinis**: *i.e.* before the soldiers could lay down their packs and equip themselves for fighting.

73, 12. **qua . . . direptis**: abl. abs. expressing condition, equivalent to fut. perf. indic., 'if this should be routed,' etc.; the apodosis is *futurum*, 'the result would be.' — **ut . . . auderent**: subst. clause of result, subject of *futurum*,[9] taking its sequence from *demonstrarunt*, l. 8.

73, 13. **Adiuvabat**, etc.: the subject is the subst. clause *quod . . . effecerant*:[10] 'there was support, too, for the plan of those who reported the matter in the fact that the Nervii,' etc.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
2	546 (495, ii)	805	485, *e* (287, *e*)	511, R. 1	268, 3
3	532, 3 (467, iii)	733	469 (276, *d*)	229	259, 3
4	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
5	444 (397, 3, N. 3)	563	346, *c* (216, *c*)	372, R. 2	201, 1, *a*
6	486 (429)	630	423 (256)	393	230
7	600, i (521, i)	855	547 (325, *c*)	580	289
8	417 (379)	513	425 (257)	335	181
9	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, *a* (332, *a*, 2)	553, 3	297, 2
10	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, *b*

73, 15. **equitatu**: abl. of specification.[1] — **nihil possent**: 'had no strength'; for the mood, cf. *facerent*, l. 4. — **neque enim**: 'and in fact . . . not.'

73, 16. **rei**: 'branch of the service'; *res* often refers to a preceding subst., here to *equitatu*. The dat. is essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. verb; cf. *his*, 72, 16. — **quicquid . . . copiis**: 'whatever strength they have lies in their foot-forces.'

73, 17. **quo . . . impedirent**: 'in order to hamper'; *quo* is the regular final particle if there is a comparative in the purpose clause.[2] — **praedandi**: gerund; see on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

73, 18. **venissent**: subj. of implied indir. disc.,[3] *i.e.* not depending on a formal verb of saying or thinking, but implying by the mood that it is an indirect quotation of the thought in the minds of the Nervii when they formed their purpose, which was, 'In order to hamper the cavalry of our neighbors in case they come (lit., 'shall have come') against us, we will construct hedges.' As the plpf. tense expresses completed action and the thought is future, the original tense must have been fut. perf.;[4] cf. *venisset*, l. 10. — **teneris**, etc.: 'they cut into young trees and bent them over, and as the branches grew out thickly on the sides (lit., 'in width') and bramble-bushes and briers were planted between the trees, they had produced the result that these hedges,' etc.

73, 20. **ut . . . praeberent**: complementary or subst. clause of result, obj. of *effecerant*.[5] — **instar**: in apposition with *munimentum*.

73, 21. **quo**: 'through which' (lit., 'into which' = *in quod*, cf. 72, 20). — **intrari, perspici**: impers. passives.

73, 22. **posset**: rel. clause of result,[6] 'so that through it not only no entrance could be made, but no view even could be gained.' Similar hedges may be seen to-day in the neighborhood of the Sambre.

73, 23. **sibi**: dat. of agent with the gerundive.[7] — **consilium**: the plan of attack suggested in ll. 9–12.

73, 25. CHAPTER 18. **haec**: 'as follows.' — **locum**: see on *itineribus*, 54, 18.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
2	568, 7 (497, ii, 2)	908	531, *a* (317, *b*)	545, 2	282, 1, *a*
3	649, i (528, 1)	791	592, 1 (341, *b*)	508, 3	323
4	540 (473)	748	478 (281)	244	264
5	571, 3 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1
6	591, 2 (500, i)	836	537, 2 (319, 2)	631	284, 2
7	431 (388)	544	374 (232)	355	189, 1

73, 26. **aequaliter declivis**: 'with even decline.' This is the hill of Neuf-Mesnil on the north bank of the Sambre. The site of the battle is fixed by the fact that no other part of the river corresponds to all the details given by Caesar.

73, 27. **quod**: agrees with *flumen*; cf. 52, 14 and 16, where the pron. agrees with the proper name. — **supra**, in 72, 13.

73, 28. **pari acclivitate**: 'of like ascent,' abl. of quality[1] limiting *collis*, equiv. to an adj. 'equally steep'; cf. *magnae virtutis*, 72, 7. Note that both the gen. and the abl. of quality require a limiting adj. or its equivalent. — **adversus**, etc.: 'facing this (the hill of Neuf-Mesnil) and opposite to it,' on the south bank of the river.

73, 29. **passus CC** [= *ducentos*]: cf. *spatium*, l. 11. — **infimus** 'at the foot,'[2] contrasted with *ab* (see on *a*, 51, 16) *superiore parte*, 'on the upper part.'

73, 30. **perspici**: impers. as in l. 22. — **posset**: pure result.[3]

74, 2. **secundum**: preposition.

74, 3. **Fluminis**: the change of subject from the hill to the river is made clear at once by putting this word first. If *altitudo* preceded, a Roman reader would be expecting a measurement of the mountain. Latin puts at the beginning of sentences either emphasized words (as here) or phrases which unite the thought closely with what precedes; see on *eorum* and *quorum*, 72, 1. — **pedum**: gen. of quality, used predicatively like *magnae virtutis*, 72, 7.

74, 5. CHAPTER 19. **omnibus copiis**: the abl. of accompaniment[4] may be used without *cum* in military phrases when there is a limiting adj. — **aliter se habebat ac**: 'was different from what,' etc. (lit., 'had itself otherwise than'[5]; with this use of *ac* cf. *parem . . . atque*, 70, 29). The verb is sing. because the subjects form one unit; see on *dividit*, 51, 5.

74, 7. **hostibus**: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. verb.[6] — **consuetudine**: cf. *moribus*, 53, 23.

74, 8. **expeditas**: *i.e.* not impeded by the slowly moving baggage train; but the soldiers carried their individual packs (*sarcinae*). See Introd. §42.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
2	497, 4 (440, 2, N. 1)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
3	570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 2	284, 1
4	474, 2, N. 1 (419, 1, 1)	634	413, *a* (248, *a*, N.)	392, R. 1	222, 1
5	657, 1, N. (554, i, 2, N.)	760	324, *c* (156, *a*)	643	341, 1, *c*
6	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347	187, iii

74, 9. **conlocarat**: cf. the form[1] with *demonstrarunt*, 73, 8. Beware of confusing this verb with *colligo*.

74, 10. **proxime**: the XIIIth and XIVth legions had been levied by Caesar in Cisalpine Gaul in the spring of this year. As in the battle with the Helvetii, the raw recruits are kept in the background; cf. 68, 1 ff., and see on *ab iis*, 68, 3.

74, 11. **praesidio**: dat. of tendency or service,[2] accompanied as usual by a dat. of interest, 'were a protection to the baggage.' On the Roman order of march, see Introd. § 45.

74, 13. **Cum . . . reciperent**, etc.: note the imperf., expressing action going on at the time of the main verb *coeperunt*; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. The Roman cavalry and light-armed troops, by keeping the enemy occupied on the south side of the river, thwarted the plan of attacking immediately the first legion to arrive; see 73, 10 ff.

74, 14. **silvas, silva**: probably denoting by the pl. the different parts of the woods into which the enemy ran, and by the sing. the whole woods collectively.

75, 1. **quem ad finem**: 'to the limit to which,' the antecedent standing only in the rel. clause. Cf. 73, 25, where the antecedent (*loci*) is repeated in the rel. clause.

75, 2. **porrecta**, etc.: 'the stretch of (lit., 'stretched') open ground.' — **cedentes**: 'as they retreated,' agreeing with the implied obj. (*eos*) of *insequi*.

75, 3. **opere dimenso**, etc.: 'marked out the works and began,' etc. (lit., 'the works having been marked out they began'). For the pass. use of a dep. perf. part., see on *depopulatis*, 58, 17. Cf. this perf. part., denoting action complete at the time of *coeperunt*, with the pres. *cedentes*, which expresses action going on at the time of *auderent*.

75, 5. **Ubi**: see on 54, 6. — **prima**: 'the first part of,' see on *infimus* in 73, 29.

75, 6. **quod tempus**: 'the time which.'

75, 7. **committendi proeli**: 'for beginning battle,' limits *tempus*; see on *eorum . . . perspecta*, 73, 6. — **ut**: 'just as,' expressing manner.

75, 8. **sese confirmaverant**: 'had resolved.'

75, 12. **viderentur**: cf. *posset*, 73, 30.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	238 (235)	385	181, *a* (128, *a*, 1)	131, 1	116, 1
2	433 (390, i)	547	382, 1 (233, *a*)	356	191, 2, *a*

75, 13. **adverso colle**: 'up the hill,' abl. abs. expressing the way by which.[1]

75, 14. **occupati**: adj., 'busy' on the works of fortification (*opere*). Caesar here neglected, while building camp, the usual precaution of keeping a detachment under arms. His carelessness cost him dear.

75, 15. CHAPTER 20 **Caesari**: see on *sibi*, 73, 23.

75, 17. **agenda**: 'to be done,' gerundive;[2] so *proponendum* (sc. *erat*), *revocandi* (sc. *erant*), etc.

75, 18. **vexillum**: a large red banner was displayed at the general's quarters as a signal for battle.

75, 19. **signum**: the signal for "falling in."

75, 20. **opere**: as in l. 14.

75, 21. **paulo**: amount of difference.[3] — **longius**: 'too far.'[4] — **aggeris**: 'materials for the rampart' of the camp; an unusual meaning. — **petendi**: 'of searching for materials' (lit., 'of materials to be sought'), gerundive, attributive with *aggeris;* the other gerundives of this sentence are predicative, but all are equiv. to verbal adjs.,[5] agreeing with their substantives. See on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

75, 22. **causa**: 'for the sake of,' so regularly when following a gen. — **arcessendi** [erant]: the subject is the implied antecedent (*ii*) of *qui;* see on *qui*, 51, 2.

75, 24. **cohortandi**: see on *cohortatus*, 68, 10. — **signum**: for beginning battle.

75, 29. **subsidio**: see on *praesidio*, 74, 11.

75, 30. **proeliis**: abl. of means.

76, 1. **quid . . . oporteret**: indir. quest.,[6] obj. of *praescribere*, taking its sequence from the finite verb (*poterant*) on which *praescribere* depends.[7]

76, 2. **et quod**, etc.: the second of the two helpful circumstances. — **ab opere**, etc.: 'the several lieutenants . . . from the works and their several legions.' Each legion was under the immediate command of a lieutenant. See Introd. § 32.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1		644	429, *a* (258, *g*)		218, 9
2	237 (234)	356	194, *b* (129)	129	115
3	479, 1 (423)	655	414 (250)	403	223
4	498 (444, 1)	678	291, *a* (93, *a*)	297, 2	240, 1
5	623 (543)	988	503 (296)	427	339, 1
6	649, ii (529, i)	810	573 (334)	467	315, 1
7	548 (495, iv)	808	484, *b* (286, R. *b*)	518	Cf. 270, 1

76, 4. **nisi munitis castris**: 'until the camp had been fortified.'

76, 5. **nihil**: adverbial acc.,[1] equiv. to an emphasized *non*, 'they did not wait any longer at all' (**iam** with a neg. = 'no longer').

76, 7. CHAPTER 21. **necessariis**, etc.: 'having given only the necessary orders.'

76, 9. **decucurrit**: sc. *in eam partem*. For the antecedent standing only in the rel. clause, cf. *quem ad finem*, 75, 1. — **ad . . . decimam**: for the position of the armies at the beginning of the battle see the plan, p. 74. This was Caesar's favorite legion, as he himself says elsewhere.

76, 10. **non longiore oratione** (abl. of means) . . . **quam uti**: 'in a speech not longer than merely that,' etc.

76, 11. **uti . . . sustinerent**: complementary or subst. clauses, objs. of *cohortatus*.[2]

76, 12. **animo**: loc. abl.[3] — **que**: 'but.'

76, 13. **quam quo**: 'than a distance to which'; cf. *quo*, 72, 20. — **posset**: characteristic. See on *esset*, 72, 21.

76, 16. **pugnantibus**: 'already fighting'; for the omission of the pronoun (*iis*), cf. *cedentes*, 75, 2, For the case, see on *hostibus*, 74, 7.

76, 17. **hostium**: poss. gen. with *animus*.

76, 18. **insignia**: 'ornaments,' such as the crests of the helmets, which may have served to distinguish the legions, and doubtless indicated the rank of the wearer; also metal decorations for valor, worn on the breast and arms. These had been stowed away during the march.

76, 19. **galeas**: on the march the soldier carried his helmet suspended on his breast. The shield, which was often highly ornamented, was kept in a leather case when not in use.

76, 20. **scutis**: abl. of separation.[4]

76, 21. **defuerit**: pure result; for the tense, see on *debuerint*, 58, 15. — **Quam . . . in partem**: 'to whatever place.'

76, 22. **quaeque**, etc.: 'and whatever standards he caught sight of first, by these he took his position.'

76. 23. **suis**: sc. *signis*; each maniple had its standard. See Introd. § 40. — **dimitteret**: neg. clause of pure purpose.[5]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	416, 2 (378, 2)	507	390, *d*, N. 2 (240, *a*)	333, 1	176, 3
2	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1
3	485, 1 (425, 1, 2)	625	429, 3 (254, *a*)	385, N. 1	228, 1
4	462 (413)	600	401 (243)	390, 2	214
5	568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545, 3	282, 1

76, 24. CHAPTER 22. **ut**: cannot mean 'that' with the indic.

76, 26. **cum . . . resisterent . . . impediretur**: cf. *cum . . . facerent*, 73, 3 f. — **diversae**: 'separately.'[1] — **aliae alia in parte**: 'some in one place, some in another,' the regular meaning of *alius* when repeated in different cases.

76, 27. **ante**: see 73, 18 ff.

76, 28. **interiectis**: with *saepibus*, abl. abs. expressing cause. — **neque . . . poterant**: the main clause, 'no definite reserves could be posted,' etc., *i.e.* with definite orders to support the tenth legion for instance; for Caesar could not tell where reënforcements were to be most needed.

76, 29. **quid . . . esset**: indir. quest. depending on *provideri*, and equiv. to a subst. in the nominative parallel with *subsidia* and *imperia*. For sequence, see on *quid . . . oporteret*, l. 1. — Render this long Latin sentence by two sentences in English. Make *instructo exercitu* the leading clause of the first sentence, 'the army was drawn up,' and begin a new sentence with *cum*. English does not admit so readily as Latin many subordinate clauses in one sentence.

77, 1. **fortunae**: contrasted with *rerum*, 'circumstances,' and depending on *eventus*.

77, 4. CHAPTER 23. **acie**: gen.[2] For the positions of the Roman and Belgian forces at the beginning of the battle, see the plan, p. 74. — **pilis**: see on 68, 12.

77, 6. **Atrebates**: acc. — **ea pars**: the Roman left.

77, 7. **loco superiore**: the higher ground up which the enemy charged after crossing the river; see 75, 13.

77, 8. **conantes**: see on **cedentes**, 75, 2.

77, 9. **impeditam**: 'hampered as they were' by the river. — **Ipsi**: the Roman pursuers.

77, 10. **progressi**: they drove the enemy up the hill south of the Sambre (73, 28). — **rursus resistentes hostes**: acc.; note the pres. part. expressing action not completed at the time of the main verb (*coniecerunt*), 'as the enemy were again making a stand.'

77, 11. **redintegrato**, etc.: 'they renewed . . . and threw them,' etc.

77, 12. **diversae**: as in 76, 26.

77, 13. **quibuscum**: see on 51, 10.

77, 14. **ex loco**: with *profligatis*.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	497 (443)		290 (191)		239
2	134, 2 (120)	236	98, N. (74, *a*)	63, N. 1	52, 3

77, 15. **a fronte**: 'on the front'; see on *a*, 51, 16.

77, 16. **cum**: causal.

77, 17. **intervallo**: amount of difference.[1] — **constitisset**: with two or more sing. subjects the verb is often sing.[2]

77, 18. **agmine**: abl. of manner.[3] — **duce Boduognato**: 'under the leadership of B.,' abl. abs.

77, 20. **aperto latere**: apparently the left flank, exposed by the departure of the other legions in pursuit of their adversaries. — **legiones**: the XIIth and VIIth. — **summum castrorum** (poss. gen.) **locum**: 'the summit occupied by the camp.'

77, 22. CHAPTER 24. **levis armaturae**: gen. of quality.[4] These were the slingers and bowmen of 74, 11 f. See Introd. § 29.

77, 23. **una**: adv. — **quos**: refers to both *equites* and *pedites*.

77, 24. **dixeram**: in 75, 10.

77, 25. **adversis**: 'face to face.' For the case of *hostibus*, cf. *pugnantibus*, 76, 16.

77, 27. **summo iugo**: the camp was laid out on the sloping summit of the hill so that the rear gate should be at the highest point.

77, 28. **victores**: 'victoriously,' cf. *diversae*, 76, 26.

77, 29. **egressi**: translate this part. by a finite verb and begin the next clause with 'but.' — **respexissent**: with this tense, which denotes that the action of looking back *preceded* their flight, cf. *reciperent*, l. 25, meaning that they were *in the act* of retreating when they met the enemy; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29.

77, 30. **versari**: this tense denotes an action still going on at the time of *vidissent*, whereas *transisse* (l. 28) expresses an action completed at the time of *conspexerant*.[5]

78, 1. **qui,** etc.: the baggage train was coming up, with the XIIIth and XIVth legions in the rear; see 74, 10, and the plan.

78, 2. **alii aliam,** etc.: cf. *aliae alia*, etc., 76, 26. — **ferebantur**: 'rushed,' reflexive use of the pass.[6]

78, 4. **virtutis opinio**: 'reputation for courage.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	417, 3 (379, 2)	655	425, *b* (257, *b*)	403	223
2	392 (463, i)	471	317, *c* (205, *d*)	285, Exc. 3	255, 2
3	473, 3 (419, iii)	636	412 (248)	399	220, 1
4	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203
5	617 (537)	978	486 (288)	281, 1 & 2	270, 1, *a* & *b*
6	517 (465)	687	156, *a* (111, *a*)	218	256, 1

78, 5. **multitudine**: abl. of means.

78, 6. **compleri**, etc.: indir. disc., depending on *vidissent*. For the tense, see on *versari*, 77, 30. — **legiones**: the XIIth and VIIth.

78, 7. **Numidas**: the *sagittarii* of 74, 12.

78, 9. **domum**: limit of motion.[1]

78, 10. **pulsos** [esse]: indir. disc. — **castris**: abl. of means with *potitos*[2] [esse].

78, 12. CHAPTER 25. **Caesar**: subject of *processit*, 79, 4. This sentence is an unusually long example of the Latin period. The principal subordinate ideas are expressed by a participle (*profectus*, l. 15), a long clause introduced by *ubi* (l. 15) and closing with *posset* (79, 2), and an abl. abs. *scuto . . . detracto* (79, 2). In translation, — which should not be undertaken until the meaning of the whole sentence is understood in the Latin, — end the first sentence with *profectus*; omit *ubi*, and render the participles in the abl. abs. by finite verbs, making as many separate sentences as seems desirable.

78, 15. **signis**: each of the thirty maniples of a legion had its own standard, which it followed in battle, but in this instance, owing to the confusion with which the men had fallen in (76, 21 f.) and the suddenness of the enemy's attack, no definite arrangement of troops was possible, and the standards had all been gathered in one place.

78, 17. **sibi . . . impedimento**: 'hindered each other in fighting'; see on *praesidio*, 74, 11.

78, 19. **centurionibus**: there were six in each cohort; see Introd. § 35.

78, 20. **signifero, signo**: 'a (not 'the') standard-bearer, a standard.' There were three maniples in a cohort, each having its own standard, but the cohort as a whole had no separate standard.

78, 23. **in his**: 'among them.' — **primipilo**: with *confecto*. Baculus is active again in the following winter (83, 28).

78, 27. **esse tardiores**: 'were too slow,'[3] indir. disc., depending like the following infins. on *vidit* (l. 18).

78, 28. **ab novissimis**: 'in the rear'; cf. *a fronte*, 77, 15. — **proelio**: abl. of separation.[4]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B
1	419, 1 (380, 2, 1)	519	427, 2 (258, *b*)	337	182, 1, *b*
2	477, 1 (421, i)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1
3	498 (444, 1)	678	291, *a* (93, *a*)	297, 2	240, 1
4	462 (414)	600	402 (243, *b*)	390, 2	214

78, 29. **neque . . . et**: correlatives; translate, 'while they did not . . . yet they were,' etc.

79, 1. **vidit**: repeated from 78, 18, for the sake of clearness.

79, 2. **posset**: characteristic.[1] The XIIIth and XIVth legions were not yet on hand, being in the rear of the baggage train, which was just coming up (78, 1). — **militi**: dat. of the optional complement expressing disadvantage;[2] render by 'from.'

79, 3. **eo**: adv.

79, 4. **nominatim appellatis**: this helps us to understand Caesar's popularity with his troops. See also on *omnium*, 68, 8. Miles Standish boasts in Longfellow's poem, *The Courtship of Miles Standish* (Ch. I):

> "And, like Caesar, I know the name of each of my soldiers!"

79, 6. **manipulos laxare**: 'to open out the ranks,' that each man might have more room for wielding his sword.

79, 7. **quo . . . possent**: see on *quo . . . impedirent*, 73, 17. — **gladiis**: cf. *castris*, 78, 10.

79, 8. **Cuius**: = *eius*, see on *quorum*, 72. 1. — **adventu**: abl. of cause.

79, 9. **militibus**: dat. of essential complement or indir. obj. with a transitive cpd. verb.[3] — **cum**: causal.

79, 11. **extremis . . . rebus**: 'extreme danger'; see on *res*, 53, 22.

In connection with this episode, cf. the comments which Longfellow puts into the mouth of Miles Standish (Ch. II):

> "Now do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
> When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
> And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
> There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
> Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
> Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
> Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
> So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.
> That's what I always say; if you wish a thing to be well done,
> You must do it yourself, you must not leave it to others!"

79, 17. CHAPTER 26. **ut . . . coniungerent**: complementary or subst. clause, second obj. of *monuit*.[4]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, *a* (320, *a*)	631, 2	283, 2
2	427 (385, ii, 2)	539	381 (229)	347, R. 5.	188, 2, *d*
3	429, 1 (386, 1)	534	370, *a* & N. 1 (228, N. 1)	347, R. 3	187, iii, 2
4	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1

79, 18. **conversa**, etc.: 'face about and charge the enemy.' Probably the result of this manoeuvre was to present a front to the enemy on all sides. This may have been effected, if the two legions were drawn up side by side, by the rear lines facing about while the maniples on the extreme wings faced out.

79, 20. **cum**: causal. — **aliis alii**: cf. *aliae alia*, etc., 76, 26.

79, 21. **ne . . . circumvenirentur**: complementary or subst. clause, obj. of a verb of fearing.[1] The tense expresses action going on at the time of *timerent*, which itself denotes incomplete action at the time of the past tense *coeperunt*.[2] — **aversi**: 'in the rear' (lit., 'being turned away' from the enemy).

79, 23. **duarum**: the XIIIth and XIVth.

79, 25. **proelio**, etc.: 'received word of the battle, and quickening their speed they were caught sight of'; remember that the abl. abs. is not to be translated literally. — **summo**: near the Roman camp.

79. 26. **Labienus**: he was in command of the Xth legion, which with the IXth had pursued the Atrebates across the river (77, 3 ff.).

79, 28. **gererentur**: indir. quest.

79, 29. **subsidio**: dat. of purpose,[3] accompanied as usual by a dat. of interest. — **Qui**: pl., of the *milites* implied in *legionem*.

80, 1. **versaretur**: see on *captus est*, 69, 18.

80, 2. **nihil**, etc.: 'they made all possible speed' (lit., 'made nothing left for themselves in regard to speed'). — **reliqui**: pred. gen.[4]

80, 4. CHAPTER 27. **qui . . . procubuissent**: 'such as had fallen,' a characteristic clause; cf. *posset*, 79, 2.

80, 5. **scutis**: abl. of means. — **redintegrarent, occurrerent, praeferrent**: pure result.[5]

80, 6. **hostes**: acc. — **inermes**: 'though unarmed,' with *calones*. — **armatis**: for the case, cf. *pugnantibus*, 76, 16.

80, 7. **delerent**: pure purpose.[6]

80, 8. **pugnando**: gerund, abl. of specification,[7] 'showed themselves superior in fighting.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	567, 1 (498, iii, N. 1)	897	564 (331, *f*)	550, 2	296, 2
2	545, ii, 1 (493, 1)	799; 804	484, *b* (286, R. *b*)	510	267, 3
3	433, 2 (390, ii)	548	382, 1 (233)	356, N. 1	191, 2, *b*
4	447 & 1 (403)	556	343. *b* (214, *c*)	369, R. 2	198, 3
5	570 (500, ii)	905	537, 1 (319, 1)	552, 1	284, 1
6	568 (497, ii)	899	531, 1 (317, 1)	545, 1	282, 1
7	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226

80, 9. **extrema**: 'last.'

80, 10. **iacentibus**: for the case, cf. *armatis*, l. 6.

80, 11. **his**: the *proximi*.

80, 12. **superessent**: cf. *procubuissent*, l. 4. — **ut ex tumulo**: 'as from a mound.'

80, 13. **conicerent**: in the same construction as *insisterent*. — **pila**: not so general a word as *tela*.

80, 14. **ut . . . deberet**: 'so that the verdict ought to be that it was not without reason that men of such great courage,'[1] etc. The result depends on the whole of the preceding sentence, *At . . . remitterent*.

80, 16. **altissimas**: the banks here are steep and over twenty feet high. — **quae**: refers to the preceding infins., 'deeds which.' — **facilia**: pred. adj.

80, 17. **ex**: 'instead of.' The Nervii gave Caesar one of his hardest contests and well deserved his praise of their prowess. Cf. his commendation of the Helvetii, 69, 12.

80, 18. CHAPTER 28. **ad internecionem**: an exaggeration, although Caesar, judging from the reports of the envoys who came to sue for peace (l. 25 f.), may have believed it to be the truth. In 54 B.C. the Nervii were strong enough to join a revolt against Caesar, and in 52 B.C. they furnished a contingent of 6000 men for the relief of Alesia (159, 14 f.).

80, 20. **natu**: abl. of specification. — **pueris**: 'children,' so often in the pl.

80, 21. **dixeramus**: in 72, 19 ff.

80, 22. **cum**: as in 79, 20. — **victoribus, etc.**: 'that for the victors nothing was (sc. *esse*) forbidden (lit., 'hindered'), for the conquered there was no security.'

80, 23. **consensu**: manner.

80, 24. **commemoranda**: see on *petendi*, 75, 21.

80, 25. **DC**: note that this is abl. (*sescentis*), while D after *ad* is acc.

80, 26. **possent**: characteristic, hence it was subj. in dir. disc.

80, 27. **Quos**: see on *quorum*, 72, 1. — **usus** [esse] **videretur**: 'that he might be seen to have shown.'

80, 29. **uti**: 'to remain in the possession of.' — **finitimis**: for the case, cf. *rei*, 73, 16. — **ut . . . prohiberent**: cf. *ut . . . coniungerent*, 79, 17.

80, 30. **iniuria**: see on 55, 24.

	H.	L. M	A.	G.	B.
1	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203, 1

BOOK THIRD

Campaign of 56 B.C. — At the end of the Belgian campaign Caesar quartered his legions for the winter among the Carnutes, Turoni, and Andes, tribes dwelling along the Loire (Liger), and himself returned as in the previous year to his Cisalpine province. At the same time he sent Galba with a small force into the Alpine region just east of Geneva for the purpose of opening up the road from Italy to Gaul over the Great St. Bernard, a route which had hitherto been extremely dangerous and subject to heavy tolls. This object, in spite of a few successful engagements, Galba was unable to accomplish, and he was soon forced to retreat for the winter into the district of the Allobroges.

During the winter a revolt broke out among the maritime states of northwestern Gaul. The initial step was taken by the Veneti, who seized two Roman officials sent to them to demand grain for the legions. The revolt spread rapidly and was joined by most of the tribes along the northern coast. To meet the dangers which threatened from many sides Caesar divided his army. Labienus was sent to the Treveri with orders to hold the Belgae in allegiance and to prevent the Germans from assisting the disloyal states. Crassus was despatched to Aquitania, while Sabinus undertook to keep the Venelli and their neighbors occupied at home. Decimus Brutus was put in charge of the fleet which had been collected to coöperate with Caesar himself in overpowering the Veneti. While Crassus and Sabinus had but little trouble in subduing the districts intrusted to them, Caesar found that the task he had taken upon himself was decidedly difficult. It was only towards the end of summer that by means of his fleet, which had long been detained at the mouth of the Loire by storms, he was able to inflict a crushing blow. This is the earliest recorded battle fought on the Atlantic.

All of the maritime states from Spain to the Rhine, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii in northern Belgium, were now subject to Rome. Although the campaigning season was nearly over, Caesar led his army against these bold tribes, but his expedition was rendered fruitless by severe and continuous storms. His legions were quartered for the winter among the Aulerci, Lexovii, and other peoples lately subdued.

PAGE 81, LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. If Caesar had here observed his custom of including in a single book the events of each year, he would

have described Galba's Alpine expedition in the second book. — **Cum . . . proficisceretur**: note the force of the tense with temporal *cum*; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29. With the subj. the temporal clause does not date, or define the time of, the main action, but merely states a subordinate circumstance attending the main action. — **Italiam**: see on 57, 26.

81, 2. **Galbam**: although always befriended by Caesar, Galba joined the conspiracy against his life. He was great-grandfather of the emperor Galba.

81, 5. **summas Alpes**: 'the highest part of the Alps,' including Mont Blanc (15,780 feet), the Matterhorn (14,705), and Monte Rosa (15,215).

81, 6. **iter**: the route over the Great St. Bernard, which descends to Martigny (Octodurus). This was the nearest way from Italy to central or northern Gaul. — **periculo**: arising from the hostility of the mountaineers rather than from the difficulties of the way. Both *periculo* and *portoriis* express manner.[1]

81, 7. **consuerant**: 'were (not 'had been') accustomed,' the perf. meaning 'I am (*i.e.* 'have become') accustomed.'[2] With the contracted form cf. *conlocarat*, 74, 9.

81, 8. **arbitraretur**: implied indirect discourse (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), the subj. implying that, in giving Galba permission to winter his legion in the Alps, Caesar said *si . . . arbitraberis*, 'if you (shall) think it necessary.' — **uti . . . conlocaret**: complementary or subst. clause, dir. obj. of *permisit*.[3]

81, 9. **secundis . . . facta**: translate these ablatives absolute like indic. clauses, 'Galba fought several successful engagements,' etc. Begin a new sentence with *missis*, and a third with *constituit*, introducing the former by 'consequently,' 'accordingly,' or the like, and the latter by 'so.'

81, 14. **qui vicus**: see on *qua*, 51, 11.

82, 2. **flumine**: the Dranse, a mountain stream which flows into the Rhone at the great bend. — **divideretur**: with causal *cum*.[4]

82, 3. **vacuam**, etc.: 'that had been left free from them.'[5]

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	473, 3, N. (419, iii, N. 1)	636	412, *a* (248, N.)	399	220
2	299, 2 (297, i, 2)		205, N. 2 (143, *c*, N.)	175, 5	262, A.
3	565 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 2
4	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
5	465 (414, iii)	604	402, *a*, N. (243)	390, 3, N. 1	214, 1, *d*, N. 1

82, 4. **Eum locum**: the part occupied by Galba was fortified like a regular camp.

82, 5. CHAPTER 2. **hibernorum**: 'of their winter encampment.' — **transissent**: cf. the tense with *proficisceretur*, 81, 1. For the contraction, see on 59, 30.

82, 8. **concesserat**: not a part of the scouts' report, but an explanation of Caesar for the reader; hence the indic.[1] *Impenderent*,[2] on the other hand, represents *impendent* of the original report. For the sequence, depending not on *teneri* but on *factus est*, see on *debuerint*, 58, 15.

82, 11. **ut . . . caperent**: a complementary or subst. clause in apposition with *id*, and expressing result.[3]

82, 12. **neque eam plenissimam**: 'and that not in its full strength'; the reason is explained by the ablatives absolute. This legion had also met heavy losses in the battle with the Nervii (78, 16 ff.).

82, 13. **compluribus**: with *absentibus*.

82, 16. **cum . . . decurrerent**: 'when they themselves should rush down,' representing *decurremus*[4] of their original thought.

82, 18. **Accedebat quod**: 'furthermore' (lit., 'there was added the fact that'). The clause with *quod* is subject[5] of *accedebat*.

82, 19. **abstractos** [esse]: indir. disc. depending on *dolebant*. — **nomine**: abl. of manner.

82, 22. **sibi persuasum habebant**: 'they had the firm conviction' (lit., 'held it persuaded to themselves,' see on 61, 6). The conviction is expressed by indir. disc., *Romanos . . . conari*, etc., with which *persuasum* agrees as a neuter pred. adj.

82, 25. CHAPTER 3. **opus hibernorum**: 'the work on the winter quarters,' adapting the village to a military camp, but not including the building of fortifications (*munitiones*). — **essent perfectae**: see on *captus est*, 69, 18.

82, 28. **nihil, etc.**: 'that there need be no fear of war.'

82, 29. **consilio**: probably composed of the tribunes of the legion and the centurions of the first cohort; see Introd. § 36.

	H	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	643, 4 (524, 2)	1028	583 (336, *b*)	628, R. (*a*)	314, 3
2	643 (524)	1026	580 (336, 2)	650	314, 1
3	571, 4 (501, iii)	904	570 (cf. 332, *f*)	557 & R.	297, 3
4	600, i (521, i)	855	547 (325, *c*)	580	289
5	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, *b*

82, 30. **periculi**: partit. gen. with *tantum*.[1]

83, 2. **multitudine**: not agent, as in 82, 9, but means.

83, 3. **subsidio**: dat. of purpose.[2] — **veniri**: impers.,[3] with *posset* implied from *possent*, 'and nobody could come to their relief.'

83, 5. **ut . . . contenderent**: complementary or subst. clause of purpose,[4] in apposition with *sententiae*.

83, 6. **pervenissent**: subj. of attraction.[5]

83, 7. **Maiori . . . parti placuit**: 'the majority voted.' The infins. are the subjects of *placuit*.

83, 10. CHAPTER 4. **vix ut**: see on *vix qua*, 54, 20.

83, 11. **constituissent**: see on *pertinerent*, 52, 25.

83, 13. **decurrere, conicere**: 'came running down,' 'and kept hurling'; see on *flagitare*, 61, 20.

83, 14. **integris viribus**: 'so long as their strength was unimpaired,' abl. abs. expressing time.

83, 16. **superiore**: of the rampart, see 82, 4.

83, 17. **defensoribus**: abl. of separation.[6]

83, 18. **hoc** (abl. of cause) **superari quod**: 'were at a disadvantage from the fact that' (lit., 'on this account, namely, because'); the clause with *quod* is in apposition with *hoc*, and takes the indic. because Caesar states the reason as his own.

83, 19. **defessi**: 'when exhausted.'—**integris viribus**: abl. of quality.[7]

83, 20. **quarum rerum**: partit. with *nihil*,[8] 'whereas none of these (see on *qua*, 51, 11) things.'

83, 21. **non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem**, etc.: 'not only was there no opportunity given to the exhausted man . . . but not even to the wounded man,' etc. The negative in *ne . . . quidem* applies also to the first clause. Sometimes *non modo non* is written, as in 73, 21.

83, 23. **sui recipiendi**: 'of recovering himself.' Observe that *excedendi* is a gerund, while *relinquendi* and *recipiendi* are gerundives; see on *proficiscendum*, 52, 25.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	442 (397, 3)	564	346, *a*, 3 (216, *a*, 3)	369	201, 2
2	433, 1 (390, N. 2)	548	382, 1 (233, *a*)	356, N. 1	191, 1
3	518, 1 (465, 1)	314	208, *d* (146, *d*)	208, 2	138, iv.
4	564, iii (499, 3)	892	561, *a* (317, 3)	546, N. 2	294
5	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1
6	462 (414, i)	601	401 (243, *a*)	390, 2	214, 1, *b*
7	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224
8	441 (397, 1)	564	346, *a*, 1 (216, *a*, 1)	369	201, 1

83, 24. CHAPTER 5. **Cum . . . pugnaretur**: 'when the battle had been raging' (and was still raging[1]). — **horis**: see on *millibus*, 61, 17.

83, 26. **languidioribus nostris**: 'as our men were growing weaker,' abl. abs. expressing cause.[2]

83, 27. **fossas**: pl., because the ditch was being filled at several places; cf. *ripis*, 77, 14.

83, 30. **diximus**: see 78, 24 f.

84, 2. **unam**: regularly emphatic, 'only one.' — **si . . . experirentur**: the condition, in apposition with *spem*, is indirectly quoted from *si . . . experiemur*. Secondary sequence[3] is common with the pres. of vivid narration (hist. pres.), the action being past though stated as present.[4]

84, 3. **auxilium**: 'resource.'

84, 4. **intermitterent**: indir. disc. for *intermittite*,[5] 'he tells the soldiers they are to stop fighting.'

84, 5. **tantummodo . . . exciperent**: 'merely receive,' not throwing any weapons back, but keeping them to use when the sortie is made.

84, 6. **post**: beware of confusing *post* (adv.) with *postquam* (conj.).

84, 8. CHAPTER 6. **Quod**: see on *qui*, 51, 2.

84, 9. **portis**: abl. of the way by which.[6] — **cognoscendi**: gerund depending on *facultatem*.

84, 10. **fieret**: though depending on *cognoscendi*, it takes its sequence[7] from *relinquunt* (see on *si . . . experirentur*, l. 2). — **sui colligendi**: 'of rallying' ('pulling themselves together'); *sui*, having the form of a singular, is accompanied, even when plural, by a singular gerundive.[8] Another explanation makes *sui* obj. gen. limiting a gerund.

84, 11. **eos . . . circumventos interficiunt**: 'those who had, etc., were surrounded and slain'; for the pass. in translation, see on *qui*, 51, 2.

84, 12. **potiundorum**: see on *faciundi*, 55, 24.

84, 13. **millibus XXX**: a comparison with the population in this district to-day makes it almost certain that this number is exaggerated, but it is probably the estimate reported to Caesar by Galba.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	535, 1 (469, ii, 2)	738	471, *b* (277, *b*)	234	260, 4
2	489, 1 (431, i)	640	419, *a*; 420, 2 (255, *a* & *d*, 2)	409	227, 1 & 2, *d*
3	546 (495, ii)	805	485, *e* (287, *e*)	511, R. 1	268, 3
4	532, 3 (467, iii)	733	469, N. (276, *d*)	229	259, 3
5	642, 4 (523, iii)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
6	476 (420, 1, 3)	644	429, *a* (258, *g*)	401	218, 9
7	548 (495, iv)	808		518	
8	626, 3 (542, i, N. 1)	1000	504, *c* (298, *c*)	428, R. 1	339, 5

84, 17. **armis**: abl. of separation with *exutis*, which belongs with *copiis*. They were so hotly pursued that they threw their arms away in order to run faster.

84, 19. **saepius**: 'too often.'[1]

84, 20. **alio . . . viderat**: 'remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one purpose (see 81, 5-8), but saw that he had met with other results.'

84, 21. **rebus**: for the case, cf. *pugnantibus*, 76, 16.

84, 26. CHAPTER 7. **cum**: concessive.[2]

84, 27. **inita hieme**: abl. abs. expressing time. — **Illyricum**: this was the eastern part of Caesar's Cisalpine province. Caesar had been in Cisalpine Gaul during Galba's campaign.

85, 5. **proximus**: 'nearest' (of all Caesar's officers). The others were stationed for the winter among the Turoni and the Carnutes. — **mare**: the acc. is sometimes used with *proximus* as with *prope*; but see 51, 9 f., where the dat. is used.

85, 8. **complures**: with *civitates*.

85, 10. **Coriosolitas**: see on *Lingonas*, 69, 23.

85, 12. CHAPTER 8. **Huius civitatis**: the last mentioned. The Veneti were the principal seafaring people of Gaul and controlled the carrying trade with Britain. Their monopoly was in danger from the Romans, for Caesar's intention to invade Britain was already known. Consequently, although in common with other Aremorican states they had submitted to Crassus in the summer of 57 B.C., they seized the first opportunity to assert their independence, and hoped by uniting all their allies to overthrow Caesar's ambitious designs.

85, 13. **orae**: partit. gen. with the superlative,[3] and itself limited by the poss. gen. *regionum*.

85, 14. **consuerunt**: see on *consuerant*, 81, 7.

85, 15. **scientia, usu**: abl. of specification, cf. *virtute*, 51, 12.

85, 17. **portibus interiectis**: abl. abs. expressing cause; 'and since in the midst of the mighty violence . . . there are only a few scattered harbors.' — **omnes**: obj. of *habent*, with *vectigales* as pred. acc. As the Veneti had a monopoly of the harbors on this stormy coast, they exacted heavy tolls from all shipmasters who entered them.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	498 (444, 1)	678	291, *a* (93, *a*)	297, 2	240, 1
2	598 (515, iii)	863	549 (326)	587	309, 3
3	442 (397, 3)	560	346, *a*, 2 (216, *a*, 2)	372	201, 1

85, 19. **retinendi**: translate 'by holding.'

85, 20. **dedissent**: in the previous summer; see on *huius civitatis*, l. 12.

85, 21. **ut**: with the indic. cannot mean 'that.' — **subita**, etc.: the inconstancy of the Gauls is often mentioned by Caesar and others.

85, 24. **communi consilio**: 'with a common purpose'; abl. of manner.

85, 27. **acceperint**: implied indir. disc. (see on *habuerit*, 53, 10), for *accepistis* of the actual exhortation. With the primary sequence, cf. *si . . . experirentur*, 84, 2 f., and see note. — **quam**: 'than.'

85, 30. **Si**, etc.: indir. quotation of the message. — **remittat**: cf. *intermitterent*, 84, 4.

86, 2. CHAPTER 9. **longius**: 'too far' to take command himself. — **naves longas**: see Introd. § 48.

86, 6. **per . . . potuit**: 'the season of the year allowed' (lit., 'he could, owing to the season'). He probably reached his army in May. He was at Lucca in April, arranging affairs of state with Pompey and Crassus. See Introd. § 9.

86, 9. **quantum . . . admisissent**: indir. quest.

86, 10. **legatos . . . retentos** [esse]: indir. disc. depending on *intellegebant*, and in apposition with *facinus*, 'namely, that envoys,' etc. — **quod nomen**: 'a name which,' see on *quod tempus*, 75, 6. An appositive word which is also the antecedent of a rel. pron. is taken into the rel. clause.

86, 14. **instituunt**: 'begin.' — **hoc . . . quod**: see on *hoc superari quod*, 83, 18. — **natura**: loc. abl. with *confidebant*.[1]

87, 1. **inscientiam**: *i.e.* of the Romans.

87, 2. **neque . . . confidebant**: the connective belongs with *confidebant*, the negative with *posse*; 'and they trusted that our armies could not.'

87, 3. **diutius**: 'very long.'

87, 4. **iam ut**, etc.: 'even supposing everything turned out'; the only other instance in Caesar of *ut* introducing an assumption or concession[2] is in 198, 12.

87, 5. **navibus**: abl. of specification. — **posse**: indir. disc. depending on *perspiciebant*, l. 9.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	485, 1 (425, 1, 1, N.)	629	431 & N. (254, *b*)	389	228, 1
2	586, ii (515, iii)	901	527, *a* (313, *a*)	608	

87, 7. **gesturi essent**: see on *obtenturus esset*, 53, 16.

87, 8. **aliam . . . atque**: see on *aliter . . . ac*, 74, 5. — **concluso mari**: *i.e.* the Mediterranean, where the Romans were most at home.

87, 10. **frumenta**: see on 61, 22.

87, 12. **quam plurimas possunt**: cf. *quam maximis potest*, 55, 9.

87, 13. **Socios . . . adsciscunt**: cf. 54, 16 f. — **sibi**: dat. of interest or reference.[1]

87, 14. **Morinos, Menapios**: in northern Belgium; the other peoples named were neighbors of the Veneti.

87, 19. CHAPTER 10. **iniuria retentorum equitum**: 'the outrage of holding Roman knights'; in the genitive phrase the participle contains the leading idea.[2] The tribunes (85, 7) were regularly chosen from the equestrian rank; see Introd. § 34.

87, 21. **ne . . . arbitrarentur**: a subst. clause, equiv. to another nominative in apposition with *multa* (l. 18); translate, 'the fear that,[3] if this region should be disregarded, the remaining peoples,' etc.

87, 23. **cum**: causal. — **novis rebus**[4] **studere**: cf. *ut . . . consilia*, 85, 21 f.

87, 25. **natura**: abl. of cause.

87, 26. **odisse**: of present force, see on *consuesse*, 60, 21.

87, 27. **conspirarent**: the imperf. in secondary sequence, representing a pres. subj.[5] of dir. disc. — **sibi**: see on 73, 23.

87, 30. CHAPTER 11. **flumini**: cf. *mare*, 85, 5, and see note.

88, 1. **adeat**: coördinated with *mandat*, 'bids him visit the Remi,' and equiv. to an obj. clause subordinated by *ut*;[6] cf. *faciat*, 65, 5.

88, 2. **auxilio**: dat. of purpose,[7] without the usual dat. of interest accompanying it; cf. 63, 26. — **arcessiti** [esse] **dicebantur**: 'were said to have been summoned'; when dependent on a passive verb of saying used personally,[8] the infin. is complementary, not in indir disc., and a pred. subst. or adj., including the part. in the perf. infin., is in the nom.[9]

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, *a*)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
2	636, 4 (549, 5, N. 2)	1013	497 (292, *a*)	664, R. 2	337, 5
3	567, 1 (498, iii, N. 1)	897	Cf. 564 (331, *f*)	550, 1	296, 2
4	426, 1 (385)	531	367 (227)	346, R. 2	187, ii, *a*
5	605, 1 (520, i, 2)	878	551, *c* (327, *a*)	577	292, 1, *b*
6	565, 4 (499, 2)	781	565 & N. 1 (331, *f*, R.)	546, R. 2	295, 8
7	433, 3 (390, ii, N. 2)	548	382, 1 (233 *a*)	356 & N. 1	191, 1
8	611, 1 (534, 1, N. 1)	962	582 (330, *b*)		332, *c*
9	612, 1 (536, 2, 1, N.)	957	458 (271, *c*)		328, 2

88, 3. conentur: implied indir. disc., for a fut. indic. of the actual command; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10.

88, 6. nationibus: pl., of the different tribes of Aquitania. — **Galliam**: used in a restricted sense, as in 51, 19, of the land of the Galli; see 51, 4. Probably Caesar was needlessly alarmed as to the danger of the Aquitanians taking part in the Venetan war, for, being of different stock and speech, they never made common cause with the rest of the Gauls.

88, 9. qui . . . curet: rel. clause of purpose,[1] 'to see that their troops were kept back.' For the gerundive, see on 59, 18. — **Brutum**: Brutus, like Galba (see on 81, 2), showed the basest ingratitude to Caesar by joining the conspiracy against his life. Do not confuse Decimus Brutus with his more famous kinsman, Marcus.

88, 12. possit: for an original *poteris*; see on *conentur*, l. 3.

88, 14. CHAPTER 12. **eius modi**: pred. gen. of quality.[2]

88, 16. pedibus: abl. of means, 'by land.' — **haberent**: in a complementary or subst. clause of result in apposition with *eius modi*.[3] — **cum**: temporal.

88, 17. spatio: time within which.[4]

88, 19. adflictarentur: subj. of attraction,[5] the causal clause being an essential part of the result. — The high tide overflowed the isthmus connecting a town with the mainland. At low tide the town was left high and dry on all sides, so that a ship which had come near to the town at high tide was obliged to go out with the ebbing tide or be stranded on the shallows. — **utraque re**: 'by both circumstances.'

88, 20. operis: the Roman 'works,' explained by the abls. abs. *extruso . . . adaequatis*.

88, 21. superati: agrees with the subject of *coeperant*. — **extruso**, etc.: 'when the sea had been shut off by a massive dike and the works had been made equal in height to the walls of the town.' Apparently the Romans built a broad dike or embankment across the low ground which was overflowed at high tide, and as it approached the town its elevation was increased until it equaled the height of the town walls. Thus it not only gave uninterrupted access to the town by land, but also served

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2
2	440, 3 (396, v)	558	345 (215)	365	203, 5
3	571, 4 (501, iii)	892; 902	570 (319, 3)	557	297, 3
4	487 (429)	631	423 (256)	393	231
5	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1, 1)	793	593 (342)	629	324, 1

as a siege mound (see Introd. § 47). — **aggere ac molibus**: lit., 'by a mound and massive structures,' but as only one structure is meant, it is equiv. to 'by a massive dike.'

88, 23. **cuius rei**: 'of which,' referring to *navium*.

88, 24. **deportabant**, etc.: conclusion of the condition *si . . . coeperant*, the imperf. showing that this was their customary conduct as one town after another was attacked.

88, 26. **eo . . . quod**: 'from the fact that' (lit., 'on that account, because'); *eo* is abl. of cause and is explained by the appositive causal clause. — **partem**: acc. of duration of time.

88, 28. **detinebantur**: doubtless near the mouth of the Loire; see 86, 3. The Roman ships were not so well adapted as those of the Veneti to the rough waters of this coast, and the Romans themselves were unused to the open ocean. — **summa**: with *difficultas*; the separation of words belonging together emphasizes them both.[1] — **vasto . . . portibus**: abls. abs., expressing cause.

89, 1. CHAPTER 13. **Namque**: introduces a further explanation of *facilius*, 88, 26, 'but the Veneti were not troubled, for'; *namque* generally implies an omission which is easily supplied from the context. — **ipsorum**: 'their own.'

89, 2. **armatae**: not 'armed.' — **carinae**: sc. *erant*; so through l. 10.

89, 3. **quo**: see on *quo*, 56, 7.

89, 5. **erectae**: 'straight.'

89, 6. **accommodatae**: 'being adapted,' applies to both *prorae* and *puppes*.

89, 7. **robore**: abl. of material.[2] — **quamvis**; the indef. pron.

89, 8. **transtra**: 'cross-beams,' supporting the deck and strengthening the sides. The usual meaning, 'rowers' benches,' is not possible here, for the Venetan ships were propelled by sails alone; see 91, 4 f. — **ex . . . trabibus**: 'of timbers a foot thick.'

89, 9. **digiti . . . crassitudine**: 'of a thumb's thickness,' abl. of quality, with a gen. instead of the usual adj.[3] — **pro funibus**: this implies that the Romans used ropes.

89, 10. **pelles**, etc.: 'skins and leather thinly dressed were used for sails.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	665, 4 (561, iii)	1149	598, *e* (344, *e*)	672, *a*, 3	350, 11,
2	470 (415, iii)	610	403, 2 (244, 2)	396	
3	473, 2 (419, ii)	643	415 (251)	400	224, 2

89, 14. **tanta onera navium**: 'such heavy ships'; not 'ships of such burden,' which has a different meaning.

89, 16. **classi**: dat. of possessor, but translate, 'the encounter of our fleet.'

89, 17. **pulsu remorum**: 'in rowing'; for the abl., cf. *scientia*, 85, 15. — **reliqua**, etc.: 'while in all other respects, considering the nature of the locality and the violence of the storms, the Venetan ships had an equipment more suitable and appropriate than ours.' Grammatically *reliqua* is subject of *essent*, which is parallel with *praestaret*; *illis* [navibus] is dat. of possessor.

89, 19. **iis**: essential complement or indir. obj. of *nocere*.[1]

89, 21. **adigebatur**: 'could be thrown so as to reach its mark,' the potential use of the verb; cf. *transitur*, 54, 26.

89, 22. **copulis**, etc.: the Romans always endeavored in a naval battle to run alongside of the enemy's ships, to make them fast to their own by grappling hooks, and to board them; for in a hand-to-hand fight they had good hopes of proving superior, but as seamen they never showed remarkable cleverness. — **Accedebat ut**: 'furthermore,' cf. *accedebat quod*, 82, 18. The subjects of *accedebat* are the complementary or subst. result clauses *ut . . . ferrent*,[2] etc.

89, 23. **se vento dedissent**: 'they (the Venetan ships) ran before the wind'; a stereotyped nautical phrase, hence *ventus* is repeated. — **et** (before *tempestatem*) . . . **et** . . . **et**: correlatives, 'not only . . . but also . . . and.'

89, 24. **consisterent**: 'anchored.' — **aestu**: personified and given the construction of a voluntary agent.[3]

89, 25. **nihil**: see on 76, 5.

89, 26. **navibus**: cf. *sibi*, 87, 27. — **casus**: 'the occurrence.'

89, 29. CHAPTER 14. **neque iis**, etc.: 'and that they could not be harmed' (lit., 'it could not be harmed to them'); verbs which, like *noceo*, take a dat. of the essential complement (indir. obj.) are impersonal in the passive, and the dat. is retained.[4]

89, 30. **Quae**: see on *quorum*, 72, 1.

90, 2. **armorum**: not 'arms' merely; cf. *armatae*, 89, 2.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	426, 1 (385, i)	531	367 (227)	346, R. 2	187, ii, *a*
2	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, *a*, 2)	553, 3	297, 2
3	468, 1 (415, i, 2)	614	405, N. 3 (246)	401, R. 1	216, 1
4	426, 3 (384, 5)	530	372 (230)	346, R. 1	187, ii, *b*

90, 3. **portu**: probably in the Auray River.

90, 4. **Bruto**: essential complement (indir. obj.) of *constabat*.

90, 5. **tribunis**, etc.: these were army officers, and the fighters on the ships were legionaries. In ancient times a naval service distinct from the military was unknown. See Introd. § 48.

90, 8. **Rostro**: instrumental, as in 89, 19. — **noceri**, etc.: impers. (see on 89, 29) without a complement, 'no harm could be done.' — **cognoverant**: 'they knew,' not however implying that there had been any naval engagement. — **turribus . . . excitatis**: that the abl. abs. is concessive is seen from the following *tamen*.

90, 9. **ex . . . navibus**: 'on the . . . ships'; see on *a*, 51, 16.

90, 11. **gravius**: they gained velocity by their descent from the higher level.

90, 12. **usui**: see on *auxilio*, 88, 2.

90, 13. **longuriis**: dat. of essential complement (indir. obj.) with the cpd. participles. — **forma**: abl. of quality, 'of a shape not unlike that of wall-hooks.'

91, 1. **falcium**: poss. gen. with an implied *formae* depending on *absimili*. These hooks were used for pulling down city walls. — **cum**: 'as often as,' 'every time'; temporal and conditional clauses expressing repeated action commonly take the indicative.[1]

91, 4. **navibus**: dat. of interest or reference.[2]

91, 6. **uno tempore**: 'in a single moment.'

91, 9. **res gerebatur**: 'the action was taking place.' This is the earliest recorded battle fought on the Atlantic Ocean. — **paulo fortius**: 'unusually brave'; *paulo* denotes the amount of difference[3] between these and ordinary deeds.

91, 10. **colles**: probably the heights of St. Gildas.

91, 12. CHAPTER 15. **cum**: as in l. 1. — **singulas**, etc.: as soon as a Venetan ship had been disabled in its sails, which were its only means of propulsion, the Romans had no trouble in surrounding it with two or three of their ships and overpowering it by their usual mode of fighting; see on *copulis*, 89, 22.

91, 16. **cum**: causal.[4]

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	601, 4 (521, ii, 1)	854	542; 518, *b* (322; 309, *c*)	584	288, 3
2	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, *a*)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
3	479, 1 (423)	655	414 (250)	403	223
4	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2

91, 17. **conversis**, etc.: *i.e.* so as to sail before the wind. The battle probably took place in late summer (see **88**, 26 f.), and at that season in these regions to-day the wind usually dies out about noon.

91, 23. **cum . . . pugnaretur**: 'since the battle lasted,' explaining how it happened that night afforded escape to a few of the enemy. — **hora . . . quarta**: between nine and ten in the forenoon.

91, 26. CHAPTER 16. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but furthermore.'[1]

91, 27. **aetatis**: gen. of quality.

91, 28. **aliquid**, etc.: 'some degree of discretion or of prestige.' — **consili**: partit. gen.;[2] so *navium* with *quod*, 'what ships there had been anywhere.'

91, 30. **quo**: rel. adv., introducing a characteristic clause;[3] the implied antecedent may be expressed in translation, 'they had neither a refuge to which they might withdraw nor a means of defending their towns.'

92, 2. **eo**: abl. of cause, explained by the appositive purpose clause *quo . . . conservaretur*; cf. *eo . . . minus . . . quod*, **60**, 8 f. Translate *eo gravius* 'the more severely.'

92, 3. **vindicandum** [esse]; impers., 'that punishment must be inflicted.' — **quo**: see on **56**, 7.

92, 5. **sub corona**: this phrase arose, as the Romans believed, from an ancient custom, which had long since died out, of putting wreaths on the heads of captives in war who were to be sold at auction. The sale was conducted by the quaestor, and the principal purchasers were wholesale slave dealers. Caesar is said by Plutarch to have taken a million captives in his Gallic campaigns, a large part of whom were probably sold into slavery. — It is not to be supposed that the state of the Veneti was utterly annihilated, for they are named later (**159**, 20) as contributors to the force which was mustered by the Gauls for the relief of Alesia. But their position as leaders was gone forever.

92, 6. CHAPTER 17. **geruntur**: see on *conquiruntur*, **70**, 4.

92, 7. **copiis**: see **88**, 8.

92, 11. **copias**: probably forces not regularly organized as an *exercitus*. — **his paucis diebus**: 'within a few days' after Sabinus's arrival.

92, 13. **nolebant**: for the pl., see end of note on *exirent*, **52**, 10.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	657, 4, N. 1 (554, i, 5)	864	224, *a* (155, *a*)	588	290, 2
2	441 (397, 3)	564	346, *a*, 3 (216, *a*, 3)	371	201, 2
3	591, 1 (503, i)	836	535, *a* (320, *a*)	631, 2	283, 1

92, 18. **omnibus rebus**: 'in all respects.'[1] — **loco**: cf. *locis*, 54, 26. — **castris**: loc. abl. with instrumental force, hence used without *in*.[2]

92, 19. **millium**: sc. **passuum**. — **spatio**: abl. of the amount of difference,[3] 'at a distance.' — **consedisset, faceret**: subj. with concessive *cum*. Note the difference in tense, the former expressing completed, the latter incomplete, action at the time of the main verb *tenebat*.

92, 21. **hostibus**: dat. of interest or reference.[4]

92, 22. **non nihil**: 'somewhat,' the defining or cognate acc.[5]

92, 26. **eo**: Caesar.

92, 27. **legato**: dat. of the agent[6] with the impers. gerundive *dimicandum* [esse], 'that a lieutenant ought to fight.'

93, 3. CHAPTER 18. **auxili causa**: 'as a reënforcement,' see Introd. § 29. — **Huic** and **uti . . . transeat**: see on *civitati*, 52, 9.

93, 5. **pro perfuga**: 'as a deserter.'

93, 7. **prematur**: indir. quest., like *velit*, l. 5.

93, 8. **neque longius**, etc.: 'and that not later than the next night Sabinus will,' etc. (lit., 'and that it is not farther away but that on the next night Sabinus will,' etc.).

93, 9. **educat**: with *quin*, depending on a neg. expression of abstaining.[7] The clause is subject of *abesse*.

93, 12. **iri oportere**: 'that they ought to go.' An impersonal passive[8] of forms of *eo* is not uncommon; it must be translated as active.

93, 13. **superiorum dierum**: 'on the previous days,' see on *eorum . . . perspecta*, 73, 6.

93, 15. **erat provisum**: impers., 'provision had been made.'

93, 16. **quod fere**, etc.: 'the fact that,' etc.; the clause is appositive[9] with *res* (l. 13). Cf. our proverb, "the wish is father to the thought," and the remark in parenthesis, 173, 22 ff.

93, 17. **non prius . . . quam**: 'not . . . until.' *Ante* and *prius* regularly stand in the main clause when it is negative; otherwise they are

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
2	476, 3 (425, 1, 1)	628	429, 1 (258, *f*, 1)	389	218, 7
3	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	425, *b* (257, *b*)	403, N. 1	223
4	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, *a*)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
5	409, 1 (371, ii)	507	390, *c* (238, *b*)	333, 1	176, 3, *a*
6	431 (388)	544	374, *a* (232)	355	189, 1
7	595, 1 (504)	913	559 (319, *d*)	555	298
8	518, 1 (465, 1)	686	208, *d* (146, *d*)	208, 2	138, iv
9	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572, N. (333, N.)	525, 2	299, 1, *a*

usually, but not always, united with *quam* at the head of the subordinate clause.

93, 18. **sit concessum**: implied indir. disc.,[1] representing fut. perf.[2] of the direct thought, which was, *Non prius vos dimittemus quam a vobis erit concessum*, etc.

93, 19. **arma uti,** etc.: see on *vix qua*, 54, 20. — **uti capiant**: complementary or subst. clause of purpose, subject of *sit concessum*.

93, 20. **ut explorata victoria**: 'as if victory were certain,' abl. abs. expressing condition; cf. *hac parte neglecta*, 87, 21.

93, 21. **quibus . . . compleant**: rel. clause of purpose.

93, 24. CHAPTER 19. **passus mille**: acc. of extent of space with *acclivis*.

93, 25. **quam minimum spati**: 'the least possible time,' subject of *daretur*.

93, 28. **cupientibus**: sc. *iis* (dat.); translate, 'for which they are eager.'

94, 8. **ad bella suscipienda,** etc.: cf. *omnes . . . excitari*, 87, 23 f.

94, 9. **animus, mens**: '*spirit, purpose*.'

94, 13. CHAPTER 20. **Aquitaniam**: see 88, 4 f., and second sentence of the note on *Galliam*, 88, 6. — **ante**: referring inexactly to 51, 2 and 52, 2 ff.

94, 15. **tertia pars**: it will be seen by consulting the map (see frontispiece) that this is an exaggerated estimate; but see on *spectant in*, 52, 1. — **cum intellegeret**: in translating begin a new sentence here, making *cum . . . pervenisset* (l. 12 f.) an independent statement, 'Crassus arrived,' etc.

94, 16. **sibi**: see on *legato*, 92, 27. — **annis**: abl. of the amount of difference; cf. *paulo*, 91, 9. These defeats occurred in 78 B.C., when the Aquitanians were in alliance with Sertorius, and Manlius was governor of the Roman province (*Provincia*).

94, 19. **non**: immediately precedes the word it limits. A negation which amounts to a strong affirmation of its opposite is called litotes, as here 'no ordinary' = 'extraordinary'; cf. *minime . . . saepe*, 51, 7 f.

94, 20. Translate the abls. abs. of this sentence as independent statements, 'he made provision for a supply of grain,' etc.

94, 21. **comparato**: observe the agreement; cf. *captus est*, 69, 18. —

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	649, i (528, 1)	791	592, 2 (341, *c*)	662	323
2	Cf. 605 (520, i, 1)	878	551, *c* (327, *a*)	574	291, 1

viris . . . evocatis: these were veterans who had served their full time in the Roman army. See Introd. § 27.

94, 22. **Tolosa**, etc.: these towns are all important cities to-day. For their modern names, see Vocab.

94, 23. **provinciae**: in apposition[1] with *Galliae*. — **finitimae**: limits *civitates*, and governs *regionibus*[2] (= *Aquitaniae*).

95, 4. CHAPTER 21. **superioribus**: of 78 B.C., see on *annis*, **94**, 16. — **victoriis**: loc. (or instrumental) abl. with *freti*.[3]

95, 6. **quid . . . possent**: indir. quest., subject of *perspici*. — **imperatore**: 'commander-in-chief,' while *dux* is a general word for 'officer.' — **sine reliquis legionibus**: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers, with a considerable body of cavalry and auxiliaries; see **88**, 4 f. and **94**, 20 f.

95, 7. **adulescentulo duce**: abl. abs., 'under the leadership of a mere boy': see on *consulibus*, **52**, 8. Crassus is often called *adulescens* (see **85**, 4): here the diminutive is used for rhetorical effect.

95, 14. **Quibus . . . resistentibus**: translate as a causal clause, 'since,' etc.

95, 16. **alias . . . alias**: correlative adverbs.

95, 17. **cuius rei**: 'a work in which'; the gen. is obj. with *peritissimi*.[4]

95, 19. **locis**: see on *locis*, **54**, 26. — **ubi**: in translating, begin a new sentence here. — **diligentia**: causal abl., possibly referring to countermines dug by the Romans.

95, 22. **faciunt**: sc. *id* as obj.; translate 'they comply.'

95, 24. CHAPTER 22. **ex**: depends on *eruptionem facere*, **96**, 2.

95, 26. **quorum . . . condicio**: 'whose terms of union are as follows' (*haec*).

95, 27. **ut . . . fruantur**: complementary or substantive clause, in apposition with *haec*.[5] The *soldurii* are said to have lived with their chief, to have eaten at the same table, and to have dressed like him. — **commodis**: instrumental abl., serving as obj. of *fruantur*.[6]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	393 (363)	463	282 (184)	321	169, 1
2	434 (391)	536	384 (234)	359	192, 1
3	476, 1 (425, ii, 1, N.)	629	431, *a* (254, *b*, 2)	401, N. 6	218, 3
4	451, 1 (399, i, 2)	573	349, *a* (218)	374	204, 1
5	564, iii (499, 3)	892	561, *a* (331, head-note)	557, R.	297, 3
6	477, 1 (421, i)	646	410, N. (249, N.)	407, N. 1	218, 1

95, 28. **dediderint, accidat**: subj. of attraction.[1] *Accidit* generally implies misfortune, cf. 63, 19.

95, 29. **ferant, consciscant**: same constr. as *fruantur*.

95, 30. **memoria**: see on 59, 9.

96, 1. **quisquam**: chiefly used when there is a negative expressed or implied.[2]

96, 2. **recusaret**: see on *possent*, 54, 19.—**cum his**: repeating *cum . . . devotis*, 95, 25.

96, 3. **conatus, sublato**: translate as finite verbs.

96, 5. **repulsus**: expresses concession, as is seen from *tamen* with *impetravit*.—**uti . . . impetravit**: 'obtained the privilege of using,' etc.; see on *impetrat ut*, etc., 57, 8.—**eadem**: 'the same as the rest' (95, 21 f.).

96, 10. CHAPTER 23. **paucis diebus quibus**: 'within a few days after' (lit., 'within which'); both the antecedent and the relative are abl. of time within which.

96, 11. **ventum erat**: cf. *iri*, 93, 12.

96, 14. **citerioris**: *i.e.* with reference to Rome.—**Hispaniae**: pred. gen. of possession.—**finitimae**: nom., as in 94, 23. The people of northern Spain were kindred of the Aquitanians; see on *lingua*, 51, 3.

96, 16. **auctoritate**: 'prestige,' arising from their victories of 78 B.C. (94, 16 ff.) and from the presence of Spanish officers and soldiers who had fought under Sertorius against Rome. The abl. denotes manner, *multitudine* is instrumental.

96, 17. **Duces**: pred. nom.[3]

96, 18. **Sertorio**: invited to Spain in 80 B.C. by the rebellious Lusitanians, he maintained with varying fortunes for eight years a fierce struggle against the authority of the Roman senate.

96, 19. **consuetudine**: cf. 74, 7.

96, 20. **loca . . . munire**: this important feature of defensive tactics was not adopted by the rest of the Gauls until four years later under Vercingetorix.

96, 21. **Quod**: 'but'; see on *quod si*, 60, 15.

96, 23. **diduci**: 'could be separated,' see on *transitur*, 54, 26.—**et . . . et . . . et**: 'not only . . . and . . . but also'; cf. 89, 23 f.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1
2	513 (457)	1071	312 (202, *c*)	317, 1	252, 4
3	410, 1 (373, 2)	460	393, *a* (239, *a*, N. 2)	206	168, 2, *b*

96, 26. **non cunctandum . . . quin . . . decertaret**: 'that there ought to be no delay about fighting,' etc.; *cunctandum* [esse] is impers. pass.; for *decertaret*, see on *educat*, 93, 9.

96, 27. **idem sentire**: 'had the same feeling'; see on *non nihil*, 92, 22.

96, 28. **pugnae**: dat. of the optional complement or interest.[1]

96, 29. CHAPTER 24. **duplici**: the double line was adopted when a force was small. The usual formation was in three lines. See Introd. § 46.

96, 30. **in mediam**: the newly levied auxiliaries (94, 20 f.) could not be trusted to stand their ground if placed in their usual position on the wings.

97, 4. **obsessis . . . intercluso**: translate the abls. abs. as infins. parallel with *potiri*.—**victoria**: see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

97, 6. **coepissent**: implied indir. disc., representing *coeperint* (fut. perf.) of the original thought, which was, 'If they begin to retreat, we will attack,' etc.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10.—**impeditos**: sc. *eos*, obj. of *adoriri*, which is complementary infin.[2]

97, 7. **animo**: abl. of specification with *infirmiores*.

97, 8. **castris**: see on 92, 18.

97, 9. **sua**: refers to *hostes*, the subject.

97, 10. **opinione timoris**: 'the impression they gave of fear.'

97, 11. **effecissent, audirentur**: observe the difference in tense.

97, 12. **exspectari**: impers. pass., subject of *oportere*; its own subject is the clause with *quin*, 'that an advance on the camp ought not to be delayed any longer.' This is the only instance mentioned by Caesar of an attack by the Romans on a fortified Gallic camp.

97, 17. CHAPTER 25. **quibus**: essential complement or indir. obj. of *confidebat*, which commonly takes the dat. of persons, the abl. of things.

97, 18. **lapidibus . . . comportandis**: gerundives expressing means.[3] — **ad aggerem**: a mound, such as the Romans used in besieging towns (see Introd. § 47), was built up against the enemy's rampart (which must have been of unusual height) to enable the attacking force to scale the defenses.

97, 19. **speciem, etc.**: 'were giving the semblance and the impression of being combatants.'

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 2 (384, ii, 1, 2))	537	376 (235, N.)	350, 2	188, 1
2	607 (533)	954	456 (271)	423	328, 1
3	630 (544, 1; 542, iv)	1002	507 (301)	431	339, 1; 338, 4, *a*

97, 20. **ac non**: 'not *neque*, as *non timide* is a case of litotes (see on *non*, 94, 19), 'with no sign of fear.' This brave conduct of the enemy was not what the Romans had been led to expect; see l. 10 f.

97, 21. **pugnaretur**: 'the battle was being fought.'—**loco superiore**: the high rampart.

97, 22. **circumitis**, etc.: translate as active, 'having ridden round the camp.'

97, 23. **ab**: see on *a*, 51, 16.

97, 28. CHAPTER 26. **praesidio**: dat. of purpose,[1] accompanied by a dat. of interest (*castris*), 'left as a protection for the camp.'

98, 1. **eas**: 'that part of.'

98, 2. **prius . . . quam**: separated as in 93, 17 f.

98, 3. **videri**: sc. *possent* from the following *posset*.—**quid rei**: cf. *quid consili*, 96, 30 f.

98, 4. **posset**: the subj. is used with *prius quam* of an action which is prevented by the main act.[2]

98, 5. **quod**: 'a thing which,' referring to *redintegratis viribus*.

98, 7. **per**: 'over.'

98, 9. **campis**: instrumental, denoting the route taken.[3]

98, 10. **quae**: subject of *convenisse*, which itself is subject of the impers. *constabat*.

98, 16. CHAPTER 27. **paucae**, etc.: 'only a few nations, the most remote.'

98, 17. **tempore**: loc. (or instrumental) abl.;[4] see on *quibus*, 97, 17.

98, 18. CHAPTER 28. **prope exacta**: Caesar had used up most of the summer in the campaign against the Veneti; see 88, 26 f.

98, 20. **essent**: subj. of characteristic.

98, 21. **arbitratus**: the perf. part. of deponent verbs is sometimes used like a present.

98, 23. **alia . . . ac**: 'different from'; see on *aliter . . . ac*, 74, 5.

99, 5. **compluribus**: of the enemy.—**longius**: 'too far'; see on *cupidius*, 61, 8.

99, 6. **locis**: cf. *campis*, 98, 9.

99, 7. CHAPTER 29. **caedere instituit**: 'made a beginning of cutting.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	433 (390, i)	548	382, 1 (233, *a*)	356	191, 2, *b*
2	605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, *b* (327)	577, 1	292, 1, *b*
3	476 (420, 1, 3)	644	429, *a* (258, *g*)	401	218, 9
4	476, 3 (425, ii, 1, N.)	629	431 & N. (254, *b*)	401, N. 6	219, 1

99, 8. **inermibus . . . militibus**: abl. abs., 'while the soldiers,' etc.

99, 9. **ab**: cf. 97, 23.—**materiam . . . conversam . . . conlocabat**: 'he was placing the timber so that the branches were turned toward the enemy.'

99, 10. **pro vallo**: cf. 69, 13 f.

99, 12. **confecto**: 'had been cleared.' With *cum* begin a new sentence.

99, 13. **extrema**: 'the rear of'; cf. *summas*, 81, 5.—**tenerentur**: note the tense of incomplete action, 'were being reached.'

99, 14. **ipsi**: the enemy.

99, 16. **sub pellibus**: *i.e.* in the tents, which were of leather.

99, 19. **Aulercis, etc.**: see 92, 12 ff.

BOOK FOURTH

Campaign of 55 B.C.—In the winter of 56–55 B.C., while Caesar was attending to the civil duties of his governorship in Cisalpine Gaul, the report reached him that two German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, had crossed the Rhine and settled down in the Menapian territory. Their presence was a grave menace to Roman authority in Gaul. Caesar knew that the inconstant Gallic peoples, all of whom, except the Morini and the Menapii (99, 17 ff.) and a few mountain tribes in Aquitania (98, 16 f.) and in Helvetia (84, 19 ff.), had now submitted to the rule of Rome, would most likely invite these invading Germans to assist them in overthrowing their Roman master. Accordingly he returned to his army earlier than usual, and marched straightway against the Germans, who had by this time moved as far south as the country of the Eburones and the Condrusi. Having been treacherously attacked during a truce, with no less treachery he fell upon the enemy in camp the next day and massacred almost their entire force, men, women, and children. Their cavalry alone escaped across the Rhine and found refuge among the Sugambri, who refused Caesar's demand for their surrender.

Although Gaul was thus freed from present danger, Caesar believed that it would be a safeguard against future invasions if he should show the Germans that they were not secure even on their own soil. He was desirous, too, of punishing the Sugambri for harboring his enemies. Furthermore, the ambition of being the first Roman to lead an army

across the Rhine doubtless was not without its influence. In order to impress the barbarians as thoroughly as possible with the ability and resourcefulness of the Romans, he was not content to cross by boats in the barbarian way, but from some point on the Treveran bank, not far from the mouth of the Moselle (Mosella), he built a bridge, so strong and substantial that, as Plutarch says, one who saw it could hardly believe that it had been made in ten days. The Germans, with the exception of the Ubii, who had put themselves under his protection, decamped at his approach; and as he was unwilling to incur the risk of following them into their boundless forests, he devastated their territories and returned to Gaul.

The year 55 B.C. is of great interest to English-speaking peoples, because it marks the first visit of Romans to Britain. This expedition was only a reconnaissance preliminary to a more extensive enterprise the next year.

This season's campaigning was closed by the subjugation of the Morini. The Menapian territory was ravaged, but the people took refuge again, as in the previous year, in their dense forests.

PAGE 100, LINE 2. CHAPTER 1. **Cn. . . . consulibus**: = 55 B.C.; see on *M.*, 52, 7, and *consulibus*, 52, 8. Before 46 B.C., when Caesar established the Julian system, which is still in use, there was much confusion in the Roman calendar (see on 55, 5). The year 55 B.C. began more than a month before the winter solstice, so that Caesar here speaks of the winter of 56–55 as belonging altogether to the year 55.

100, 4. **transierunt**: probably not far from where the Waal (Vacalus) branches off from the Rhine.

100, 5. **quo**: adv. = *in quod.*

100, 6. **annos**: expresses the duration of *exagitati.* — **premebantur,** etc.: note the tense expressing continuance, and the mood showing that Caesar states the reason on his own authority.[1]

100, 9. **pagos**: 'divisions,' probably used here of the people, not of the country. — **ex quibus . . . singula millia**: 'from each of which . . . a thousand.'[2]

100, 10. **causa**: observe that in this meaning it regularly follows its genitive; cf. *causa transeundi*, l. 5, in a different meaning.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	588, i (516, i)	851	540 (321)	539	286, 1
2	164, 1 (174, 2, 1)	1080	137, *a* (95, *a*)	97, R. 2	81, 4, *a*

100, 12. **anno post**: 'the year after.'[1]

100, 13. **ratio atque usus**: 'theory and practice.'

100, 14. **privati**, etc.: private ownership of land belongs to a more advanced state of civilization than had been reached by these peoples. — **agri**: partit. gen. with *nihil.*

100, 15. **anno**: abl. of comparison with *longius.*

100, 16. **frumento**: abl. of means. — **maximam partem**: adverbial acc.[2]

100, 18. **quae res**: 'and this way of living'; see on *quorum*, 72, 1, and *res*, 53, 22. — **genere**: abl. of cause.

100, 19. **a pueris**: 'from childhood.' — **officio**: abl. of means, the regular construction with *adsuefacio* in Caesar's time; a little later the dat. began to be used, thus corresponding to the English idiom.

100, 21. **magnitudine**: pred. use of abl. of quality.[3]

101, 1. **homines**: pred. acc.; sc. *eos* as dir. obj.

101, 2. **ut . . . haberent . . . et lavarentur**: complementary or subst. clauses of result,[4] in apposition with *eam consuetudinem.* Note the secondary sequence depending on a perf. definite.[5] Translate, 'and they have acquired the custom, although their country is very cold (*i.e.* from a Roman's point of view; abl. abs. expressing concession), of having no clothing . . . and of bathing,' etc. — **vestitus**: partit. gen. with *quicquam.*

101, 4. **lavarentur**: reflexive use of the passive.[6]

101, 5. CHAPTER 2. **eo, ut . . . habeant**: 'for the sake of their having purchasers of what they have taken in war'; *eo*, 'on that account,' is explained by the appositive purpose clause; cf. 60, 8 f., where a causal clause explains *eo*; *ceperint* and *vendant* are in characteristic clauses.[7]

101, 6. **quam quo**: introduces an untenable reason (equivalent to *non quo*), 'than because.'[8]

101, 7. **ad se**: omit in translation.

101, 8. **pretio**: abl. of price.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	479, 3 (423, N. 2)	655	414 (250)	403, N. 4	223
2	416, 2 (378, 2)	508	397, *a* (240, *b*)	334, R. 2	185, 1
3	473, 2, N. 2 (419, ii)	643	415, N. (251, N.)	400	224, 1
4	571, 4 (501, iii)	902	570 (319, 3)	557	297, 3
5	546 (495, i)	785	485, *a* (287, *a*)	511, R. 3	268, 1
6	517 (465)	687	156, *a* (111, *a*)	218	256, 1
7	591, 1 (503, i)	836	535 (320)	631, 2	283, 1
8	588, ii, 2 (516, ii, 2)	852	540, N. 3 (321, R.)	541, N. 2	286, 1, *b*

101, 9. **importatis**: limits *iumentis*.

101, 11. **summi ut sint laboris**: subst. clause of result, equiv. to a pred. acc., 'capable of the hardest work'; *laboris* is pred. gen. of quality. — **proeliis**: abl. of time when.

101, 12. **pedibus**: abl. of manner.

101, 16. **quamvis pauci**: 'however few.'

101, 17. **Vinum**: cf. what is said of the Nervii, 72, 4 ff.

101, 20. CHAPTER 3. **Publice**: 'for a state.' — **laudem**: 'title to praise.'

101, 21. **vacare agros**: 'for lands to be unoccupied,' subject of *esse*.[1]

101, 22. **numerum . . . posse**: indir. disc., subject of *significari*.

101, 23. **a**: 'from.'

101, 24. **agri**: nom.

101, 28. **mercatores**: on the influence of traders in Gaul, see 51, 8 f.

101, 29. **moribus**: see on *officio*, 100, 19. — **cum**: concessive, as *tamen* shows.

101, 30. **experti**: the appositive part. expressing concession,[2] 'in spite of having made the attempt.'

102, 1. **gravitatem**: 'importance.'

102, 2. **vectigales, humiliores**: see on *homines*, 101, 1.

102, 4. CHAPTER 4. **causa**: 'position.'

102, 8. **quas regiones**: 'districts which'; avoid making the rel. pron. an adj. in Eng., as 'which districts.'

102, 9. **ad**: 'on.'

102, 11. **multitudinis**: = 430,000, according to 108, 1.

102, 12. **trans, cis**: from the Gallic or Roman standpoint.

102, 13. **Illi . . . cum**: 'the Germans made all sorts of attempts, but since,' etc.

102, 14. **vi contendere**: 'to use force.'

102, 18. **itinere**: abl. abs. with *confecto*. — **equitatu**: abl. of means; the infantry could not have covered the distance so quickly.

102, 23. **fieret**: subj. because the action was prevented by the main action,[3] 'before that part . . . could be informed.'

102, 24. **partem**: cf. *annos*, 100, 6.

102, 25. **copiis**: 'stores.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	615, 2 (538, 2)	971	452, 1 (270, 1)	422	330
2	638, 2 (549, 2)	1017	496 (292)	667	337, 2, *e*
3	605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, *b* (327)	577, 1	292, 1, *b*

102, 26. CHAPTER 5. **infirmitatem**: cf. 87, 23. Caesar feared that the Gauls would welcome the Germans and endeavor with their aid to drive out the Roman conqueror.

102, 29. **nihil . . . committendum**: 'that no confidence at all ought to be placed in them.' *Nihil* is adv. acc., and the gerundive (sc. *esse*) is impersonal.

102, 30. **consuetudinis**: pred. gen. of possession.[1] — **uti . . . cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogat**: in apposition with *hoc*, 'it is a Gallic custom to force,' etc.

103, 3. **et . . . vulgus circumsistat**: 'and for a crowd to flock around.'

103, 6. **quorum eos . . . paenitere**, etc.: 'of which they must repent.'[2] *Eos* is obj. of *paenitere* (cf. *Genesis* 6, 6, 'And it repented the Lord that he had made man on the earth'), which is itself subject of *est*.

103, 7. **rumoribus**: essential complement or indir. obj. of *serviant*, 'are slaves to.'

103, 8. **plerique**: the *viatores*. — **eorum**: 'of the questioners.' — **ficta respondeant**: 'mold their answers.'

103, 9. CHAPTER 6. **graviori**: 'too serious.' — **bello**: essential complement or indir. obj. of an intr. compound verb.[3]

103, 10. **consuerat**: see on *consuerant*, 81, 7. — **exercitum**: quartered in several states west of the Seine; see 99, 19 f.

103, 11. **suspicatus erat**: in an explanatory rel. clause, not considered as a part of the quotation which depends on *cognovit*; hence the indic.[4]

103, 12. **facta**: sc. *esse*. — **missas, invitatos**: sc. *esse*; these indir. disc. clauses are in apposition with *ea*.

103, 13. **ab Rheno**: *i.e.* to come farther into Gaul.

103, 14. **omnia . . . parata**: depends on the idea of promising contained in *invitatos*, 'with the promise that everything which they should demand would be made ready by them.' The actual promise was, *omnia quae postulaveritis* (fut. perf.) *a nobis erunt parata*.

103, 23. CHAPTER 7. **locis**: see on *itineribus*, 54, 18.

103, 24. **dierum**: gen. of quality. — **iter**: acc., cf. *viam*, 102, 17.

103, 25. **neque . . . neque**: 'not . . . and not either,' 'That the Ger-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	447 (402)	556	343, *b* (214, *c*)	366, R. 2	198, 3
2	457 (409, iii)	585	354, *b* (221, *b*)	377	209
3	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347, R. 2	187, iii, 1
4	643, 3 (529, N. 1, 2))	1028	583 (336, *b*)	628, R. *a*	314, 3

mans are not making war first on Rome, and yet they do not refuse either,' etc.

103, 27. **lacessantur**: 'if they are attacked,' for fut. indic. of dir. disc. Although the verb which introduces the quotation is past, Caesar uses primary sequence[1] throughout this speech, thus more nearly reproducing the original form. — **quin . . . contendant**: obj. of the neg. verb of refusing. See on *educat*, 93, 9.

103, 28. **consuetudo sit . . . tradita**: 'it is the custom . . . handed down.' — **quicumque**: the antecedent (*iis*, indir. obj. of *resistere*) may be omitted in English as well as in Latin.

103, 29. **Haec tamen dicere**: 'they have this to say however.' The subject of an infin. may be omitted if there is no chance for ambiguity. It is here first expressed with *concedere*, 104, 3.

104, 1. **iis**: the Romans.

104, 2. **attribuant**: 'let the Romans assign,' for imper., *attribuunto*, of dir. disc.[2] — **eos**: sc. *agros*. — **possederint**: from *possido*.

104, 4. **reliquum . . . neminem**: 'but there is not any one else on earth.'

104, 5. **possint**: in a characteristic clause,[3] hence it was subj. in the dir. disc.

104, 6. CHAPTER 8. **quae**: obj. of *respondere*, which is implied as subject of *visum est*.

104, 8. **remanerent**: for fut. indic. of dir. disc. The secondary sequence depends on *fuit*, but the remaining subjs. of this passage preserve their original tense, in violation of sequence; see on *liceat*, 55, 20. Do not imitate this shift of sequence in translation.

104, 10. **occupare**: see on *obtinere*, 51, 15. With its implied subject *eos* (antecedent of *qui*) it is subject of *esse*.

104, 13. **et . . . querantur et . . . petant**: 'complaining . . . and asking'; the pres. part. is not so freely used in Latin as in English.

104, 14. **hoc . . . imperaturum**: 'that he would enjoin this upon the Ubii.'

104, 17. CHAPTER 9. **post diem tertium**: 'in two days.' The Romans reckoned the day of departure as the first day; we leave it out of account.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	644, 1 (525, 1)	1032	585, *b* & N. (336, B, *a* & N. 1)	654, N.	318
2	642 (523, iii)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
3	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, *a* (320, *a*)	631, 2	283, 2

104, 18. **propius**: used as a prep.[1]

104, 19. **ab**: 'from.'

104, 21. **trans**: to the west side.

104, 24. CHAPTER 10. **Vosego**: Caesar comprehends under this name not only the Vosges Mountains, but also the plateau of Langres, in which the Meuse rises, and the Monts Faucilles, which unite the plateau with the Vosges.

104, 25. **parte . . . recepta**: 'taking up a branch from the Rhine.' The Waal (Vacalus) is to-day much the most important mouth of the Rhine.

104, 27. **inde**: from the junction of the Meuse and the Waal, which may have been farther east than at present. — **millibus**: as in 61, 17.

104, 28. **ex**: 'in'; cf. *ab . . . finibus oriuntur*, 51, 19, and see on *a*, 51, 16.

104, 29. **spatio**: 'course,' abl. of manner. — **Nantuatium**, etc.: the list of peoples whose territories are here said to have touched the Rhine is neither accurate nor complete (see on *spectant in*, 52, 1). The Nantuates were south of Lake Geneva (Lacus Lemannus); see 81, 3 ff. The word *per* is applicable to the Triboci only.

105, 2. **multis . . . effectis**: 'making many large islands.' The abl. abs. is not to be translated literally.

105, 4. **ex . . . qui**: 'some of whom,' lit., 'from whom there are [some] who' (not 'of the sort who,' which would require a subj. of characteristic).

105, 5. **capitibus**: 'mouths,' abl. of means.

105, 6. CHAPTER 11. **passuum XII millibus**: Caesar had continued to draw nearer to the Germans; cf. 103, 24 and 104, 18. f. For the abl., see on **passibus**, 65, 27.

105, 7. **erat constitutum**: refers to the promise of the envoys to return in two days; see 104, 17.

105, 11. **antecessissent**: implied indir. disc.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10. — **praemitteret**: without obj., 'send ahead to the cavalry.' The Roman army when on the march was usually led by cavalry and light-armed troops (Introd. § 45), whose duty in case of meeting the enemy was to hold him at bay until the infantry could be made ready for fighting.

105, 12. **sibique ut**: the pronoun is emphatic, in contrast with *eos equites*; cf. *vix qua*, 54, 20.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	420, 5 (437, 1)	659	432, *a* (261, *a*)	416, 22	141, 3

105, 14. **iure iurando**: 'under oath,' manner. — **ea condicione . . . usuros**: 'would avail themselves of those terms'; see 104, 12 f.

105, 16. **daret**: *ut* might have been expressed again, as with *faceret*, l. 13.

105, 17. **eodem**, etc.: 'tended to the same end'; *eodem* and *illo* are advs., explained by the appositive purpose clause.

105, 18. **abessent**: in a subordinate clause of indir. disc.

105, 21. **convenirent**: for *convenite* of dir. disc.; cf. *attribuant*, 104, 2.

105, 23. **qui nuntiarent**: 'men to announce'; see on *qui*, 51, 2. — **ne . . . lacesserent**: 'that they were not to attack,' indir. disc. for *nolite lacessere*.[1]

105, 24. **sustinerent**: cf. *convenirent*, l. 21. The Romans were to act merely on the defensive.

105, 25. **accessisset**: for perf. subj. of dir. disc., expressing an accomplished expectation, 'until he should [have] come.' The imperf. (for the pres. subj.[2] of dir. disc.) would be more usual, not implying accomplishment.

105, 26. CHAPTER 12. **ubi primum**: 'as soon as,' takes the same constr. as *ubi*.[3]

105, 27. **millium**: gen. of definition, or appositional gen.[4]

105, 28. **equites**: acc., *amplius* having no influence on the constr.;[5] but cf. *amplius . . . millibus*, 61, 17.

105, 29. **nihil timentibus nostris**: 'and while our men were in no fear of anything.'

106, 1. **indutiis**: dat. of purpose.[6]

106, 2. **rursus**, etc.: the Romans rallied after a few moments of fright.

106, 3. **suffossis**, etc.: 'and stabbing our horses underneath dismounted many of our men.' Begin a new sentence with *reliquos*.

106, 5. **non prius . . . quam**: see on 93, 17.

106, 7. **venissent**: attracted into the subj. (from the perf. indic.[7]) because it is an essential part of the result clause.[8]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	561, 1; 642, 4 (489, 1; 523, iii, N.)	728; 1023	450, 1; 588, N. 2 (269, *a*, 2; 339, N. 2)	271, 2; 652	276, *c*; 316, *a*
2	603, ii, 2 (519, ii, 2)	922	553 (328)	572	293, iii, 2
3	602 (518)	881	543 (324)	561	287, 1
4	440, 4 (396, vi)	569	343, *d* (214, *f*)	361, 1	202
5	471, 4 (417, 1, N. 2)	618	407, *c* (247, *c*)	296, R. 4	217, 3
6	425, 3 (384, ii, 1, 3)	548	382, 2 (233, *b*)	356, N. 2	191, 1
7	605, ii, 1 (520, N. 1)	879	551, *a* (327)	576	291, 2
8	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1, 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1

106, 9. **Piso**: probably this man had been given Roman citizenship, and as was regularly done he took the name of the Roman patron through whose agency he had been honored.

106, 10. **genere**: abl. of source.[1]

106, 11. **amicus**: see on *amicus*, 53, 9.—**Hic, illum**: 'he, him,' never 'this one, that one.'

106, 13. **ipse . . . quoad**: 'but upon his horse being wounded he was himself dismounted, yet as long as,' etc. Cf. this use[2] of *quoad* with that in 105, 24.

106, 16. **incitato equo**: 'he put spurs to his horse.'

106, 20. CHAPTER 13. **ab iis qui**: 'from men who,' with a clause of characteristic. The treachery of the Germans gave Caesar a welcome excuse for attacking them at once; for the superiority, which had just been proved, of the German over the Gallic cavalry, as well as the untrustworthiness of the Gauls, made clear the folly of waiting until the German cavalry should be reënforced.

106, 21. **exspectare**: subject of *esse*.[3]—**dum . . . augerentur**: cf. *quoad . . . accessisset*, 105, 24 f.

106, 23. **dementiae**: pred. gen. of possession,[4] 'was an act of the utmost folly.'

106, 24. **auctoritatis**: partit. gen. with *quantum*, 'how great an influence.' The partit. gen. is usually separated from the word upon which it depends.

106, 25. **quibus**: the enemy.

106, 27. **quaestore**: probably here, as on some other occasions, the quartermaster was given an equal military authority with the lieutenants, having command of a legion. See Introd. § 33.—**ne . . . praetermitteret**: 'not to let any[5] day for a battle go by,' in apposition with *consilio*.

106, 28. **pugnae**: gen. of poss.

106, 29. **quod**: 'in that'; the clause is in apposition with res.[6]—**eadem**: 'the same as before.'—**perfidia**: possibly the German chiefs and elders came in good faith to excuse the attack of their cavalry, but Caesar may well have believed that they were planning further treachery.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	469, 2 (415, ii)	609	403, *a* (244, *a*)	395	215
2	603, i (519, i)	918	555 (328, 2)	569	293, ii
3	615 (538)	972	452 (270)	422	327, 1
4	447 (402)	557	343, *b* (214, *c*)	366	198, 3
5	186 (190)	1064	149, *b* (105, *d*)	315	252, 1
6	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572, N. (333, N.)	525, 1	299, 1, *a*

107, 1. **natu**: see on 80, 20. — **simul . . . simul**: 'partly . . . partly.'

107, 2. **sui**: pl.[1]; cf. 83, 23, where it is sing. — **quod . . . commisissent**: the subj. is used on the principle of implied indir. disc., to show that Caesar is quoting the reason put forward by the Germans.[2] — **contra atque**: 'contrary to what.' — **esset dictum, petissent, possent**: subjs. of attraction.

107, 4. **ut . . . impetrarent**: 'that if they had any influence, they might carry their point in the matter of a truce by deception.'

107, 5. **illos**: same persons as *quos*. Caesar's treachery in arresting the German envoys was every whit as black as that of the Veneti (85, 18 ff.), whom he punished with the utmost severity, that, as he says (92, 3 f.), the rights of ambassadors might be respected.

107, 7. **subsequi**: as the cavalry had shown its unreliability, it was ordered to bring up the rear; it usually led the march (see on *praemitteret*, 105, 11).

107, 8. CHAPTER 14. **Acie triplici**: *i.e.* in three parallel columns, so that a line of battle might be formed as soon as the enemy appeared (see Introd. § 45).

107, 9. **prius . . . quam**: see on 93, 17.

107, 10. **quid ageretur**: 'what was going on,' depending on *sentire*.

107, 11. **possent**: see on *fieret*, 102, 23.

107, 12. **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.' — **suorum**: the envoys who had gone to Caesar, l. 1.

107, 14. **ne . . . an . . . an**: 'whether . . . or . . . or.'[3]

107, 15. **praestaret**: impers., having the infins. as subjects. — **Quorum**: see on 72, 1.

107, 18. **qui**: see on 51, 2.

107, 20. **puerorum**: gen. of definition or appositional gen.[4] Like the Helvetii they had migrated bag and baggage, and were seeking a new home in Gaul.

107, 22. **ad quos**, etc.: however justifiable Caesar's attack on the enemy may have been in the light of their attack upon him the day before, and necessary though it was from a military and political standpoint for the Germans to be kept out of Gaul, there was surely no excuse

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	626, 3 (542, I, N. 1)	1000	504, *c* (298, *a*)	428, R. 1	339, 5
2	588, ii (516, ii)	851	540 & N. 1 (321 & N. 1)	541	286, 1
3	380 (353, 1)	811, 813	335 (211)	458, 460	300, 4
4	440, 4 (396, vi)	568	343, *d* (214, *f*)	361, 1	202

for his detention of the envoys or for his cold-blooded slaughter of women and children. When a public recognition of his victory was being voted in the senate at Rome, Cato led the opposition, declaring that Caesar ought to be handed over to the barbarians in order that the wrath of heaven might fall upon him alone and not on the state. See Plutarch, *Life of Caesar*, 22.

107, 24. CHAPTER 15. **Germani**: *i.e.* those who engaged with the Romans.—**clamore audito cum . . . viderent**: 'hearing the outcry . . . and seeing,' etc.

107, 25. **abiectis, relictis**: translate by finite verbs, 'they threw away,' etc.

107, 27. **Rheni**: loosely used for the Waal (Vacalus) branch; see 104, 26 and note on *inde*, 104, 27.—**reliqua**: 'further.'

107, 30. **ex . . . timore**: translate, 'relieved from fear.'

108, 1. **cum**: causal, explaining *tanti*.—**capitum**: partit. with *milium*, which is gen. of definition, as in 105, 27. The number seems incredible, but an exaggeration is not surprising if we remember how easily to-day extravagant reports are circulated in time of danger.

108, 8. CHAPTER 16. **Caesar**, etc.: on Caesar's invasion of Germany, see summary of Book IV, p. 321 f.

108, 9. **illa**: 'the following.'—**iustissima**: 'the most forcible.'

108, 11. **cum intellegerent**: implied indir. disc., representing Caesar's thought as *suis . . . timebunt cum intellegent*.

108, 13. **Accessit . . . quod**: see on *accedebat quod*, 82, 18.

108, 14. **supra**: in 104, 20 ff.—**commemoravi**: Caesar, the *author*, sometimes speaks in the first person, but his achievements are always described in the third.

108. 18. **quos**: the Sugambri.

108, 19. **dederent**: coördinated with *postularent*; see on *adeat*, 88, 1.

108, 20. The answer of the Sugambri is no less insolent than that of the Usipetes and Tencteri, 103, 25 ff.—**Rhenum finire**: the Rhine remained the boundary between Gaul and the barbarians until the fifth century. In later times Germans have generally possessed territory west of the river, and to-day the dearest ambition of the French people is to recover Alsace-Lorraine, which was taken by Germany in the war of 1870–71.

108, 21. **Germanos . . . transire**: subject of an implied *esse*, *aequum* being in the predicate.

108, 22. **cur . . . postularet**: indir. quest., for an original *cur tui . . .*

together by timber laid on straight,' *i.e.* lengthwise of the bridge. Across these timbers poles (probably small trees stripped of branches) were laid, lying in the direction of the stream, and over the poles wicker-work was spread, woven of saplings and branches.

110, 16. **nihilo setius**: implying that the bridge was strong enough without these additions. — **et**: correlates with *et* in l. 19, 'piles were driven both on the down-stream side slantwise . . . and likewise others a little distance above the bridge.'

110, 17. **oblique**: slanting athwart the stream. — **pro ariete subiectae**: 'put underneath as a buttress'; cf. *pro vallo*, 69, 13 f. Probably each lower pair of logs was supported by two props, one on each side, leaning forward obliquely towards each other. They would in addition stiffen the bridge against longitudinal vibration.

110, 18. **exciperent**: 'should support,' purpose.

110, 19. **aliae**: it has commonly been assumed that three piles were planted before each upper pair of logs on the up-stream side, but there is no indication of the number in the text.

110, 22. **neu**, etc: 'and that they (referring to *earum rerum*) might not damage the bridge.'

110, 23. CHAPTER 18. **quibus**: see on *paucis diebus quibus*, 96, 10. — **coepta erat**: the pass. is used with the pass. infin.

110, 25. **partem**: 'end.'

110, 26. **Sugambrorum**: see 108, 17 ff.

111, 1. **hortantibus iis**: 'at the instigation of those.'

111, 3. **in solitudinem**: observe that in Latin the idiom is limit of motion; in English, place where.

111, 4. CHAPTER 19. **moratus, incensis**: note the shift from the nom. to the abl. abs.; see on *exustis*, 54, 14. Translate the abl. parts. as active finite verbs.

111, 7. **premerentur**: implied indir. disc.; this would be formal indir. disc. if Caesar had written an infin., as *se daturum pollicitus*.

111, 9. **more suo**: cf. **moribus suis**, 53, 23.

111, 10. **uti . . . convenirent**: subst. clauses, objs. of the idea of urging (which may be expressed in translation) implied in *nuntios dimisisse*.

111, 13. **medium**: 'in the middle,' pred. adj.

111, 17. **ut . . . liberaret**: subst. clauses in apposition with *rebus*, and expressing the purpose of Caesar's expedition. Translate, 'namely, inspiring fear . . . avenging,' etc.

111, 19. **XVIII**: to be read *duodeviginti*.

111, 20. **prōfectum**: not *prŏfectum* from *proficiscor*.

111, 22. CHAPTER 20. **Exigua . . . reliqua**: abl. abs. denoting concession; connect in translation with the clause *etsi*[1] . . . *hiemes*, 'although but a small part of the summer was left and the winters,' etc.

111, 23. **ad septentriones**: cf. 51, 18, and 61, 21.

111, 24. **in Britanniam**: see summary of Book IV, p. 322.—Although this expedition was without important results, except as it prepared the way for the more extensive operations of the following summer, it yet marks one of the most noteworthy events in the history of Europe. Plutarch's words (*Life of Caesar*, 23) are interesting: "By invading an island, the reported extent of which had made its existence a matter of controversy among historians, many of whom questioned whether it were not a mere name and fiction, not a real place, he might be said to have carried the Roman empire beyond the limits of the known world."

111, 25. **bellis**: abl. of time when.

111, 26. **sumministrata**, etc.: the only instance mentioned by Caesar is in the Venetan war, 87, 15.

111, 27. **magno . . . usui**: dat. of tendency or service,[2] accompanied by a dat. of interest *sibi*, 'it would be a great advantage to him.'

112, 1. **si . . . adisset**, etc.: the conditional clauses serve as subjects of *fore*. The plpf. tenses represent fut. perfs. of dir. disc.

112, 3. **fere**: belongs with the following words, 'were generally unknown.' Probably the Venetan shipmasters, who controlled the carrying trade between Gaul and Britain (see 85, 14, and note on 85, 12), and some of the Belgian peoples were best informed.—**Neque enim . . . quisquam**[3]: 'and in fact nobody.'

112, 4. **illo**: adv.—**his**: dat., depending on the adj. *notum*.[4]

112, 6. **Gallias**: pl., of the divisions of Gaul (51, 1).

112, 7. **neque quanta**, etc.: the indir. quests. depend on *reperire*, l. 11.

112, 9. **usum belli**: 'experience in war.'

112, 10. **maiorem**: 'rather large.'[5]

112, 13. CHAPTER 21. **faceret**: see on *priusquam . . . conaretur*, 64, 11.—**idoneum esse**: sc. *eum*, meaning Volusenus. His lack of suc-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	585 (515, ii, 1)	943	527, *c* (313, *c*)	604	309, 2
2	433 (390, i)	547	382, 1 (233, *a*)	356	191, 2, *a*
3	513 (457)	1071	312 (105, *h*)	317, 1	252, 4
4	434 (391)	536	383 (234)	359	192, 1
5	498 (444, 1)	678	291, *a* (93, *a*)	297, 2	240, 1

cess shows, however, that he was not fitted for the task (see 113, 2 ff.), although he had the reputation of being a courageous and prudent officer (83, 30 f.).

112, 17. **in Britanniam**: depending on the verbal noun *traiectus*. If Caesar sailed from Port Itius, as he did the next year on his second expedition (124, 5 f.), the distance to Britain was only about thirty Roman miles (124, 7). Port Itius is probably to be identified with Wissant.

112, 19. **quam . . . classem**: 'the fleet which,' the antecedent appearing only in the rel. clause. — For this fleet, see 86, 2 f.

112, 23. **dare**: complementary infin. Verbs of promising commonly take the fut. infin. in indir. disc.[1] — **imperio**: indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. verb.

112, 26. **Atrebatibus superatis**: see 77, 6 ff.

112, 27. **regem**: eleven Gallic kings are named by Caesar. Probably monarchy had once prevailed throughout Gaul, but had been superseded in most states by republican or aristocratic forms of government. — **ibi**: among the Atrebates.

112, 29. **his regionibus**: in Belgium. — **magni habebatur**: 'was considered valuable.'[2]

112, 30. **quas possit**: the rel. clause often precedes its antecedent. The subj. is due to implied indir. disc., representing Caesar's order, as, *Quas poteris adi civitates*. — **adeat, hortetur, nuntiet**: coördinated with *imperat*; see on *faciat*, 65, 5.

113, 1. **fidem sequantur**: 'seek the protection.' — **se**: indir. refl.,[3] referring to the subject of the main verb *imperat*.

113, 2. **quantum . . . potuit**: 'so far as opportunity could be given a man.'

113, 4. **auderet**: characteristic subj.

113, 5. **perspexisset**: for sequence, see on *ut occuparet*, 53, 9.

113, 7. CHAPTER 22. **moratur**: see on *conquiruntur*, 70, 4.

113, 8. **superioris temporis**: 'of a previous occasion,' *i.e.* the autumn of 56 B.C.; see 98, 19 ff.

113, 9. **excusarent**: in a rel. clause of purpose.[4] — **homines**, etc.: in apposition with the subject, 'being foreigners,' etc.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	619, 1 (537, N. 1)	986	580, *c* & N. (330, *f* & N.)	531, N. 4	Cf. 269, 1, exx.
2	448 (404)	576	417 (252, *a*)	380, 1	203, 3
3	504 (449, 1)	1046	300, 2 (196, *a*, 2)	521	244, ii, *a*
4	590 (497, i)	835	531, 2 (317, 2)	630	282, 2

113, 10. **consuetudinis**: obj. gen. with *imperiti*.[1] The reference is to the leniency of Rome towards all who submitted voluntarily.

113, 11. **fecissent**: implied indir. disc., giving Caesar's quotation of the reason offered by the envoys. — **imperasset**: observe that this plpf. depending on *pollicerentur* (which by its meaning refers to the future) denotes different time from *fecissent*.

113, 12. **pollicerentur**: in the same construction as *excusarent*.

113, 13. **neque . . . neque . . . neque**: 'not . . . and not . . . and not.'

113, 14. **anni tempus**: it was in August, too late to begin a campaign.

113, 15. **has . . . anteponendas**: 'that occupation with such trivial matters ought to be given precedence of Britain.'

113, 18. **Navibus . . . onerariis**: see Introd. § 48.

113, 19. **quot**, etc.: 'a number which he judged to be sufficient,' etc.

113, 20. **duas . . . legiones**: the VIIth and Xth, as we learn from 115, 24 and 119, 2.

113, 22. **quod . . . navium**: 'what ships.'[2]

113, 25. **distribuit**: sc. *eas*.

113, 26. **Huc accedebant**: 'there were also' ('to these were added').

113, 28. **eo loco**: Port Itius, see on 112, 17. — **a millibus passuum VIII**: 'eight miles away.'

113, 29. **tenebantur**, etc.: 'were kept from being able.'[3]

114, 3. **ducendum**: acc. of the gerundive, expressing purpose with a verb of giving.[4]

114, 6. CHAPTER 23. **tertia fere vigilia**: not far from midnight.

114, 7. **ulteriorem portum**: where the eighteen ships assigned to the cavalry were detained (113, 26 ff.). This harbor, called *superior* in 117, 14, was probably at or near modern Calais, which is not quite eight miles northeast of Wissant. This part of the French coast has changed greatly since Caesar's time.

114, 8. **paulo tardius**: 'a little too slowly,' *i.e.* to take advantage of the favorable wind. They did not sail for three days (see 117, 11 f.).

114, 10. **attigit**: astronomical calculation, considering the full moon mentioned in 117, 23 and the equinox (121, 7), sets the landing of

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	450 (399)	573	349, *a* (218, *a*)	374	204, 1
2	441 (397, 3)	564	346, *a*, 3 (216, *a*, 3)	369	201, 2
3	568, 8, (497, ii, 2)	900	558, *b* (331, *e*, 2)	549	295, 3
4	622 (544, N. 2)	994	500, 4 (294, *d*)	430	337, 7, *b*, 2

Caesar in Britain on August 27. The passage had taken eight or nine hours. Steamers now make the trip from Calais to Dover in less than two hours.

114, 12. **ita montibus**, etc.: 'was so closely bounded by mountains.' Caesar had apparently arrived off the chalk cliffs near Dover, which in clear weather were visible even from Gaul. It was from these white cliffs that the name Albion arose.

114, 15. **dum . . . convenirent**: 'for the rest of his ships to come up'; see on 55, 26.

114, 18. **monuit**: its obj. is the coördinate clause *ad nutum . . . administrarentur*; see on *faciat*, 65, 5. — **ut . . . postularent**: implied indir. disc. for *ut . . . postulant*[1] of Caesar's original admonition; 'as (see Vocab., s.v. *ut*) the theory of military science and especially manœuvres by sea require.'

114, 19. **ut quae . . . haberent**: 'since they have sudden and unsteady movement'; a causal rel. clause,[2] having *habeant* in the original speech. General truths in subordinate clauses take the present tense in English, but in Latin they follow the laws of sequence.

114, 24. **progressus**: from off Dover, probably northeastward to the neighborhood of Deal. — **constituit**: the vessels were moored as far inshore as possible; see l. 29 f. After the battle the ships of war were beached (117, 26).

114, 26. CHAPTER 24. **quo genere**: 'a class of warriors which,' referring to *essedariis*. Their mode of fighting is described in 119, 21 ff. See on *quod nomen*, 86, 10.

114, 27. **consuerunt**: see on *consuerant*, 81, 7. — **copiis**: accompaniment.[3]

114, 28. **prohibebant**: 'tried to prevent,' the conative use of the imperf.[4]

114, 29. **has**: 'the following.'

114, 30. **alto**: 'deep water.' — **militibus**: dat. of agent with the gerundives; limited by *pressis*.

115, 1. **locis**: loc. abl. — **manibus**: abl. abs., expressing attendant circumstance. Translate this sentence, 'and the soldiers, moreover, on

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	316, 2 (311, 2)	888			
2	592, 1 (517, 3, 1)	839–40	535, *e*, N. 1 (320, *e*, N. 1)	626, N. 1	283, 3, *a*
3	474, 2, N. 1 (419, iii, 1, 1)	634	413, *a* (248, *a*, N.)	392, R. 1	222, 1
4	530 (469, ii, 1)	739	471, *c* (277, *c*)	233	260, 3

unfamiliar ground, with hands hampered, and weighed down as they were with a great and heavy load of arms, had at one and the same time to leap down,' etc.

115, 4. **cum illi**, etc.: 'while the Britons,' etc. The clause describes a subordinate circumstance accompanying the main action; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29.

115, 6. **insuefactos**: 'well trained.'

115, 7. **generis**: obj. gen. with *imperiti*.[1]

115, 8. **pedestribus**: 'on land.'

115, 11. CHAPTER 25. **inusitatior**: 'stranger' than that of the transports, as they were less like the ships of traders. See beginning of note on 85, 12.

115, 14. **inde**: 'from their position' on the water's edge.

115, 16. **quae res**: see on *quo genere*, 114, 26.

115, 18. **remorum motu**: evidently the Britons, like the Veneti (see 91, 4 f.), propelled their ships by sails only.

115, 24. **qui**: 'the man who'; see on *qui*, 51, 2. — **decimae**: as in the battle with the Nervii (79, 29 ff.), so here, Caesar's favorite legion decides the issue.

115, 25. **ut . . . eveniret**: a subst. clause, second obj. of *obtestatus*; see on *Haeduos frumentum*, 61, 19. — **ea res**: 'his action.'

115, 29. **certe**: 'at any rate.'

115, 30. **praestitero**: 'shall have done.'

116, 2. **inter se**: 'each other'; see on 51, 4.

116, 3. **ne . . . admitteretur**: translate as active, 'not to be guilty of.' — **dedecus**: *i.e.* the loss of the eagle.

116, 4. **Hos**, etc.: 'likewise, men from the nearest ships, catching sight of them, followed after and,' etc.

116, 6. CHAPTER 26. **utrisque**: the pl. is used of two groups, the sing. of two individuals.

116, 8. **signa subsequi**: each maniple had its own standard, but here, as in the battle with the Nervii (76, 21 f.), men did not try to find their proper maniple.

116, 9. **alius**, etc.: 'men from different ships' ('one man from one ship, another from another'). — **quibuscumque signis**: the implied antecedent (*iis signis*, indir. obj. of the cpd. vb. *adgregabat*) may be omitted also in translation, 'gathered round whatever,' etc.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	451, 1 (399, i, 2)	573	349, *a* (218, *a*)	374	204, 1

116, 11. **ubi**: 'whenever'; this meaning is shown by the plpf. tense in the subordinate clause with the imperf. in the main clause, these tenses being regularly so used to show customary or repeated past action.

116, 13. **ab**: 'on.'

116, 14. **in universos**: 'against the whole body.'

116, 16. **quos**: 'whomsoever'; see on *ubi*, l. 11.

116, 17. **simul** = *simul atque*.

116, 18. **suis . . . consecutis**: 'and all their comrades had come up.'

116, 19. **neque**: 'but . . . not.' — **longius**: 'very far.'

116, 20. **equites**: see on *paulo tardius*, 114, 8.

116, 21. **Hoc**, etc.: 'this was the only thing Caesar (dat. of possessor) lacked for his previous good fortune.'

116, 25. CHAPTER 27. **daturos**: sc. *se*; see on *pati*, 72, 4. — **quae imperasset**: representing *quae imperaveris* (fut. perf.) of dir. disc.

116, 27. **supra**: see 112, 26. In translation subordinate *supra demonstraveram*, 'who, as I pointed out above, was sent ahead.'

116, 28. **illi**: = *Britanni*.

116, 29. **cum**: concessive. — **oratoris modo**: 'in the character of an envoy.'

117, 2. **imprudentiam**: 'lack of discretion.'

117, 3. **ignosceretur**: sc. *sibi*; verbs which in the active take the dat. are impersonal in the passive, and the dat. remains.[1] — **quod . . . intulissent**: 'because, as he said, they had,' etc.: implied indir. disc.

117, 4. **legatis missis**: see 112, 23.

117, 11. CHAPTER 28. **post diem quartum quam**[2] **. . . ventum**: 'three days (see on 104, 17) after the arrival,' etc., *i.e.* August 30; see on 114, 10.

117, 13. **supra**: see 113, 26.

117, 14. **superiore portu**: see on *ulteriorem portum*, 114, 7.

117, 16. **viderentur**: 'were in sight.'

117, 19. **propius**: see on 104, 18. — **sui**: 'to themselves,' obj. gen.

117, 20. **tamen**: applies to the concessive abl. abs. *ancoris iactis*; 'and since, though they had cast anchor, they were nevertheless filling with water.'

117, 21. **adversa nocte**: 'even in the face of night'; concessive abl. abs.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	426, 3 (384, 5)	530, end	372 (230)	217	187, ii, *b*
2	488, 2 (430, N. 1, 3)	658	434 (262)	403, N. 4 (*b*)	357, 1

117, 23. CHAPTER 29. **luna**: see on 114, 10.

117, 24. **maritimos**: omit in translation.

117, 25. **incognitum**: it would seem as if the Romans might have observed this fact during the Venetan war (cf. 88, 29). There is almost no tide in the Mediterranean.

117, 28. **nostris**: the men in camp. — **administrandi**, etc.: 'of controlling or helping the ships.'

118, 1. **amissis**: 'owing to the loss of,' etc. — **id quod**[1]: *id* is in apposition with the antecedent sentence; *quod* is subject of *accidere*, which with its subject acc. is in turn the subject of *erat*.[2]

118, 4. **possent**: characteristic.

118, 5. **hiemari** (impers. pass.) . . . **oportere**: 'that the winter ought to be spent.'

118, 9. CHAPTER 30. **inter se**: see on 51, 4.

118, 11. **quae . . . quod**: 'which was more contracted, too, from the fact that'; see on *hoc facilius . . . quod*, 52, 12.

118, 13. **optimum**: pred. adj. with *esse*, which is in indir. disc. with *duxerunt* (= 'thought'); the subjects of *esse* are *prohibere* and *producere*. — **factu**: see on 53, 14.

118, 14. **rebellione facta**: 'to renew hostilities.'

118, 15. **rem**: 'the struggle.' — **his . . . interclusis**: abl. abs. expressing condition.

118, 18. **castris**: the Roman camp; the Britons had given up all warlike operations (117, 8 ff.).

118, 19. **deducere**: the men who had gone to their homes a few days before (117, 8) were now brought back secretly.

118, 21. CHAPTER 31. **ex eventu**: 'from what had happened to,' etc.

118, 22. **ex eo, quod**: 'from the fact that'; the causal clause is in apposition with the neuter *eo*. — **fore . . . accidit**: 'that that was coming which actually did happen.'

118, 25. **quae . . . naves, earum**: 'of those ships which'; see on 59, 11.

118, 26. **aere**: bronze, which was early used for a great variety of purposes, was more serviceable in ships than iron because of its freedom from rust.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	399, 6 (445, 7)	830	307, *d* (200, *e*)	614, R. 2	247, 1, *b*
2	615, 1 (538, 1)	971	452 (270)	422	330

118, 29. **ut . . . posset**: an impers. clause of result, obj. of *effecit*;[1] 'he made it possible to sail fairly well with the rest.'

119, 1. CHAPTER 32. **Dum**: as in 113, 6.—**legione . . . missa**: translate as a main clause, 'one legion had been sent.'

119, 2. **frumentatum**: see on *rogatum*, 58, 12.

119, 3. **neque ulla . . . interposita**: 'and no suspicion of war for that time had been aroused.'

119, 4. **hominum**: Britons. Since some of them remained at work in their fields and others kept coming (note the freq. or intensive vb.[2]) even into the enemy's camp, the Romans were thrown off their guard.

119, 5. **ii**: begin a new sentence, 'presently those.'—**in statione**: one cohort was usually on guard before each of the four gates of the camp. See Introd. § 44.

119, 7. **quam consuetudo ferret**: 'than usual.'—**parte**: 'direction.'

119, 8. **id quod erat**: 'the truth.'

119, 9. **aliquid . . . consili**[3]: 'namely, that some new plan had been formed,' etc.; indir. disc. in apposition with *id*.

119, 11. **reliquas**: *i.e.* four cohorts. Of the two legions which Caesar brought to Britain (113, 20) the seventh was out foraging; four cohorts of the tenth, which had been on guard at the four gates of the camp and so were already armed, were ordered out to relieve the seventh; only two cohorts could be spared to take their places, probably half a cohort being assigned to each gate; the remaining four cohorts were to arm and follow Caesar at once.—**armari**: 'to arm,' refl. use of the passive.[4]

119, 12. **paulo longius**: 'some little distance.'

119, 14. **conferta legione**: 'that the legion was crowded closely together and,' etc.

119, 16. **una**: note the full force, 'only one.'

119, 19. **paucis interfectis**: 'they killed a few and,' etc.—**incertis ordinibus**: 'since the ranks were not formed.'

119, 21. CHAPTER 33. **pugnae**: here with the force of a verbal noun ('fighting'), and so more easily modified by a prepositional phrase.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	566 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1
2	364 (336)	93	263, 2 (167, *b*)	191, 1	155, 2
3	441 (397, 3)	564	346, *a*, 3 (216, *a*, 3)	369	201, 2
4	517 (465)	687	156, *a* (111, *a*)	218	256, 1

119, 23. **equorum**: subjective gen., 'terror caused by the horses.' — **ordines**: of the enemy.

119, 24. **cum**: 'whenever'; this meaning is shown by the perf. tense in the subordinate clause with the pres. in the main clause, these tenses being regularly so used to show customary or repeated present action; cf. the note on 116, 11.

119, 25. **equitum**: of their own army.

119, 26. **pedibus**: cf. 101, 12.

119, 28. **illi**: 'the fighting men,' of whom there may have been six on each chariot.

119, 29. **receptum**: substantive.

120, 1. **tantum . . . efficiunt**: 'acquire such skill.'

120, 3. **incitatos**: 'even on the gallop.'

120, 4. **iugo**: the yoke, which held the two horses together and supported the pole. See the cut, p. 119.

120, 6. CHAPTER 34. **rebus**: abl. of means. — **nostris**: indir. obj. of *tulit*. — **novitate**: abl. of cause, 'owing to,' etc.

120, 11. **alienum** and **suo**: opposed to each other, 'unfavorable' and 'favorable.'

120, 13. **haec**: the battle. — **qui . . . reliqui**: the Britons who had stayed at work in the fields as a blind, 119, 4.

120, 15. **quae . . . continerent**: 'so severe as to keep.'

120, 19. **sui liberandi**: see on *sui colligendi*, 84, 10.

120, 20. **expulissent**: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.

120, 23. CHAPTER 35. **idem . . . fore**: 'that the result would be the same as,' etc.

120, 24. **ut . . . effugerent**: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with *idem*.[1]

120, 26. **equites XXX**: not enough to be very effective in attack, but useful in pursuing and cutting down a flying enemy.

120, 27. **ante**: see 112, 26 ff., and 116, 26 ff.

120, 30. **tanto spatio**: 'over as long a course,' a strange use of the abl. of manner; cf. 104, 29.

121, 5. CHAPTER 36. **His**: dat. of interest or reference, expressing disadvantage. — **ante**: see 117, 5 f.

121, 7. **die**: note the gender; 'since the season of the equinox was near.' Caesar was probably in Britain about three weeks (see on 114, 10).

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	571, 4 (501, iii)	904	570 (332, *f*)	557	297, 3

121, 11. **quos reliquae**: 'as the rest.'

121, 12. **paulo infra**: 'a little farther down,' *i.e.* southwest from Port Itius (see on 112, 17). The current along the French coast runs to the west.

121, 13. CHAPTER 37. **Quibus ex navibus**: the two transports just mentioned.

121, 14. **in castra**: probably the camp of Sulpicius at Port Itius; see 114, 3 f.

121, 15. **proficiscens**: 'at his departure.'

121, 16. **pacatos**: see 113, 7 ff.

121, 17. **non ita magno**: 'not a very large.' — **sese interfici**: 'to be killed'; an infin. used as obj. of verbs of wishing generally takes a subject acc. only when the subject is different from that of the governing verb.[1]

121, 18. **nollent**: implied indir. disc., representing an original *non vultis*. — **orbe facto**: when a body of troops was attacked on all sides it sometimes formed in a circle, all facing out.

121, 19. **ad clamorem**: 'at a shout.' — **hominum**: of the enemy; it belongs with *millia*.

121, 21. **suis auxilio**: see on 63, 26.

121, 23. **horis**: abl. of comparison; commonly *amplius* has no influence on the construction; see *equites*, 105, 28, and note.

121, 24. **Postea . . . quam**: 'after.'

122, 3. CHAPTER 38. **Qui cum**: 'and since they,' the Morini. — **siccitates**: abstract substantives are sometimes used in the pl. when the abstract idea pertains to several things.

122, 4. **reciperent**: subj. of characteristic, 'they had no place to which they could retreat.' — **quo perfugio**: see on *quod nomen*, 86, 10. For the fact, see 98, 26 f.

122, 6. **Titurius, Cotta**: see 114, 1.

122, 8. **frumentis**: note the pl.; see Vocab.

122, 9. **in . . . silvas**: see on *in solitudinem*, 111, 3.

122, 12. **neglexerunt**: an admission that the expedition was without important results; see on 111, 24.

122, 14. **His rebus gestis**: 'for these exploits,' abl. abs. expressing cause. — **ex**: 'in accordance with.' — **dierum XX**: this unprecedented honor was longer by five days than any previous thanksgiving celebrated

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	614 (535, ii)	965–66	563, *b* (331, *b*, N.)	532, R. 2	331, iv, *a*

at Rome. While it shows how proud the Romans were of Caesar's achievements in penetrating with a Roman army into two unknown countries, it was not decreed without strong opposition in the senate; see on *ad quos*, 107, 22.

BOOK FIFTH

Campaign of 54 B.C. — The winter of 55–54 B.C. was spent in building a fleet and making other preparations for an invasion of Britain in force the following summer. Five legions and two thousand cavalry were taken across the Channel. In several engagements Caesar was victorious, and many tribes sent him hostages in token of submission. Still, he advanced only to the Thames and left no permanent results of his six or eight weeks' campaign. It was almost a hundred years before the Romans again visited Britain, in the reign of the emperor Claudius. Enough had been learned of the island, however, to dispel the common notion of its unbounded wealth.

[Owing to drought and scanty harvests Caesar scattered his army more than usual for the following winter. One legion under the command of Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator, was stationed among the Nervii; while another, under the trusted Labienus, was quartered on the Treveran frontier of the Remi. Sabinus and Cotta were given joint command of one legion and five unorganized cohorts stationed among the Eburones. The remaining five legions were distributed among the Esuvii, Morini, and Bellovaci.

This wide separation of the Roman forces appeared to the Gauls to afford a good opportunity to strike for freedom. The first attack was made by Ambiorix, chief of the Eburones, who, pretending friendship and gratitude to Caesar, warned Sabinus and Cotta that their only hope of escape from an overwhelming force of Gauls and Germans who would fall upon them within two days was to abandon their post and unite with Cicero or Labienus. In spite of the stout opposition of Cotta and many other officers this advice was adopted. The Romans had gone only two miles when Ambiorix fell upon them from an ambush and cut them to pieces almost to a man. Without delay he then marched into the country of the Nervii, Caesar's old enemy of three years before, and easily persuaded them to join in an attack on Cicero's camp. After a gallant defense from siege and assault, during which not one man in ten

escaped without wounds, Cicero finally succeeded, after many failures, in getting word to Caesar, who came with all haste to his relief and put the enemy to rout.

Labienus's camp was attacked by the Treveri, but their repulse and the death of their chief, Indutiomarus, quieted Gaul for a season. For the first time Caesar spent the winter in Gaul, making his headquarters at Amiens (Samarobriva) in the country of the Ambiani.]

PAGE 123, LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. **L. . . . consulibus**: = 54 B.C. The consuls took office on January 1, which, owing to the confusion of the Roman calendar, came some six or eight weeks earlier than at present. Consequently Caesar may have gone to Italy early in the winter. See on 100, 2.

123, 2. **Italiam**: see on 57, 26.

123, 3. **legatis**: Caesar had eight legions at this time, each under the command of a lieutenant; see on *ab opere*, 76, 2.

123, 4. **quam plurimas possint . . . naves**: 'the largest possible number of ships'; see on *quam maximis potest*, 55, 9. — **possint**: implied indir. disc.

123, 5. **naves aedificandas . . . curent**: 'have ships built.'[1]

123, 6. **Earum**: applying only to the new ships, not to the *veteres*. — **modum**: 'style.'

123, 7. **humiliores**: sc. *eas*, obj. of *facit*.

123, 8. **quam quibus**: = *quam eae sunt quibus*; see on *qui*, 51, 2. — **nostro**: the Mediterranean. — **id** (sc. *facit*) . . . **quod**: 'he does this all the more from the fact that he,' etc.

123, 10. **minus magnos**: 'not so large' as in the Mediterranean. This observation is incorrect. The existence of tides, too, does not materially influence the size of waves, but merely changes their form.

123, 11. **iumentorum**: including principally the cavalry horses. — **latiores**: sc. *eas facit*.

123, 12. **actuarias**: pred. adj. The addition of oars made the fleet more independent of wind and tide.

123, 14. **armandas**: cf. *armatae*, 89, 2, and *armorum*, 90, 2. — **Hispania**: Spain produced abundant material for making both ropes and metal implements.

123, 16. CHAPTER 2. **His . . . rebus**: referring to the punishment of the barbarous Pirustae, who had invaded Illyricum, a part of Caesar's

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B
1	622 (544, 2, N. 2)	994	500, 4 (294, *d*)	430	337, 7, *b*, 2

province; see Introd. § 8. This is briefly related in the last half of Ch. 1, which is omitted in this book.

123, 17. **proficiscitur**: Caesar cannot have been away from his army much more than five months. During this time he traveled at least 2000 miles, from Belgium (122, 10) to Illyricum and back.

123, 19. **studio**: 'owing to the enthusiasm.'—**in . . . inopia**: 'although in,' etc.

124, 1. **cuius**: for *quod*, an unusual attraction of the rel. to the case of the antecedent.[1]

124, 2. **neque . . . quin**: 'and were not far from the point where.' The clause *quin . . . possint* is in apposition with *eo*, the use of *quin*[2] instead of *ut* being due to *abesse*.

124, 5. **Itium**: see on 112, 17.

124, 7. **millium**: gen. of quality with *traiectum*.

124, 8. **huic rei**: 'for this purpose,' of assembling all the troops at Port Itius.—**quod . . . militum** (partit. gen.): 'as many soldiers as.'

124, 9. CHAPTER 8. **His rebus**: in the omitted chapters Caesar tells of quieting a disaffection of the Treveri, and of the open revolt of Dumnorix the Haeduan, which ended in his death.

124, 11. **portus**: Port Itius and the *ulterior portus* of 114, 7.

124, 13. **pro tempore**, etc.: 'according to the time and the circumstance.'

124, 14. **pari . . . quem**: 'the same . . . as,' *i.e.* 2000.

124, 16. **provectus, intermisso**: translate as finite vbs.

124, 17. **longius**: his proper course from Port Itius was northwest to the vicinity of Dover and Deal, but the current carried him too far northward.

124, 19. **contendit**, etc.: at about daybreak the tide began to run to the southwest, and Caesar taking advantage of (*secutus*) this fact strove by rowing to reach the coast near Deal (see on *progressus*, 114, 24).

124, 22. **vectoriis**, etc.: 'in heavy transports,' abl. of means.

124, 23. **non intermisso**: 'with no respite from.'

124, 28. **quae cum**, etc.: 'of which, including those of the year before' (the *veteres* of 123, 5).—**sui** (with *commodi*) **quisque**: see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11. The private ships probably belonged to officers, traders,

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	399, 5 (445, 8)		306, *a* (199, *a*)	617	250, 5
2	595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558 (332, *g*)	555, 1	295, 3 & *a*

and others who accompanied the expedition for the sake of pleasure or profit.

124, 29. **DCCC**: = *octingentae*, agreeing with *quae*; see on *equites*, 105, 28.

125, 5. CHAPTER 9. **cohortibus X**: probably two from each of his five legions (124, 14).

125, 7. **navibus**: dat. of interest or reference. — **molli atque aperto**: = *aperto ac plano* of 114, 24.

125, 11. **equitatu**, etc.: accompaniment[1]; *cum* is commonly used if there is no adj.

125, 12. **flumen**: the Stour, which flows northeast through Canterbury and empties into the sea about six miles north of Deal. Caesar must have marched west, as in this direction the river is about twelve miles from his landing place. — **prohibere**: 'hinder' from crossing.

125, 17. **domestici belli . . . causa**: 'for use in civil war.'

125, 23. **rari propugnabant**: 'scattered here and there hurled forth weapons.'

125, 28. **aggere**: probably only a simple mound of earth built up against the enemy's fortification in the manner of the Roman siege mound (see Introd. § 47).

126, 4. CHAPTER 10. **tripertito**: by three routes.

126, 7. **extremi**: 'the rear' of the enemy.

126, 8. **Atrio**: see 125, 9.

126, 11. **funes**: cf. *pro funibus*, 89, 9, and see note. — **sustinerent**: observe that the subj. shows this reason to be Atrius's.

126, 13. **concursu**: 'colliding.'

126, 15. CHAPTER 11. **in itinere resistere**: 'merely to resist on the march,' *i.e.* merely to defend themselves if attacked as they marched back to camp.

126, 17. **sic ut**: 'the state of affairs being such that.' — **amissis**: abl. abs. expressing concession.

126, 18. **negotio**: abl. of manner.

126, 19. **deligit**: this word shows that Caesar had no separate force of carpenters, but selected from the ranks such men as could be of most service for a given undertaking. — **Labieno**: in command on the continent; see 124, 9 ff.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	474, 2, N. 1 (419, 1, 1)	634	413, *a* (248, *a*, N.)	392, R. 1	222, 1

126, 20. **ut . . . instituat**: a complementary or subst. clause, obj. of *scribit*, which is here equiv. to a vb. of command, 'writes L. to build.'[1] An infin. would be in indir. disc., 'writes L. that he is building.'— **possit, sint**: implied indir. disc.; cf. *fugerant* in l. 5, where the main vb. *misit* gives no implication of indir. disc.—**legionibus**: abl. of means.

126, 21. **operae**, etc.: gen. of quality, 'an undertaking requiring much labor and exertion.'

126, 24. **ne . . . intermissis**: 'not granting even in the night-time any respite to the soldiers' toil.'

126, 27. **quas ante**: 'as before,' see **125**, 5 f.

126, 28. **eodem**: adv.

126, 30. **summa . . . administrandi**: 'the chief command and management of the war.'

127, 3. **a mari**: Caesar reckons according to his line of march from his landing place.

127, 4. **Huic . . . intercesserant**: 'he had been engaged in,' etc.

127, 6. **hunc**, etc.: 'had given him chief command of the whole war.'

127, 8. CHAPTER 12. **quos . . . dicunt**: 'of whom they say there is a tradition that they originated,' etc.; *quos natos* [esse] is the subject of *proditum* [esse]. Many peoples in antiquity had the mistaken notion that their race sprang from the soil of the country in which they lived. The Britons of Caesar's day were Celtic, and they are believed to have been preceded by Iberians. See on *Celtae*, **51**, 3.

127, 11. **nominibus**: for instance, there were Atrebates and Belgae in southern Britain, and Parisii on the east coast in modern Yorkshire.— **quibus . . . civitatibus**: see on *itineribus*, **54**, 18.

127, 13. **Hominum**: 'population.'

127, 14. **Gallicis**: Gallic houses were round (cf. Indian wigwams), made of boards or wickerwork of stakes and interwoven branches, and had thatched roofs.

127, 15. **aureo**: gold coins antedating Caesar's visit have been found in England.

127, 16. **ad certum pondus**: among most primitive peoples the use of metals by weight precedes coinage.

127, 17. **Mediterraneis**: *i.e.* Cornwall, which was so far from that part of the island visited by Caesar that he might easily imagine it to

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	564, 1 (498, i)	894	563 (331)	546	295, 1

be inland. The tin of Cornwall had been exported by Phoenicians as early as the tenth century B.C.

128, 1. **maritimis**: iron is now found principally in the interior, and the supply is abundant.

128, 3. **fagum, abietem**: both are native in Britain.

128, 4. **gustare**: subject of *esse* implied. — **haec**: neuter, referring to things of different genders.[1] — **animi causa**: 'for amusement.'

128, 6. **frigoribus**: see on 61, 21. The Gulf Stream tempers the climate of England.

128, 10. CHAPTER 13. **inferior**: instead of *alter*, correlated to *alter* above.

128, 11. **ad meridiem**: not a bad mistake, as Land's End really points southwest.

128, 12. **Hispaniam**: Tacitus, writing 150 years later, puts Ireland between Britain and Spain (*Agricola*, 24).

128, 14. **spatio**: abl. of quality, parallel with *minor*.

128, 15. **atque**: 'as'; see on 70, 29. Translate the phrase, 'lying just as far from it as the distance from Gaul to Britain.' Note that *transmissūs* is gen. — **In . . . cursu**: 'in the middle of this passage.'

128, 16. **Mona**: evidently the Isle of Man; Tacitus (*Agricola*, 14) gives the name to Anglesey.

128, 17. **obiectae**: sc. *esse*, 'to be near'; probably the islands off the coast of Scotland are meant.

128, 18. **non nulli**: probably Greek travelers. In the last part of the fourth century B.C., Pytheas of Marseilles (Massilia) wrote of his voyage in a Phoenician ship from Cadiz (Gades) to Britain and beyond. — **dies**, etc.: not true for any part of Britain.

128, 20. **nisi**: 'but.' — **certis . . . mensuris**: 'from exact measurements with water,' *i.e.* by the *clepsydra* or water-clock, which measured time by the dripping of water through a small orifice, on the principle of a sand-glass. — **breviores**: the shortest nights of summer are about an hour and a half shorter in London than in Rome.

128, 22. **ut fert**, etc.: 'as they suppose.' — **millium**: pred. gen. of quality; cf. 124, 7. For the omission of *passuum*, cf. 92, 19.

128, 27. CHAPTER 14. **Ex his**: the Britons.

128, 29. **omnis**: see on 51, 1.

128, 30. **frumenta**, etc.: the tribes on the southern coast were more

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	398, 1 (445, 3, N. 1)	485, 480	296, 1; 287, 3 (195: 187, *b*)	Cf. 286, 1	Cf. 235, B, 2, *b*, β

civilized; see 118, 14 and 24, and 119, 2 and 16. — **lacte**, etc.: so the Suebi, see 100, 17 and 101, 2.

129, 2. **vitro**: the woad plant is still cultivated in some parts of Europe, the dye extracted from its leaves being mainly used to improve the quality of indigo. — **hoc**: abl. of cause.

129, 3. **capillo, parte**: abls. of quality; 'they have,' etc.

129, 5. **deni duodenique**: 'ten or twelve.' — **inter se**: 'together.'

129, 7. **qui . . . nati**: 'the offspring of these wives.'

129, 8. **quo**: adv. (= *ad quos*), with *eorum* as its antecedent.

129, 9. CHAPTER 15. The account of Caesar's exploits, which was interrupted by Chs. 12–14, is resumed.

129, 10. **itinere**: *i.e.* on the march back from the naval camp (126, 28).

129, 11. **ita**: 'with the result.' — **partibus**: see on *locis*, 54, 26.

129, 12. **fuerint**: for the tense, see on **debuerint**, 58, 15.

129, 14. **intermisso spatio**: 'after a time.'

129, 18. **atque his primis**: 'and these the first'; the first cohort of a legion had the best men; see Introd. § 28.

129, 19. **perexiguo . . . se**: 'with a very short distance between them.'

129, 20. **novo genere**: *i.e.* the method of the *essedarii* explained in 119, 21 ff.

129, 21. **per medios**: through the space between the two cohorts. — **perruperunt**: *illi* (l. 14) is still the subject.

129, 28. CHAPTER 16. **neque . . . auderent**: if small detachments withdrew from the ranks, they were exposed to attack from the chariots.

130, 1. **equites . . . dimicare**: depending on *intellectum est* above.

130, 2. **illi**: the fighters on chariots.

130, 4. **dispari**: the Roman cavalry, not being supported by infantry, was at a disadvantage with the enemy, some of whom were fighting on foot and some from chariots.

130, 5. **ratio**: 'character.' — **et cedentibus et insequentibus**: 'to our men whether retiring or pursuing.' The war chariots gave the Britons a constant advantage.

130, 6. **Accedebat huc ut**: 'in addition to this'; see on 89, 22.

130, 8. **stationes**, etc.: 'reserves posted here and there.'

130, 9. **alios alii**, etc. 'they followed one another in succession.'

130, 17. CHAPTER 17. **sic uti**, etc.: 'with such boldness that

they did not hold off from the ranks of the legions' (hendiadys), *i.e.* they did not confine their attacks to the cavalry or to detached bodies of foragers.

130, 19. **subsidio**: see on *tempore*, 98, 17.

130, 20. **egerunt**: *quoad* takes the indic. to express an actual fact;[1] for the constr. to denote expectation or purpose, see *accessisset*, 105, 25, and note.

130, 21. **sui colligendi**: see on 84, 10. With the combination of gerundive and gerunds in l. 21 f., cf. 83, 21 ff.

130, 22. **Ex**: 'after.'

130, 23. **quae . . . auxilia**: see 126, 29 f.

130, 24. **summis copiis**: 'in full force.'

130, 26. CHAPTER 18. **consilio**: their plan of campaign is described in Ch. 19.

130, 29. **hoc**: sc. *loco*. Caesar probably crossed the Thames not far from Hampton Court, about 22 miles above London Bridge.

131, 2. **praefixisque**: 'driven into the edge of the bank.'

131, 3. **defixae**: 'driven into the bed of the stream.'

131, 5. **ea, eo**: 'such.'

131, 6. **ierunt**: Caesar leaves us in the dark as to how his men got round the stakes in the river and on the shore. It is possible that the lines of stakes were not planted far enough to be effective. — **capite**: abl. of amount of difference; 'although only their heads were above water.' Modern armies consider it dangerous to ford a stream which is over three feet deep.

131, 9. CHAPTER 19. **supra**: in 130, 24 f.

131, 10. **contentionis**: 'of keeping up the struggle.' — **amplioribus**: 'the greater part of.'

131, 11. **servabat**: 'kept watch of.'

131, 12. **excedebat, etc.**: translate these imperfs. with 'would,' to express customary action.

131, 16. **viis, etc.**: 'by all the highways and byways'; abls. of means. The chariots must have been narrow to pass between the trees, and their wheels were probably of good size so as to go easily over rough ground.

131, 18. **periculo . . . equitum**: 'danger to our cavalry'; *equitum* is possessive gen. — **hoc metu**: 'owing to their fear of this.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	603, ii, 1 (519, ii, 1)	922	554 (328)	571	293, iii, 1

131, 19. **Relinquebatur ut**: 'the result was that,' etc.; the clauses with *ut* are subjects of *relinquebatur*.

131, 20. **discedi, etc.**: impers., 'permit his men to go away.'

131, 21. **tantum . . . quantum**: 'only so much . . . as.' — **hostibus**: see on *neque iis*, 89, 29.

131, 22. **quantum, etc.**: as no detachments of cavalry or infantry could venture far from the main army, only a comparatively small territory could be ravaged.

131, 28. CHAPTER 20. **ipse**: Mandubracius.

131, 30. **sese**: obj. of *dedituros*; the subject of an infin. is frequently omitted when it can be easily implied.

132, 2. **qui**: Mandubracius; introducing a rel. clause of purpose.

132, 3. **imperat**: see on 55, 11. — **exercitui**: dat. of interest or reference, expressing advantage.

132, 7. CHAPTER 21. **Cenimagni, etc.**: Caesar's kindness to the Trinovantes leads to the submission of other tribes.

132, 9. **oppidum**: thought to be at St. Albans, about twenty miles northwest of London.

132, 11. **convenerit**: note the sequence with the pres. of vivid narration[1] (hist. pres.).

132, 12. **oppidum . . . vocant**: 'call it a town'; the following definition shows the British town to have been not a place of residence or of business, but a stronghold. — **cum**: see on 119, 24.

132, 14. **consuerunt**: see on *consuesse*, 60, 21.

132, 20. **multi**: persons, not cattle.

132, 22. CHAPTER 22. **supra**: in 128, 28.

132, 23. **reges**: apparently monarchy prevailed in Britain at that period.

132, 26. **castra navalia**: see 126, 22 f. and 26 f.

133, 3. **Commium**: see 112, 26.

133, 5. **Galliae motus**: see on *subita*, 85, 21. — **neque multum aestatis**: it was toward the middle of September (see l. 23). Caesar was probably in Britain about two months.

133, 6. **extrahi**: 'be wasted.'

133, 7. **quid . . . vectigalis**: 'what tribute'; the partit. gen. is often separated from the word on which it depends. This tribute was never paid, as no troops were left to enforce it.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	546 (495, ii)	805	485, *e* (287, *e*)	511, R. 1	268, 3

133, 8. **interdicit atque imperat . . . ne**: 'he most emphatically orders . . . not to.'

133, 14. CHAPTER 23. **commeatibus**: 'trips'; abl. of manner.

133, 15. **uti . . . desideraretur**: complementary or subst. clause of result, subject of *accidit*.

133, 16. **tot navigationibus**: 'in spite of so many voyages'; abl. abs. expressing concession.

133, 17. **quae . . . portaret**: 'fit to carry'; characteristic.

133, 18. **ex iis**: 'of those'; antecedent of both *quae* and *quas*.

133, 20. **postea**: *i.e.* after receiving Caesar's orders from Britain (126, 19 ff.). — **numero**: abl. of specification, limiting LX.

133, 21. **locum**: 'their destination,' Britain. — **caperent, reicerentur**: in the same constr. as *desideraretur*, l. 17.

133, 24. **angustius**: 'in rather close quarters' on the ships.

133, 25. **consecuta**: see on *depopulatis*, 58, 17. The abl. abs. of deponent vbs. is rare. — **cum solvisset**: translate as if independent, 'he set sail.'

134, 1. CHAPTER 44. The incident related in this chapter occurred during the siege of Quintus Cicero's camp by the Eburones, Nervii, and their allies, under the lead of Ambiorix (see summary of Book V, p. 345). It illustrates well the caliber of the Roman soldiers, of whom King Pyrrhus of Epirus, 225 years before, had said, "With such soldiers as these I could conquer the world!" — **legione**: the one stationed with Cicero in the territory of the Nervii.

134, 2. **primis ordinibus**, etc.: 'were nearing promotion to the first rank of centurions'; see Introd. § 35.

134, 3. **perpetuas**: 'endless.'

134, 4. **omnibus annis**: 'every year.' — **de loco**: 'for precedence.' — **summis simultatibus**: 'with keenest rivalry.'

134, 6. **Quid dubitas**: 'why do you hesitate?'

134, 7. **locum**: 'opportunity.'

134, 8. **Haec**: for position, see on *horum*, 51, 6.

134, 10. **inrumpit**: sc. *in eam partem*, antecedent of *quae pars*. — **sese . . . vallo continet**: 'stay behind the rampart'; *vallo* is abl. of means.

134, 12. **mediocri . . . relicto**: between Pullo and the enemy.

134, 13. **quo**: the same man as *hunc*, both referring to *unum*. *Percussum et exanimatum*, agreeing with *hunc*, or *Quem percussum*, etc., omitting *hunc*, would be more regular than the abl. abs. here.

134, 14. **illum**: Pullo.

134, 16. **Pulloni**: dat. of interest or reference, expressing disadvantage;[1] 'Pullo has his shield pierced through.'

134, 17. **Avertit**, etc.: 'this accident turns the scabbard away,' *i.e.* from its usual position. The sword was worn on the right side so as not to interfere with the shield, which was carried on the left arm. — **conanti**: see on *Pulloni*, l. 16; 'as he tries.'

134, 19. **illi, laboranti**: essential complements or indir. objs. of intr. cpd. vbs.[2]

134, 21. **comminus rem gerit**: 'engages in hand-to-hand combat.'

134, 23. **in . . . inferiorem**: 'stumbling into a hole.'

134, 26. **summa cum laude**: 'greeted with shouts of praise.'

134, 27. **Sic**: 'thus,' not correlated with *ut*, which = 'so that.' — **in contentione**: 'in their rivalry.'

134, 28. **inimicus**: 'though an enemy.'

134, 29. **posset**: the subject is the following indir. quest. — **anteferendus**: note the gerundive force, 'worthy to be considered superior.'

BOOK SIXTH

Campaign of 53 B.C. — [The successes of Ambiorix in 54 B.C. had given new spirit to several states of northeastern Gaul. Caesar, seeing that trouble was brewing, raised two new legions; and these, with the legion loaned him by Pompey, gave him an army of ten legions. With his usual promptness he struck the first blow. The Nervii, Senones, and Carnutes were speedily brought to submission. The Menapii, the only tribe of Gaul that had not yet sued for peace, were reduced by a force led by Caesar himself. Meanwhile Labienus conquered the Treveri.

The next move, a second expedition into Germany, was no more successful than that of 55 B.C. The Suebi, whom he wished to punish for aiding the Gauls, withdrew, bag and baggage, to the remotest part of their territory, where the Romans could not safely follow.]

At this point Caesar interrupts his narrative to give an interesting account of the customs of the Gauls and of the Germans, and a descrip-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	376 (235, N.)	350, 1	188, 1, N.
2	429 (386)	532	370 (228)	347	187, iii, 1

tion of some of the strange animals of the Hercynian Forest in southern Germany.

[Returning to Gaul, Caesar devoted his whole attention to destroying Ambiorix and the Eburones (see summary of Book V, p. 345). The army in three divisions devastated the country. Neighboring tribes were invited to join in the work and enrich themselves with booty. Parties of native cavalry scoured the whole district in search of Ambiorix, who, however, always evaded his pursuers.

Finally the pursuit was abandoned and the army was quartered for the winter of 53–52 B.C. among the Treveri, the Lingones, and the Senones. Before leaving for Italy Caesar put to death the Senonian chief, Acco, who had been the leader of the revolt of the Senones and the Carnutes the previous spring.]

PAGE 135, LINE 1. CHAPTER 11. **locum**: 'point' in the narrative. Caesar had just told of his second expedition into Germany. He crossed the Rhine by a bridge which he built not far above his place of crossing in 55 B.C. (see on 109, 12). He wished to punish the Germans for aiding his enemies in Gaul, and to prevent them from harboring Ambiorix in the campaign which he meant to begin, upon his return to Gaul, against that daring and unscrupulous chieftain (see summary above). His journey was largely fruitless, however, owing to the impossibility of safely pursuing the German tribes into their forest retreats.

135, 2. **de . . . proponere**: 'to give an account of,' etc.—**quo**: 'in what respect'; abl. of specification, from *quid*.

135, 5. **partibus**: 'districts.'

135, 7. **principes sunt qui**: 'the leaders are the men who'; the rel. clause defines the antecedent, whereas the next clause *quorum . . . redeat*, instead of defining or restricting the antecedent *principes*, refers to it as an indefinite class, 'men (not 'the men') to whose decision'; hence the subj. of characteristic.

135, 8. **eorum iudicio**: 'in their judgment';[1] *eorum* means the Gauls. —**quorum**: has the same antecedent as *qui*; see on l. 7.

135, 9. **summa . . . redeat**: 'the chief control . . . is referred.'

135, 10. **Id**: 'this practice.'—**eius rei causa**: 'to the end,' explained by the appositive clause of purpose *ne . . . egeret*. Note the sequence[2] of *egeret*, depending on the perf. infin. *institutum* [esse].

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	480 (424)	650	418 (253)	397	226
2	548 (495, iv)	809	485, *j* & N. (287, *i*; 336, B, N. 2)	518	268, 2

135, 11. **auxili**: with a verb of want.[1]

135, 13. **si faciat**: fut. condition of the less vivid form.[2]

135, 14. **ratio**: 'system.'—**est**, etc.: 'exists in general throughout all Gaul'; *Galliae* is pred. poss. gen. with *est*.[3]

135, 15. **divisae sunt**: see on *est . . . divisa*, 51, 1.

135, 16. CHAPTER 12. **Cum**: with the indic., dating, or defining the time of, the main action.[4]

135, 18. **Hi**: 'the latter.'

135, 19. **antiquitus**: the Haedui owed much of their influence to the Romans, with whom they formed an alliance about 123 B.C.

135, 21. **Ariovistum**: a German king, who entered Gaul in 61 B.C. to assist the Sequani against their more powerful rivals, the Haedui. The Haedui appealed to Rome for aid, but without success until Caesar, in the first year of his governorship (58 B.C.), after his defeat of the Helvetii, took up their cause and expelled the Germans from Gaul. See summary of Book I, p. 249.

136, 5. **iurare**: sc. *eos* as subject, meaning the Haedui.—**consili**: for its position, see on *quid . . . vectigalis*, 133, 7.

136, 6. **occupatam possiderent**: 'seized and kept possession of.'

136, 8. **Diviciacus**: see on *principatum*, 53, 11. He went to Rome in 61 B.C.

136, 9. **infecta re**: 'without success.'

136, 10. **facta**, etc.: 'there came a change of circumstances.' Translate all these abls. abs. as coördinate independent sentences.

136, 14. **reliquis rebus**: begin a new sentence, 'In all other respects too'; abl. of specification.

136, 16. **quos quod**, etc.: 'and because it was understood that they were equally (with the Haedui) in favor with Caesar.'

136, 18. **se . . . dicabant**: 'attached themselves as dependents to the Remi.'

136, 20. **repente collectam**: *i.e.* within the five years since Caesar came into Gaul.

136, 21. **Eo . . . statu**: 'in such a condition'; pred. abl. of quality.

136, 23. CHAPTER 13. **aliquo . . . numero**: 'of some account.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	458, 2 (410, v, 1)	594	356 & N. (223 & N.)	383, 1	212, 1
2	576 (509)	936	516, 2 & *b* (307, 2 & *b*)	596, 1	303
3	447 (401)	556	343, *b* (214, *c*)	366 & R. 1	198, 3
4	600, i (521, i)	856	545 (323, 325)	580	288, A

136, 25. **quae**: 'being a class which.'

136, 26. **nulli**, etc.: 'is admitted to no consultation.'

136, 29. **quibus**: dat. of poss., 'and they have over them,' etc.

137, 2. **druidum**: 'that of the druids.' For the gen., cf. *millium*, 105, 27, and see note.— **Illi**: 'the former.'

137, 5. **disciplinae causa**: 'for instruction' in the system of the druids.

137, 6. **hi**: the druids. — **eos**: the Gauls.

137, 7. **quod**: indef. adj. pron.,[1] with *facinus*.

137, 9. **idem**: 'they likewise.'[2]

137, 10. **qui**: 'any,' adj. like *quod*, l. 7. — **decreto**: loc. abl.

137, 11. **sacrificiis**: abl. of separation.

137, 12. **Quibus**: dat. of essential complement or indir. obj., used regularly with the impers. pass. of intr. vbs.;[3] 'those who are thus excluded.'

137, 13. **his**: dat. of optional complement, expressing disadvantage;[4] 'all move away from them.'

137, 14. **quid**: indef. subst. pron.; cf. *quod*, l. 7.

137, 18. **qui**: as a subst. *quis* is commoner; cf. l. 10.

137, 25. **Disciplina**: 'the system,' *i.e.* of the druids. — **in Britannia**: Tacitus (*Agricola*, 11) implies, on the contrary, that the system was introduced into Britain from Gaul. Which view is correct cannot be determined. Britain, being less exposed to foreign influences, doubtless retained a purer form of the system than Gaul.

138, 1. CHAPTER 14. **in disciplinam conveniunt**: 'come together to study the system.'

138, 3. **ibi**: in the druids' school. — **versuum**: their instructions could be more easily learned in verse than in prose.

138, 4. **vicenos**: English, with less exactness, uses the cardinal numeral.

138, 5. **ea**: 'these instructions.' — **litteris**: 'to writing.' — **cum**: concessive.

138, 6. **rationibus**: 'transactions.' — **Graecis**: see on *litteris*, 71, 2.

138, 9. **litteris**: see on *tempore*, 98, 17.

	H.	L.M.	A.	G.	B.
1	512, 1 (455, 1)	287	149 & *b* (104, *a*)	107, 1	91
2	508, 3 (451, 3)	1059	298, *b* (195, *e*)	310	248, 1
3	426, 3 (384, 5)	530, end	372 (230)	217	187, ii, *b*
4	427 (385, 2)	537	381 (229)	350, 2	188, 2, *d*

138, 10. **accidit ut**, etc.: this is just as true now as it was then.

138, 13. **transire**: the doctrine of the transmigration of souls is still held by the Buddhists.

138, 14. **excitari**: impers., 'men are spurred on.'

138, 18. CHAPTER 15. **Alterum . . . equitum**: see 137, 1 f.

138, 21. **uti . . . propulsarent**: 'either they themselves inflicting wrongs or warding off wrongs inflicted upon them'; a clause of result in apposition with *quod*.

138, 22. **ut quisque . . . ita**, etc.: 'the more distinguished one of them is . . . the more,'[1] etc.

138, 23. **ambactos**, etc.: cf. the great body of slaves and retainers brought by Orgetorix to his trial, 53, 26 ff.

138, 24. **Hanc unam**, etc.: 'this is the only . . . which they know.'

138, 29. CHAPTER 16. **homines immolant**: if we consider other cruel Gallic practices related by Caesar, this statement appears credible enough. Even at Rome as late as 216 B.C. a human sacrifice was allowed on one occasion, although Livy, who tells about it (22, 57), takes pains to add that this was not a Roman custom.

139, 3. **habent instituta**: see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6.

139, 4. **simulacra**: probably huge images of wickerwork in human form.

139, 6. **quibus**: *i.e.* the *simulacra*.

139, 7. **furto**: in England till the eighteenth century theft was punishable with death.

139, 11. CHAPTER 17. **Mercurium, Apollinem** (l. 15), etc.: Caesar means to say merely that the Gallic gods had attributes similar to those of the Roman gods mentioned, not that they were known by these names.

139, 13. **itinerum**: 'of journeys,' *i.e.* he not only points out the way, but also accompanies the traveler.

139, 20. **cum**: see on 119, 24. — **ceperint**: 'they shall succeed in taking,' implied indir. disc. for fut. perf. indic. of the actual vow.

139, 25. **religione**: 'religious obligation.' — **posita**: 'what has been deposited' in consecrated places.

139, 28. CHAPTER 18. **ab Dite**: the god of the lower world. Apparently they believed themselves sprung from the soil. See on 127, 8.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	515, 5 (458, 2)	889	Cf. 313, *b*, N. 1 (cf. 93, *c*, end)	642, R. 2	Cf. 252, 5, *c*

139, 30. **Ob eam causam**: *i.e.* because they were descended, as they thought, from the god who ruled the world of darkness and night.

140, 1. **noctium**: the Germans, too, reckoned time by nights instead of by days (Tacitus, *Germania*, 11). Our words 'fortnight' and 'sennight' are relics of the custom. Primitive peoples mark time by the changes of the moon rather than of the sun.

140, 2. **ut . . . subsequatur**: *i.e.* the calendar day began at sunset.

140, 6. **filium . . . adsistere**: 'for a son to appear'; the clause is subject of *esse* implied, *turpe* being a pred. adj.

140, 8. CHAPTER 19. **Viri**, etc.: 'husbands, upon receiving property from their wives as a dowry, take an equal amount from their own possessions and, after an appraisal, add it to the dowry in a common fund.' Of course this custom could not be observed among the poor.

140, 12. **uter . . . superavit**: 'whichever of them has outlived the other.' — **vita**: abl. of specification.

140, 14. **vitae . . . potestatem**: so the Roman head of a household had the power of life and death over all his family.

140, 15. **inlustriore loco natus**: 'of higher rank'; *loco* is abl. of source.

140, 16. **si . . . venit**: 'if it looks suspicious.'

140, 17. **de uxoribus**, etc.: 'they hold an investigation of the wives.' This looks as if polygamy was practiced among the Gallic, as we know it was among the German, nobles.

140, 18. **si compertum est**: impers., 'if there is a discovery.'

140, 20. **pro cultu**: 'considering the civilization.' — **magnifica**, etc.: apparently the modern Frenchman comes honestly by his love of show.

140, 21. **vivis**, etc.: 'were dear to them when alive.' — **ignem**: burial of the dead was also practiced among the Gauls, although apparently it was less common than cremation. Graves have been excavated in which were found armor, rings, vases, and bones of animals.

140, 22. **supra hanc memoriam**: 'before our time.'

140, 23. **iustis**, etc.: 'after the regular funeral service was finished.'

140, 25. CHAPTER 20. **Quae civitates**: 'those states which'; the antecedent is an implied *eae civitates*, subject of *habent*. — **commodius**: 'to best advantage.'

140, 26. **habent**, etc.: 'have it established by law'; *sanctum* is pred. adj. agreeing with the clauses *uti . . . communicet*, which are objs. of *habent*.

140, 27. **quis, quid, quo** (l. 29): substs.; see on *qui*, 137, 18.

140, 28. **acceperit**: implied indir. disc. for fut. perf. of the actual law.

140, 29. **neve**: the regular particle to connect two purpose clauses if the second is negative. — **quod . . . cognitum est**: see 103, 5 ff.

141, 2. **quae visa sunt**: 'what they see fit.'

141, 4. **per concilium**: 'in the council.'

141, 6. CHAPTER 21. **druides**: it is certain that the Germans had priests, although their powers were not so extensive as those of the druids. — **qui . . . praesint**: 'to have charge of,' rel. clause of purpose.

141, 9. **Solem**, etc.: probably Caesar was mistaken in this. Tacitus, writing 150 years later, mentions several other gods (*Germania*, 9), some of whom may, to be sure, have been introduced into Germany after Caesar's time. In most matters the accounts of Caesar and Tacitus agree.

141, 11. **Vita**, etc.: with this account, to l. 26, cf. 100, 14–101, 4, where the Suebi are described.

141, 12. **a parvis**: 'from childhood.'

141, 14. **hoc**: 'by this means.' — **nervos**: not 'nerves.'

141, 16. **in . . . rebus**: 'they regard as disgraceful.'

141, 18. **magna . . . nuda**: abl. abs.

141, 20. CHAPTER 22. **Agri culturae**: though they were not devoted to agriculture, yet they pursued it to some extent; see 100, 13.

141, 23. **in annos singulos**: 'for a year at a time.'

141, 24. **gentibus cognationibusque**: 'to families and clans.' — **quique**: sc. *iis* as antecedent, 'and to those who.'

141, 25. **quantum . . . agri**: 'the quantity of land and the location which they see fit.'

141, 26. **alio**: adv.

141, 27. **ne**, etc.: the subj. clauses are in apposition with *causas*. — **adsidua consuetudine**: 'by a permanent way of living.' — **agri cultura**: 'for agriculture'; abl. of price.[1]

142, 3. **pecuniae**, etc.: cf. 1 *Timothy* 6, 10, "The love of money is the root of all evil."

142, 4. **animi aequitate**: 'owing to their contentment,' explained by the causal clause *cum . . . videat*.

142, 6. CHAPTER 23. **laus**: 'title to praise'; cf. 101, 20 ff.

142, 7. **finibus**: 'the border lands.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	478, 4 (422, N. 2)	652	417, *b* (252, *c*)	404, N. 1	225

142, 8. **Hoc**: 'it,' explained by the appositive infin. clauses, 'for their neighbors to,' etc.

142, 10. **hoc**: 'by this means.'

142, 12. **qui . . . praesint**: as in 141, 6 f.

142, 14. **principes**: they were elected in the assembly (*Germania*, 12).

142, 15. **minuunt**: 'settle.'

142, 16. **Latrocinia**, etc.: this principle prevails in all semicivilized communities.

142, 17. **cuiusque**: 'any.'

142, 18. **ubi**: 'whenever,' see on **cum**, 119, 24. — **quis**: as in 140, 27.

142, 19. **ducem**: *i.e.* of a freebooting expedition. — **qui . . . profiteantur**: 'that those who wish to follow are to hand in their names,' indir. disc. for *qui . . . volunt profiteantur*[1] (hortatory). Note the primary sequence depending on the perfect definite[2] (*dixit*), which in statements of customary or repeated action may often be best translated as present.

142, 23. **omniumque**, etc.: 'and in all matters henceforth confidence is withheld from them.'[3]

143, 1. CHAPTER 24. **trans Rhenum**: it is now generally believed that the Gallic peoples which in Caesar's time were east of the Rhine had not migrated from Gaul, but had remained there when most of their kinsmen moved farther westward.

143, 2. **circum . . . silvam**: *i.e.* in southern Germany.

143, 4. **Volcae Tectosages**: the larger part of this tribe had settled in southern Gaul, and were at this time included in the Roman province, north of the Pyrenees.

143, 6. **iustitiae, laudis**: for the case, see on *belli*, 52, 21; 'reputation for justice and achievement in war.'

143, 9. **provinciarum**: the Roman provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul.

143, 10. **multa**: dir. obj. of *largitur*, *Gallis* being indir. obj. — **ad . . . usus**: 'contributing to their abundance and their advantages.'

143, 12. **ipsi**: the Gauls, *illis* meaning the Germans.

143, 15. CHAPTER 25. **latitudo**: from north to south. — **iter**: acc. of extent, cf. 103, 24. — **expedito**: 'for an unencumbered traveler.'[4]

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	642 (523, iii)	1023	588, *a* (339, R.)	652	316
2	546 (492, 2, N. 1)	785	485, *a* (287, *a*)	509, 2 (*b*)	Cf. 268, 1
3	427 (385, ii, 2)	539	381 (229)	345, R. 1	188, 2, *d*
4	425, 4 (384, ii, 1, 2)	537	376 (235)	350, 1	188, 1

143, 17. **ab**: see on *a*, 51, 16.

143, 18. **recta . . . regione**: 'straight on in the direction of,' etc. This vast forest extended from the Rhine, through southern Germany and Austria-Hungary, to the Carpathian Mountains.

143, 20. **diversis . . . regionibus**: 'in a different direction from,' etc.

143, 22. **huius**: 'this part of,' *i.e.* western. — **qui . . . dicat**: 'who can say,' subj. of characteristic.

143, 23. **initium**: on the east; we should say 'the end.' — **cum**: concessive.

143, 25. **quae** (also in 26): 'such as,' introducing characteristic clauses. — **reliquis**: 'any other.'

143, 26. **memoriae prodenda**: 'worthy to be recorded.'

143, 27. **haec**: 'the following.'

144, 1. CHAPTER 26. **cervi figura**: 'with the shape of a stag'; abl. of quality, with a limiting gen. instead of an adj.

144, 2. **unum cornu**: it is probable that Caesar is trying to describe the reindeer, which once roamed as far south as Germany. But he cannot have seen the animal, except perhaps in a profile view, for otherwise he would not have given it only one horn.

144, 3. **ab eius summo**: 'at the end of it.'

144, 4. **palmae ramique**: 'palms and branches.' The horns of the reindeer are partly palmate, *i.e.* flat like the palm of the hand, with projections like fingers.

144, 5. **natura**: most other deer have horns only in the male. The horns of the female reindeer are, however, smaller than those of the male.

144, 7. CHAPTER 27. **alces**: the European elk is closely related to the American moose. The American elk, or *wapiti*, is a different animal.

144, 8. **varietas**: 'variety in color.'

144, 9. **mutilae**, etc.: 'and they have mutilated horns.' This statement is not inapplicable to irregular palmate antlers, with their short projections. See Fig. 26.

144, 10. **crura**, etc.: the following fairy tale seems peculiar from a man of Caesar's common sense, but it is always easy to believe strange yarns from a new country. The story appears again in more than one Roman writer. — **sine . . . articulis**: the animal's clumsy gait doubtless led to this notion.

144, 11. **adflictae**: 'thrown down.'

144, 12. **sese**: belongs with both infins., which mean about the same thing; translate 'rise to a standing position.'

145, 4. **omnes**: limits *arbores*. — **ab**: as in 143, 17.

145, 5. **tantum ut**, etc.: 'but not too far for them to retain perfectly the appearance of standing firmly' (lit., 'only so far that the utmost appearance of them standing is left').

145, 6. **Huc**: 'against them.'

145, 9. CHAPTER 28. **uri**: just what animal Caesar was trying to describe is uncertain. It may have become extinct. Doubtless the account is far from accurate, as Caesar probably saw none of the animals described.

145, 11. **specie**, etc.: cf. *cervi figura*, 144, 1.

145, 16. **relatis . . . cornibus**: 'display the horns publicly.' — **quae sint**, etc.: 'as evidence'; cf. *qui praesint*, 141, 6 f.

145, 18. **ne . . . excepti**: 'not even if they are very young when caught.'

145, 20. **ab labris**: 'at the brim.' Horns were still used as drinking-cups in the Middle Ages.

BOOK SEVENTH

Campaign of 52 B.C. — [This was the most decisive of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul. A widespread revolt was planned during the winter of 53–52 B.C. Many of the Gallic nobles were enraged by Acco's execution (see end of summary of Book VI, p. 356). The time appeared to be favorable, too, for an outbreak, because political disturbances in Rome seemed likely to detain Caesar in his Cisalpine province.

Vercingetorix, a young Arvernian chief, the most distinguished patriot and leader that ancient Gaul produced, soon became the moving spirit of the insurrection. Most of the states of western Gaul rallied to his standard. His purpose was to invade the Roman province, win over as many of the provincials as possible, and cut off Caesar from his legions in the north.

This scheme was thwarted by Caesar's characteristic swiftness of action. Returning from Italy, he planted garrisons along the frontier of the province, crossed the Cévennes in the dead of winter, spreading dismay among the Arverni, and slipped away to his legions before the Gauls could offer the least opposition. Mobilizing his whole army at

Sens (Agedincum), in the Senonian country, he set out to find Vercingetorix, capturing several towns on the way and arranging for as large a supply of provisions as he could get in the winter. He first crossed swords with Vercingetorix in a cavalry skirmish in which he gained the victory. The Gallic leader thereupon adopted the policy of avoiding a battle and conquering the Romans by starvation, urging his countrymen to burn all their towns and granaries. Avaricum, a strongly fortified town of the Bituriges, which was defended, although against his advice, was captured by the Romans after a heroic defense, and he led his army away to Gergovia, the capital of his own people.]

Caesar undertook to besiege Gergovia, but, as the rebellion was gaining strength and there was danger that he might be hemmed in, he soon sought a way of retiring without giving the appearance of flight. He had an opportunity in a few days to storm the enemy's outworks, but the overwhelming numbers of the Gauls quickly turned a momentary success into a repulse, and after a day or two of cavalry skirmishes, in which the Romans had the advantage, he led his army away to join Labienus, who with four legions was carrying on a successful campaign round Paris (Lutetia).

[The disaster before Gergovia was the only defeat suffered by the Romans when under Caesar's personal command, during the entire war. Caesar's prestige was broken, and all the states of Celtic and Belgic Gaul, except the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri, joined the confederacy against him. Vercingetorix was elected commander-in-chief. In the territory of the Lingones he was defeated in a cavalry battle and retired to Alesia, a stronghold of the Mandubii, which he had chosen as his base. Caesar, having united his ten legions, at once set to work to shut up the Gallic army in the town.]

The campaign round Alesia was the most remarkable of the whole war. Caesar encircled the town with a line of forts and camps eleven miles in length. He also defended himself against attacks, either from the town or from without, by an elaborate series of trenches, buried spikes, and earthworks. When Vercingetorix found his position growing desperate, he sent to all the states of Gaul, begging them to despatch an army to his relief. Upon the arrival of the relieving army, numbering over 250,000 men, three fierce battles were fought in rapid succession, all of which resulted favorably to the Romans. The army of relief dispersed and great numbers of them were captured or killed in their flight.

Nothing remained for the besieged but to surrender. Their arms were given up and one captive was handed over to each of Caesar's soldiers as booty.

Vercingetorix, as is related by other writers, although Caesar himself says nothing of it, was kept in prison at Rome for six years, when he was exhibited as one of the most brilliant trophies in Caesar's triumph. He was then put to death.

Caesar made his headquarters for the winter at Bibracte, the Haeduan capital. His legions were distributed where they could best protect his friends and restrain the disloyal.

PAGE 146, LINE 1. CHAPTER 43. After the capture of Avaricum (see summary, end of first bracket, p. 365) Caesar sent Labienus with four legions northward to engage the confederates who had collected among the Senones and the Parisii. He himself with six legions followed Vercingetorix to Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni. There he established his large camp southeast of Gergovia. A few days later he dislodged a weak garrison of the enemy from the precipitous hill, the Roche Blanche, south of the town, and posted two legions there, facilitating intercourse between his large and small camps by digging two parallel trenches from one to the other.

Ipse: Caesar. — **maiorem . . . motum**: the Haedui, the strongest state in Gaul (136, 21 f.) and long friendly to Rome (see on 135, 19), were plotting rebellion, and Caesar knew that their example would lead many other tribes to follow suit.

146, 3. **a**: 'from the neighborhood of,' so with names of towns.[1]

146, 4. **contraheret**: *i.e.* unite his six legions with the four under Labienus. — **ne . . . videretur**: neg. clause of purpose, 'without his departure seeming,' etc.

146, 7. CHAPTER 44. **Haec**: *i.e.* the plans just mentioned.

146, 8. **bene . . . rei**: 'of success.' — **minora castra**: on the Roche Blanche.

146, 9. **operis**: 'works,' the Roman defenses.

146, 10. **collem**: the part of the Heights of Risolles marked *A* on the plan.

146, 11. **hominibus**: abl. of separation.

146, 14. **Constabat inter omnes**: 'all agreed in reporting.'

146, 15. **dorsum . . . eius iugi**: 'the top of that ridge,' connecting

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	462, 3 (412, 3, N.)	606	428, *a* (258, *a*, N. 1)	391, R. 1	229, 2

Risolles with Gergovia, marked *C* on the plan. The Gauls were fortifying the western side of the ridge, where alone it was accessible. Consequently they were not visible from the Roche Blanche.

146, 17. **alteram**: 'the farther' (from the Roman camp), the west side.

146, 18. **nec iam aliter sentire . . . quin . . . viderentur**: 'and they had no other thought, now that one hill had been seized by the Romans, than that if they should lose another, they would be seen to have been,' etc. *Nec aliter sentire* is equivalent to *nec dubitare*, hence the use of *quin*.[1]

146, 19. **omni exitu et pabulatione**: 'every possibility of going out to forage.' On the north the hill of Gergovia was too precipitous to be passable.

148, 2. CHAPTER 45. **eo**: *i.e.* to the west side of the ridge which the Gauls were fortifying.

148, 3. **tumultuosius**: 'more noisily than usual,' so as to attract the enemy's attention. The movements described in ll. 1–14 were only a diversion. Caesar's real purpose was to raid the Gallic camp when it had been left defenseless by the rallying of the Gauls to protect the western approaches. He thought that, if this plan succeeded, he could withdraw from Gergovia without losing prestige.

148, 4. **impedimentorum**: 'beasts of burden.'

148, 5. **stramenta**: 'pack-saddles,' which were not adapted for riding.

148, 6. **cassidibus**: accompaniment. — **specie**, etc.: manner.

148, 7. **collibus circumvehi**: 'to ride round (to the west side of Risolles) over the hills.' *Collibus* is abl. of means, denoting the route taken.

148, 9. **easdem . . . regiones**: *i.e.* to the west of Risolles.

148, 11. **neque**: 'and yet . . . not.' — **tanto spatio**: abl. abs., 'at so great a distance.' — **certi quid esset**: 'what it really meant'; *certi* is partit. gen.

148, 12. **eodem iugo**: the same in constr. and meaning as *collibus*, l. 7. This legion probably halted not far from the present village of Chanonat.

148, 14. **illo**: cf. *eo*, l. 2.

148, 17. **raros**: 'in small groups.'

148, 21. **ne . . . progrediantur**: complementary or substantive clause

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	595, 1 (504, 3, 2)	913	558, *a* (332, *g*, R.)	555, 2	295, 3, *a*

of purpose, depending on *contineant*,'[1] 'restrain the soldiers from advancing,' etc.

148, 22. **incommodi**: partit. gen. with *quid*.

148, 23. **occasionis**: pred. gen. of possession, 'that it is a question of opportunity, not of battle.' The absence of the Gauls from their camp gave an opportunity to raid it, but the superiority of the enemy in numbers and the nature of the ground were not favorable for a battle.

148, 27. CHAPTER 46. **recta regione**: 'in a straight line.'—**si . . . intercederet**: 'if there were no windings in the route,' a condition of action non-occurrent or contrary to fact.[2] The apodosis *aberat*, expressing a fact independent of the protasis, takes the indicative.

148, 28. **MCC** = *mille ducentos*. — **huc**: 'to this,' *i.e.* to the distance of 1200 paces. — **circuitus**: partit. with *quicquid*.

148, 29. **A medio**, etc.: 'about half-way up the hill.'

148, 30. **in longitudinem, ut . . . ferebat**: 'lengthwise of the mountain' ('along the length according to the nature [*i.e.* form] of the mountain'; see Vocab., s.v. *fero*, for similar idioms).

149, 1. **VI pedum**: 'six feet high'; gen. of quality.

149, 2. **inferiore**, etc.: the part of the sidehill below the six-foot wall.

149, 4. **densissimis castris**: the contingent of each state had its own separate camp. As there were many states represented and the space between the wall of the town and the outer wall (*VI pedum murus*) was but little over half a mile wide, the camps were crowded closely together.

149, 5. **munitionem**: the six-foot wall.

149, 6. **trinis**: 'three.'[3] — **castris**: see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

149, 9. **nuda**: he had taken off his breastplate.

149, 11. CHAPTER 47. **id quod, etc.**: the raiding of the camp; see on *tumultuosius*, 148, 3. — **animo**: loc. abl.

149, 12. **decimae**: Caesar's favorite Tenth was stationed as a reserve on the west slope of the hill on which Merdogne village (or Gergovie) now stands; see 10th legion, 1st position, on the plan. From this point Caesar had a view of the Gallic camps several hundred yards distant across a valley.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	566 (498)	898	558, *b* (331, *e*, 2)	548	295, 3
2	579, 1 (510, N. 2)	938	517, *a* (308, *a*)	597, R. 1	304, 2
3	164, 3 (174, 2, 3)	1081	137, *b* (95, *b*)	97, R. 3	81, 4, *b*

149, 14. **reliquarum**: the raiders. — **non audito**: translate as a finite verb with *milites* as subject, and begin a new sentence with *tamen*.

149, 16. **retinebantur**: conative use of the imperf., 'an effort was made to hold them back.'

149, 19. **neque . . . prius . . . quam**: see on 93, 17.

149, 20. **muro**: the course of this wall and the positions of the gates, as well as the outlines of Caesar's large and small camps and the parallel trenches connecting them, have been discovered by excavations conducted under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III.

149, 23. **aberant**: *i.e.* from the south side of town.

149, 27. **neu . . . ne . . . quidem . . . abstinerent**: 'and not refuse to spare even women,' etc. For *neu*, see on *neve*, 140, 29. — **Avarici**: of the 40,000 men, women, and children in Avaricum at the time of its capture (see summary, end of first bracket, p. 365), only 800 escaped massacre.

149, 29. **per manus demissae**: 'let down by the hands of friends' (who were on the wall).

149, 30. **quem . . . dixisse**: subject of *constabat*; translate, 'who, as all agreed in reporting, said among his men,' etc.

150, 1. **Avaricensibus praemiis**: Caesar had offered rewards to those who should be the first to scale the walls of Avaricum. Fabius hoped that similar rewards might be given here.

150, 2. **prius**: adv., 'before him.'

150, 6. CHAPTER 48. **alteram**: as in 146, 17.

150, 7. **supra**: in 146, 20 f.

150, 8. **primo**: adv.

150, 11. **Eorum**, etc.: 'each one of them as soon as he had come'; they did not wait to come in a body. — **sub**: 'at the foot of,' and on the outside of the wall.

150, 15. **passum capillum**: a sign of grief.

150, 17. **cursu**: they had run more than a mile up a steep ascent.

150, 18. **non facile . . . sustinebant**: 'they could not easily withstand.'

150, 21. CHAPTER 49. **castris**: dat. of interest; *praesidio* is dat. of purpose.

150, 22. **sub . . . colle**: at the foot of the Roche Blanche. The detachment under Sextius was to attack the enemy's right wing in case they pursued the Romans down the hill from Gergovia. The tenth legion was to attack the enemy's left.

150, 24. **vidisset**: implied indir. disc., representing a fut. perf.; see on *habuerit*, 53, 10. — **quo minus**: depending on *terreret*, which is equiv. to a verb of hindering;[1] translate as if *hostes* were the obj. of *terreret*, 'frighten the enemy from pursuing.'

150, 25. **progressus**: Caesar moved down the hillside a short distance so as to be in position to attack the enemy's left and to support his own troops if they should flee. See on the plan (p. 147) 10th legion, 2d position.

150, 28. CHAPTER 50. **loco**, etc.: see on *tempore*, 98, 17.

150, 29. **ab latere . . . aperto**: 'on our men's exposed flank'; *nostris* is dat. of optional complement, expressing disadvantage ('exposed for our men').

150, 30. **manus**: *i.e.* of the enemy.

151, 1. **miserat**: see 148, 25. — **similitudine armorum**: 'from the resemblance of their arms to those of the enemy.'

151, 2. **dextris . . . exsertis**: pred. abl. of quality, sc. *esse*; 'to have the right shoulders uncovered.'

151, 3. **insigne pactum**: 'the sign agreed upon,' *i.e.* to designate friendly Gauls.

151, 6. **Fabius**, etc.: see 149, 30.

151, 9. **excidere**: 'to cut away,' so as to gain an entrance. Apparently only Fabius and his three comrades scaled the wall.

151, 12. **quidem**: translated only by emphasizing *vestrae*.

151, 13. **quos**: the antecedent is implied in *vestrae*.

151, 19. **post paulum**: adverbs, 'a little later.'

151, 20. **ac . . . fuit**: 'but he saved his men'; *i.e.* by engaging the enemy until they had time to escape.

151, 21. CHAPTER 51. **cum . . . premerentur**: 'being hard pressed on every side'; see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29.

151, 22. **amissis**: 'with a loss of.'

151, 24. **aequiore loco**: in the plain northeast of the Roche Blanche; see on the plan (p. 147), 10th legion, 3d position.

151, 26. **eductae**: see 150, 20 ff.

151, 27. **superiorem**: *i.e.* higher on the slope of the Roche Blanche than their first position; see on the plan, Sextius, 2d position. — **Legiones**: the raiding legions, which had been pursued down the hill from Gergovia.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	568, 8 (497, ii, 2)	909	558, *b* (331, *e*, 2)	549	295, 3

151, 30. **reduxit**: Vercingetorix was unwilling to risk a battle on level ground. — **minus DCC**: = *minus septingenti;* the construction of words denoting number is often not affected by *minus*, *amplius*, etc.; see on *equites*, 105, 28.

152, 5. CHAPTER 52. **recipiendi**: the gerund of this vb. occurs rarely, where we should expect the gerundive with the refl. *sui*.

152, 7. **quod . . . sensisset**: 'a thing which he himself had understood,' etc.

152, 8. **sine duce**: with *deprehensis*, 'caught without a leader.' This refers to an occasion when Vercingetorix had gone away from his army without leaving any officer in charge. The Roman troops were eager to attack, but Caesar refused because of the secure position of the enemy.

152, 11. **quos . . . potuisset**: a clause of characteristic, while *admiraretur* is subj. merely because it is in a subordinate clause of indir. disc.

152, 14. **reprehendere**: an independent clause of indir. disc.; sc. *se* as subject.

152, 18. CHAPTER 53. **ad extremam**, etc.: 'towards the end of[1] his speech.'

152, 20. **quod . . . attulisset**: implied indir. disc.

152, 22. **ante**: see 146, 1 ff.

152, 26. **atque eo secundo**: 'and that with success.'

152, 27. **satis . . . factum**: Caesar hoped to impress both upon the enemy and his own men that his departure was not a flight. He did not try, however, with this phrase, to cover up the fact of his repulse, for he admits this plainly enough in 151, 21 ff., and 152, 20 f.

154, 1. CHAPTER 69. **oppidum**: Alesia, to which Vercingetorix had retired after being defeated by Caesar's cavalry in the country of the Lingones (see summary of Book VII, second bracket, p. 365), occupied the summit of a precipitous hill, not so high as the plateau of Gergovia, but even more secure from assault. This hill is the modern Mont Auxois, on the southwestern slope of which is the village of Alise-Sainte-Reine.

154, 2. **loco**: loc. abl.,[2] 'in a very elevated position.'

154, 4. **flumina**: the Ose on the north and the Oserain on the south.

154, 5. **planities**: the plain of the Laumes, west of Mont Auxois.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	497, 4 (440, N. 1 & 2)	565	293 (193)	291, R. 2	241, 1
2	485, 2 (425, ii, 2)	626	429, 1 (258, *f*, 1)	385, N. 1	228, 1, *b*

154, 6. **mediocri . . . spatio**: 'no great distance away.'

154, 7. **pari altitudinis fastigio**: abl. of quality, limiting *colles*, 'of equal height' (equal to Mont Auxois).

154, 8. **muro**: the wall of Alesia. — **quae pars . . . spectabat**: this clause is repeated by *hunc . . . locum*; translate, 'that part of the hill facing east had all been filled by forces of the Gauls.'

154, 9. **fossam**: see *PQRS* on the plan, p. 153. The exact position of these defenses of the Gallic camp has been fixed by excavations under the direction of Emperor Napoleon III.

154, 11. **munitionis**: the course of Caesar's lines of contravallation and of circumvallation, for by far the greater part of their length, was determined by Napoleon's excavations.

154, 12. **tenebat**: 'extended.' — **Castra**: traces of four infantry and four cavalry camps and of five redoubts (10, 11, 15, 18, 22, on the plan) have been discovered. The locations of the other redoubts are merely conjectural.

154, 16. CHAPTER 70. **Opere**: the Roman works of l. 11 ff.

154, 18. **supra**: in l. 5.

154, 20. **Germanos**: Caesar had just obtained from Germany important additions to his cavalry force. The German cavalry was much superior to that of the Gauls.

154, 22. **Praesidio**: 'support.' — **nostris**: dat. of interest or reference, expressing advantage;[1] translate, 'of our men.'

154, 24. **angustioribus**: pred. adj., 'as the gates had been left rather narrow.' These gates were in the stone wall inclosing the enemy's camp, *PQRS* on the plan.

155, 2. **munitiones**: the Gallic wall and trench. — **veniri**: impers., 'that the enemy were coming.'

155, 4. **portas**: the gates of the town were closed that the camp might not be left without defenders.

155, 8. CHAPTER 71. **perficiantur**: 'can be finished'; the subj. is used with *priusquam* in clauses representing an act not as accomplished but as anticipated.[2]

155, 10. **suam quisque**: see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11.

155, 12. **cogant**: the subject is not *quisque*, but all the men who depart; *omnes* is the obj. — **in illos merita** (subst.): 'services to them.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 4, N. (384, 4, N. 2)	538	377 (235, *a*)	350, 2	188, 1, N.
2	605, i (520, i, 2)	878, cf. 880	551, *c* (327, *a*)	577, 1	292, 1, *b*

155, 13. **se . . . meritum** (part.): 'him who has best served the interests of their common liberty.'

155, 15. **fuerint**: perf. subj. for fut. perf. of dir. disc.

155, 17. **Ratione inita**: 'by actual calculation.' — **dierum**: gen. of quality.

155, 18. **tolerari**: impers., 'they can hold out.'

155, 19. **qua**, etc.: 'where gaps had been left in our works' (of contravallation).

155, 20. **Frumentum**: *i.e.* in Alesia.

155, 22. **paruerint**: implied indir. disc.; for the tense, cf. *fuerint*, l. 15.

155, 29. CHAPTER 72. **pedum XX**: in breadth. — **derectis**: 'perpendicular,' more fully explained by the result clause. Trenches usually had sloping sides. The object in digging this ditch, which extended only from the Ose to the Oserain, was to protect Caesar's troops at the point where they were most exposed to attack while building their line of contravallation, *i.e.* on the west side of Mont Auxois. Excavations show it to have been about nine feet deep.

155, 30. **sŏlum**: 'the bottom.'

156, 1. **distarent**: subj. of attraction.[1]

156, 2. **pedes CCCC**: probably a copyist's mistake for *passus CCCC*, as this is the approximate distance between the remains of the twenty-foot trench and of the line of contravallation. — **hoc consilio**: explained by the appositive purpose clauses[2] *ne . . . advolaret . . . possent*. — **tantum . . . spatium**: eleven miles, see 154, 11 f.

156, 3. **esset . . . complexus, cingeretur**: implied indir. disc., being a part of Caesar's thought when he formed his plan. — **totum opus**: the contravallation.

156, 4. **corona**: 'an encircling line,' filling the whole contravallation.

156, 5. **advolaret, possent**: for the change in number, cf. *adeat*, *cogant*, 155, 10 and 12.

156, 7. **Hoc . . . spatio**: *i.e.* 400 paces, see on *pedes CCCC*, l. 2. — **duas fossas**: of these only the inner trench surrounded Alesia, the outer extended merely from the Ose to the foot of the Heights of Flavigny. It was only in the plain that the strongest defenses were required.

156, 8. **altitudine**: the excavations show the depth of both trenches

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	652, 1 (529, ii, N. 1)	793	593 (342)	663, 1	324, 1
2	564, iii (499, 3)	892	561, *a* (331, headnote)	546, N. 2	294

to have been from eight to nine feet. — **campestribus . . . locis**: 'on the low lands of the plain.' In the rest of its course it was too high to be flooded.

156, 10. **Post**: *i.e.* from the point of view of Alesia. — **aggerem ac vallum**: 'embankment and palisade'; *vallum* alone would have expressed the idea, as its common meaning is a palisaded rampart. — **XII pedum**: the *agger* was probably about nine feet high, and the *valli*, composing the palisade (*vallum*), increased the height some three feet.

156, 11. **loricam**: 'breastwork,' made of interwoven branches and put in front of the palisade to strengthen it. — **pinnas**: 'battlements,' probably made by building the breastwork four or five feet higher at intervals than elsewhere. — **cervis**: 'spreading branches,' planted in the embankment at the foot of the breastwork; see Fig. 28.

156, 12. **pluteorum**: 'screens,' the sections of wickerwork of which the *lorica* was composed.

156, 13. **toto opere**: 'on the whole line of works' round Alesia, see Fig. 31. — **quae . . . distarent**: 'so that they were eighty feet apart,' rel. clause of result.[1]

157, 2. CHAPTER 73. **necesse**: pred. adj. with *erat*, the subjects being the three infins. — **deminutis**, etc.: 'and our troops were diminished.'

157, 3. **progrediebantur**: for building material and supplies.

157, 6. **addendum**: impers., 'that an addition ought to be made. — **quo**: see on *quo . . . impedirent*, 73, 17.

157, 10. **perpetuae**: these continuous trenches, parallel with the line of contravallation, surrounded Alesia, being interrupted only where the nature of the ground made such elaborate defenses unnecessary. — **Huc**: 'in these,' the five-foot trenches.

157, 11. **stipites**: including both the *trunci* and the *rami*, l. 8. — **ab infimo revincti**: 'fastened down at the bottom.'

157, 12. **ab ramis eminebant**: 'projected from the ground with their branches only.' — **Quini**: probably the five rows of trunks were in five trenches lying parallel and near together so as to allow the intertwining of the branches. See on *octoni*, 158, 3. — **coniuncti**, etc.: 'joined to one another and intertwined.'

157, 13. **quo**: adv., 'among them,' the rows of sharp branches.

157, 14. **cippos**: 'boundary stakes,' a soldier's joke. See Fig. 28.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 2 (500, i)	836	537, 2 (319, 2)	631	284, 2

157, 15. **Ante**: towards the town. — **in quincuncem dispositis**: 'arranged in diagonal order,' like dots on the five-spot of dice.

157, 18. **paulatim . . . fastigio**: translate, 'with sloping sides and gradually narrowing towards the bottom.' They were about six feet across at the top.

157, 21. **crassitudine**: abl. of quality, the gen. *feminis* taking the place of an adj.

157, 22. **praeusti**: so as to harden the point.

157, 24. **singuli**, etc.: 'a foot of each trunk at the bottom of the pit was packed in firmly trodden earth.' Thus the trunks were left exposed for about two feet of their length, but they were covered over with brush. See Figs. 28 and 29.

158, 3. **octoni**: the distributive denotes that there were eight rows in every section of the contravallation where elaborate defenses were required; cf. *quini*, 157, 12.

158, 6. **taleae**: 'stakes,' buried so that only the iron hooks protruded from the ground. Five of these hooks and 86 pits (*scrobes*), 157, 16, were discovered during the excavations. See Figs. 28 and 30.

158, 10. CHAPTER 74. **regiones**, etc.: 'keeping to as level ground as he could.'

158, 11. **pro**: 'considering.'

158, 12. **pares**, etc.: a line of circumvallation was built to protect the Roman camps from attack by the Gallic army which was being mustered for the relief of Alesia.

158, 13. **diversas ab his**: 'facing the opposite direction from the former.'

158, 17. **habere . . . convectum**: see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6. In spite of Caesar's precautions his army finally suffered so severely from lack of supplies, that four years later the recollection of what they had borne at Alesia encouraged his men to endure without a murmur the still greater hardships of the siege of Pompey near Dyrrachium (210, 22).

159, 2. CHAPTER 75. **non omnes**: subject of *convocandos* [esse]. As usual, *non* is placed immediately before the word it limits.

159, 3. **censuit**: 'urged,' see 155, 11 f.

159, 5. **civitati**: see on *imperat*, 55, 11.

159, 6. **rationem habere**: 'to have any way.'

159, 12. **duodena millia**: note the distributive, 'twelve thousand each.'

159, 21. **Bellovaci**: they took up arms against Caesar the next year, but without success.

159, 24. **pro**: 'in consideration of.'

159, 26. CHAPTER 76. **antea**: see 112, 26 ff., 120, 26, 133, 3.

159, 28. **civitatem**: the Atrebates.

159, 29. **ipsi**: 'to him himself'; he had been made ruler over the Morini, who were thus punished for their obstinate resistance to Caesar (see 98, 19 ff. and 121, 15 ff.).

159, 30. **universae**: an exaggeration; the Aquitanians (see on *Galliam*, 88, 6), Remi, Lingones, and Treveri (see summary of Book VII, second bracket, p. 365) did not join the uprising.

160, 2. **moveretur**: sc. *Gallia* as subject. — **que**: 'but.'

160, 3. **animo . . . incumberent**: 'gave their hearts and their resources to that war.'

160, 4. **CCL**: sc. *millibus*.

160, 5. **haec**: sc. *millia*; translate, 'these troops.'

160, 9. **delecti ex civitatibus**: 'men selected from the states.' This civil advisory board was apparently to act as a check on the military officers. The efficiency of the latter was still further weakened by dividing the command between four men.

160, 11. **ad**; see on *ad*, 55, 10.

160, 13. **arbitraretur**: subj. of characteristic.[1] — **ancipiti proelio**: abl. abs., 'in a battle with two fronts.' — **cum**: 'when.'

160, 14. **eruptione**: abl. of cause, 'there would be fighting due to a sally.' — **pugnaretur, cernerentur**: representing fut. indic. of the actual thought of the Gauls.

160, 17. CHAPTER 77. **die**: for the gender, see on *die*, 53, 25.

160, 18. **quid . . . gereretur**: see l. 4 ff.

160, 21. **suppeterent**: implied indir. disc., representing pres. indic. of the opinion as it was expressed in the council.

160, 22. **non praetereunda** [esse]: 'to deserve not to be passed over.'

160, 26. **auctoritatis**: pred. gen. of quality.

160, 29. **mihi res est**: 'my business is.'

160, 30. **omnium . . . consensu**: 'as you all agree.'

161, 2. **ista**: a dem. or rel. pron. used as subject of a clause usually agrees in gender and number with a pred. subst. — **posse**: in apposition with *ista*.

161, 3. **Qui**, etc.: 'men to offer,' etc., a clause of characteristic.

161, 5. **tantum . . . potest**: 'has such great influence.' — **dignitas**:

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, a (320, a)	631, 2	283, 2

of those who favor making a sally. — **si . . . viderem**: 'if I saw' (implying 'I do not see').[1]

161, 6. **praeterquam vitae nostrae**: 'except of our lives.'

161, 7. **respiciamus**: hortatory, 'let us,' etc.

161, 8. **millibus LXXX**: see 155, 16.

161, 9. **propinquis**, etc.: dats. of poss. with *fore*.

161, 10. **animi**: with *quid*, 'what heart.'

161, 11. **Nolite . . . exspoliare . . . prosternere . . . subicere**: the commonest form of prohibition.[2]

161, 18. **animi causa**: see 128, 4 f. The enclitic *-ne* is often added to an emphatic word of a question.[3] — **exerceri**: with reflexive force, 'are taking exercise' ('exercising themselves').

161, 19. **illorum**: Gauls in the relieving army.

161, 20. **his**: Romans. — **testibus**: pred. apposition, 'as witnesses,' followed by indir. disc.

161, 23. **Quid ergo**, etc.: 'what then is proposed by my plan?' The answer, *facere*, etc., is subject of *mei consili* (pred. gen. of possession[4]) *est* implied from the question.

161, 24. **Cimbrorum**, etc.: the Cimbri and Teutones were Germanic peoples from the shores of the Baltic and the North Sea, who overran Gaul and Spain, 113–102 B.C. They had planned to invade Italy when they were annihilated by the great Marius, the Teutones in southern Gaul, 102 B.C., and the Cimbri in northern Italy the following year.

161, 29. **instituí, prodi**: subjects of *esse* implied, *pulcherrimum* being pred. adj., 'for it to be adopted . . . was most glorious.'

161, 30. **illi . . . bello**: dat. of poss., 'what similarity had that war to this?' — **Depopulata**: see on 58, 17.

162, 5. **quos**: a rel. not infrequently precedes its antecedent (here *horum*).

162, 9. **finitimam Galliam**: 'the neighboring part of Gaul,' *i.e.* the Roman Province.

162, 10. **securibus**: axes were borne before military commanders to symbolize their power of punishing with death.

162, 14. CHAPTER 78. **experiantur**: has the same subject as the

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	579 (510, N. 1)	938	517 (308)	597	304, 1
2	561, 1 (489, 1)	728	450 (269, *a*, 2)	271, 2	276, *c*
3	378, 2 (351, 2)	699	332 (210, *a*)	454 & R. 1	162, 2, *c*
4	447 (402)	556	343, *b* (214, *c*)	366 & R. 1	198, 3

main vb. *constituunt*. — **descendant**: subj. with *prius quam* of action anticipated.

162, 15. **utendum** [esse]: 'that they must avail themselves,' indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in *constituunt*. This merely repeats indirectly a declaration of the Gauls, while *ut excedant, experiantur*, is expressed as their purpose. Cf. the impersonal use[1] of the intr. verb *utendum* with the personal use of the transitive *subeundam*.

162, 20. **cibo iuvarent**: 'give them food.' Caesar was quite unable to comply with this request, even if he had so desired (see on 158, 17), and these unfortunate victims of one of the cruel necessities of war starved to death, as we are told by another writer, between the Roman lines and the walls of their own city.

162, 24. CHAPTER 79. **colle**: the heights of Mussy-la-Fosse, south-west of Alesia; see plan, p. 153.

162, 28. **demonstravimus**: in 154, 5.

163, 1. **Concurrunt**: the Gauls in Alesia.

163, 4. **fossam**; the twenty-foot trench, see plan and 155, 29. — **aggere**: 'earth.'

163, 6. CHAPTER 80. **exercitu**: *i.e.* the infantry; the cavalry were sent out to engage the enemy. — **utramque**: the outer and inner lines of defense.

163, 7. **suum quisque**: see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11.

163, 10. **castris**; see 154, 12 f.

163, 12. **inter equites, etc.**: this idea was borrowed from the Germans, whose cavalry in Caesar's army was always superior to the Gauls'; see l. 25 f. and 154, 20, 24 f.

163, 13. **qui . . . sustinerent**: rel. clauses of purpose.

163, 15. **complures**: of Caesar's cavalry.

163, 18. **qui . . . continebantur**: the besieged.

163, 21. **neque . . . factum**: 'and no brave or cowardly deed.' Participles used as substantives are usually modified by adverbs instead of by adjectives. — **utrosque**: both Gauls and Romans.

163, 24. **Cum . . . pugnaretur**: 'when the battle had been raging' (and was still raging[2]).

163, 27. **sagittarii**: they were not so well trained as the German

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	621, 2 (301, 1)	992	500, 3 (294, *c*, N.)	427, N. 4	337, 7, *b*, 1
2	535, 1 (469, ii, 2)	738	471, *b* (277, *b*)	234	260, 4

archers, who, as we learn from Caesar, were able in a rout to keep up with the horsemen by taking hold of the horses' manes.

163, 28. **cedentes**: acc.

164, 4. CHAPTER 81. **Uno**: 'a single'; emphasized, as usual.—**Galli**: *i.e.* the relieving force.

164, 5. **cratium**: 'hurdles,' of interwoven branches, with which to cover over the trenches.—**harpagonum**: 'hooks,' on long poles, for tearing down the fortifications.

164, 7. **campestres**: 'in the plain' of the Laumes, referring to Caesar's outer line west of Alesia.

164, 8. **qua**: 'that by this,' introducing a rel. clause of purpose.—**qui . . . obsidebantur**: since this clause merely defines the subject of *possent*, and is not considered as an essential part of the purpose, the verb is not attracted into the subjunctive.

164, 14. **ut . . . attributus**: for the fact, see 163, 7 f.

164, 15. **librilibus**: 'throwing stones of a pound in weight.'

164, 17. **glandibus**: 'lead bullets,' hurled by slings.

164, 18. **tenebris**: this battle was fought between midnight and dawn, see l. 6 and 165, 1.

164, 21. **Antonius**: the famous Mark Antony. He was a lieutenant of Caesar in 52 and 51 B.C., and afterwards in the Civil War.

164, 24: **his**: serves as antecedent of *qua ex parte*, but denotes persons rather than place. The dat. expresses interest, accompanying *auxilio*, which is a dat. of purpose.

164, 26. CHAPTER 82. **Dum**: 'so long as.'—**plus . . . proficiebant**: 'they were more effective' than they were when they came nearer.

164, 28. **stimulis**: see 158, 6 ff.—**scrobes**: see 157, 15 ff.

164, 29. **delati**, etc.: 'falling into the pits were wounded,' by being impaled on the *stipites* (157, 20).

164, 30. **pilis muralibus**: heavier than the ordinary javelin.

165, 2. **aperto**: as often, of the right side, which was not protected by the shield. But see on *ab latere aperto*, 69, 1.—**superioribus**: on the Heights of Flavigny.

165, 3. **interiores**: the besieged Gauls in Alesia.

165, 5. **priores fossas**: the trench twenty feet wide. The pl. refers to different parts of the trench.—**explent**: like *proferunt* depending on *dum*.

165, 7. **appropinquarent**: see on *perficiantur*, 155, 8.

165, 12. CHAPTER 83. **collis**: Mont Réa.

165, 15. **castra**: *D* on the plan, p. 153. Wherever possible the Romans avoided camping near the foot of a hill, as the enemy by seizing the summit could win a great advantage. The lack of this precaution here cost Caesar dear.

165, 19. **numero**: referring only to the relieving army, which numbered, according to 160, 4, about 258,000 men.

165, 20. **quid . . . placeat**: 'what they think best to do, and in what way.'

165, 22. **videatur**: implied indir. disc., representing fut. indic. in the original thought, *adibimus cum meridies esse videbitur*.

165, 27. **ea castra**: of Reginus and Rebilus.

166, 3. CHAPTER 84. **falces**: like the *harpagones* of 164, 5.

166, 7. **locis**: essential complement or indir. obj. of the intr. cpd. vb.

166, 8. **Multum . . . valet**: 'tends greatly.'—**post tergum**: some of the Romans were on the inner line of defense facing the Gauls from Alesia, and some were on the outer line facing the relieving army. The men in each line accordingly felt that their safety depended on the success of their comrades behind them.

166, 9. **pugnantibus**: 'as they are fighting,' dat. of interest or reference.—**periculum**: we should say 'safety.'

166, 12. CHAPTER 85. **locum**: without doubt, on the northwest slope of the Heights of Flavigny, marked *J.C.* on the plan, p. 153. —**quaque**: from *quisque*.

166, 14. **Utrisque**: *i.e.* both Gauls and Romans. For the dat., cf. *pugnantibus*, l. 9. Translate, 'the thought comes to the minds of both armies.'

166, 15. **unum**: 'the one of all.'—**maxime**, etc.: 'there is call for the greatest effort.'

166, 18. **munitiones**: the *castra* of 165, 28.

166, 20. **Iniquum**: see on *castra*, 165, 15.—**ad declivitatem fastigium**: 'downward slope.'

166, 22. **Agger**: earth and other materials thrown on the Roman defenses (*in munitionem coniectus*), covering over the *cippi*, *lilia*, and *stimuli* (157, 8 ff.).

166, 26. CHAPTER 86. **Labienum**: supposed to have been in command of the troops on the Heights of Bussy, northeast of Alesia.

166, 28. **deductis cohortibus**: 'to draw off his cohorts' from the rampart.

166, 29. **eruptione pugnet**: 'make a sally.' The clause is obj. of

imperat, with which it is coördinate (not subordinated by *ut*). — **nisi**: belongs with *necessario* only.

167, 2. **Interiores**: as in 165, 3.

167, 3. **munitionum**: the *cippi*, etc., which were planted only in the plain. The Roman works on the hills had no need of these additional defenses.

167, 4. **ascensu**: abl. of specification. — **temptant**: the Gauls thought that owing to the lack of *cippi*, etc., the works on the hills might be successfully attacked. The attempt was probably made on the Heights of Flavigny.

167, 5. **propugnantes**: acc.

167, 7. **loricam**: see on 156, 11.

167, 8. CHAPTER 87. **Brutum**: see on 88, 9.

167, 11. **eo**: *i.e.* to the camp on Mont Réa.

167, 13. **circumire exteriores**, etc.: probably the cavalry that were to go round the outer line of defenses marched out from the camp near Grésigny (*G* on the plan, p. 153). The hills prevented their movements from being seen by the enemy. Any such manœuvre attempted from the cavalry camps in the plain (*H*, *I*, *K*) would have been frustrated by the Gauls of the relieving army.

167, 18. **faciendum**: *i.e.* to make a sally, in accordance with Caesar's directions in 166, 28 f.

167, 20. CHAPTER 88. **colore**, etc.: the *imperator* wore over his armor the *paludamentum*, a cloak of light purple or scarlet.

167, 21. **insigni**: 'as a distinguishing garb,' in pred. apposition to *quo*.

167, 23. **superioribus**: *i.e.* on Mont Réa above the Roman lines. — **declivia**, etc.: the slopes of Flavigny, from which Caesar came.

167, 25. **excipit**: 'follows.' The shout of the Romans and the Gauls fighting at Mont Réa was taken up by the Romans all along their lines.

167, 26. **Nostri**, etc.: the Romans made a sally, hurling their javelins and then rushing to close quarters to settle the combat with their swords.

167, 27. **equitatus**: the body from camp *G*, see on l. 13. — **cernitur**: *i.e.* by the Gauls.

167, 28. **aliae**: the cohorts with Caesar. — Note the rapidity and the vividness of this closing narrative, expressed by the annalistic presents (see on *civitates*, 53, 6) and by the short disconnected sentences.

168, 3. **Conspicati**: when the subject changes, it is usually expressed,

but here the words *ex oppido* make it clear that the Gauls from Alesia are meant.

168, 7. **Gallorum**: of the relieving army.

168, 8. **Quod nisi**: 'but if . . . not,' see on *quod si*, 60, 15. — **crebris subsidiis**: 'by repeatedly going to the support of each other.'

168, 22. CHAPTER 89. **ad utramque rem**: 'for either fate.'

168, 26. **Vercingetorix**: until 46 B.C. he was kept in prison at Rome. Then after being led as one of the principal trophies in Caesar's triumphal procession he was put to death.

168, 28. **si . . . posset**: indir. quest., 'to see if,' etc.

168, 29. **capita singula**: 'one man apiece.'

169, 2. CHAPTER 90. **recipit**: before this great rebellion the Haedui had been Caesar's firm allies.

169, 8. **huic**: Labienus.

169, 10. **ne quam**, etc.: the Remi, second only to the Haedui in power (136, 22), submitted without opposition to the Romans in the second year of Caesar's governorship, and were one of the few tribes which remained loyal in the outbreak of the present year (see on 159, 30). The Bellovaci were subdued the next year (51 B.C.) after a stubborn resistance.

169, 17. **dierum XX**: see on *dierum XX*, 122, 14. This unusual honor shows that the home government appreciated the importance of this year's victories. The backbone of Gallic resistance to Rome had been broken by the splendid victory of Alesia. In the following year, 51 B.C., although a few states made a gallant struggle for independence, all opposition was finally crushed, and the foundation was securely laid for the complete Romanization of Gaul. Thus France of to-day, like Spain and Italy, is a Latin country, and the French language is one of several daughters of Latin.

CIVIL WAR

BOOK FIRST

[**Campaign of 49 B.C. — Italy and Spain.** — The Civil War (see Introd. §§ 12, 13) opened in January, 49 B.C., with Caesar's passage over the Rubicon, the little stream which divided his province of Cisalpine Gaul from Italy. Caesar first made a rapid and victorious march

down the east coast of Italy to Brundisium, whither the Pompeians fled in hot haste with the purpose of mobilizing their forces where, if necessary, they could be most easily transported across the Adriatic. In fact, when Caesar arrived at Brundisium, the consuls and a large part of the army had already sailed to Dyrrachium. Caesar endeavored to blockade Pompey and his remaining troops in the city, but Pompey cleverly effected his escape by sea and joined the consuls in Macedonia (March, 49 B.C.). Being unable to follow without considerable delay owing to lack of ships, Caesar determined to secure the West, where Pompey was hardly less strong than in the East. He first marched to Rome and made himself master of the public funds. Sicily and Sardinia, which supplied Rome with grain, were easily occupied during the summer by two of his lieutenants, Curio and Valerius. Caesar himself hastened to Marseilles (Massilia), which he found supporting the cause of Pompey. Arranging for the siege of this town, the only place in Gaul which took sides against him, he hurried on to Spain, — whither his Gallic legions had already been despatched, — to encounter a strong Pompeian army under Afranius and Petreius. Near Ilerda, in northeastern Spain, he snatched victory from the very jaws of defeat, and the whole peninsula submitted without further opposition (August and September, 49 B.C.). Following the policy he had adopted in Italy at the beginning of the war, Caesar dismissed all the captives, officers and men, some of whom enlisted in his army, while others poorly requited his clemency by joining Pompey in Macedonia.]

BOOK SECOND

Campaign of 49 B.C. — Marseilles and Africa. — [Marseilles (Massilia) held out for about six months (April–October, 49 B.C.). Trebonius, who had distinguished himself in Britain and at Alesia (130, 15, and 164, 22), conducted the siege skillfully and vigorously by land, while Decimus Brutus, who had made a reputation as a naval officer by his cleverness in the war with the Veneti seven years before (88, 9. He also did important service at Alesia, 167, 8), twice defeated the enemy on the sea. Finally the Massiliots were reduced to such straits by their lack of supplies, the weakened condition of their walls, and their despair of receiving help from Pompey, that upon Caesar's arrival from Spain, in October, the town was immediately surrendered. Granting a general pardon Caesar hastened on to Rome.]

Curio, after securing Sicily (see summary of Book I, p. 383), crossed over to Africa to engage the Pompeian forces there under Varus. Meeting at first with the utmost success, he was soon entrapped by the Numidian allies of Varus, and perished with almost all his army (August, 49 B.C.). This was a severe blow to Caesar's cause, not only because it encouraged the enemy, just at the time of their overthrow in Spain, but also because in Curio Caesar lost his ablest political supporter and one of his bravest and most skillful officers.

Apart from this disaster, however, the first year of the war was highly successful for Caesar. The Pompeians, on the other hand, only gained a trifling advantage with their fleet in the upper Adriatic and reduced most of Illyricum. Results so pitiably small, considering Pompey's great superiority by sea, and the power of his name and influence throughout the Roman world, except only in Caesar's provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, suggest an astonishing degree of mismanagement and confusion in the ranks of the senatorial party.

PAGE 170, LINE 1. CHAPTER 23. **Isdem temporibus**: *i.e.* during the campaigns in Spain and at Marseilles; see summaries of Books I and II, p. 383. — **Curio**: if Plutarch may be believed (*Life of Pompey*, 58), Caesar won over Curio, who had previously sided with the senatorial party, by paying off his debts. Curio served Caesar well in the controversy with the senate (50 B.C.), accompanied him on the march to Brundisium, and from there was sent to seize Sicily (see summary of Book I, p. 383). A few weeks later, early in August, he sailed from Sicily to Africa. — **Africam**: *i.e.* the district round Carthage, which had been made a province, under the name 'Africa,' in 146 B.C. It comprised the upper eastern part of modern Tunis.

170, 3. **Vari**: a Pompeian officer, whose troops had deserted him and joined Caesar during the triumphal march from the Rubicon to Brundisium. He had fled to Africa, and finding the province without a governor he assumed the office and raised an army of two legions. He accomplished his schemes easily because of his acquaintance in Africa, where he had been governor a few years before.

170, 4. **acceperat**: when he was sent to Sicily.

170, 5. **consumpta**: abl. abs. with *biduo* and *nocte*, agreeing with the nearer subst.

170, 9. **L. Caesar**: a distant relative of Julius Caesar who supported the cause of the senate throughout the war. His father was a lieutenant

of Caesar in Gaul, but after the outbreak of the Civil War he remained at Rome.

170, 10. **ex praedonum bello**: 'just after the pirates' war' of 67 B.C.; see Introd. § 22.

170, 11. **reficiendas**: see on *pontem . . . faciendum curat*, 59, 18. These ships would be likely to need rather extensive repairs if they had been lying on the shore eighteen years.

170, 12. **veritus**: with *L. Caesar*. — **ex alto**: he was lying off Clupea (*ad Clupeam*), which is near the end of a promontory running well out to sea. See the plan, p. 171.

170, 14. **Hadrumetum**: on the coast to the south of Clupea.

170, 15. **Longus**: he had been governor of Africa the year before.

170, 16. **Caesaris**: Lucius.

171, 2. **praesidio, navibus**: datives.

171, 6. CHAPTER 24. **Uticam**: capital of the province and headquarters of the Pompeians.

171, 7. **eodem**: adv.

171, 8. **bidui**: probably a mistake. The distance from Anquillaria to the Bagrada, which was nearly seventy miles, could hardly have been covered by infantry in two days.

171, 9. **Rebilum**: he had been with Caesar in Gaul (165, 16). He was one of the few to survive Curio's expedition.

171, 11. **Castra Cornelia**: so called from the elder Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, who had a camp here in 204 B.C., during the war with Hannibal. Both this place and Utica are now at some distance from the sea owing to changes in the coast line.

171, 12. **Id**: refers to *is locus*, but follows Latin usage in agreeing with the pred. subst. in its own clause.

171, 14. **fastigio**: abl. of quality.

172, 1. **passus mille**: a mistake. The distance is nearly three miles.

172, 2. **quo mare succedit**: 'through which the sea-water comes up.'

172, 5. CHAPTER 25. **muro . . . coniuncta**: 'close to the wall of the town,' hendiadys.

172, 6. **ad portam**: 'near the gate.'

172, 7. **oppido, theatro**: abl. of means, limiting *munita*.

172, 8. **substructionibus**: abl. of cause, limiting the abl. abs. *aditu . . . angusto*. The camp was protected on one side by the wall of the town, on another by the theatre, the substructure of which, supporting

the rising and semicircular rows of seats, was probably built up in two or more tiers of arches. See the illustrations under 'amphitheatre' or 'theatre' in the English dictionaries.

172, 10. **portari atque agi**: 'things were being carried and animals driven.'

172, 11. **viis**: abl. of means, expressing the way by which; 'over crowded roads.'

172, 13. **loco praedae**: 'as booty.'

172, 16. **Iuba**: Juba naturally supported the Pompeians, for his father had been restored to the throne of Numidia by Pompey more than thirty years before. He also had a private grudge against Curio, who, when tribune the year before, had proposed to annex his kingdom to the Roman domain.

172, 24. **pronuntiari**: 'the announcement to be made.'

172, 25. **in . . . loco**: in this meaning *loco* commonly omits *in*, as in l. 13.

173, 1. CHAPTER 26. **in castra**: Rebilus had been left in command, 171, 9 f.

173, 3. **imperator**: this was merely an honorary title given by the soldiers to their commander after an important victory. In the present case a victory trifling in itself may have assumed importance in the eyes of the soldiers as it resulted in their gaining an abundance of supplies from the transports.

173, 7. **rege**: Juba.

173, 13. **possent**: subj. with *priusquam*, of an act anticipated.[1]

173, 15. **equitatuque**, etc.: of the enemy's cavalry; abl. abs. expressing concession.

173, 16. **litora**: for the pl., see on *priores fossas*, 165, 5. — **oppidum**: Utica.

173, 18. CHAPTER 27. **Marsi**: Curio's men were largely from the Marsian and Paelignian districts in central Italy. Enlisted as Pompeians, they joined Caesar on the march to Brundisium.

173, 22. **serviunt**: 'tickle,' by telling what would be welcome news. — **quae volumus**, etc.: the two clauses in parenthesis explain in inverse order (the chiastic arrangement) the *sive . . . sive* clauses. The centurions thought that Varus would believe in the truth of what he was glad to hear, and they hoped that Curio's soldiers would be as faithless

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	605, ii (520, ii)	880	551, *b* (327)	577, 1	292, 1, *b*

as they themselves had been. Cf. *quod fere*, etc., 93, 16 f., and see note.

173, 24. **confirmant quidem certe**: 'make at any rate a positive assertion'; *quidem* emphasizes the preceding word, *certe* = 'at any rate.'

173, 25. **maximeque . . . facultatem**: the point is that if Curio's men, who had formerly been in Pompey's service, should see and talk with Varus's soldiers, they would probably return to their old allegiance.

174, 1. **una valle, etc.**: 'with only a little valley between them.'

174, 4. CHAPTER 28. **Corfini**: it was at Corfinium, on the route from the Rubicon to Brundisium, that one of Pompey's strongest forces surrendered to Caesar, including the two legions now with Curio. At the surrender Quinctilius, instead of joining Caesar, had gone to Africa.

174, 7. **Corfinio**: abl. of separation, not to be translated as locative.

174, 8: **idem . . . constarent**: 'the centuries and the maniples remained the same.' See Introd. § 28.

174, 11. **primam**: best translated with *sacramenti*, although it limits *memoriam*, as if *sacramenti memoriam* were a cpd. Then, as now, enlisting soldiers were required to take the oath of allegiance. — **Domitium**: Domitius Ahenobarbus was Pompey's lieutenant in command at Corfinium, and Quinctilius was his quaestor.

174, 12. **dixissent**: subj. in implied indir. disc.

174, 13. **qui . . . perpessi**: at Corfinium.

174, 14. **pro his**: Curio and his officers.

174, 15. **Huc**: 'to this.'

174, 16. **ad spem**: 'to inspire a hope'; cf. the common use of the gerundive with *ad* to express purpose. — **quae**: interrog., introducing an indir. quest. in apposition with *pauca*, 'as to what they ought,' etc.

174, 18. **nullam . . . significatio**: 'there was no sign made in any way,' either of approval or disapproval.

174, 20. CHAPTER 29. **At**: although Curio's soldiers had shown no sympathy with the suggestions of Quinctilius, their loyalty was nevertheless seen to be wavering. Consequently Curio and his faithful officers and men were filled with apprehension. — **omnium**: *i.e.* of the loyal.

174, 22. **opiniones fingebat**: 'kept inventing fancies'; *opinio* often implies a mere notion or conjecture as contrasted with *sententia*, a well-grounded opinion.

174, 23. **Hoc**: 'this invention.'

174, 24. **uno auctore**: abl. abs., 'starting from a single source.'

174, 25. **plures . . . videbantur**: 'there seemed to be several sources of the story'; and so what might be only the creation of some frightened soldier's imagination appeared to be a well-authenticated fact. — **Erat civile bellum**: 'it was a civil war,' *i.e.* a war in which men might change sides without any lack of patriotism. With this statement, and those that follow, through *iactaverant*, 175, 3, Caesar is justifying the apprehensions of Curio and his faithful supporters. Curio's two legions, which had been in Pompey's army only a few months before, would be seriously weakened if many men should follow the example of the two Marsian centurions and their twenty-two comrades (173, 18 f.). — The text of the rest of this chapter is very uncertain, and is the product largely of modern scholars' conjectures; the manuscripts are badly corrupted.

174, 26. **genus hominum**, etc.: 'it was a class of men which could do what it pleased and follow what party it would,' *i.e.* they were independent Italians, and could follow either Caesar or Pompey. The subjunctives express characteristic.

174, 27. **legiones**: pred. of *erant* implied; *eae* is subject.

174, 28. **nam**: follows not the previous statement itself, but its implication 'and so they were not attached to Caesar,' *for* his favors to individual soldiers had been outshone by his favors to whole communities. The bond of personal gratitude was therefore weak. — **beneficia**: translate as subject, making the vb. passive, 'the favors had been lessened in value.' No exactions had been made of his fallen foes by Caesar, except that in Italy the private soldiers were enrolled in his own army. The officers were allowed to go free with all their possessions.

174, 29. **conferrentur**: the subject is *beneficia* implied. This rel. clause is represented as quoted from the soldiers' remarks, implied indir. disc.; 'with which, as it was said, they were bestowed,' etc. — **etiam . . . coniuncta**: 'even those that had been united to the opposite party.' From the time that he crossed the Rubicon Caesar had forbidden private soldiers to enter a town armed; and when Corfinium was surrendered late in the evening, he postponed its occupation till dawn in order to avoid all possibility of plunder and outrage in the dark.

174, 30. **enim**: connects the following sentence with *legiones . . . fuerant*, not with *nam . . . coniuncta*. — **Marsis**, etc.: see on 173, 18.

175, 2. **centuriones militesque**: in pred. apposition with the antecedent (*ii* implied) of the second *qui*, 'those who had remained in

their tents, both centurions and privates.' There was danger that the men remaining in the army, being fellow-countrymen of the deserters, might show the same disloyalty. — **Non nulli**, etc.: 'some had thrown out rather offensive remarks.'

175, 3. **Sermones**, etc.: 'remarks of the soldiers of doubtful meaning were given the harsher interpretation.'

175, 4. **diligentiores**: 'uncommonly watchful,' *i.e.* for all signs of disloyalty.

175, 6. CHAPTER 30. **consilio**: a council of war was composed of the superior officers; see Introd. § 36.

175, 8. **conandum**: impers., 'that efforts should be made.'

175, 9. **huius . . . consiliis**: 'to plans of this sort (*i.e.* of desertion) on the part of the soldiers.'

175, 12. **experiri, perpeti**: subjects of *praestare*, 'it was better.'

175, 13. **gravissimum supplicium**: 'the utmost penalty,' *i.e.* death. They knew that if they fell into the power of Varus they would be put to death. The Pompeians showed none of Caesar's clemency.

175, 14. **Erant qui censerent**: 'some urged.'[1] — **de tertia vigilia**: about one o'clock.

175, 15. **ut . . . sanarentur**: 'that after some little time the soldiers might be restored to their right minds.'

175, 17. **accidisset**: for fut. perf. of dir. disc., 'if anything disastrous should occur.'

175, 18. **daretur**: in a second purpose clause with *ut* (l. 15).

175, 20. CHAPTER 31. **quantum . . . superesse**: 'that there was as great an excess of spirit in one proposition as there was lack of it in the other.' *Sententiae* is dat. of possessor, *animi* is partit. gen. with *quantum* and *tantum*.

175, 21. **hos**: 'the latter,'[2] *i.e.* those who had spoken last (l. 14 ff.); *illos*, 'the former,' whose proposition is given in l. 7 ff.

175, 25. **accepto magno detrimento**: 'with heavy loss.'

175, 26. **Quasi . . . concilient**:[3] 'as if it were not the case that good fortune in exploits gains,' etc.

175, 29. **quid habet**: 'what does it mean?'

176, 1. **sibi parum credi**: 'that they are not much trusted.' Intr.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 1 (503, i)	838	535, *a* (320, *a*)	631, 2	283, 2
2	506 (450, 2 & N.)	1052	297, *a* & *b* (102, *a* & *b*)	307, R. 1	246, 1
3	584, 2 (513, ii, N. 1)	944–45	524 & N. 2 (312 & R.)	602	307

vbs., whether pass. or act., may have an indir. obj.; in the pass. they are impers.[1]

176, 2. **illis, his**: 'the latter, the former,' a rarer use than that in 175, 21 f.; see *hic* in Vocab. *His*, though referring here rather unusually to the more distant word (*pudentes*), designates the persons who were actually nearer the speaker. Curio implies that only men of honor were present in the council. The dat. expresses interest or reference. — **augeat**: 'would increase,' a protasis[2] being implied, 'if they should know of it.'

176, 4. **explorata habeamus**: 'we should[2] regard as certain.'

176, 6. **quanto**: amount of difference with *praestet*, which contains a comparative idea, 'how much better it would be!'

176, 7. **An**: expresses emphasis,[3] 'or is it not the case that, like the wounds of the body, so the troubles of an army ought to be concealed?'

176, 10. **addunt**: 'add the injunction'; here equivalent to a vb. of commanding, hence the obj. clause with *ut*. — **quo**: see on *quo . . . impedirent*, 73, 17.

176, 11. **huius modi res**: such as plots of disloyalty.

176, 13. **tanti . . . animi**: pred. gen. of quality.

176, 15. **spe**: abl. of separation, 'abandon hope.'

176, 16. **magnaque . . . confido**: 'and I trust that I shall soon come to a decision on the matter, in great part in harmony with you.'

176, 21. CHAPTER 32. **auctoritate**: 'example.' A strong force went over to Caesar at Corfinium (see on *Corfini*, 174, 4), so that the influence of its example was important. — **fecerit**: result clauses sometimes take the perf., which is independent of sequence (*usus sit* would regularly be followed by a secondary tense) and represents the result as an accomplished fact.

176, 23. **et Caesar, etc.**: 'Caesar formed a most kindly opinion of you, while the other side felt most bitterly.' The Pompeians lost what Caesar gained.

176, 26. **Italia excessit**: with Pompey's departure from Brundisium (see summary of Book I, p. 383) Caesar was left the undisputed master of Italy, after a campaign of only two months, in which not a single pitched battle had been fought.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	426, 3 (384, 5)	530, end	372 (230)	346, R. 1	187, ii, *b*
2	576 (509)	936	516, 2 & *b* (307, 2 & *b*)	596, 1	303
3	380, 3 (353, 2)	702	335, *b* (211, *b*)	457, 1	162, 4, *a*

176, 27. **sine quibus**, etc.: because these provinces furnished the largest part of the grain supply of Rome and Italy.

176, 30. **sunt qui**: men like Quinctilius (174, 10 ff.).

177, 2. **quid . . . gravius**, etc.: 'what harsher measure can they enact in regard to you?' — **irati**: 'in their anger,' at Curio's men for deserting them and joining Caesar.

177, 3. **eos**: the Caesareans; *eorum*, the Pompeians.

177, 5. **in Hispania**: the victory of Ilerda, at the beginning of August (see summary of Book I, p. 383).

177, 7. **duces**: Afranius and Petreius. — **provincias**: Hither and Farther Spain, the former including the northern and eastern parts of the peninsula, the latter the southern and western.

177, 8. **diebus XL quibus**: 'within forty days after'; the rel., like its antecedent, is abl. of time within which.

177, 9. **qui . . . resistent**: *i.e.* the Pompeians, now that they have been crushed in Spain.

177, 10. **incerta victoria**: abl. abs., 'while victory was uncertain.'

177, 11. **cum**: concessive.

177, 13. **prioris sacramenti**, etc.: see 174, 11.

177, 14. **Domitius**: when Caesar arrived at Corfinium on his march south from the Rubicon, Domitius Ahenobarbus, Pompey's lieutenant in command there, not feeling strong enough to stand a siege or to engage in open battle, plotted with his closest friends to run away and leave the army to its fate. Upon the discovery of his cowardly scheme the soldiers arrested him and his accomplices and surrendered to Caesar, who dismissed Domitius and his aristocratic officers unharmed and enrolled their legions in his own army.

177, 18. **qui**: 'how,' adv. — **proiectis . . . imperio**: things which Domitius had practically done in plotting to desert his army.

177, 20. **Fingitur**, etc.: ironical, 'there is being invented a new idea of your sacred obligation.' — **ut . . . respiciatis**: a subst. clause in apposition with *religio*.

177, 22. **capitis deminutione**: 'loss of civil rights.' A Roman taken prisoner in war lost all his social and political privileges; but if he was allowed to return home through release or escape, his rights were restored.

177, 26. **laboris**: limits *praemia*.

177, 27. **qui . . . dubitatis**: 'and what (*qualis*) the end (*qui*, the antecedent of which is *eventu*) is going to be, even you are not in doubt.'

177, 28. **quem . . . processit**: modifying *fortunam*, 'so far as the war has yet advanced.'

177, 29. **cur praeteream**: 'why should I pass by.'[1]

178, 2. **adveniens**: 'by my mere approach,' referring to Lucius Caesar's flight (170, 12 ff.).

178, 3. **sinuque**, etc.: 'and from the very bosom of the enemy.'

178, 4. **eoque**, etc.: 'and have driven them to that pass.'

178, 6. **commeatu iuvari**: 'be provided with supplies.'

178, 7. **Italiae fugam**: 'the flight from Italy,' see on *Italia excessit*, 176, 26.

178, 8. **praeiudicia**: in apposition with the three accs., *ignominiam*, etc.; 'precedents for,' etc., portending another disaster for the Pompeians in Africa.

178, 9. **sequimini**: 'you throw in your lot with the disgrace at Corfinium!' etc.

178, 10. **imperatoris**: see on 173, 3.—**cuius**, etc.: 'if you regret this.'[2]

178, 11. **meum . . . nomen**: *i.e. Caesaris miles*.

178, 16. CHAPTER 33. **viderentur**: pass., 'they were seen.'

178, 17. **sit**: an obj. clause coördinate with *cohortantur*; see on *faciat*, 65, 5.

178, 20. **sit data**: 'should be given,' implied indir. disc., representing fut. perf. indic.

178, 23. **Varus . . . Attius**: until the time of the Empire, when there was great confusion in the order of personal names, the family name commonly followed the gentile or clan name. Cf. this same name in 170, 3.

178, 24. **sive . . . detur**: implied indir. disc., being a part of the purpose *ne . . . praetermittat*.—**sollicitandi milites**: 'of tampering with the soldiers' of Curio.

178, 27. CHAPTER 34. **supra**: in 174, 1.

178, 28. **non ita**: 'not so very.'—**Hanc**: object of *transire*, referring to *vallis*, l. 27.

178, 29. **si . . . conarentur**: indir. quest. depending on *exspectabat*.

178, 30. **quo**: as in 176, 10.—**aequiore loco**: 'in the more favorable position,' *i.e.* above the enemy as they came up out of the valley.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	557 (486, ii)	723	444, *a* (268)	259	277 & *a*
2	457 (409, iii)	585	354, *b* (221, *b*)	377	209, 1

179, 1. **Simul**, etc.: the thought of this sentence has no immediate connection with the one before it. A statement about Curio's army has apparently been lost. — **levis . . . complures**: 'several men of light equipment (gen. of quality) interspersed among them.' This custom was borrowed from the German cavalry employed by Caesar in Gaul. For the use of the footmen, see 163, 12 ff.

179, 2. **cum**, etc.: 'were seen descending,' etc.

179, 6. **qui**: sc. *ii* as antecedent (see on *qui*, 51, 2), which is limited by *levis armaturae*.

179, 7. **circumveniebantur**: they were bunglers; Germans would have escaped. See on 163, 27.

179, 8. **Huc . . . conversa**: 'turned this way.'

179, 9. **Rebilus**: see on 171, 9.

179, 12. **unum**: 'merely' ('one thing only').

179, 13. **quae . . . confirmassent**: see 178, 17 f. The subj. is due to implied indir. disc., 'which, as he said, they had,' etc.

179, 14. **Adeoque . . . vallis**: 'and the valley was such an obstruction' (lit., 'was so obstructed'), because of its steep slopes (178, 28).

179, 15. **nisi sublevati**: 'except when supported,' being pushed ahead by those behind them.

179, 16. **animūs . . . militum**: 'the soldiers'; Latin frequently assigns an action to a man's *animus*, 'the mind, the heart,' when English, with less exactness, speaks only of the man. *Animus* is collective here; the pl. is commoner when applied to a number of persons.

179, 19. **priusquam**, etc.: see on *possent*, 173, 13.

179, 22. CHAPTER 35. **ex infimis ordinibus**: 'a centurion of the lowest rank,' see Introd. § 35.

179, 23. **de exercitu**: with *primus*, 'was the first from Curio's army to overtake,' etc.; cf. *ex . . . militibus*, l. 25 f., depending on *unus*, and see on *ex . . . Gallis*, 73, 3.

179, 26. **eius**: = *Vari*.

179, 29. **paulumque afuit quin**: 'he lacked little of killing' (lit., 'it was not far away but that he killed'); *afuit* is impers., having as its subject the clause with *quin*; see on *educat*, 93, 9.

180, 6. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.'

180, 7. **quod . . . indigebant**: 'the fact that the soldiers were without,' etc. This subst. clause[1] is an additional subject of *prohibebat*.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	588, 3 (516, i)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 1	299, 1, *b*

180, 15. **bucinatore**: he gave the signals for the change of sentries during the night.

180, 16. **ad speciem**: 'to keep up appearances,' so that Curio should think Varus's army was still in camp. It will be remembered that this camp was built right beside the city of Utica (172, 5 f.).

180, 20. CHAPTER 36. **multitudo**: 'the common people,' including the farmers from the country round about (cf. 172, 10 ff.). — **belli**: obj. gen. with *insolens*.—**Uticenses**: the citizens, enjoying political rights.

180, 21. **illi**: = *Caesari.*

180, 22. **conventus**: 'a Roman association,' the collective name of Romans living in a provincial town. Cf. 'the American colony' in Berlin or Paris. — **qui . . . constaret**: 'consisting of,' etc., a clause of characteristic. — **generibus**: 'classes'; *i.e.* among the Romans in Utica there were adherents of Caesar as well as of Pompey.

181, 2. CHAPTER 37. **fides**, etc.: 'he could not be made to believe them.'

181, 4. **nuntiis ac litteris**: indicating reliable information, confirming the rumors which had been circulating two days or more; see 177, 5 ff.

181, 7. **millibus**: abl. of amount of difference, not affected by *minus*;[1] *longe* is redundant.

181, 8. **munitionibus**: Curio's camp near Utica (173, 4 f.).

181, 11. **duae legiones**: of the four legions received from Caesar, Curio had left two in Sicily (170, 3).

181, 13. **salis**: salt was commonly obtained by evaporating sea water in pits dug near the shore. To insure a constant supply of cheap salt at Rome the government very early assumed control of the business.

181, 20. CHAPTER 38. **perfugis**: these men, pretending to be deserters, were really in the service of Juba. Of course their report was false.

181, 21. **Leptitanorum**: the people of Leptis Minor, a town on the coast of the province of Africa, south of Clupea.

181, 26. **Multum . . . adiuvat**: 'contribute a great deal to the approval of this course.'

181, 27. **superioris temporis proventus**: 'the outcome of the past,' *i.e.* of his efforts in Sicily and Africa.

181, 28. **rei bene gerendae**: 'of success.' Severe as was the blow to

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	471, 4 (417, 1, N. 2)	618	407, *c* & N. (247, *c* & N.)	296, R. 4	217, 3

his cause from the overthrow of Curio, Caesar has no word of blame, but rather finds excuses, for his rashness.

182, 1. **prima nocte**: 'in the early part of the night.'

182, 4. **intervallo**: see 77, 17 and note.

182, 7. **nullis ordinibus**: 'helter-skelter.'

182, 14. CHAPTER 39. **convenit, cognovit, quaerit**: the narrative, by its lack of connectives, admirably represents Curio's haste.

182, 16. **Saburram**: sc. *castris praeesse*. — **Reliqua**: 'all further questions.' He would have done well to learn how far away Juba was; but he had no suspicion of the supposed deserters (181, 20).

182, 17. **signa**: 'maniples,' each of the thirty maniples in a legion having its own standard.

182, 18. **cum perfugis**: an abridged form of expression (for *cum perfugarum oratione*), common to many languages.

182, 20. **potuerint**: subj. of characteristic.

182, 22. **de referenda gratia**: 'about making requital for your services. — **per se**: *i.e.* without being exaggerated.

182, 26. **libenter praedicant**: 'like to boast.'

182, 28. **quicquid intercederet temporis**: 'whatever time was allowed to go by.'

182, 29. **ita . . . deërant**: 'so the hopefulness of Curio was equaled by the soldiers' enthusiasm.'

183, 1. **quam maxime . . . perterritos**: 'while they were in the greatest possible panic.'

183, 4. **ad spem**: 'in his hope' (lit., 'with reference to his hope').

183, 8. CHAPTER 40. **cui**: see on *quibus*, 97, 17.

183, 10. **elephantis**: elephants were first used in battle against Roman armies by Pyrrhus of Epirus at the battle of Heraclea, 280 B.C. During the Punic wars, in which elephants were used by the Carthaginians, the Romans became familiar with them and ceased to fear them.

183, 13. **simulatione timoris**: 'pretending to be afraid.'

183, 15. **cognovisset**: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.

183, 16. **praesentis . . . opinione**: 'his notion of the present movement,' *i.e.* that it represented fear. With this use of *opinio*, cf. 174, 22, and see note.

183, 21. CHAPTER 41. **spatio**: 'at a distance,' *i.e.* from the starting-point at Camp Cornelia. Cf. *intervallo*, 182, 4.

183, 23. **ad speciem**: as in 180, 16. The infantry were not to fight as yet.

183, 24. **Non deëst negotio**: 'is equal to the emergency.'

183, 26. **ut defessis**: 'though exhausted.'

183, 28. **numero CC**: sc. *tantum*, 'only 200.' — **reliqui**, etc.: see l. 2 f.

183, 29. **hostes**: subject of *cedere*.

183, 30. **longius, vehementius**: 'very far, very rapidly.'

184, 2. **aversos proterere**: 'to trample down those in the rear.'

184, 3. **cum**: 'whenever'; this meaning is clear from the imperfs., of repeated action, in the main clause. In subordinate clauses of repeated action the subj. is less common than the indic.:[1] cf. *fecerant*, 183, 29.

184, 5. **recipientes**: sc. *eos*, referring to the Romans.

184, 7. **casum subire**: 'to take the chances.'

184, 12. **extremo . . . tempore**: 'in the last moments of life.'

184, 14. **si quos**: instead of *iis quos*, to express better the great uncertainty whether any of their number would be saved; 'commended their parents to each other, in case fortune,' etc.

184, 15. **Plena erant omnia**: 'the air was full.'

184, 19. CHAPTER 42. **ut in miseris rebus**: 'considering their sad plight.'

184, 20. **universos**: limits *eos* implied, subject of *capere*.

184, 24. **integri procumbunt**: 'fall without a wound,' from exhaustion and discouragement.

184, 27. **Curio . . . interficitur**: see summary of Book II, p. 384. "The gay licentious braggart of the forum and camp, the darling of Cicero, the counsellor of Caesar, the prime mover of the civil war, of which he was the most distinguished victim, crowned a career of inconsistencies and a character of contradictions by dying magnanimously in the foremost ranks of slaughter rather than seek his personal safety after losing the army entrusted to him." Merivale, quoted by Moberly.

185, 2. **demonstratum est**: in 183, 2 f.

185, 4. **Milites** = *pedites*. — **ad unum**: 'to a man.'

185, 5. CHAPTER 43. **Rufus**: see 171, 1. He was now in command of the five cohorts left to guard the camp (182, 13).

185, 9. **primo**: like *prima*, 182, 1.

185, 13. **classem hostium**: L. Caesar's fleet at Hadrumetum; see 170, 16.

	H	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	601, 4 (518, 1)	794	518, *c* (309, *b*)	567, N.	288, 3, *a*

185, 15. **in classe**: the swift ships are meant, distinguished from the transports mentioned in the next line. All the large ships, instead of sending their boats to shore in obedience to Rufus's orders (l. 10), sailed away without taking thought of the unfortunates on shore.

185, 17. **incitabat**: 'instigated' to the same conduct. — **ad officium, etc.**: 'reported for duty.'

185, 19. **qui . . . conscenderent**: indir. quest. depending on the idea of decision in *contentio*, 'struggle to decide just who,' etc.

185, 20. **non nulli**: sc. *lenunculi*.

185, 23. CHAPTER 44. **qui . . . valerent . . . possent**: characteristic, 'who had influence either through friendship or pity,' etc. The pity would be chiefly for the *patres*, who had families dependent upon them.

185, 26. **numero**: cf. *loco*, 172, 13.

185, 30. **cum**: concessive. — **fidem**: his promise of safety to the soldiers who had surrendered.

186, 1. **neque**: = *neque tamen*, 'and yet did not dare.' — **Ipse**: Juba. With all the pride and swagger of a petty barbarian king, Juba took advantage of his great services to the Pompeians in destroying Curio's army to enter the capital of the Roman province and take control there for a few days, while Varus and the rest could do nothing but acquiesce with the best grace possible.

BOOK THIRD

Campaign of 48 B.C. — Macedonia and Thessaly. — Arriving in Rome from Marseilles (see summary of Book II, first paragraph, p. 383) about the first of December, Caesar remained there only eleven days, during which he was elected consul for the next year, and then hastened on to Brundisium to direct the immediate transportation of his army across the Adriatic for the decisive struggle with Pompey.

During the nine months' respite granted by Caesar's campaign in the West, Pompey had been gathering a strong army and fleet from all the eastern peoples who were subject or allied to Rome. His headquarters were at Dyrrachium, and his fleet lined the coast. Probably his intention was to invade Italy the following spring, and nothing was further from his thoughts than that Caesar would bring the war into Greece.

On January 5, 48 B.C., in the midst of a storm, Caesar landed in

Epirus with about half his troops. The ships were returning for the rest of his army, which was at Brundisium under command of Antony, when they were destroyed by Pompey's admiral, Bibulus. It was nearly three months before Antony could effect a crossing. Meanwhile Caesar, immediately upon his arrival in Greece, had marched towards Dyrrachium, receiving without resistance the surrender of Oricum, Apollonia, and other towns. Pompey's army hastened to intercept him, and the opposing forces encamped on opposite banks of the Apsus. While here Caesar made once more futile attempts for peace. Finally, near the end of March, Antony succeeded with the aid of the greatest good fortune in landing near Lissus. Caesar, outgeneraling Pompey, joined Antony and cut Pompey off from his headquarters at Dyrrachium. With his control of the sea, however, Pompey was not much harmed by this move, and intrenching himself at Petra hill he decided to wear Caesar out by a policy of masterly inactivity. Caesar responded by attempting to blockade Pompey, but was obliged to extend his lines of circumvallation so far that they could not be properly defended, and Pompey finally broke through, inflicting a severe loss on Caesar.

Caesar at once withdrew to Apollonia and thence marched away to Thessaly. The Pompeians believed that the war was over, and the nobles in the army even fell to disputing over the distribution of the spoils and of the offices in Rome. Caesar encamped in the plain of Pharsalus, and Pompey, who had followed leisurely after, took up a position some miles to the north at Larissa. Although outnumbered more than two to one, Caesar was eager for a battle. But Pompey was slow to accept the challenge, and was only driven to it after some days by the taunts of his followers, who declared that he was prolonging the war merely for the sake of maintaining his command. By a skillful arrangement of his troops Caesar won a complete victory (August, 48 B.C.). Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously assassinated. Caesar, hastening in pursuit, arrived at Alexandria in October. Sorely against his will and the interests of Rome he was detained there for about nine months by the so-called Alexandrine War, which was caused by his efforts, through arbitration of the quarrel between young Ptolemy and his sister Cleopatra, to set them on the throne as joint rulers.

PAGE 187, LINE 1. CHAPTER 1. **Dictatore**: 'as dictator.' Caesar learned at Marseilles of his appointment as dictator for the purpose of holding the consular elections for the year 48 B.C. These elections were regularly presided over by a consul, but both consuls of 49 B.C.

were with Pompey's army at Dyrrachium. The dictator was an extraordinary official, with absolute power, appointed in public crises for such time as circumstances required, but not to exceed six months.

187, 3. **per leges**: a law of 342 B.C. enacted that no man should be reëlected to an office until after an interval of ten years. Caesar had been consul in 59 B.C., consequently 48 B.C. was the first year in which he was eligible for a second term. — **consulem**: in pred. agreement with the subject of *fieri*, which is implied from *ei*. The dat. is more common.[1] — **liceret**: characteristic.

187, 4. **cum**: causal.[2] — **fides**, etc.: 'credit was somewhat contracted.' In the uncertainties of a time of war financiers are unwilling to lend money except at high rates of interest. — **tota Italia**: the abl. of place where, if limited by *totus*, is generally used without *in*.

187, 5. **neque . . . solverentur**: debtors refused to make payment because it was popularly believed that a general abolition of debts would result from the war. This was also a strong reason for the collapse of credit. — **creditae pecuniae**: 'loans.'

187, 6. **arbitri darentur**: 'appraisers should be appointed.' — **fierent, traderentur**: in the same construction as *darentur*.

187, 7. **possessionum et rerum**: 'of real estate and personal property.' Only the property of debtors would need to be appraised. — **quanti**: gen. of indefinite value,[3] 'at that value which each of these properties had before the war.' The subj. is due to implied indir. disc. Property had depreciated since the outbreak of the war.

187, 8. **eae**: 'these pieces of property,' at their value before the war.

187, 9. **Hoc**: 'this measure,' subject of *esse*, l. 12. If Caesar had been merely a revolutionary leader of the people and not the patriotic, far-seeing statesman that he was, he would have yielded to popular clamor and have declared the abolition of all debts. Instead, he sacrificed the favor of the debt-ridden populace, and passed a law which helped not only the debtor by increasing the value of his property which he could offer in payment of his liabilities, but also the creditor by securing him at least a partial payment of what was due him and relieving his fear of losing everything.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	612, 3 (536, 2, 3 & N.)	975	455, *a* (272, *a*, 2)	535, R. 3	327, 2 & *a*
2	598 (517)	863	549 (326)	586	286, 2
3	448 (404)	576	417 (252, *a*)	380, 1	203, 3

187, 12. **existimationem**: 'credit'; the debtor's credit was protected by his being obliged to pay at least part of his debts.

187, 13. **praetoribus . . . ferentibus**: abl. abs., 'upon the praetors . . . bringing the bills before the people,' *i.e.* in the popular assembly. Caesar as dictator could have taken the step without consulting the assembly, but by allowing a popular vote he made the pardons doubly sure and avoided the appearance of arrogance towards the people (see 188, 2 ff.).

187, 14. **non nullos**: obj. of *restituit*, l. 18. — **ambitus**: gen. of the charge with *damnatos*.[1]

187, 15. **illis temporibus**: in 52 B.C., owing to political anarchy at Rome resulting from the intense partisan warfare between the senate and the popular party, Pompey was given dictatorial power under the name of 'consul without a colleague,' and his soldiers occupied the city. Among his laws was one increasing the penalty for bribery at elections, with retroactive force till the year 70 B.C., by which almost any politician of Rome, except perhaps Cato and Cicero, might have been sent into banishment. It was especially enforced against Caesar's friends, whom he now pardoned, justifying his action by the gross injustice of their trials (*iudicia*), which had been limited to a single day each, and the jurors who gave the verdict (*sententiam ferentibus*) had sometimes not been present when the evidence was being taken.

187, 18. **in integrum**: 'to their former standing,' *i.e.* which they had held before the trials. — **qui**: 'men who'; the antecedent is *non nullos*.

187, 19. **vellet**: implied indir. disc. — **proinde . . . si**: 'rating them just as if.' The subj. is regularly used in conditional comparisons;[2] the sequence follows *restituit*.

188, 1. **sui fecissent potestatem**: 'they had put themselves in his hands.' *Sui* is obj. gen. with *potestatem*; the subj. is due to implied indir. disc.,[3] being quoted as the reason in Caesar's mind when he granted the pardons.

188, 2. **enim**: refers back to the first clause of the previous sentence; see on *praetoribus . . . ferentibus*, 187, 13. — **prius**: 'rather.'

188, 4. **ingratus**: it was a greater favor, because it meant greater security, for the exiles to be recalled by a vote of the people rather than by Caesar's authority as dictator.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	456 (409, ii)	582	352 (220)	378	208
2	584 (513, ii)	944	524 (312)	602	307
3	649, i (cf. 528, 1)	866	592, N. (341, *d*, R.)	541	323

188, 6. CHAPTER 2. **feriis Latinis**: an ancient Latin festival of Jupiter Latiaris (god of the Latins), in which Rome had taken part for nearly 500 years. It was celebrated near the beginning of each year on the Alban Mount under the direction of the new consuls, who never entered upon a military campaign without thus assuring themselves of the favor of their guardian deity. By not neglecting this religious custom in spite of his haste to be off for Greece, Caesar "was making himself the supreme impersonation of the laws against Pompey with his hordes of Oriental auxiliaries." — **comitiis**: elections for other magistrates besides consuls.

188, 7. **dictatura**: abl. of separation.

188, 10. **tantum navium**: 'so few ships.'

188, 11. **LXX cohortes**: *i.e.* seven legions (see 190, 22 and Introd. § 28). The inability to take the whole army at once proved a serious handicap. It was nearly three months before Antony and the remaining legions joined Caesar.

188, 12. **Hoc . . . defuit**: 'this was the only thing that prevented Caesar from speedily finishing the war.' With *ad celeritatem*, cf. *ad spem*, 183, 4.

188, 14. **hoc . . . quod**: cf. *eo . . . quod*, 60, 8 f. — **infrequentiores**: 'in smaller numbers,' *i.e.* the legions lacked their full quotas.

188, 15. **defecerant**: 'had been lost.' Caesar's campaigns in Gaul, 58–51 B.C., are meant.

188, 16. **autumnus**: Caesar's army was in Apulia in December, according to the uncorrected calendar (see on 100, 2), which at this time was about two months ahead of the seasons. In southern Italy the autumns are very hot.

188, 17. **ex**: 'after.'

188, 19. CHAPTER 3. **annuum spatium**: really only some nine months and a half. Pompey had left Italy in March; see summary of Book I, p. 383.

188, 21. **Asia**: *i.e.* the Roman province, comprising Mysia, Lydia, Caria, and Phrygia. The introduction in chapters 3–5 of so many foreign names both of persons and places, together with a sprinkling of strange political titles, is highly effective in indicating the vastness and the barbaric character of Pompey's resources as contrasted with Caesar's little army of Italians and Gauls. The pupil should look up on a map all the places mentioned, in order to get a better idea of the extent of Roman influence in the East.

188, 24. **imperatam . . . exegerat**: 'he had required and collected from Asia,' etc. *Asiae*, etc., are indir. objs. of *imperatam;* see on *imperat*, 55, 11.

188, 25. **dynastis et tetrarchis**: petty rulers to whom Rome still allowed some degree of independence.

188, 26. **liberis Achaiae populis**: Achaia was the name given to the part of Greece south of Epirus and Thessaly from 146 B.C., when the whole country became subject to Rome and was placed under the supervision of the governor of Macedonia. The separate communities were left "free," in so far as they retained the ownership of their land and in purely local matters governed themselves. Democracy, however, was abolished and the government everywhere was intrusted to boards of wealthy men. All mutual and foreign relations were subject to Rome's dictation, and tribute was paid by most, if not all, of the states.

188, 27. **societates**: 'tax collecting companies.' The business of collecting the Roman revenues, both in Italy and in the provinces, was sold at auction by the censors in Rome, for terms of five years, to joint stock companies of capitalists, who paid the state a fixed sum annually and made their profits from the taxes collected. These companies occupied a place in the ancient financial world similar to that held by the steel and oil trusts of the present day. There was a president who conducted the bidding for the lease, and gave bonds to the state for the due performance of all the terms of the contract. The superintendent of the home office in Rome had general oversight of all the accounts, correspondence, etc., and had under his control a number of assistant managers in charge of the different departments. Since much of the revenue was paid in kind, storehouses, ships, and great bodies of slaves and subordinates were required for handling and marketing the produce. Taxes were levied on lands, mines, personal property, exports and imports, etc. Pompey apparently compelled the companies to pay him the sums which should have been turned over to the authorities of the state. — **quas ipse obtinebat**: Macedonia including Epirus and Thessaly, Illyricum, the only territory won from Caesar (see summary of Book II, last paragraph, p. 384), and Africa, which the ill-fated Curio had failed to rescue from the Pompeians.

189, 3. CHAPTER 4. **factam ex duabus**: two depleted legions were united.

189, 4. **veteranis**: legionary soldiers who, upon completing twenty years of service, had been honorably discharged.

189, 6. **Lentulus**: Lentulus Crus, consul of the year 49 B.C.

189, 8. **supplementi nomine**: 'as substitutes,' to take the places of men who had been lost.

189, 9. **Antonianos**: Gaius Antonius, younger brother of Mark Antony, was Caesar's commander in Illyricum in 49 B.C. In an attempt to relieve Dolabella and his fleet he was besieged on the island of Curicta and, partly through treachery of his centurion Pullo (221, 28), compelled to surrender with fifteen cohorts (see on *quas ipse obtinebat*, 188, 27). His men were enrolled in Pompey's army.

189, 10. **Scipione**: Pompey's father-in-law, governor of the province of Syria.

189, 11. **Creta**: the preposition, regularly omitted with the names of little islands, is sometimes omitted in the case of large islands.

189, 12. **numero**: abl. of specification, 'to the number.'

189, 14. **Gallos**: in the third century B.C. three tribes of Gauls invaded Asia Minor, and after overrunning the peninsula for about fifty years, were compelled to settle down in the district which was thenceforth called Galatia. Although they took on so much of the Greek civilization with which they were surrounded that they were called also Gallograeci and their country Gallograecia, still they preserved their own language with such persistency that in the fourth century A.D. their speech was said by Jerome to resemble that of the Treveri in Gaul. They were organized in twelve divisions, four to a tribe, each ruled by a tetrarch. It was to the descendants of these Gauls that St. Paul wrote his Epistle to the Galatians. — **Deiotarus**: a tetrarch in Galatia, who had received from Pompey considerable additions to his territory for his services in the Mithridatic war. — **Ariobarzanes**: king of Cappadocia, whose grandfather had been restored to his throne by Pompey.

189, 15. **ad**: adv., 'about.'

189, 17. **excellenti virtute**: abl. of quality, best taken with *cc.*

189, 19. **Ptolomaeum**: in 81 B.C. Egypt was left by will to Rome. Ptolemy Auletes was allowed, however, to assume the throne, and he bought freedom from interference afterwards by immense bribes. To meet these payments he oppressed his people so severely that he was finally driven from his kingdom. In 55 B.C., upon his promise of a further payment of 10,000 talents ($12,000,000), he was restored, at Pompey's order, by a Roman army, made up partly of Gauls and Germans, under command of Gabinius. A detachment of these troops remained at Alexandria as a bodyguard for the king.

189, 20. **Pompeius filius**: Gnaeus, elder son of Pompey.

189, 23. **alter . . . venerat**: = Domnilaus. — **filium**: young Castor in 45 B.C. accused his grandfather, the tetrarch Deiotarus (l. 14), of having plotted to kill Caesar when he was in Asia in 47 B.C. One of Cicero's extant speeches was spoken in defense of Deiotarus.

189, 24. **Antiocho**: his kingdom had been secured to him by Pompey in 64 B.C.

189, 26. **Huc**: 'to these forces'; cf. 174, 15.

189, 27. **imperio, gratia**: abls. of manner; 'got together at his orders or as a favor to him.'

189, 28. **reliquarum . . . civitatum**: partit. gen., 'men of all other nations,' etc.

189, 29. **supra**: in l. 13 f., *vii millia*.

190, 3. CHAPTER 5. **Dyrrachi, Apolloniae**: the most important towns of western Macedonia, and the terminals of the Roman military road, the Via Egnatia, which connected them with Thessalonica and the East. Apollonia was at this time an educational centre. Caesar's grandnephew and heir, the young Octavian, who became the emperor Augustus, studied there.

190, 6. **omni ora**: without *in*, *omni* being equiv. to *tota*; see on *tota Italia*, 187, 4.

190, 8. **Cassius**: shortly after the battle of Pharsalus he surrendered to Caesar. Although he was well treated, being given both military and political offices, he was a leader with Brutus in the conspiracy against Caesar's life. See Shakspere's *Julius Caesar*. — **Marcellus**: consul with Lentulus (189, 6) in 49 B.C.

190, 10. **officio maritimo**: 'naval service,' indir. obj. of *praepositus*.

190, 11. **Bibulus**: Caesar's colleague in the aedileship, 65 B.C., in the praetorship, 62 B.C., and in the consulship, 59 B.C. A stubborn, incapable aristocrat, he was always arrayed against Caesar, but never with success (see Introd. § 7). His appointment as admiral of the fleet was one item in the general mismanagement of Pompey's campaign in the first year of the war (see summary of Book II, last paragraph, p. 384). — **ad hunc . . . respiciebat**: 'devolved upon him.'

190, 13. CHAPTER 6. **Caesar . . . solvit**: *solvit* (l. 21) is the main verb of this long sentence. There are three principal subordinate clauses, *ut . . . venit* (l. 13), *contionatus . . . sperarent* (ll. 13–19), and *conclamantibus . . . facturos* (ll. 19–21). Translate in two sentences, ending the first with *sperarent* and making the participle *contionatus*

its main verb. — **contionatus**, etc.: 'he addressed his soldiers, saying,' followed by indir. disc.

190, 16. **relinquerent, conscenderent, sperarent**: 'they should leave,' etc., representing imperatives of the actual speech.[1]

190, 17. **quo**: see on 73, 17.

190, 19. **conclamantibus omnibus**: 'upon their all shouting out,' followed by indir. disc. — **imperaret**: cf. *relinquerent*, etc., l. 16.

190, 20. **imperavisset**: for *imperaveris*, fut. perf., of dir. disc.

190, 21. **II Non. Ian.**: read *secundo Nonas Ianuarias* or *pridie Nonas*, etc., but translate 'January 4.'[2] See on *autumnus*, 188, 16.

190, 22. **supra**: in 188, 11.

190, 23. **inter**: 'among'; a commoner position would be before *Cerauniorum*. For Caesar's campaign against Pompey during 48 B.C., see the map MACEDONIA AND THESSALY, p. 191.

190, 25. **arbitrabantur**: deponent verbs are rarely used passively. The perf. participle is most frequently so used; see *depopulatis*, 58, 17.

192, 1. **ad unam**: 'without exception'; cf. *ad unum*, 185, 4.

192, 3. CHAPTER 7. **Orici**: only a few miles north of Palaeste.

192, 5. **Corcyrae**: loc., as regularly with names of little islands; cf. *Creta*, 189, 11, and see note.

192, 6. **sibi**: see on *quibus*, 97, 17.

192, 7. **praesidio**: 'as a convoy,' dat. of purpose.

192, 8. **IIII**: 'only four.' — **neque . . . occurrit**: 'and Bibulus did not come up early enough' to hinder Caesar's landing; cf. l. 19 ff. — **impeditis . . . remigibus**: abls. abs. expressing cause.

192, 10. **prius . . . quam**: see on *non prius . . . quam*, 93, 17.

192, 11. **perferretur**: see on *perficiantur*, 155, 8.

192, 16. CHAPTER 8. **qui . . . adhiberet**: rel. clause of purpose; translate 'with orders to use,' etc.

192, 19. **offenderunt**: 'met with disaster.'

192, 21. **onustarum**: 'still laden' with soldiers, opposed by *inanibus* (dat.), 'empty ships only.'

192, 22. **indiligentiae . . . iracundiam**: 'the wrath due to his own carelessness and mistake.'

192, 25. **deterreri**: an uncommon use of pres. instead of fut. infin. with a verb of hoping, 'hoping for the rest to be frightened off.' —

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	642 (523, iii)	1023	588 (339)	652	316
2	754, iii, 1; 755 (642-44)	1172; 1174	631, *d* & *e* (376, *d* & *e*)	P. 491	371, 5; 372

a Sasonis: sc. *portu*. Bibulus tried to make up by his watchfulness for his previous carelessness. The whole coast of Macedonia and Illyricum was now patrolled by his ships.

192, 28. **gravissima hieme**: abl. abs. expressing concession, 'though the winter was very severe.'

192, 29. **si . . . posset**: indir. quest., 'to see if he could encounter Caesar's forces.' The sentence is incomplete in the manuscripts.

193, 4. CHAPTER 10. **Corfinium**: see on 174, 4. — **in Hispania**: see summary of Book I, near the end, p. 383.

193, 5. **iudicaverat**: the plpf. shows that Vibullius had received his commission to carry proposals of peace to Pompey at some time before Caesar's arrival at Palaeste, probably at the time of his second dismissal from Caesar. — **quem . . . mitteret**: a clause of characteristic limiting *idoneum*,[1] 'a fit person to send.'

193, 8. **haec**: observe that a subject demonstrative agrees in gender with a pred. subst.[2] — **summa**: 'substance.'

193, 9. **Debere**: standing first, the verb is more emphasized than its subject *utrumque*; translate 'it was the duty of both.'

193, 11. **quae . . . possent**: rel. clause of result limiting *satis magna*, 'great enough for them to be able to regard them as instruction and warnings to fear the chances that were still in store.' *Vt . . . timerent* is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *disciplina* and *praeceptis*.

193, 13. **illum**: 'Pompey.' *Ab illo* would be expected to follow the passive *satis . . . accepta*; but *illum* implies the addition of *satis magna incommoda accepisse*. The omission is as natural in English as in Latin. — **amissa . . . XXX**: see summary of Book I, p. 383. Translate, 'through the loss of,' etc.

193, 15. **morte . . . exercitus**: see 184, 27 ff.

193, 16. **Antoni**, etc.: see on *Antonianos*, 189, 9. Caesar's losses during 49 B.C. were light in comparison with Pompey's; see summary of Book II, last paragraph, p. 384.

193, 18. **parcerent**: 'they should spare,' representing an exhortation, *parcamus*, of dir. disc.

193, 19. **satis essent documento**: 'were a sufficient proof,' dat. of tendency or service.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	591, 7 (503, ii, 2)	837	535, *f* (320, *f*)	552, R. 2	283, 1
2	396, 2 (445, 4)	483	296, *a* (195, *d*)	211, R. 5	246, 5

193, 25. **convenire**: 'to be agreed upon.'

193, 27. **rei publicae**: gen.[1]

194, 1. **depositis**, etc.: 'laying down their arms and letting the auxiliary troops go.'—**quibus**: abl.[2]

194, 5. CHAPTER 11. **Corcyrae**: Pompey's naval headquarters. Vibullius, who had come here upon his second dismissal from Caesar (193, 3 f.), was waiting for Pompey to return from a trip through the interior of Macedonia before presenting Caesar's proposals of peace. But upon learning of Caesar's arrival at Palaeste he started post-haste to meet Pompey.

194, 7. **ad id**: 'with reference to it,' *i.e.* Caesar's arrival.

194, 8. **de mandatis agi**: 'for action to be taken in the matter of his errand,' *i.e.* about peace.

194, 10. **omnibus hospitiis**: cf. *omni ora*, 190, 6, and see note.

194, 20. **Parthinorum**: a Greek people living near Dyrrachium; not Parthians.

194, 21. **cum**: introduces three verbs.—**Graecos**: the Parthini.

194, 23. **imperium populi Romani**: represented by Caesar, the duly elected consul; see end of note on *feriis Latinis*, 188, 6.

195, 2. CHAPTER 12. **negare**: infin. of intimation (hist. infin.[3]).

195, 3. **sibi iudicium**, etc.: 'take upon themselves a decision contrary to what[4] all Italy . . . had decided.'

195, 8. **Epiros**: with Greek nom. ending.[5]—**imperaret**: for sequence, see on **ut . . . occuparet**, 53, 9.

195, 11. CHAPTER 13. **Dyrrachio**: indir. obj. of *timens* used intransitively, 'fearing for.' Caesar of course hoped to get possession of Dyrrachium, where Pompey had collected all his supplies (see 207, 13 f.).

195, 14. **eius exercitus**: 'in Pompey's army,' subjective gen. Pompey is subject of *coniunxerat* and *intermiserat*. The soldiers saw by Pompey's haste that he himself was much alarmed.

195, 20. **princeps**: adj. =*primus*, 'was the first to come forward.' Labienus was the ablest of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul, and enjoyed his utmost confidence. In 50 B.C. he was put in charge of Cisalpine Gaul,

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	449, 1 (408, i, 1)	580	355 (222)	381	211, 1
2	476, 3 (425, 1, 1, N.)	629	431 & N. (254, *b*)	401, N. 6	219, 1
3	610 (536, 1)	708	463 (275)	647	335
4	516, 3 (459, 2)	760	324, *c* (156, *a*)	643 & N. 3	341, 1, *c*
5	89 (54)	155	52 (43)	65	27

but while holding this position of trust he was won over to the cause of Pompey and the senate, and at the outbreak of the Civil War he fled to the Pompeian army. Caesar had all his baggage sent after him unharmed. The only one of Caesar's officers to desert him, he showed himself throughout the war a monster, not only of ingratitude, but of cruelty and hate. He was killed at Munda in the closing battle of the Civil War, 45 B.C., being himself largely responsible for the manoeuvre which lost the day for the Pompeians.

195, 25. **ad . . . Apsum**: on the south side.

195, 26. **castellis vicisque**: dats. of interest, accompanying the dat. of service *praesidio.*

195, 27. **reliquarum . . . legionum**: the five legions at Brundisium, see 188, 9, and 190, 22.

195, 28. **sub pellibus**: this meant great hardship. Roman soldiers were generally quartered for the winter in towns or in wooden barracks.

196, 1. CHAPTER 14. **Calenus**: see 192, 15.

196, 3. **quantum**: 'so far as'; he embarked as many men as his supply of ships allowed.

196, 6. **litora**: 'parts of the coast.'

196, 9. **privatoque consilio**, etc.: 'and was being run under private management.'

196, 10. **delata**: sc. *est*. With two passives side by side the required form of *sum* is usually expressed but once.

196, 11. **servis**, etc.: 'all, slaves and free.'—**ad impuberes**: 'including the boys'; cf. the same use of *ad* in *ad unum*, 'to a man.' Bibulus displayed the same ferocity in 192, 23 f.

196, 12. **in . . . constitit**: 'depended on,' etc.

196, 13. **casu**: 'good luck,' *i.e.* the arrival of Caesar's letter in the nick of time.

196, 14. CHAPTER 15. **supra**, etc.: implied in l. 10.

196, 15. **sicuti . . . ita**: 'while . . . still'; in l. 22, 'not only . . . but even.'

196, 23. **uno tempore**: 'one time.'

196, 24. **difficilioribus**, etc.: 'having had unusually bad weather,' so that water could not be brought from Corcyra.

196, 25. **excipere**: 'to catch,' as it dripped from the skins.

196, 29. **in quibus . . . angustiis**: = *in iis angustiis in quibus eos esse demonstravi.*

196, 30. **Libo**: with his colleague Octavius (190, 10) he had con-

quered Illyricum in 49 B.C. by defeating Dolabella and Gaius Antonius; see on *Antonianos*, 189, 9.

197, 4. **ut . . . viderentur**: 'so that they really seemed about to treat for a settlement.'

197, 7. **sciebant**: Acilius and Murcus are the subjects.

197, 8. **profectum** [esse]: from *proficio*; 'something was thought to have been gained.' They supposed that Pompey had commissioned Bibulus and Libo to reply to the proposal for peace which Caesar had made through Vibullius (see 193, 9 ff.).

197, 12. CHAPTER 16. **expediendam**: 'arranging.' — **qua . . . utebatur**: 'with which he was scantily provided.'

197, 19. **ex aedilitate**: see on *Bibulus*, 190, 11.

197, 22. **Suam**: 'their,' including Bibulus, as is clear from the pl. *missuros*, l. 26, and *ipsis*, l. 28.

197, 23. **componeretur**: impers., 'a settlement might be made.'

197, 24. **de consili sententia**: 'by a vote of the council,' *i.e.* of the senators about Pompey, who considered themselves "the senate" and the only legitimate rulers of Rome.

197, 27. **per se**: 'by himself.'

197, 28. **manerent**: 'let . . . remain in force,' for *maneant* (hortatory) of Libo's own words. — **dum . . . posset**: 'until a message could come back from him.' Libo said *possit*, subj. of expected action with *dum*.[1]

197, 29. **de causa**: 'about the matter in dispute,' between Caesar and Pompey.

198, 1. CHAPTER 17. **Quibus de rebus**: refers to the *pauca* of the previous sentence. Apparently Libo had tried to impress Caesar with the folly of his engaging in a struggle against Pompey's overwhelming force. Caesar thought such boasting unworthy of an answer at the time or of mention in his history.

198, 2. **ut . . . prodantur**: a complementary or subst. result clause,[2] equiv. to a pred. acc. with the implied *esse* of which *satis* is subject. Sc. *eae res* as subject of *prodantur*.

198, 3. **causae**: partit. gen. with *satis*.

198, 5. **idque ipsi**, etc.: 'and that they themselves (Libo and Bibulus) guarantee that this should be done, or take the envoys and them-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	603, 2 (519, 2)	921	553 (328)	572	293, iii. 2
2	571, 2 (501, i, 2)	902	571 (cf. 332, *a*, 2)	553, 4	297, 3

selves (*per se*) conduct them to him.' *Recipio*, meaning 'take the responsibility for, guarantee,' is equiv. to a vb. of promising.

198, 6. **Quod . . . pertineret**: 'as to the truce'; see on *quod . . . adortus esset*, 59, 29.

198, 7. **illi**: the Pompeians, who were preventing Caesar's troops at Brundisium from coming to him.

198, 8. **ipse**: precedes *ut* because emphatic, contrasted with *illi*.

198, 9. **Si hoc**, etc.: 'if they wished this restriction given up for them, they should give up for him (*ipsi*) their guards on the sea.' For *remitterent*, see on *relinquerent*, etc., 190, 16.

198, 10. **illud**: 'that restriction of theirs'; *id*, 'this of his.'

198, 11. **Nihilo minus**, etc.: 'none the less, however, it was possible to treat for a settlement, although these restrictions were not given up.' For concessive *ut*, see on 87, 4.

198, 12. **hanc rem**: 'this point,' *i.e.* the failure to remove the restrictions. — **illi**: sc. *rei* (from *rem*) = treating for a settlement; dat. of interest.

198, 13. **recipere**, etc.: infins. of intimation (hist.), 'would not receive,' etc.

198, 14. **periculum praestare eorum**: 'be responsible for their danger.'

198, 15. **instare**, etc.: 'while he kept insisting on a truce and struggled very earnestly for it'; *de indutiis* belongs with both infins.

198, 17. **vitandae**: belongs with both genitives, agreeing with the nearer.

198, 18. **reliquam**, etc.: 'further planning for the war.'

198, 22. CHAPTER 18. **curari**: 'be taken care of.' — **neque . . . vellet**: 'and yet was unwilling.'

198, 25. **quisque**: see 190, 7 ff. for the division commanders of Pompey's fleet.

198, 28. **e re**: 'expedient.'

198, 29. **Lucceio**: he had been a candidate for the consulship for 59 B.C., the year of Caesar and Bibulus. He was a historian, apparently of no mean ability. In 56 B.C. Cicero wrote him a letter, still preserved (*ad Fam.*, 5, 12), urging him to write a monograph of Cicero's life and even to set it forth in more glowing colors than the strict truth would warrant. In the Civil War he accompanied Pompey and was one of his most trusted advisers. — **Theophane**: a Greek from Mitylene, one of Pompey's most intimate friends and advisers. When Pompey, during his flight after the battle of Pharsalus, was considering in what part of

the world he could find the safest asylum, it was Theophanes who advised him to go to Egypt. He wrote an account of Pompey's career, which was accused of gross partisanship.

199, 3. **vita**: instrumental abl. with *opus est.*[1]

199, 4. **Cuius rei**, etc.: 'the reputation for which (*i.e.* owing everything to Caesar) it will not be possible to dispel.'

199, 5. **reductus** [esse]: 'to have been brought back,' contrasted with *profectus sum*, 'I went forth,' *i.e.* of his own accord.

199, 9. CHAPTER 19. **bina**: 'two'; see on *trinis*, 149, 6.

199, 13. **Mittit**: Caesar is subject.—**Vatinium**: as tribune of the people in 59 B.C. he was instrumental in procuring for Caesar the governorship of the Gauls and Illyricum for five years.

199, 15. **pronuntiavit**: 'called out, asking.'

199, 16. **liceretne**: 'whether it was permitted,' indir. quest.[2]

199, 17. **fugitivis**: the remnants of Sertorius's Spanish army, who had been allowed by Pompey to settle just north of the Pyrenees in Aquitania, 72 B.C.—**praedonibusque**: for Pompey's war with the pirates, see Introd. § 22.

199, 18. **id agerent**: 'they were working to the end,' followed by a purpose clause in apposition with *id.*

199, 23. **visurum quem ad modum**: 'would see how,' *i.e.* 'make provision that.'

199, 25. **isset**: contracted form of *iisset.*

199, 26. **eius rei**: 'of the outcome.'

200, 1. **ille**: Vatinius.

200, 3. **non nulli**: limits both *centuriones* and *milites.*—**Labienus**: the vb. of saying is frequently omitted with a direct quotation.

200, 4. **ergo**: 'then,' *i.e.* seeing that the soldiers are so bitterly hostile. Doubtless the throwing of the missiles was prearranged by Labienus. See on 195, 20.

200, 5. **nisi . . . relato**: 'unless Caesar's head be brought to us.'

200, 6. CHAPTER 23. **ab Orico**: 'from the neighborhood of Oricum.'[3] Libo's fleet had joined Bibulus off Oricum some days before (see 196, 14 f., and 30), and at Oricum Caesar and Libo had their interview (197, 16 f.).

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	477, iii (414, iv)	646	411 (243, *e*)	406	218, 2
2	649, ii, 2 (529, 1)	811	217, *d*; 574 (149, *d*; 334)	467	300, 1 & *b*
3	462, 3 (412, 3, N.)	606	428, *a* (258, *a*, N. 1)	391, R. 1	229, 2

200, 9. **praestare**: as in 175, 11.

200, 10. **omnia litora**: *i.e.* from Sason to Curicum (192, 25 f.). During the stormy weather only the principal ports were guarded.

200, 15. **adeo . . . profecit**: 'he accomplished so much owing to his advantageous position.'

200, 16. **naves . . . iuberet**: 'telling him to order,' etc.; cf. *relinquerent*, etc., 190, 16, and see note.

200, 17. **vellet**: for *voles* of the letter itself.

200, 19. CHAPTER 24. **Antonius**: Mark Antony, one of Caesar's most skillful officers, was in command of the troops which Caesar had been obliged to leave at Brundisium (188, 9 ff.).

200, 20. **virtute**: see on *quibus*, 194, 1.

200, 21. **cratibus pluteisque**: 'with wickerwork screens,' hendiadys.

200, 22. **eoque**: adv. = *et in eas*.

200, 24. **per causam**: 'on the pretext'; so always in Caesar.

201, 2. **Antonianae**: = *Antoni*.

201, 4. **defensoribus**: the fighting men on board, 'marines.'—**suis**: refers to *unam*. The refl. sometimes refers to an emphatic word which is not the subject.

201, 5. **Ad hoc**, etc.: 'in addition to this loss they were prevented,' etc.; see on *accedebat ut*, 89, 22.

201, 10. CHAPTER 25. **Multi . . . erant**: 'many months had already passed,' *i.e.* since Caesar arrived in Greece. It was probably toward the end of March, about Feb. 1 according to the seasons; see on *autumnus*, 188, 16. As Caesar landed Jan. 5 (190, 21 f.), not quite three months had passed, but the time doubtless seemed longer to him in his impatience over the delay of his reënforcements.

201, 13. **praetermissae** [esse]: 'to have been allowed to go by.' There is a story told by later writers that Caesar, in his suspicion of Antony's loyalty, put to sea in an open twelve-oared boat, intending to cross to Brundisium and bring his troops over himself, but was driven back by a strong west wind.

201, 14. **certi . . . venti**: 'the very winds.'—**necessario committendum**: 'they must necessarily intrust themselves.'

201, 15. **eius . . . temporis**: partit. gen. with *amplius*, 'the more this season had gone by.'

201, 16. **tanto**: with both *alacriores* and *maiorem*, abl. of amount of difference.—**ad custodias**: 'for guard duty,' pl. because several fleets were on duty.

201, 18. quoniam . . . at: 'since . . . yet'; these clauses quote indirectly the contents of the letters.

201, 19. reliquos . . . exitus: 'his further departures,' *i.e.* of his troops from Italy.

201, 20. impedirent: see on *relinquerent*, etc., 190, 16. — **duriusque, etc.**: 'and they were daily looking forward to a harder time for transportation owing to lighter winds.' Transports were dependent upon wind (see Introd. § 48), so that as the spring advanced every day became less favorable for Antony. Pompey's ships of war, on the other hand, being propelled by rowers, were more and more favored by the weather.

201, 23. ne . . . dimitterent: 'that they should not,' etc., indir. disc. for *nolite dimittere*.[1]

201, 24. Labeatium: a people just above Lissus, so far north that Pompey's coast guards were not numerous. A more desirable destination was the coast of Apollonia, near Caesar's camp on the south bank of the Apsus (195, 25 f.), and it was not well guarded by Pompey's fleet because in the stormy weather the commanders were unwilling to venture far from the harbors of Dyrrachium and Corcyra.

201, 25. eicere: 'run the ships on shore,' of a hurried and irregular landing.

201, 28. CHAPTER 26. **Illi**: refers to *suos*, l. 22, *i.e.* Caesar's troops at Brundisium.

202, 3. praetervehuntur: the wind was probably too strong for them to try to run their ships ashore at Apollonia.

202, 4. Coponius: see 190, 9.

202, 6. cum . . . appropinquasset: Caesar's transports depended altogether on wind; Coponius's ships of war were rowed, and so had the advantage when the wind died down. See Introd. § 48.

202, 12. si . . . remisisset: implied indir. disc. representing a fut. perf. of the actual thought in the soldiers' minds.

202, 13. Nymphaeum: a harbor of the Labeates (201, 24).

202, 16. tempestatis . . . periculum: the south wind, blowing straight into the harbor, would drive the transports violently on shore.

202, 20. CHAPTER 27. **modo**: 'a moment before.'

202, 23. tempore commutato: 'by a change of circumstances.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	642, 4 (523, iii, N.)	1023	588, *a*, N. 2 (339, N. 2)	652	316. *a*

202, 24. **ad unam**: see on 192, 1. — **constratae numero XVI**: 'sixteen of them being decked'; *numero* is abl. of specification.

202, 26. **propugnatorumque**: see on *defensoribus*, 201, 4.

202, 29. CHAPTER 28. **Nostrae naves duae**: 'two of our ships.' — **in noctem coniectae**: 'overtaken by night.'

203, 7. **CC**: *ducentos*, the case which would be required if the comparative were omitted.[1]

203, 8. **esset**: 'there is'; statements of general truths follow the sequence of tenses. In English the present tense is preferred.

203, 9. **salo nauseaque**: 'seasickness,' hendiadys.

203, 13. **interficiuntur**: the ferocity of the Pompeians throughout the war was a sad contrast to Caesar's clemency; cf. 202, 27 f.

203, 14. **vitiis**: 'discomforts.' — **neque . . . et**: correlative; cf. *neque . . . neque*, where both clauses are neg., and *et . . . et*, where both are affirmative. Translate, 'did not think . . . but.'

203, 15. **tractandis . . . deditionis**: abls. of manner limiting *extracto*, 'after dragging out the first part of the night in discussing terms and in a pretense of surrender.'

203, 20. **CCCC**: limits *equitibus*. — **quique**: = *iisque* (in the same constr. as *equitibus*) *qui*, 'and men who followed them armed from the garrison.'

203, 23. CHAPTER 29. **conventus**: see on 180, 22.

203, 25. **attribuerat**: during his governorship of the Gauls and Illyricum. Lissus was in Illyricum.

203, 29. **quarum erat**, etc.: 'of which there was a total of,' etc.; *quarum* is poss. gen., *legionum*, etc., are gens. of definition or appositional gens.; see on *millium*, 105, 27.

204, 2. **quod**: a rel. pron. agrees in gender and number with a pred. subst. in its own clause rather than with its antecedent. Cf. *haec*, 193, 8.

204, 4. **traiecisset**: for a fut. perf. in Antony's thought.

204, 5. **quae opinio**: 'a notion that he would do this.'

204, 7. **quibus**, etc.: indir. quests. depending on *nuntios*, 'messengers to tell in what,' etc.

204, 8. **militum**: partit. with *quid*, 'what force of soldiers.'

204, 12. CHAPTER 30. **secundo austro**: 'with the south wind.'

204, 16. **venienti**: *i.e.* Antony.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	471, 4 (417, N. 2)	618	407, *c* (247, *c*)	296, R. 4	217, 3

204, 17. si . . . posset: indir. quest., 'to see if he could.'[1]

204, 19. educunt: a pl. vb. with *uterque* is rare.

204, 20. Caesari, etc.: 'Caesar had to take a longer, more roundabout route up-stream.' The Apsus could not be bridged or forded so near its mouth. *Circuitu* is abl. of quality; *adverso flumine* is abl. abs.

204, 22. expedito itinere: 'by an unobstructed route.'

205, 2. castris: see on 92, 18.

205, 4. Graecos: the inhabitants of the country.

205, 8. Asparagium: a town on the Genusus, near its mouth. See the map, p. 191, for the assumed routes of Caesar and Antony.

205, 11. CHAPTER 39. **ut . . . est**: referring only to *deductis . . . praesidiis*, not to *Caesar . . . reliquit*. Caesar stated in Ch. 34 (omitted in this book) that upon his union with Antony he withdrew a legion from Oricum, and sent small detachments to secure the surrounding districts of central Macedonia, Thessaly, and Aetolia.

205, 13. quas . . . traduxerat: see 192, 7. These ships had been held at Palaeste when Caesar sent his transports back to Brundisium (192, 12 f.), and had afterward been brought round into the secure harbor of Oricum.

205, 14. Acilius: see 197, 1.

206, 1. faucibus: essential complement or indir. obj. of *obiecit*. The entrance to the inner harbor was very narrow; see the plan, p. 205.

206, 2. summersam obiecit: 'he sank a transport and blockaded the entrance.' This is a measure often adopted in modern warfare, as at Santiago de Cuba in the Spanish-American war of 1898, and at Port Arthur, in 1904, in the war between Russia and Japan.

206, 7. CHAPTER 40. **qui . . . praeerat**: see 190, 7.

206, 9. contendens: 'by great efforts.'—**atque**: connects *abduxit* with *vicit* (l. 16).

206, 11. ad libram: 'of equal height,' but higher than the tower on Acilius's ship (cf. *superiore*, l. 12).

206, 12. ut . . pugnans, etc.: 'since he was fighting,' etc., giving the reasons for *vicit*.

206, 13. reliquis partibus: 'at the other points'; loc. abl., see on *locis*, 54, 26. If Oricum had not been attacked, it could have sent aid to the ship.

206, 18. mole . . . obiecta: 'where a narrow natural breakwater had

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	649, 3 (529, 1, N. 1)	812	576, *a* (334, *f*)	460, *b*	300, 3

been thrown up,' *i.e.* by the action of the waves. Oricum had once been on an island. — **paene insulam**: 'a peninsula.'

206, 20. impulsas vectibus: 'moving them along with levers.' — **ex utraque parte**: from the entrance and from the inner harbor itself.

206, 21. deligatae: used as an adj. parallel with *inanes*.

206, 26. naves: the *pontones* of 204, 2. The loss of his ships at Oricum and at Lissus was a severe blow to Caesar.

206, 28. conventus: see 203, 23.

207, 1. CHAPTER 41. **Caesar,** etc.: continuing the narrative of Ch. 30.

207, 2. eodem: adv.

207, 3. Parthinorum: see on 194, 20.

207, 7. decernendi: 'of a decisive engagement.'

207, 10. magno circuitu: Caesar started out in the opposite direction (*diverso itinere*, l. 15 f.) from Dyrrachium, leading Pompey to suppose that he was on a foraging expedition to the fertile districts farther east. But later in the day Pompey's scouts discovered Caesar's army hastening toward Dyrrachium. Upon learning this alarming news, Pompey set off by the shortest route to protect his base of supplies, but found Caesar, who had made one of his characteristically swift marches, already encamped before the town.

207, 12. Dyrrachium . . . intercludi: Caesar hoped to cut Pompey off from Dyrrachium, and to force him to fight in a position less favorable than that at Asparagium, or else to shut his great army up in the city, where it would soon be in hard straits.

207, 22. primum: adj. — **cerneretur**: 'was in sight.'

207, 24. CHAPTER 42. **propositum tenere**: 'hold to his purpose,' *i.e.* to enter Dyrrachium before Caesar arrived.

207, 26. mediocrem: 'fairly good.' Pompey's position at Petra hill was only a few miles below Dyrrachium, and in easy communication with it across the bay. See plan, p. 218.

208, 2. convenire: an act. infin. with *impero* is rare, occurring only in combination with a pass. or dep. infin., the latter being not uncommon with *impero*.

208, 5. longius . . . ductum iri: the comparatively rare fut. pass. infin., 'would be dragged out rather long.'

208, 9. fecerat: = *faciendas curaverat*, 'had had built.'

208, 15. cum . . . tum: see on 91, 26.

208, 17. haec providerat: 'had foreseen this move.'

208, 19. **suffossisque**: apparently grain and supplies had been hidden in cellars or pits.

208, 25. CHAPTER 43. **haec spectans**: 'having these aims in view,' explained by the appositive purpose clauses *quo . . . posset*, *uti . . . prohiberet*, etc.

209, 3. **qua**: see on *quibus*, 194, 1.

209, 4. **niti videbatur**: 'was clearly relying' ('was seen to be relying').

209, 5. **percrebruisset**: 'should have been spread abroad,' implied indir. disc., for fut. perf. of the thought in Caesar's mind when he formed his plan.

209, 11. CHAPTER 44. **nisi . . . vellet**: 'unless he were willing,' a less vivid fut. condition in the past, the imperf. representing an original pres. subj.[1]

209, 13. **Relinquebatur**: impers., having as subject the result clauses with *ut*,[2] 'it remained for him to,' etc. — **extremam rationem belli**: 'the only method of warfare left.'

209, 15. **posset**: might be omitted, as with *quam plurimos* and *quam latissimas*.

209, 17. **multaque**: many kinds of crops, which were useful as green fodder. Grain could be brought by water from Dyrrachium.

209, 18. **quibus . . . pasceret**: 'on which he could feed,' etc., characteristic.

209, 20. **ne quo**: cf. *ne quem*, 106, 27, and see on *ne . . . praetermitteret*, *ib.*

209, 23. **operibus**: abl. of specification, 'the enemy won in the matter of works.'

209, 25. **cum**: 'whenever,' as is seen by the imperf. *mittebat* in the main clause.

209, 26. **loca**: indef., 'places.'

209, 27. **suis locis**: an unemphasized poss. pron. follows its subst.; here, as often, *suus* means 'his own,' in the sense of 'favorable' or 'suitable' for him.

209, 28. **magnum . . . numerum**: see 189, 11 ff.

210, 2. **quibus . . . vitarent**: purpose, 'with which to avoid.'

210, 4. CHAPTER 47. **tanto . . . numero**, etc.: abls. of cause, 'on

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	545, ii, 3 (509, N. 3)	936–37	516, *f* (307, *f*)	596, 2	303 & *b*
2	571, 1 (501, i, 1)	902	569, 2 (332, *a*, 2)	553, 3	297, 2

account of the great number,' etc. Caesar's lines extended seventeen miles (218, 12). They inclosed Pompey's fortifications, which were fifteen miles long (209, 16 f.), and had to be built at some distance from them owing to Pompey's vigorous obstructive tactics. See plan, p. 218.

210, 7. **conati sunt, continuerunt**: gnomic perfs., stating what has regularly been true, 'whenever generals have attempted to besiege another, they have shut in an enemy,' etc.

210, 16. **quin . . . haberent**: 'without their (the ships) having.'[1]

210, 20. **in Hispania**: shortly before the battle of Ilerda (see summary of Book I, toward the end, p. 383) Caesar's army suffered severely from lack of supplies.

210, 21. **ad Alesiam**: the remarkable siege of Alesia is described in 154, 1 ff., but no mention is made of distress in the Roman army.

210, 23. **ad Avaricum**: see summary of *B.G.*, Book VII, p. 365.

210, 24. **Non**: put first, and then repeated, for emphasis, 'not even.' — **illi**: 'the brave fellows.' — **hordeum**: not so well liked by the Romans as corn or wheat. — **quin daretur**: see on *quin . . . contendant*, 103, 27, 'they did not refuse to accept even barley' (lit., 'but that barley should be given').

210, 25. **pecus**: meat was acceptable to the Roman soldier only when grain (*frumentum*) was not to be had.

210, 29. CHAPTER 48. **chara**: not to be translated. — **Id . . . efficiebant**: 'they made this into a dish like bread.' Napoleon's soldiers on the retreat from Moscow prepared grass for food.

211, 5. CHAPTER 49. **frumenta**: observe the pl.

211, 10. **victuros**: note the quantity of *i*.

211, 13. **tolerari**: 'were barely kept alive.'

211, 15. **uti**: note the quantity of *u*.

211, 17. **insuetos, adfectos**: both limit *ipsos*, 'the men themselves,' but *insuetos* is in pred. apposition, 'unused, as they were, to work,' and explains *laboribus*, while *adfectos* is causal, 'because they were afflicted,' and is correlated by *tum* to the causal abls. following *cum*.

211, 22. **continerent**: 'kept back'; a result clause. Caesar diverted the streams which flowed through the space Pompey had inclosed with his lines of defense.

211, 23. **sequi**: 'seek.'

211, 25. **qui . . . fontes**: 'these springs,' meaning the *putei*.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	595 (504)	915	559 (319, *d*)	556	284, 3

211, 26. longius: 'too far.'

211, 29. cui rei: indir. obj. of *occurrere*, 'for which they saw that daily a better time was coming,' *i.e.* the grain was ripening every day, and so their chances of having a supply were constantly improving.

212, 4. CHAPTER 50. **ad munitiones**, etc.: 'were bivouacking near the lines.' — **universi**: so as to cause great damage with one volley.

212, 7. ut, etc.: 'to build,' etc., complementary or subst. result clauses in apposition with *remedia*. A considerable passage has been lost here, telling of Caesar's unsuccessful attack on Dyrrachium, and of the gallant defense of one of Caesar's redoubts by a single cohort against four legions of Pompey, until after several hours Sulla came to its relief as related in Ch. 51.

212, 8. CHAPTER 51. **Sulla**: nephew of the dictator Sulla, a good soldier, but a man of disreputable character. He had been kept out of the consulship for 65 B.C. by a charge of bribery which was proved against him. He was tried in 62 B.C. for complicity in Catiline's conspiracy, and although successfully defended by Cicero in a speech still extant, he was probably guilty. — **discedens**: to attack Dyrrachium (see on l. 7).

212, 9. castris: Caesar's main camp, between Pompey and Dyrrachium (**207**, 21 f.); see plan, p. 218. — **cohorti**: dat. of interest accompanying the dat. of purpose. This cohort (see on l. 7) was defending a redoubt at the northeastern part of Caesar's lines.

212, 15. voluisset: not changed in form by being quoted.[1]

212, 16. potuisse: represents *potuit* of the dir. disc.[2] — **non reprehendendum** [esse]: 'not to deserve blame.'

212, 17. Aliae . . . atque: 'different from.'

212, 18. ad: 'according to'; so in the next line.

212, 20. hoc: 'with this achievement,' *i.e.* the rescue of his comrades (*liberatis suis*, abl. abs.).

212, 21. quae res, etc.: 'an undertaking which anyhow (*i.e.* although victory seemed probable) might[3] perhaps have met with some mischance.'

212, 23. res: 'the situation.' — **ad**: see on *ad spem*, **183**, 4.

212, 24. in summo: sc. *loco*, 'at the highest point,' where the redoubt was.

	H.	L M.	A.	G.	B.
1	647 (527, iii)	1037	589, *b*, 1 (337, *b*, 1)	597, R. 4	321, B
2	647, 3 (527, iii, N. 2, 1)	940	589, *b*, 4 (308, *c*)	597, R. 3	304, 3, *a*
3	552; 554, 3 (485)	720	446 (311, *a*)	257, 1; 258	280

212, 25. si . . . reciperent: 'if they were to retire'; see on *nisi . . . vellet*, **209**, 11.

212, 28. rem duxerant: 'they had prolonged the attack.' — **necessario atque ex tempore**: 'in accordance with the necessities of the moment.' Upon the arrival of Sulla with his two legions (l. 10) Pompey had withdrawn from the attack on the redoubt, but fearing to retreat to his own lines because he supposed the Caesareans would pursue him down the slope, he seized a hill lying near but out of range of missiles from the redoubt, and encamped there for a few days. See on the plan, p. 218, Pompey's temporary camp.

213, 9. CHAPTER 52. **cohortibus**: abl. of means.

213, 10. Germani: see **189**, 18.

213, 13. CHAPTER 53. **ad Dyrrachium**: see on **212**, 7.

213, 15. ad duo millia: *ad* is an adv., 'about.'

213, 16. evocatos . . . complures: in apposition with *millia*, 'several being,' etc.

213, 18. L. filius: = *Luci filius*. — **eius**: 'the man,' in apposition with *Luci*. The elder Flaccus was praetor in 63 B.C., and assisted Cicero in overthrowing the Catilinarian conspiracy. The next year he was governor of the province of Asia. In 59 B.C. Cicero successfully defended him, in a speech that is still preserved, against the charge of Asiatic extortion, bringing into court the son, then a mere boy, to stir the sympathies of the jury.

213, 19. Nostri: a poss. pron. stands in agreement with *pauci* or a numeral rather than, as in English, in the partit. gen. Cf. *nostrae naves duae*, **202**, 29.

213, 20. castello illo: the one relieved by Sulla, where the hardest fighting had occurred (see on **212**, 7).

213, 21. quin: 'but that,' after a general negative, as in **210**, 16.

213, 25. Scaevae: according to Suetonius (*Life of Caesar*, 68) he lost an eye, and was wounded in the thigh and shoulder, but would not surrender the gate which he was guarding.

213, 26. ut . . . meritus: 'according to his services to him.'

213, 27. donatum, etc.: translate as finite vbs. parallel with *pronuntiavit*. — **millibus CC**: sc. *sestertium* (gen. pl.). So in English, when spoken, the words 'dollars' and 'cents' are often omitted. The sesterce was about four cents, so that Scaeva's reward amounted to over $8000.

213, 28. ab octavis ordinibus ad primipilum: 'from the centurions

of the eighth cohort (lit., 'from the eighth grades') to first centurion of the legion.' On the promotion of centurions, see Introd. § 35.

214, 1. **militaribusque donis**: soldiers' ornaments and marks of honor, such as bracelets, crowns, spears (for show, not for service, like gift swords to-day), banners, etc.

214, 4. CHAPTER 54. **reliquis diebus**: 'on the remaining days.' Pompey stayed in the temporary camp five days. From the strength of his fortifications it is likely that he expected to be attacked there.

214, 5. **operibus**: the towers.

214, 8. **ad impediendum**: to hinder the Caesareans if they should attack him when he was marching away from camp.

214, 9. **antiquas**, etc.: his main camp on Petra hill (207, 26).

214, 12. CHAPTER 55. **aequum in locum**: between his and Pompey's main camps. — **si . . . vellet**: see on *si . . . posset*, 204, 17.

214, 13. **ut**: 'so that,' result.

214, 14. **tantum**: 'only so far,' from the rampart of Pompey's camp.

214, 15. **uti ne**: used generally with purpose clauses,[1] but sometimes, as here, with clauses that express an intended result.[2] In 213, 2, a pure result clause has *ut . . . non*.

214, 16. **famam opinionemque**: 'the fair report and esteem.' Since his successes against the pirates and Mithridates, 67–63 B.C., Pompey's fame, especially in the East, had far overshadowed that of any other military or political leader of the time. Caesar now and then implies, rather sarcastically, that Pompey is living too much on the reputation of his past achievements. See 209, 3 f.

214, 17. **tertia acies**: see Introd. § 46.

214, 20. CHAPTER 58. **equitatum**: cavalry which Pompey had sent by water from Petra hill to protect the town against Caesar's attack (see on 212, 7).

214, 22. **demonstravimus**: these approaches to Dyrrachium must have been described in the lost passage after Ch. 50. One approach was by a bridge over the stream connecting the lagoon with the bay; see plan, p. 218. The other was at the northern end of the lagoon where it is separated from the sea by a narrow isthmus; see map of *Macedonia and Thessaly*, p. 191.

215, 1. **alerent**: 'they had to feed,' the obligatory use of the verb.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	562, 2, 4th ex. (499, 1)	891	531, 1 (317)	545, R. 1	282, *b*
2	570, 4		537, *a*, N. (319, *a*, N.)		

215, 2. **quae . . . sata**: see 209, 17 f.

215, 3. **Corcyra**: see on *Creta*, 189, 11. *Acarnania* would regularly have *ex*, but is attracted to the constr. of *Corcyra*. — **longo . . . spatio**: 'by a long voyage.'

215, 5. **hordeo adaugere**: 'to increase it by adding barley.'

215, 6. **tolerare**: cf. *tolerari*, 211, 13.

215, 8. **conandum**, etc.: 'that he ought to make some attempt in the way of a sortie.'

215, 12. CHAPTER 59. **multis annis**: expressing the space of time *within which*,[1] but to be translated like the acc. of duration, which might have been used.

215, 14. **optima**: pred. adj., 'had found most useful.'

215, 16. **senatum**: of the Allobroges.

215, 21. **amicitia**: see on *victoriis*, 95, 4.

215, 22. **stipendium**, etc.: these two Gauls appear to have been paymasters in the Gallic cavalry. They not only kept part of the soldiers' wages, but drew dead men's pay, and when booty was turned over to them for distribution among their troops, they kept it all themselves (*domum avertebant*).

215, 24. **illi**: the *equites*.

215, 28. CHAPTER 60. **neque**, etc.: 'thinking that this was no time for taking action.' He wanted to give all his attention to the siege of Pompey.

215, 29. **virtuti**: indir. obj. of *concedens*, 'making many allowances out of regard for their bravery.' — **rem . . . sustulit**: 'he quashed the whole proceeding.'

215, 30. **quod . . . haberent**: 'because, as he said, they were using their cavalrymen for gain'; implied indir. disc., stating the reason which Caesar gave them for his reproof.

216, 1. **ut**, etc.: in contrast to the method which they were pursuing.

216, 2. **reliqua**: sc. *officia*, 'and to hope for future favors in keeping with his past services.'

216, 4. **ad omnes**: 'among all.'

216, 6. **ex domestico**, etc.: 'from their own judgments and guilty consciences.'

216, 7. **Quo pudore**: = *cuius rei pudore*, 'by a feeling of shame at the situation.'

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	417, 2 (379, 1)	631	424, *b*, N. (256, *b*, N.)	393, R. 2	231, 1

216, 8. **liberari**: *i.e.* from punishment. They doubtless remembered how, five years before, in Gaul, Caesar had deferred the punishment of Acco till the campaigning season was over (see summary of *B.G.*, Book VI, last paragraph, p. 356).

216, 15. **clientibus**: appositive to *paucis*, 'a few men only.'

216, 22. **cum munere aliquo**: 'with some service' to him.

216, 26. **ac si**: like *quasi*, etc., taking the subj. of a conditional comparison.[1]

216, 30. CHAPTER 61. **honesto loco nati**: 'of honorable birth.'[2]

217, 1. **comitatu**: indefinite designations of military forces, if limited by an adj., may omit *cum*;[3] *iumentis* is attracted to the constr. of *comitatu*; if alone, it would take *cum*.

217, 4. **hoc . . . acciderat**: 'this was a new and unusual circumstance,' *i.e.* for deserters to come to him from Caesar.

217, 5. **circumduxit**: *quos* is the dir. obj., *praesidia* is a secondary obj. belonging closely with the preposition.[4]

217, 8. **vulgo vero universi . . . milites**: sc. *perfugerant*, 'in fact, the soldiers had deserted all together in a body (*vulgo*) who had been enrolled,' etc. — **in Epiro**: see 189, 8.

217, 9. **earumque regionum**: parallel with *in Epiro . . . conscripti*, limiting *milites*, 'and the soldiers of all those districts.'

217, 10. **quae . . . tenebantur**: see on 205, 11. Caesar's clemency, as well as his energy and success in the war thus far, were apparently having their effect in winning men to his side. — **hi**: the two Gauls. — **omnibus rebus**: *i.e.* in Caesar's army.

217, 11. **quid**: indef., as after *si*.

217, 12. **peritioribus**: indef., 'men well skilled.' — **rei**: obj. gen.[5] — **temporibusque . . . animadversa**: 'and having observed the times of doing things and the distances between places,' etc.

217, 14. **prout . . . ferebat**: explaining *varia*, 'according to the character or the energy of each of the men in charge of undertakings.'

217, 15. **haec**: summing up the clauses *cognitis . . . ferebat*.

217, 18. CHAPTER 62. **ut demonstratum est**: in 215, 9. — **tegimenta**: the advantage of these twig coverings appears in 219, 10 f.

	H.	L. M.	A	G	B
1	584 (513, ii)	944	524 (312)	602	307
2	469, 2 (415, ii)	609	403, *a* (244, *a*)	395	215
3	474, 2, N. 1 (419, iii, 1)	634	413, *a* (248, *a*, N.)	392, R. 1	222, 1
4	413 (376)	501	395 (239, *b*)	331, R. 1	179
5	450 (399)	573	349, *a* (218, *a*)	374	204, 1

217, 19. **aggerem**: 'rubbish,' for filling up Caesar's trenches (219, 6 f.).

217, 23. **cohortes LX**: the equivalent of six legions. Assuming an average of 3600 men to a legion (Introd. § 27), we may suppose that over 20,000 legionary soldiers, besides the strong force of light troops, were used in the attack on Caesar's lines. — **ex maximis castris**, etc.: Pompey's main camp at Petra hill and the posts here and there along his lines.

217, 24. **ad eam partem**, etc.: the southernmost part of Caesar's lines, running west toward the sea. A double line of fortifications had been built there, 600 feet apart, within which the Caesareans could repel attacks from the north or the south. See 218, 3 ff.

217, 25. **maximis castris Caesaris**: the main camp, at the northwestern end of the lines.

217, 30. **positum habebat**: 'was keeping . . . stationed'; see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6.

218, 3. CHAPTER 63. **pedum XV**: in width, as generally when only one dimension of a trench is given. The depth was probably about nine feet.

218, 4. **contra hostem**: *i.e.* facing Pompey's lines, which were a short distance away to the north. — **pedum X**: gen. of quality with *vallum*.

218, 5. **agger**: 'earthwork,' on which palisades were planted to protect the soldiers as they fought from the top of the rampart. The width of the earthwork, ten feet, was sufficient to allow the defenders to move about comfortably.

218, 7. **in contrariam partem**: facing south, as a defense against any troops that Pompey might land from his ships south of Caesar's lines. — **vallus**: = *vallum*.

218, 8. **Hoc**: explained by the appositive clause *ne . . . circumvenirentur*, which takes its constr. from *timens*.

218, 10. **ancipiti**: with one force attacking on the north and another on the south.

218, 11. **posset resisti**: impers., 'it might be possible for resistance to be made.' — **omnium dierum**: 'of every day,' poss. gen.

218, 13. **perficiendi spatium**: 'time for completion.'

218, 14. **contra**: 'facing.' — **transversum vallum**: 'a cross wall,' uniting the two lines at their western end.

219, 4. **in excubiis**: between Caesar's two parallel lines. The two cohorts were sent from Marcellinus's camp (217, 29 f.), which was near

by; see the plan. — **accessere**: this form of the perf. third person pl. is rare in Caesar.

219, 6. **milites**: the light-armed men (217, 27), who landed at a point outside Caesar's lines and attacked the outer or southern wall.

219, 7. **legionarii**: the sixty cohorts who marched down from Pompey's main camp (217, 23) and attacked the inner or northern wall of Caesar's double lines.

219, 9. **ab utraque parte**: the archers, who had come by water (217, 21), were sent, some against the northern, some against the southern wall.

219, 12. **omnibus rebus**: 'in all respects.'

219, 13. **animadversum est**: the two deserters had told Pompey of the incompleteness of the cross wall (l. 1 f.), but the spot was now discovered and men from the ships poured in to attack in the rear Caesar's two cohorts who were defending the two parallel ramparts.

219, 18. CHAPTER 64. **cohortes**: of the ninth legion (217, 30).

219, 20. **fugientes**: acc.

219, 26. **a viribus deficeretur**: 'he was being deserted by his strength,' *viribus* being personified and made a voluntary agent.

219, 27. **Hanc**: sc. *aquilam*, the eagle being the standard of the Roman legion (Introd. § 40).

219, 29. **Nolite . . . committere**: see on 161, 11.

219, 30. **ut . . . admittatur**: obj. of *committere*.

220, 1. **incolumemque**: 'but,' etc.

220, 3. **principem priorem**: belonging in the first cohort, he was the third in rank of the sixty centurions of his legion. See Introd. § 35.

220, 6. CHAPTER 65. **cohortibus**: those of the ninth legion which had remained in camp.

220, 7. **proximum**: *i.e.* the post nearest to Marcellinus's camp, and lying north of it.

220, 12. **per castella**: 'from redoubt to redoubt.'

220, 15. **extra munitiones**: upon the rout of Caesar's cohorts from the double lines, Pompey had apparently led his legionaries to the south or outer side of these lines, where he was fortifying a new camp near the shore; see the plan.

220, 16. **ut . . . posset**: expresses the purpose of *egressum*, *nec . . . haberet* that of *manere*. — **nec minus**: 'and nevertheless.'

220, 18. **propositum**, etc.: 'he had not succeeded in his purpose,' *i.e.* of blockading Pompey. — **castra**: his new camp east of Pompey's.

220, 22. CHAPTER 66. **quod**: see on **204**, 2.

220, 23. **vetera castra**: the old camp north of Caesar's double lines; see the plan.

220, 25. **ut demonstravimus**: in Ch. 45 f., omitted in this book.

220, 28. **quibusdam de causis**: probably he found that he could run his siege lines to better advantage farther south.

220, 29. **transtulerat**: to Marcellinus's camp.

220, 30. **eadem haec**: the old camp abandoned by Caesar's ninth legion.

221, 2. **relicto**, etc.: 'leaving the inner wall standing.' This was the rampart of the original camp, but was partly inclosed by Pompey. It is marked in red on the plan, p. 218.

221, 3. **maioribus**: sc. *castris*.

221, 4. **munitionem**: an earthwork and ditch running northeast from the camp to the Palamnus River, which had not been diverted from its course with the other streams (**211**, 18 f.).

221, 11. CHAPTER 67. **legionis**: the cohorts of **220**, 21.

221, 16. **in opere**: 'engaged on the works,' building his new camp, which was about half a mile from Pompey's new camp.

221, 18. **reliquas cohortes**: *i.e.* the rest of his troops in the new camp. There were other legions in the redoubts along his lines.

221, 21. **duplici acie**: the double line, which was longer than the usual formation in triple line (see Introd. § 46), was preferable for surrounding the old camp and attacking on all sides at once. — **prima opinio**: *i.e.* that he could crush Pompey's legion (l. 15).

221, 28. **Pullone**: one of the brave centurions of **134**, 1 ff. He joined Pompey after betraying Gaius Antonius in 49 B.C. See on *Antonianos*, **189**, 9. — **demonstravimus**: probably in the lost passage after Ch. 8.

222, 1. **castellum**: the original camp of Caesar's ninth legion; see **221**, 2.

222, 3. **repugnantes**: acc.

222, 8. CHAPTER 68. **supra**: in **221**, 4 f.

222, 9. **portam**: the gate of the old camp. They thought that the wall running to the Palamnus was the rampart of the camp. If Caesar had provided for a reconnaissance before leaving his new camp, this blunder of his right wing might have been avoided.

222, 11. **Quod**: 'but,' as in *quod si*, see on **60**, 15.

222, 12. prorutis munitionibus: a comparatively small breach was made, as is seen from l. 22 ff.

222, 14. CHAPTER 69. **satis**: 'rather.'

222, 15. ab opere: from the work of fortifying his new camp.

222, 16. suis: the legion in the old camp.

222, 17. appropinquabat: Pompey's cavalry must have ridden round the old camp, being hidden from view by the woods (**220**, 27, and the plan), and have appeared on the northeast of the camp to Caesar's cavalry, which had just passed through the breach in the wall that ran to the river (see l. 13).

222, 18. acies: the line of Pompey's five legions in battle array, probably southwest of the old camp.

222, 19. Pompeiana legio: the legion that had been so hard pressed in the old camp (l. 2) saw the reënforcements and began to fight with fresh courage.

222, 20. decumana porta: here the gate in the northwest wall of the camp. The legion had been pushed by Caesar's men to the extreme rear of the inclosure.

222, 22. angusto itinere: see on *prorutis munitionibus*, l. 12. — **per aggeres**: 'over the earthworks.'

222, 23. receptui: dat. of interest, 'fearing for,' etc.

222, 24. dextrum cornu: the body which had gone astray along the wall running to the river and had then breached it and passed through with the cavalry (l. 8 ff.). It was separated from the left wing (**221**, 24) by the rampart of the camp.

222, 25. munitionem: the wall to the river.

222, 27. angustias: 'a tight place.' They knew that if they all crowded to the narrow breach in the wall, Pompey's cavalry would cut many of them down before they could get through. — **ex . . . munitione**: 'from the ten-foot fortification.' This was also the height of Caesar's inner line south of the old camp (**218**, 4). If the trench was, also like Caesar's, fifteen feet wide, it was doubtless some nine feet deep (see on *pedum XV*, 218, 3), thus making a jump of nearly twenty feet. — **fossas**: pl., of different parts of the trench.

223, 1. angustiis: abl. of means, 'shut up in a tight place,' *i.e.* between the two ramparts of the old camp.

223, 2. eodem . . . receptu: 'by the same way of retreat as they had come,' an inexact expression for *eodem quo venerant itinere se recipientes*, 'retreating the same way they had come.'

223, 5. **idem iussi**, etc.: 'though receiving the same order, hastened to pursue the same course as before,' *i.e.* kept on in their flight. Plutarch says that when a big, strong soldier who was running away was ordered by Caesar to stand and face the enemy again, he seized his sword and would have killed his general if his arm had not been cut off by Caesar's attendant.

223, 6. **signa dimitterent**: 'threw away their standards.'

223, 8. CHAPTER 70. **His tantis**, etc.: 'the following helpful circumstances came to the relief of these great disasters, preventing the whole army's being destroyed, namely that Pompey,' etc.

223, 9. **quo minus**: depending on the idea of hindering [1] in the previous clause. — **quod . . . tardabantur**: subst. clauses in apposition [2] with *haec subsidia*.

223, 13. **angustiis**, etc.: 'by the narrow breach (in the wall which ran to the river), and that too, occupied,' etc. Cf. *atque his*, 129, 18, and note.

223, 14. **ad**: see on *ad spem*, 183, 4.

223, 17. **propriam expeditamque**: 'complete and easy.'

223, 22. CHAPTER 71. **equites**: 'knights.'

223, 23. **Placentia**: abl. of source, a usage far less common than the proper adj., which would be here *Placentinum*.

223, 25. **fossis**: see on *fossas*, 222, 27.

223, 28. **imperator**: see on 173, 3. Pompey allowed himself to be addressed by this title, but as his victory had been won over fellow-countrymen, he refrained from using it officially or from adopting the decoration which it usually carried.

223, 30. **praescribere**: the Romans signed their names at the beginning of letters and despatches, while the place and date of writing were put at the end.

224, 3. **quo . . . haberetur**: 'that greater confidence in the deserter (obj. gen.) might be felt.' Labienus, who had deserted Caesar at the outbreak of the war, was naturally distrusted by Pompey. He constantly sought to prove his loyalty by his cruelty toward his old comrades in Caesar's army.

224, 4. **appellans**: the dir. obj., as also of *interrogans* and *interfecit*, is *omnes*, l. 2. — **magna . . . contumelia**: abl. of manner.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	568, 8 (497, 2)	909	558, *b* (331, *e*, 2)	549	295, 3
2	588, 3 (540, iv, N.)	848	572 & N. (333 & N.)	525, 2	299, 1, *a*

224, 8. CHAPTER 72. **ratione belli**: 'the conduct of the war.' Pompey was advised to take his army at once to Italy, leaving only a small force to harry Caesar, who, being without ships, could follow him only by marching through Illyricum round the head of the Adriatic. Pompey rejected this advice because it looked too much like running away.

224, 9. **Non**: to bring out the emphasis which the negative receives from its position and repetition, translate, 'it was not the small number of our soldiers, it was not the unfavorableness,' etc.

224, 11. **praeoccupatis castris**: 'due to the seizure of the camp beforehand,' *i.e.* by Pompey's legion.

224, 12. **non abscisum**, etc.: 'it was not the cutting of our army into two divisions.' The perf. part. agreeing with a subst. frequently contains the main idea.[1]

224, 13. **causae fuisse**, etc,: 'that had been the cause of our defeat, as they thought.' *Paucitatem*, etc., are subjects of *fuisse*; *causae* is dat. of tendency or service.

224, 14. **non concursu**, etc.: translate the abl. abs. as if parallel with *dimicatum* [esse], 'that no fierce charge had been made, no real battle fought, but the men themselves,' etc.

224, 17. **communes . . . casus**: 'the chances of war that are common to all.'

224, 18. **quam**: adv. limiting *parvulae*, 'what trivial causes,' and like *quotiens*, l. 20, introducing an indir. quest. in apposition with *casus*. — **suspicionis**, etc.: gens. of definition or appositional gens.,[2] 'in the way of,' etc.

224, 19. **obiectae religionis**: 'of opposing religious scruples.'

224, 21. **esset offensum**: impers.; cf. *offenderunt*, 192, 19. — **ac si**: see on 216, 26.

225, 4. CHAPTER 73. **unum**: emphatic by contrast with *multis*.

225, 5. **opponerent**: 'set against.' — **Habendam . . . gratiam**: 'they ought to be grateful.'

225, 6. **aliquo**: 'some . . . or other'; cf. *sine ullo vulnere*, 223, 26, 'without any wound.'

225, 7. **bellicosissimorum . . . ducibus**: to keep the Latin order of thought, translate, 'with their warlike men under highly skilled and

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	636, 4 (549, 5, N. 2)	1013	497 (292, *a*)	664, R. 2	337. 5
2	440, 4 (396, vi)	569	343, *d* (214, *f*)	361, 1	202

well-trained leaders.' *Hominum* limits *ducibus*, which is concessive abl. abs. with the adjs.

225, 9. **provincias**: Sicily and Sardinia, which supplied great quantities of grain for the Roman market. For all these conquests, see summary of Book I, p. 383.

225, 10. **debere**: sc. *eos* as subject. — **inter medias**: 'in the very midst.'

225, 12. **transportati**: from Brundisium to Palaeste and Nymphaeum (192, 1 and 202, 13). — **non**: generally stands, as here, immediately before the word it limits.

225, 14. **cuiusvis . . . culpae**: 'to anybody's fault rather than his.'

225, 16. **castris**: the old camp. For the constr., see on *imperio*, 52, 11.

225, 17. **ipsorum**: 'their own.' — **aliquis**: generally subst., here = *aliqui*.

225, 20. **quod si esset factum**: 'if this should be done'; for the tense, see on 64, 28.

225, 21. **verteret**: intr., 'would turn to a blessing.' For the constr., see on *ut . . . auderent*, 73, 12. — **uti . . . accidisset**: 'as had happened.' The repulse at Gergovia, the only town in Gaul which made successful resistance to Caesar, is related in 150, 6 ff. The victory at Alesia, which broke the backbone of Gallic opposition, came a few weeks later (163, 6 –168, 30). Similarly, in the present campaign, Caesar's admirable courage in the face of the complete failure of his elaborate plans for besieging Pompey, near Dyrrachium, had its effect on the spirit of his men, and in another month they overwhelmingly defeated Pompey's greatly superior force at Pharsalus.

225, 23. CHAPTER 74. **signiferos**: Caesar's punishment was merciful, as the penalty for throwing away standards was death.

225, 24. **loco movit**: *i.e.* he reduced them to the ranks.

225, 27. **desideraret**: 'waited for.' — **sibi quisque**: the regular order; see on *sibi quemque*, 54, 11.

225, 30. **ordinis**: 'rank,' gen. of quality. The lieutenants and tribunes are meant. — **ratione permoti**: 'moved by reason,' not merely by a desire to wipe out the disgrace of their defeat.

226, 1. **Contra ea**: 'contrary to these views,' 'on the other hand.'

226, 3. **refectis munitionibus**: abl. abs. expressing a concession, 'even if his lines should be repaired.'

226, 6. CHAPTER 75. **modo . . . habita ratione**: 'merely taking care.'

226, 7. **prima**: 'the first part of.'

226, 9. **confectum**: see on *non abscisum*, 224, 12; and cf. the common expression *ante urbem conditam*, 'before the founding of the city.'

226, 13. **institutum**: it was contrary to military usage to leave camp without sounding the signals for packing up and marching out. But by not giving the signals until the last division of the army was ready to march, Caesar concealed his plan from Pompey until his baggage and the larger part of his troops were well out of harm's way.

226, 16. **neque . . . moram . . . intulit**: 'allowed nothing to delay his pursuit.'

226, 18. **impeditos**: 'burdened with their baggage.'

226, 21. **neque . . . potuit**: 'but could not.'—**expedito itinere**: 'having an unobstructed road,' abl. abs. expressing cause.

226, 25. **antesignanos**: picked men who could be detailed for special services; as here, to support the cavalry according to the German custom; see on *levis . . . complures*, 179, 1.

226, 29. CHAPTER 76. **iusto itinere**: 'the regular march,' *i.e.* about twenty miles over the ordinary roads.

226, 30. **veteribus . . . castris**: see 207, 1 and 5.

227, 3. **per causam**: see on 200, 24. Both armies reached their old camps on opposite banks of the Genusus before noon (l. 13 f.). Pompey, seeing Caesar's cavalry start out to forage, as he supposed, thought he was going to remain there till the next day, and accordingly allowed many of his soldiers to return to their camp near Dyrrachium for their personal effects, which, owing to their hasty departure early in the morning, they had been obliged to leave behind. This gave Caesar a chance to gain a lead of eight miles, which Pompey was unable to overcome.

227, 4. **decumana porta**: see Introd. § 44. It is easy to see why Caesar chose this gate.

227, 12. **Quibus . . . impeditis**: 'as they were prevented from pursuing.' For *ad*, cf. 183, 4.

227, 13. **fore**: 'would be the case.'

227, 15. **duplicatoque**, etc: 'increasing his march of that day'; it cannot mean doubling his forenoon's march, because the Genusus is some twenty miles from his camp near Dyrrachium, a *iustum iter* (226, 29) for a Roman army.

227, 18. CHAPTER 77. **similiter**: *i.e.* as on the previous night (226, 6 ff.).

227, 20. **esset imposita**: implied indir. disc., representing fut. perf. of the original thought.

227, 21. **expedito**: 'unencumbered,' by the baggage.

227, 23. **altissimis . . . itineribus**: concessive abls. abs., 'although the rivers were,' etc.

227, 25. **primi . . . suscepto**: causal abls. abs., 'since he had been delayed on the first day and his exertions on the remaining days were made in vain.'

227, 26. **cum**: concessive. — **se . . . extenderet**: 'he exerted himself with forced marches.' Pompey's army, with its large number of Roman gentlemen, who were unused to hardships, and hampered by its size, was no match in marching for Caesar's little force of devoted veterans.

227, 27. **quarto**: 'the third,' according to our way of reckoning. The Romans counted the day of departure as the first, we begin with the next day.

227, 30. CHAPTER 78. **urbibus**: dat. of interest; the abl. of place would require *in*.

228, 2. **tantum**: 'only so much.'

228, 3. **properanti**: 'because of his haste' (lit., 'for him hurrying,' sc. *ei*). — **Domitio**: dat. of interest. Domitius Calvinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants, was in central Macedonia, opposing two legions of Pompey's army under Scipio (189, 10 f.).

228, 4. **celeritate**: limits *ferebatur*, 'he was hurrying with all haste and the utmost (lit., 'spurred on by') eagerness.'

228, 5. **rei**: 'campaign.'

228, 6. **his rationibus**: abl. of manner, 'according to the following calculations,' explained by the appositive clauses of purpose *ut . . . decertare cogeret, . . . proficisceretur, . . . ferre cogeret*.

228, 7. **eodem**: to Macedonia to join Scipio, see on *Domitio*, l. 3. — **abductum, abstractum**: translate as vbs. parallel with *cogeret*, 'he might take him away,' etc.

228, 8. **Dyrrachi**: Pompey's headquarters (207, 13 f.).

228, 9. **pari condicione**: *i.e.* away from his base of supplies.

228, 10. **in Italiam**: see on 224, 8.

228, 11. **Italiae**: dat. of interest with *subsidio*, dat. of purpose.

228, 12. **se**: indir. refl., referring to Caesar, the subject of the main vb. *explicabat* (l. 6).

228, 14. **suis**: dir. refl., referring to the subject of its own clause, *illum*.

228, 18. depositis: abl. abs. with *iis* implied as antecedent of *qui*. — **Athamaniam**: a district of southeastern Epirus. See map, p. 191.

228, 21. illo: adv.

228, 22. Oriciaque: adj., 'and especially the coast near Oricum,' where the two legions still left in Italy could most conveniently land.

228, 26. CHAPTER 79. **suis, ad . . . adversarios**: so emphatic as to precede *ut* and *ne*.

228, 27. ne . . . deësset: 'that he might not fail to take advantage of a favorable opportunity.'

228, 29. Candaviam: east of Dyrrachium. — **iter . . . expeditum**: see on *expedito itinere*, 226, 21. Pompey's route was along the Via Egnatia to Heraclia. This road was the main highway from Dyrrachium and Apollonia to Thessalonica and the East. — **in Macedoniam**: *i.e.* into Macedonia proper, which, before the organization of the province (see *Macedonia* in the Vocab.), extended only to the mountains east of the Drilon River.

229, 1. quod: 'the fact that.'

229, 2. conlata habuisset: 'had kept his camp near to,' etc.

229, 4. subiecta: 'below'; Candavia was mountainous.

229, 8. quam res erat gesta: 'than the facts warranted.'

229, 10. Haec: sc. *fama*.

229, 12. dimissi: 'messengers sent out.'

229, 15. demonstravimus: in 216, 28.

229, 17. pristina sua consuetudine: causal, 'owing to their former intimate relations with them.'

229, 18. gloria elati: 'puffed up with pride.'

229, 20. vix . . . antecedens: 'getting barely four hours' start.'

229, 22. quod est, etc.: 'which lies near the borders of Thessaly'; the participles have about the same meaning.

229, 25. CHAPTER 80. **quod**: agreeing with the pred. noun as usual; cf. 204, 2.

229, 26. venientibus: 'as you come.'[1] — **ab Epiro**: 'from the boundary of Epirus'; *ex* would mean 'out from.' — **quae gens**; the people of Gomphi.

229, 27. ut . . . uteretur: obj. of the idea of bidding contained in *legatos miserat*, 'telling him to make use of,' etc.

229, 29. supra: in l. 9.

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	425, 4 (384, 4, N. 3)	546	378, 2 (235, *b*)	353	188, 2, *a*

229, 30. **quod . . . partibus**: 'and had exaggerated it many fold.' The subject is implied from *fama; partibus* expresses amount of difference.

230, 1. **praetor**: regularly used to translate the Greek word for 'general.' In the early years of the Republic at Rome it was the name of the highest magistrate or commander, but was superseded by 'consul.'

230, 6. **munitionibus**: see on *quibus*, 194, 1.

230, 9. **Larisam**: to the south, in the plain of Thessaly.

230, 11. **crates**: to be used in filling up the trench before the wall of Gomphi.

230, 13. **haberet**: the subjects are the infins. *potiri, inferri, fieri*, 'how great an advantage it would be to get possession,' etc.

231, 1. **civitatibus**: indir. obj. of the cpd. vb.

231, 3. **horam nonam**: about three o'clock; see *hora* in the Vocab.

231, 5. **ad diripiendum**: Plutarch says that in addition to provisions wine was found here, which the soldiers drank freely, and under its influence dancing and carousing along their march, they shook off the illness with which their privations had afflicted them.

231, 7. **expugnati oppidi**: 'of the capture of the town'; see on *non abscisum*, 224, 12.

231, 14. CHAPTER 81. **Metropolitum**: *-um* for *-arum* is chiefly poetic except in names of peoples.[1]

231, 16. **quin**, etc.: 'which did not obey,' a characteristic clause after a general negative.[2]

231, 17. **Ille**: Caesar. — **quo**, rel., with antecedent *locum*.

231, 18. **frumenta**: observe the pl.

231, 19. **belli rationem**: 'campaign' (lit., 'war-business'). — **conferre**: 'to transfer.'

231, 20. CHAPTER 82. **in Thessaliam**: Pompey marched by the Egnatian Way to Heraclia, and then turned southward to join Scipio at Larissa (230, 9).

231, 23. **parta iam victoria**: abl. abs., 'in a victory already won.' This spirit of overconfidence contributed to the completeness of the defeat which came soon.

231, 26. **honorem partitur**: *i.e.* he takes a colleague in the chief command. Scipio was Pompey's father-in-law, and had been his col-

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	80, 1 (49, 3)	139	43, *d* (36, *d*)	29, R. 3	21, 2, *d*
2	595, 4 (504, 1)	915	559 (319, *d*)	556	283, 4

league in the consulship for the last five months of 52 B.C. — **classicum**: the signals were sounded before the general's quarters. Pompey honors Scipio by having them sounded also at his quarters (*apud eum*).

231, 27. **praetorium**: this word came into use when *praetor* had its old meaning; see on 230, 1.

232, 4. **unius . . . diei**: 'that only a single day's work was left.'

232, 5. **illum**: Pompey.

232, 6. **numero**: as in 185, 26. — **dicerent**: indefinite 'they,' of the officers and nobles in the army. Plutarch says that everybody except Cato was eager to fight and tried to goad Pompey into a battle by such nicknames as Agamemnon and king of kings, implying that he took pleasure in exercising supreme command over so many of the great men of Rome.

232, 7. **praemiis**: 'the prizes,' of office.

232, 8. **in annosque**: 'and for years in advance.'

232, 10. **consilio**: 'the council,' see on 197, 24. — **oporteretne**, etc.: 'whether (see on *liceretne*, 199, 16) Lucilius Hirrus, inasmuch as he had been sent by Pompey to the Parthians, ought to be considered in his absence at the next election of praetors.' *Hirri* is obj. gen. with *rationem*; *rationem haberi* is subject of *oporteret*. Hirrus was unsuccessful in his efforts to raise allies among the Parthians. The controversy turned on the point whether, owing to the important work in which he was engaged, he should be exempt from the law requiring a candidate for office to present himself in person (see Introd. § 11).

232, 13. **cum . . . implorarent . . . recusarent**: temporal clauses, expressing by the imperf. tense action coincident with that of the main vb. *fuit* (see on *cum . . . conaretur*, 53, 29); translate, 'his friends appealing to Pompey's good faith to grant,' etc. — **praestaret**: an obj. clause coördinate[1] with *implorarent*, not subordinated by *ut*.

232, 14. **recepisset**: see on 198, 5. — **ne . . . videretur**: a pure clause of purpose. Hirrus is the subject.

232, 15. **reliqui**, etc.: parallel to *necessarii . . . implorarent*, 'the others refusing in equal hardship and danger to have[2] one man take precedence of them all.'

232, 17. CHAPTER 83. **sacerdotio Caesaris**: since 63 B.C. Caesar

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	565, 4 (499, 2)	781	565, *a* (331, *f*, R.)	546, R. 2	295, 8
2	596, 2 (505, ii, 1)	898	558, *b* (331, *e*, 2)	548	295, 3

had been *pontifex maximus* or head of the college of pontiffs, who had charge of the state religion. In order to be able to fix the dates of religious festivals they managed the calendar, which was variable and uncertain till Caesar, by virtue of his office as chief pontiff, introduced the reform which, with but slight change, is now in use in most civilized countries. As the priesthoods were held for life, it is apparent that the Pompeians had no thought of sparing Caesar in the victory which they felt perfectly confident was soon to be theirs. — **Domitius**: Ahenobarbus, not to be confused with Caesar's lieutenant (see on 228, 3). After his dismissal by Caesar at Corfinium (see on 177, 14), he took charge of the campaign of the Massiliots (see summary of Book II, p. 383), and upon their surrender to Caesar he fled to Pompey in Macedonia. — **Spintherque**: the Lentulus family had so many branches that additional family names, as Crus, Spinther, etc. (see *Lentulus* in the Vocab.), were assumed to distinguish them. The added name commonly followed the regular family name. With the order here cf. *Varus Attius*, 178, 23, and see note. Spinther, like Domitius Ahenobarbus, had been allowed to go free at the capture of Corfinium.

232, 20. **aetatis . . . ostentaret**: 'held up the honor due to his age.' — **urbanam gratiam**, etc.: 'his popularity and high position in the city,' *i.e.* at Rome.

232, 21. **adfinitate**: see on *honorem partitur*, 231, 26.

232, 22. **proditionis**, etc.: gen. of the charge;[1] 'of betraying his army,' at Ilerda in Spain the year before; see summary of Book I, p. 383. Afranius was a less capable officer than Petreius, and showed sooner a disposition to yield to Caesar. Rufus's object in bringing the accusation of treachery was to prevent the candidacy of Afranius for the consulship.

232, 24. **placere**: 'that it seemed best.' — **ternas . . . iis**: 'for three ballots to be given for voting to each of those.'

232, 25. **ordinis**: gen. of quality.

232, 26. **sententiasque . . . ferri**: 'and for verdicts to be passed on the men one by one.' This statement is no exaggeration. Cicero, who was himself a follower of Pompey, shows in several letters to his friends that the savage threats and bitter enmity of the nobles in Pompey's army towards all who had not actually taken up arms in their

	H.	L. M.	A.	G.	B.
1	456 (409, ii)	582	352 (220)	378	208, 1

support made him dread the outcome of a victory of his own party. Indeed Cicero is chiefly aimed at in the second clause, *quique*, etc., l. 27, for although he had joined Pompey in Macedonia, he had not taken any active part in the war, and had remained behind in Dyrrachium when Pompey started east on the present campaign.

232, 28. **unam fore**, etc.: 'that one ballot should be for voting that they ought,' etc. The fut. infin. is indir. disc. depending on *dixit*, l. 24, not, like *dari* and *ferri*, subject of *placere*; *qua* (lit., 'with which') introduces a rel. clause of purpose.

232, 30. **qua damnarent**: 'for condemning them to death.' The Pompeian nobles had no intention of giving their enemies a fair legal trial after the war was over, but they meant to secure the verdict which they desired by giving it themselves. — **capitis**: gen. of the penalty; cf. *proditionis*, l. 22. The penalty is sometimes expressed by the abl., as in the next clause.

233, 7. CHAPTER 84. **perspectum habere**: see on *coactum habebat*, 61, 6. The clause *quo . . . videretur* is rel. of result, 'for him to think that he had the spirit of his soldiers pretty well proved.'

233, 9. **propositi**: a partit. gen. is usually separated from the word on which it depends, here *quidnam*.

233, 11. **primo**: observe the difference between this word and *primum*; see Vocab. — **suis locis**: see on 209, 27.

233, 12. **continentibus**, etc.: 'but on successive days (contrasted with *primo*) in such a way as to go farther from his own camp.'

233, 13. **collibus Pompeianis**: upon his union with Scipio Pompey marched south and encamped about four miles from Caesar on the hills of Karadja Ahmet; see plan, p. 236. This move of his is not definitely mentioned, but the *una castra* of 231, 25 is doubtless this camp on the hills.

233, 14. **eius**: Caesar's. His army thought that Pompey was afraid to fight.

233, 15. **demonstravimus**: see 226, 24 f.

233, 16. **multis partibus**: 'far,' cf. 229, 30.

233, 17. **esset**: subj. of attraction, being an essential part of the clause *ut . . . iuberet*. — **antesignanis**: see on 226, 25.

233, 18. **mutatis . . . armis**: 'changing their arms (*i.e.* heavy for light) for the sake of speed.'

233, 21. **mille**: the subst. use (with dependent gen.) is rare in the sing., though regular in the pl.

233, 22. **usus**: 'need.'

233, 26. **supra**; in 216, 28 f.

233, 28. CHAPTER 85. **aciem**: marked *A* on the plan, p. 236.— **instruebat**: denoting repetition, during the successive days when Caesar was forming his line nearer and nearer to Pompey (l. 12 f.).

233, 29. **exspectans**: 'waiting to see.'— **si . . . subiceret**: see on *si . . . conarentur*, 178, 29.

234, 2. **uti . . . itineribus**: complementary or subst. clauses in apposition with *hanc rationem*, 'namely, to move,' etc.

234, 3. **haec spectans**: see on 208, 25.— **movendis . . . locis**: abls. of means.

234, 6. **insolitum ad laborem**: Caesar speaks more than once of the disadvantage which Pompey was under of having in his army so many nobles and gentlemen who were unused to hard work; see 211, 17.

234, 8. **detensis**: the opposite idea to that of *tendi*, 231, 27.

234, 9. **paulo ante iter**: 'a little while before their start.'— **extra**: 'contrary to.'

234, 10. **non iniquo**: = *aequo* (litotes), 'favorable' to Caesar.

234, 11. **dimicari**: impers., 'a battle could be fought.'— **cum**, etc.: 'although his column was already at the gates,' ready to march out.

234, 14. **Animo**: 'in heart,' abl. of specification.

234, 17. CHAPTER 86. **hortatu**: abl. of cause, 'owing to,' etc. See 232, 1 ff.

234, 20. **Id**: 'that statement.'

234, 22. **rationem**: 'nature.'

234, 23. **Persuasi**: this word standing first emphasizes the idea that the only thing needed to insure a victory was a little persuasion on the part of the commander. We may imagine that Caesar, in the light of the outcome of the battle, so vastly different from what Pompey had confidently predicted, wrote these lines with the liveliest satisfaction.

234, 24. **esset accessum**: implied indir. disc. (so *iaceretur*, l. 27) representing a fut. perf.

234, 25. **ab latere aperto**: Caesar's right flank was exposed, whereas his left was protected by the Enipeus River; see plan, p. 236.

234, 26. **perturbatum, etc.**: 'to throw the army into confusion and put it to flight,' etc.

234, 29. **equitatu**: Pompey had 7000 cavalry, Caesar less than 1000. Pompey's plan would have succeeded if Caesar had not, by an unusual

arrangement of his infantry, guarded against just such an attack as was made; see **237**, 12 ff.

235, 2. **reliquorum**: *i.e.* of all who were not present in the council, which was cōmposed of nobles only. See on *de consili sententia*, **197**, 24.

235, 3. CHAPTER 87. **excepit**: 'followed.' — **cum . . . despiceret**: 'while he expressed his contempt for,' etc.

235, 5. **Noli . . . existimare**: see on, **161**, 11. — **Pompei**: cf. the case with that in l. 4.

235, 9. **quod . . . necesse**: 'which it was inevitable should happen, as there were so many battles' (abl. abs.).

235, 10. **autumni**: see **188**, 16 ff., and note on *autumnus*.

235, 11. **in continenti**: *i.e.* in Italy; they were not brought across the water to Greece.

235, 12. **An**: see on **176**, 7. — **ex iis**: with *factas*. — **per causam valetudinis**: implying that they were not really sick; see on **200**, 24. This sentence is a rhetorical reënforcement of *multi sunt relicti in continenti*. Labienus claims that men enough were left behind in Italy to make up entire cohorts, and that these men were practically deserters, their health being only a pretext to enable them to escape service against Pompey.

235, 14. **horum annorum**: 'of these last years,' *i.e.* the years of the Civil War, 49 and 48 B.C. — **citeriore Gallia**: see on *ulteriorem*, **55**, 9.

235, 21. **animo**: 'in imagination'; abl. of means.

235, 23. **nihil, etc.**: 'no assertion seemed to be made in vain.'

235, 27. CHAPTER 88. **traditae a Caesare**: at the beginning of 53 B.C. Pompey, who was then on friendly terms with Caesar, lent him a legion to help make good the severe losses of the previous campaign in Gaul. In 50 B.C. the senate required Pompey and Caesar to furnish one legion apiece for the Parthian war (see Vocab., s.v. *Parthi*). To meet this requisition Pompey demanded back the legion he had loaned Caesar, who thus lost two legions, both of which, instead of being sent against the Parthians, were kept by Pompey to be used against Caesar in case war should be the outcome of the quarrel between Caesar and the senate.

236, 1. **Mediam aciem**: 'the centre.' — **legionibus Syriacis**: two Roman legions which had been serving in Syria; see **189**, 11.

236, 2. **Ciliciensis**: the "twin legion" of veterans; see **189**, 3 f.

236, 3. **quas . . . docuimus**: this statement, which is not found in the

Civil War, may have belonged in the passage lost at the end of Ch. 50. — **Afranio**: see Vocab.

236, 4. **Has . . . habere**: 'that these were the strongest cohorts he had.

236, 7. **millia XLV**: each of the eleven legions (= 110 cohorts, see Introd. § 28) accordingly had over 4000 men.

236, 8. **superiorum exercituum**: 'in his former armies.'

236, 11. **rivus**: the Enipeus, which in summer was only a small stream.

237, 1. CHAPTER 89. **superius institutum**: not the custom mentioned in 233, 15, but that of giving his favorite tenth legion the post of honor on the right wing.

237, 3. **erat . . . attenuata**: the ninth legion, which had been stationed under Marcellinus at the southern end of Caesar's lines near Dyrrachium (217, 30), suffered severely in the battles with Pompey (221, 19 f.).

237, 7. **quarum . . . XXII**: 'of which there was a total of 22,000.' This gives an average of 2750 men to each of the eight legions engaged; see Introd. § 27.

237, 8. **Antonium**: Mark Antony.

237, 10. **ipse . . . constitit**: on his right wing, for Pompey was on his own left (236, 1). — **iis rebus**: *i.e.* Pompey's disposition of his troops, especially his cavalry; see on 234, 29.

237, 12. **tertia acie**: his troops were drawn up in the usual triple line. See Introd. § 46.

237, 13. **singulas**: 'one from each legion.' — **quartam**: sc. *aciem*. See *B* on the plan.

237, 19. CHAPTER 90. **suaque . . . officia**: 'his constant services to it;' *temporis* is gen. of quality.

237, 20. **testibus . . . uti**: 'have the soldiers as witnesses.'

237, 22. **per Vatinium**: see 199, 13 ff. — **per Clodium**: when Caesar heard that Scipio had arrived in Macedonia from the East, he sent their common friend Clodius to beg him to intercede with Pompey for peace. But the request was not granted (Ch. 57, omitted in this book).

237, 23. **cum Libone**: see 197, 14 ff.

237, 25. **sanguine**: cpds. of *utor* take the same constr. as the simple verb.

237, 26. **exercitu**: abl. of separation.

237, 27. **signum**: for the whole army to advance, including the third

and fourth lines; but the latter were not to begin fighting until a special signal was given them with a flag (l. 16 f.).

237, 29. CHAPTER 91. **primum pilum,** etc.: 'had led the first maniple of the first cohort in the tenth legion,' *i.e.* had been the highest centurion in the favorite legion. See Introd. § 35.

238, 1. **manipulares . . . fuistis**: equiv. to a vocative, 'my old comrades.' Crastinus was not addressing the soldiers who were then serving in the first maniple of the tenth legion, over whom he had no command, but those of his fellow *evocati* who had ever served in a maniple with him as he had been promoted from maniple to maniple and cohort to cohort up to the highest centurionship of the whole legion.

238, 2. **quam instituistis**: 'which you have undertaken,' *i.e.* by reënlisting.

238, 4. **libertatem**: they had reënlisted for this war only, and would be released as soon as it was over.

238, 6. **ut . . . agas**: complementary or subst. clause of result, obj. of *faciam*,[1] 'I shall make you thank me.'

238, 8. **laeti**: 'gladly.'—**centuriae**: a division of the *evocati*, not of the tenth legion. As Caesar's legions averaged only 2750 men each (see on 237, 7) and there were 60 centuries in a legion (Introd. § 28), it is improbable, even if we suppose the first cohort to have been larger than the others, that any century of the legions had 120 men.

238, 13. CHAPTER 92. **neque . . . moverent**: 'without stirring from their position.'

238, 14. **distrahi**: the line would necessarily become more or less disordered in charging at full speed.

238, 15. **Triari**: see 190, 8.

238, 17, **dispositi**: 'his own men stationed,' etc.—**dispersos**: 'a scattered enemy,' meaning Caesar's army.—**levius**: 'with less force.'

238, 18. **retentis militibus**: abl. abs. expressing a condition, of which *casura* [esse] is the conclusion.—**pilis**: indir. obj. of an intr. cpd. vb., 'run to meet the javelins that had been thrown against them.'

238, 19. **fore**: 'that the result would be,' depending on *sperabat*.—**duplicato cursu**: 'by running double distance,' *i.e.* double what they would have to run if Pompey's army should advance to meet them in the middle of the field.

238, 21. **quidem**: 'at least.'—**ratione**: 'judgment.'

	H.	L M.	A	G.	B.
1	571, 3 (501, ii, 1)	902	568 (332)	553, 1	297, 1

238, 25. **signa . . . concinerent**: 'signals should be sounded on all sides at once,' with trumpets.

238, 28. CHAPTER 93. **infestis**: 'threatening,' *i.e.* pointed towards the enemy and ready to throw.

238, 29. **non concurri**: impers., 'that there was no charge.'

238, 30. **usu periti**, etc.: Caesar liked to praise his soldiers. A similar commendation occurs in the account of the battle with the Nervii (75, 30 ff.).

239, 5. **Neque . . . defuerunt**: 'but the Pompeians were not caught napping.'

239, 7. **exceperunt**: *i.e.* with their shields.

239, 8. **pilisque**, etc.: the regular procedure in Roman battles was to charge at full speed, hurling the spear while yet some yards from the enemy, and then to fight at close quarters with the sword.

239, 9. **ut erat imperatum**: see 234, 23 ff.

239, 14. **a latere aperto**: see on 234, 25.

239, 15. **VIII cohortium**: pred. gen. of definition or material, limiting *quam*, 'consisting of eight cohorts,' one from each legion (237, 13).

239, 16. **signum**: with a flag (237, 17).

239, 19. **incitati fuga**: 'at full speed.'

239, 21. **praesidio**: *i.e.* the cavalry.

239, 23. **circumierunt**, etc.: the tables were turned completely on Pompey. His left wing was treated to the very medicine which he had prescribed for Caesar's right (234, 25 f.).

239, 25. CHAPTER 94. **quae . . . tenuerat**: the third line, as usual, was held back as a reserve; see 237, 16 f., and Introd. § 46, end.

239, 29. **Neque . . . fefellit**: 'but it did not escape Caesar's notice.' This is equiv. to 'there was no doubt in Caesar's mind,' hence the subject clause is introduced by *quin*; cf. *neque abest suspicio quin*, 54, 2, and see note.

240, 2. **pronuntiaverat**: 'had declared would be the case'; see *monuit . . . constare*, 237, 14 f.

240, 11. **si . . . acciderit**: 'if there shall prove to be any serious accident.'

240, 12. **circumeo, confirmo**: the pres. is sometimes, as in English, used loosely for the fut., 'I'm going round to the rest of the gates and reassure the guards of the camp.'

240, 14. **summae**: subst., indir. obj. of *diffidens*, which, unlike *con-*

fido (see on *quibus*, 97, 17), takes the dat. regularly of both persons and things.

240, 15. CHAPTER 95. **vallum**: of Pompey's camp.

240, 16. **spatium**: 'respite.'

240, 18. **etsi**: sometimes accompanies the concessive abl. abs.; 'although the heat was intense.' The battle was fought August 9.

240, 21. **cohortibus**: seven in number (236, 9).

240, 22. **barbarisque**, etc.: 'and other barbarian allies.'

240, 24. **plerique**: although grammatically limiting an implied *milites*, antecedent of *qui* . . . *refugerant milites*, its position shows that in thought it belongs closely with the abl. abs. *dimissis* . . . *militaribus*; translate, 'for the soldiers who . . . most of whom, too, had thrown away their arms,' etc.

240, 26. **Neque vero diutius**: 'and in fact not very long.'—**qui . . . constiterant**: *i.e.* soldiers of the seven cohorts guarding the camp (l. 21).

240, 29. **ducibus**: 'as leaders,' appositive.—**in . . . montes**: the same way by which the cavalry had fled (239, 19 f.), along the line marked *C* on the plan, p. 236.

241, 2. CHAPTER 96. **argenti**: 'silverware.'

241, 4. **non nullorum**: 'of some others.'—**protecta**: from the midsummer sun.

241, 6. **designarent**: subj. of characteristic.

241, 7. **qui**, etc.: a causal rel. clause, 'since they,' etc.—**non necessarias**: 'unnecessary'; litotes.

241, 8. **At hi**: emphatic and indignant, 'but these very men used to taunt Caesar's army,' etc. According to Suetonius (*Life of Caesar*, 67), Caesar allowed his soldiers such extravagances as perfumery, and armor decorated with silver and gold. But taunts at such mild indulgences as these came with ill grace from the luxurious nobles of Pompey's army.

241, 11. **insignibus**: including decorations and uniform; see on *colore*, 167, 20. Pompey's cowardly desertion without any effort to collect his army, which was as yet more frightened than hurt, is a strong contrast to Caesar's conduct after his plan of campaign had suffered a much severer check near Dyrrachium; see 224, 25 ff.

241, 14. **suos**: see on *nostri*, 213, 19.

241, 17. **se**: obj., 'his fancies had so badly deceived him.'—**a quo . . . ab eo**: the rel. clause precedes its antecedent; 'by that body . . . from which.'

241, 20. CHAPTER 97. **a militibus contendit**: 'entreated his soldiers.'

241, 22. **montem**: the Pompeians had fled to the highest part of Karadja Ahmet (240, 29 f.), and had gathered on one of its hills, which Caesar now began to invest.

241, 25. **iugis eius**: 'along its ridges,' abl. of means, expressing the way by which.

241, 28. **commodioreque itinere**: Caesar doubtless crossed the Enipeus near the point marked *E* on the plan, p. 236, whence he marched rapidly through the plain to *F*, and drew up in line of battle before the Pompeians by their more difficult route through the mountains could reach the river.

241, 29. **occurrere coepit**: 'started to head off.'

242, 1. **quodam monte**: *D* on the plan.

242, 4. **seclusit**: this necessitated recrossing the river, not a difficult matter, however, since in summer the Enipeus, like most rivers of Greece, was only a small stream. It is called *rivus*, 236, 11.

242, 12. CHAPTER 98. **proiecti**: 'throwing themselves.'

242, 17. **commendavit ne qui**: 'he recommended that no one'; *qui* is less common than *quis* as the indef. subst. pron.; cf. 137, 18. Caesar's clemency is in keeping with his course from the beginning of the war, and with his claim of 237, 25 f. He is said to have put to death only those senators and knights who had fallen into his hands earlier in the war and had forfeited all right to further mercy by breaking their parole and rejoining Pompey.

242, 19. **neu quid**, etc.: 'and that they should not lose any of their property.' Caesar's generosity was shown by nothing more clearly than by his burning unread all of Pompey's correspondence, in which much incriminating information would have been found. — **Hac . . . diligentia**: 'having carefully attended to these matters.'

242, 23. CHAPTER 99. **CC milites**: see on *millia*, 72, 14.

242, 26. **supra**: in 237, 28 ff. — **gladio**: etc.: 'having received a sword thrust right in the face.'

242, 28. **eo proelio**: abl. of time when.

242, 29. **excellentissimam, optimeque**: with full superlative force. Crastinus's sacrifice was especially great, since, being an *evocatus*, he might have remained at home in security.

243, 3. **castellis**: see 236, 10.

243, 5. **ex proelio**: 'after the battle.'

243, 14. CHAPTER 102. **Erat . . . propositum**: 'had been published.'

243, 15. **Amphipoli**: an important port, near the mouth of the Strymon, in eastern Macedonia.

243, 16. **iuniores**: men from seventeen to forty-six years old, who could be enrolled at any time for military service; distinguished from the *seniores*, who were over forty-six and were called out only in emergencies. — **iurandi**: see end of note on *primam*, 174, 11.

243, 17. **utrum . . . an**: introduce a double indir. quest., which serves as subject of *poterat*.

243, 20. **conaretur**: referring to the fut., 'would try.' — **existimari**: 'be determined.'

243, 23. **Mytilenas**: on the island of Lesbos off the coast of Asia Minor. Pompey stopped for his wife Cornelia and his younger son Sextus, who had been sent here for safety at the beginning of the war. Plutarch (*Life of Pompey*, 74 f.) describes the sad meeting. See Introd. § 26.

244, 1. **arcem**: *i.e.* of Antioch, an important commercial city of Syria, which received its independence from Pompey himself when Syria was made a Roman province, 64 B.C.

244, 2. **eos**: fugitive nobles from Pompey's army.

244, 3. **ne**, etc.: obj. of the idea of ordering implied in *nuntios dimissos*.

244, 4. **magno . . . periculo**: 'at the great risk of their lives.'

244, 7. **Rhodi**: the capital of the island of the same name. Caesar studied there as a young man, and the people had favored his cause from the beginning of the war.

244, 9. **ex . . . discederent**: coördinate, 'to depart from these places'; cf. *ne . . . adirent*, l. 3 f.

244, 13. CHAPTER 103. **pecunia . . . sublata**: see 138, 24 ff. — **societatibus**: see on *societates*, 188, 27.

244, 17. **familiis**: 'the bodies of slaves' employed by the great tax collecting companies.

244, 18. **quos ex suis**, etc.: a second rel. clause limiting *hominum*; 'being those of each man's slaves whom he thought suitable for this purpose.'

244, 19. **Pelusium**: at the eastern mouth of the Nile. Pompey was inclined to seek refuge in Parthia. Some of his counselors favored the province of Africa, where Caesar's army under Curio was annihilated

the year before, and whither many of his own soldiers were fleeing from Macedonia; but Pompey's favorite, Theophanes (see on 198, 29), urged him to go to Egypt, partly because it was near, and partly because he could probably count on the gratitude of the young king, whose father had been restored to the throne by his favor in 55 B.C. (see on *Ptolomaeum*, 189, 19).

244, 20. **Ptolomaeus**: when Ptolemy Auletes died in 51 B.C., he left his throne to his ten-year-old son, Ptolemy Dionysus, and his famous daughter, Cleopatra, who was then sixteen. The young king's guardian soon expelled Cleopatra from the country. She raised an army in Syria and made war upon the king, who, at the time of Pompey's arrival, was encamped against her near Pelusium.

244, 23. **spatio**: cf. *intervallo*, 77, 17, and see note.

244, 28. **ut . . . praestarent**: 'to do their duty by (lit., 'to') Pompey.'

244, 29. **hoc . . . numero**: of the king's troops.

244, 30. **Pompei milites**: see on *Ptolomaeum*, 189, 19.

245, 3. CHAPTER 104. **amici regis**: Pothīnus, the king's guardian, Theodŏtus, his tutor, and Achillas, commander of the army.

245, 6. **sollicitato**, etc.: *i.e.* by Pompey's messengers (244, 27 f.). For the position of the abl. abs. before *ne*, see on *vix qua*, 54, 20. — **ne . . . occuparet**: depending on *timore*, 'that by tampering with the king's army Pompey would get possession,' etc.

245, 9. **palam**: 'publicly,' contrasted with *clam*, l. 11.

245, 14. **quadam . . . productus**: 'drawn on by a slight acquaintance with Septimius.'

245, 15. **bello praedonum**: see Introd. § 22. With the abl. cf. *eo proelio*, 242, 28 f. — **ordinem duxerat**: 'had led a century,' *i.e.* had been a centurion. — **naviculam parvulam**: 'a little tub of a boat,' the double diminutive emphasizing the utter lack of respect shown the fallen Pompey by the Egyptians.

245, 16. **paucis suis**: cf. *paucos suos*, 241, 14.

245, 17. **interficitur**: fuller details are given by Plutarch in his *Life of Pompey* (Ch. 77 ff.). Pompey was just stepping ashore when he was stabbed in the back by Septimius, in full view of his wife and son, who had been left behind on their ship. He was killed on the 28th of September, 48 B.C., the day before he would have completed his fifty-eighth year.

245, 19. CHAPTER 105. **Asiam**: the province (see on 188, 21), which Caesar reached by way of Thrace and the Hellespont. When

he was crossing the Hellespont, Gaius Cassius appeared with ten Pompeian ships, but was so astonished at Caesar's boldness in summoning him to an immediate surrender that he yielded without resistance. See on *Cassius*, 190, 8.

245, 21. **Epheso**: abl. of place from which, like *ex fano;* we should say 'from the temple of Diana *at* Ephesus.' In this chapter observe the different constructions of place in the names of towns and of countries.

245, 23. **testibus**: he had witnesses at hand to make it appear that he meant to pay back the money later.

245, 25. **duobus temporibus**: the other occasion is described in Ch. 33, omitted in this book. Scipio was on the point of helping himself to the money in the temple of Diana when a despatch from Pompey was handed to him stating that Caesar had arrived in Macedonia, and bidding him to march thither at once. Accordingly Caesar claims that he had twice saved the treasure of Diana. This famous temple was one of the "wonders of the world."

246, 1. **Item**: this word makes it almost certain that a passage has been lost describing other supernatural events favorable to Caesar and similar to those which follow. Several are related by Plutarch in his *Life of Caesar* (Ch. 47). The Romans believed that in these ways the gods expressed their favor or displeasure. So Caesar's death is said to have been portended by many prodigies. Shakspere mentions some of them in *Julius Caesar*, 1, 3 and 2, 2:

"A common slave (you know him well by sight)
Held up his left hand, which did flame and burn
Like twenty torches join'd; and yet his hand,
Not sensible of fire, remained unscorch'd."

"Fierce fiery warriors fight upon the clouds,
In ranks, and squadrons, and right form of war,
Which drizzled blood upon the Capitol:
The noise of battle hurtled in the air."

— **Elide**: loc. abl. — **repetitis, etc.**: translate the abl. abs. immediately after *constabat*, 'it was agreed, by reckoning and counting the days backward, that,' etc.

246, 2. **quo die**: as antecedent sc. *eo die* before *simulacrum;* and for the order of clauses, cf. *a quo . . . ab eo*, 241, 17 f.

246, 5. **convertisse**: in her own temple the statue of Minerva naturally faced the entrance. The statue of Victory, which had been facing the Minerva, now turned round towards the door.

246, 15. CHAPTER 106. **Cypri**: see on *Corcyrae*, **192**, 5.

246, 16. **iter habere**: 'was on his way.' — **necessitudines regum**: 'his ties of friendship with the monarchs,' Ptolemy and Cleopatra; see on **244**, 19.

246, 18. **quam . . . iusserat**: **243**, 13 f.

246, 19. **Achaia**: see on **188**, 26. During the siege of Pompey near Dyrrachium Caesar had sent Fufius Calenus (**192**, 15) into Achaia to win it to his support.

246, 22. **CC**: *ducenti*. These two legions were greatly depleted. For the size of Caesar's legions at the battle of Pharsalus, see on **237**, 7.

246, 24. **fama**: see on *quibus*, **97**, 17. — **auxiliis**: abl. of accompaniment; see on *comitatu*, **217**, 1.

246, 26. **Pompei morte**: the king's friends (see on **245**, 3) thought to please Caesar by bringing to him, as he landed, Pompey's head and ring. But Caesar turned away in sorrow, and afterwards had the murderers put to death. He was undoubtedly hoping to have the opportunity of pardoning Pompey, for he wrote home to his friends that the greatest pleasure which his victory afforded him was the possibility of repeatedly granting pardon to his fellow-citizens who had fought against him (Plutarch, *Life of Caesar*, 48).

246, 29. **fasces anteferrentur**: as a military commander Caesar had the ax bound up in the rods, symbolizing his absolute power. The Egyptians, who remembered, too, that he had proposed in 65 B.C. making their country a Roman province, resented this show of sovereignty in their capital. — **In hoc**: 'in this act.'

247, 5. CHAPTER 107. **Pompeianis militibus**: the soldiers who had surrendered and received pardon (**242**, 12 ff.).

247, 6. **etesiis**: the prevailing winds during the summer in the eastern Mediterranean.

247, 7. **navigantibus**: cf. *venientibus*, **229**, 26, and see note.

247, 8. **regum**: as in **246**, 17.

247, 11. **superiore consulatu**: in 59 B.C.

247, 12. **societas**: it was as a favor to Pompey that Caesar had this recognition voted to Ptolemy Auletes, who was said to have paid over $7,000,000 for it. The oppression which the collection of this money brought upon the people was avenged by the king's expulsion; see on *Ptolomaeum*, **189**, 19. — **placere**, etc.: Caesar's desire to settle the succession to the throne before leaving Egypt involved him in the Alexandrine War. See Introd. § 13.

VOCABULARY

In the derivations of compound words the first part is given only when it is not evident from the form of the compound; for example, **ad** is given in the derivation of **accēdō**, but not in that of **addūcō**.

The sign + is used in the derivations of compounds only when the two words thus united have grown together to form the compound; as **accēdō** is formed directly from **ad** + **cēdō**. In cases like **acclīvis**, on the other hand, the sign + is not admissible; for we have here not the simple union of **ad** and **clīvus**, but of **ad** and an adjective form derived from **clīvus**. Likewise **accūsō** is not a compound of **ad** and **causa**, but of **ad** and a verb form derived from **causa**.

When a word that is used in explaining derivations is preceded by the abbreviation "cf.," the vocabulary word is not derived from it, but both are descended from the same root or stem; for example, **aditus** is not derived from the verb **adeō**, but both words come from the root **i**.

A hyphen signifies that the word to which it is attached is used only in composition.

Words used in explaining derivations are translated unless they are defined in the vocabulary immediately above or below.

A

A. = **Aulus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

ā, ab [**ā** is used only before consonants, **ab** before vowels and some consonants. Eng. *of* and *off* are akin to **ab**], *prep.* with abl., *from, away from* (cf. **e, ex,** *out of*); *by; at, on, in;* **initium capit ā,** *begins at;* **ā mīllibus passuum viii,** *eight miles away.*

abdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **dīcō,** *say*], *disown;* **dictātūrā sē abdicāre,** *resign the dictatorship.*

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus [**dō,** *put*], *put away, hide.*

abdūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abductus [**dūcō,** *lead*], *lead* or *take away, carry off.*

abeō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus [**eō,** *go*], *go away, go.*

abiciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectus [**iaciō,** *throw*], *throw away, hurl.*

abiēs, abietis, *f., fir,* the tree or the timber.

abscīdō, abscīdere, abscīdī, abscīsus [**abs** (= **ab**) + **caedō,** *cut*], *cut off* or *away.*

absēns, absentis [part. of **absum**], *adj., absent, in the absence of.*

absimilis, absimile [**similis,** *like*], *unlike.*

absistō, absistere, abstitī, — [**sistō,** *place* (one's self)], *stand off, hold off.*

abstineō, abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentus [**abs** (= **ab**) + **teneō,** *hold*], *abstain from, refrain from, spare.*

abstrahō, abstrahere, abstrāxī, abstractus [**abs** (= **ab**) + **trahō,** *draw, drag*], *draw* or *drag away.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus [**sum,** *be*], *be away, be absent, be distant; be wanting* or *lacking;* **ā bellō abesse,** *take no part in war;* **nōn longius abesse quīn,** *not to be farther away than that;* **paulum abesse quīn,** *lack little of.*

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**undō**, *rise in waves*], *overflow, be rich in, abound.*

abūtor, abūtī, abūsus [**ūtor**, *use*], *use up, waste.*

ac, see **atque**.

Acarnānia, -ae, *f.*, a country of Greece, on the middle western coast, south of Ambracia.

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus [**ad** + **cēdō**, *go*], *approach, come up; be inspired in; be added;* **accēdit quod** (lit., *there is added the fact that*), **accēdit ut** (see on 89, 22), *furthermore.*

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ad** + **celerō** (from **celer**, *swift*), *hasten*], *hasten.*

acceptus, -a, -um [part. of **accipiō**], *acceptable, popular.*

accidō, accidere, accidī, — [**ad** + **cadō**, *fall*], *fall to* or *upon, fall; befall, happen* (generally of misfortunes), *arise.*

accīdō, accīdere, accīdī, accīsus [**ad** + **caedō**, *cut*], *cut into.*

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus [**ad** + **capiō**, *take*], *take, accept, receive; incur, suffer; learn, hear; take, interpret;* **fāmā accipere**, *hear of.*

acclīvis, acclīve [**ad**, **clīvus**, *slope*], *sloping, ascending.*

acclīvitās, acclīvitātis [**acclīvis**], *f.*, *upward slope, ascent.*

accommodātus, -a, -um [part. of **accommodō**], *adapted, appropriate.*

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [**ad** + **commodō**, from **commodus**, *fit*], *put on, adjust.*

accūrātē [**accūrātus**, *carefully made*], *adv.*, *carefully;* **accūrātius**, *too carefully.*

accurrō, accurrere, accurrī or accucurrī, accursūrus [**ad** + **currō**, *run*], *run to, hasten up.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ad**, **causa**, *reason*], (*bring a reason against*), *blame, accuse.*

ācerrimē, sup. of **ācriter**.

Achāia, -ae, *f.*, *Achaia;* see on 188, 26.

Achāicus, -a, -um, *Achaian.*

Achillās, -ae, *m.*, an Egyptian, commander of the king's army, one of Pompey's murderers.

aciēs, aciēī (also gen. **aciē**), *f.*, *line of battle, army* (in line of battle); see Introd. § 46.

Acīlius, Acīlī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Manius Acilius Glabrio*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War.

ācriter [**ācer**, *sharp*], *adv.*, *sharply, vigorously, fiercely.*

āctuārius, -a, -um [**āctus**, *a driving*, cf. **agō**, *drive*], (*driven*), *swift-sailing*, propelled by both oars and sails.

āctus, part. of **agō**.

Acutius, Acutī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Acutius Rufus*, a follower of Pompey in the Civil War.

acūtus, -a, -um [part. of **acuō**, *sharpen*], *sharpened, sharp.*

a.d. = **ante diem**; see on 55, 5.

ad, *prep.* with acc., *to, toward, against, until, up to; near, among, at, on; for, with reference to, according to, for the sake of;* with numerals, when it is sometimes an *adv.*, *about, toward.*

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**aequō**, *make equal*], *make equal to, make as high as; be equal to, equal;* **cursum adaequāre**, *keep up with.*

adaugeō, adaugēre, adauxī, adauctus

[**augeō**, *increase*], *increase by adding.*

Adbucillus, -ī, *m.*, a leading citizen of the Allobroges.

addō, addere, addidī, additus [**dō**, *put*], *add.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead* or *bring to; pull* (toward one); *prompt, prevail upon, persuade.*

ademptus, part. of **adimō**.

adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus [**eō**, *go*], *go to, approach, come near; visit; attack.*

adeō [**eō**, *thither*], *adv., to that point; so, to such a degree, so much.*

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus [**ferō**, *bring*], *bring to, bring, bring forward, allege; bring about, cause.*

adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectus [**faciō**, *do*], *do to, affect; visit with, fill with, afflict with.*

adfīgō, adfīgere, adfīxī, adfīxus [**fīgō**, *fix*], *fasten to.*

adfīnitās, adfīnitātis [**adfīnis**, *bordering*], *f., relationship* by marriage, *alliance.*

adflīctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **adflīgō**], *dash to pieces, wreck, damage.*

adflīgō, adflīgere, adflīxī, adflīctus [**flīgō**, *strike*], *strike against, damage; throw down.*

adfore = **adfutūrum esse**, fut. infin. of **adsum**.

adgerō, adgerere, adgessī, adgestus [**gerō**, *carry*], *bring up, add.*

adgredior, adgredī, adgressus [**gradior**, *step*], *approach, go against, attack; begin* (cf. **ingredior**).

adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**gregō**, from **grex**, *flock*], *unite in a flock;* **sē adgregāre**, *gather round, attach themselves to.*

adhibeō, adhibēre, adhibuī, adhibitus [**habeō**, *have*], *bring in* or *with, admit; employ, use;* **prīncipibus adhibitīs**, *bringing their chiefs with them.*

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [**hortor**, *urge*], *urge, encourage.*

adhūc [**ad**, *to*, + **hūc**, *hither;* cf. the similar pleonasm in Eng. *from whence*], *adv., as yet, up to this time.*

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sotiates.

adiciō, adicere, adiēcī, adiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw to, throw up* (of a siege mound against fortifications); *set near, add;* **adiectā plānitiē**, *with a plain adjacent.*

adigō, adigere, adēgī, adāctus [**agō**, *drive*], *drive to; drive home* (of piles); *throw to* the mark (of weapons).

adimō, adimere, adēmī, ademptus [**emō**, *take*], (*take to* one's self), *take away, cut off.*

aditus, -ūs [cf. **adeō**, *go to*], *m., access, approach; means of access* or *of approach;* **mercātōribus est aditus**, *traders are admitted;* **aditum dēfugere**, *avoid meeting them.*

adiungō, adiungere, adiūnxī, adiūnctus [**iungō**, *join*], *join to, annex;* **adiūnctīs Eleutetīs**, *with the Eleuteti added.*

adiūtor, adiūtōris [cf. **adiuvō**], *m., assistant.*

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus [**iuvō**, *help*], *help, aid, support.*

adlīdō, adlīdere, adlīsī, adlīsus [**laedō**, *injure*], *dash against.*

administer, administrī [**minister**, *attendant*], *m., assistant.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ministrō**, *attend*], *manage, superintend, control, execute, attend to;* **administrātum est**, *the order was executed.*

admīror, **-ārī**, **-ātus** [**mīror**, *wonder*], *wonder at, be surprised, admire.*

admisceō, admiscēre, admiscuī, admixtus [**misceō**, *mix*], *mix with, add.*

admittō, admittere, admīsī, admissus [**mittō**, *send*], *let go;* **equō admissō**, *with his horse on the gallop, at full speed;* with or without **in sē**, *be guilty of, commit.*

admodum [**ad modum**, *to the* (full) *measure*], *adv., very, exceedingly, greatly.*

admonitus, -ūs [cf. **admoneō**, *advise*], *m., advice, suggestion.*

admoveō, admovēre, admōvī, admōtus [**moveō**, *move*], *bring up.*

adnō, adnāre, adnāvī, — [**nō**, *swim*], *swim to.*

adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvī, adultus [**olēscō**, *grow*], *grow up* (to maturity).

adorior, adorīrī, adortus [**orior**, *rise*], (*rise against*), *attack* unexpectedly, *fall upon.*

adrogāns, adrogantis [part. of **adrogō**, *claim*], *adj., assuming, arrogant.*

adrogantia, -ae [**adrogāns**], *f., arrogance.*

adscīscō, adscīscere, adscīvī, adscītus [**scīscō**, *decree*], *take to* one's self by decree, *adopt.*

adservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**servō**, *save*], *watch over, guard.*

adsiduus, -a, -um [cf. **sedeō**, *sit*], (*sitting by*), *continuous, constant, permanent.*

adsistō, adsistere, adstitī, — [**sistō**, *place* (one's self)], *stand by, take a position near;* **in cōnspectū adsistere**, *appear in the presence of.*

adsuēfaciō, adsuēfacere, adsuēfēcī, adsuēfactus [cf. **adsuēscō**, **faciō**, *make*], *accustom, habituate.*

adsuēscō, adsuēscere, adsuēvī, adsuētus [**suēscō**, *get used*], *get used, become accustomed.*

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus [**sum**, *be*], *be near* or *present* or *at hand, be here* or *there.*

adulēscēns, adulēscentis [part. of **adolēsco**], *adj., young;* as *subst., young man.*

adulēscentia, -ae [**adulēscēns**], *f., youth.*

adulēscentulus, -ī [dim. of **adulēscēns**], *m., a mere boy.*

adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventūrus [**veniō**, *come*], *come to, arrive.*

adventus, -ūs [cf. **adveniō**], *m., coming, arrival.*

adversārius, -a, -um [**adversus**, part. of **advertō**], *opposed, unfavorable;* m. as *subst., opponent, enemy.*

adversus, -a, -um [part. of **advertō**], (*turned to* or *against*), *facing, opposite; unfavorable, adverse;* **adversō colle**, *uphill;* **adversō flūmine**, *up stream;* **adversā nocte**, *in the face of night;* **rēs adversae**, *misfortune.*

adversus [part. of **advertō**, cf. **rūrsus**], *prep.* with acc., *against.*

advertō, advertere, advertī, adversus [**vertō**, *turn*], *turn to;* **animum advertere** (= **animadvertere**), *observe, notice.*

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vocō**, *call*], *call, summon.*

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**volō**, *fly*], *fly to, rush upon.*

adyta, -ōrum, *n.*, pl., a Greek word for *innermost sanctuary, holy of holies;* not to be translated in **246**, 10.

aedificium, aedificī [cf. **aedificō**], *n., building.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**aedēs**, *house*, cf. **faciō**, *make*], *build.*

aedīlitās, aedīlitātis [**aedīlis**, *aedile*, a commissioner of public works, etc.], *f.*, *aedileship*.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick*.

Aeginium, Aeginī, *n.*, a city of eastern Epirus, near the Thessalian frontier.

aegrē [**aeger**], *adv.*, *with difficulty*, *hardly*; sup. **aegerrimē**, *with the greatest difficulty*.

Aegyptius, -a, -um, *Egyptian*.

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, *Egypt*, bequeathed to Rome in 81 B.C., but remaining virtually independent until 47 B.C., when Caesar established Roman supremacy.

Aemilius, Aemilī, *m.*, *Lucius Aemilius*, a decurion in Caesar's Gallic cavalry.

aequāliter [**aequālis**, *equal*], *adv.*, *evenly*, *uniformly*.

aequē [**aequus**], *adv.*, *equally*.

aequinoctium, aequinoctī [**aequus**, *equal*; **nox**, *night*], *n.*, *equinox*.

aequitās, aequitātis [**aequus**], *f.*, *evenness*; **animī aequitās**, *contentment*.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**aequus**], *make equal*, *equalize*.

aequus, -a, -um, *even*, *level*; *favorable*; *fair*, *just*; *evenly matched*; **aequō animō**, *calmly*, *patiently*.

aerāria, -ae [f. of **aerārius**, *of copper*], *f.*, *copper mine*.

aes, aeris, *n.*, *copper*; *bronze*, an alloy of copper and tin; **aes aliēnum**, *debt* (*another's money*).

aestās, aestātis [cf. **aestus**], *f.*, *summer*.

aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis [**aestimō**], *f.*, *valuation*, *appraisal*.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**aes**, *money*], *determine the* (*money*) *value of*, *rate*.

aestuārium, aestuārī [**aestus**], *n.*, *marsh* (land overflowed by tidewater).

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, *heat*; *boiling*, *tide*; pl., *hot weather*, *heat*.

aetās, aetātis, *f.*, *age*, *time of life*, of youth or old age.

aeternus, -a, -um, *eternal*, *everlasting*.

Aetōlia, -ae, *f.*, a country of central Greece.

Afrānius, Afrānī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Afranius*, in command, with Petreius, of the Pompeian forces in Spain at the beginning of the Civil War. After their defeat at Ilerda, 49 B.C., they were pardoned by Caesar, but both joined Pompey in Macedonia.

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, *Africa*; see on 170, 1.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, *African*.

Āfricus, -a, -um, *African*; m. as *subst.* (sc. **ventus**, *wind*), *the southwest wind*, blowing to Italy from Africa.

āfuī, perf. of **absum**.

ager, agrī [akin to Eng. *acre*], *m.*, cultivated *land*, *field*, *territory*, *country*; **agrī cultūra**, *cultivation of the soil*, *agriculture*.

agger, aggeris [**ad.**, cf. **gerō**, *carry*], *m.*, (*that which is carried to*), *materials for a rampart* or *for filling a trench*, *rubbish*, *earth*; *rampart*; *earthwork*, *embankment*; *siege mound*, see Introd. § 47.

agmen, agminis [**agō**, *put in motion*], *n.*, *army on the march*, *marching troops*, *column*; **novissimum agmen**, *rear* (the part that passes last); **prīmum agmen**, *van*; **in agmine**, *on the march*; see Introd. § 45.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *drive*; *do*, *act*, *transact*; *bring up* (siege sheds,

etc.); *extend* (mines); **agere dē,** *treat for, discuss, talk about;* **agere cum,** *treat with, address;* **quid agitur,** *what is going on?* **grātiās agere,** *thank.*

alacer, alacris, alacre, *quick, eager.*

alacritās, alacritātis [**alacer**], *f., readiness, eagerness, spirit.*

albus, -a, -um, *white.*

alcēs, alcis, *f., elk.*

Alesia, -ae, *f.,* principal city of the Mandubii, round which was centred the most decisive struggle of the Gallic War, 52 B.C. The name survives in the modern *Alise-Sainte-Reine.*

Alexandrīa, -ae, *f., Alexandria,* in Egypt; founded by Alexander the Great in 332 B.C., it soon became the most important commercial and literary centre of the world. Its famous library was seriously damaged in the war between Caesar and the king, 47 B.C.

aliās [acc. pl. of **alius,** *another;* sc. **vicēs,** *turns*], *adv., at another time;* **aliās . . . aliās,** *at one time . . . at another.*

aliēnātiō, aliēnātiōnis [**aliēnō,** *transfer to another*], *f., loss of allegiance.*

aliēnus, -a, -um [**alius**], *another's; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unsuitable, out of place;* **aliēnus ā** with abl., *unfavorable to, disloyal to.*

aliō [old dat. of **alius**; cf. **eōdem,** *to the same place*], *adv., to another place, elsewhere.*

aliquamdiū [acc. of **aliquī** + **diū,** *for a long time*], *adv., for some time, some time.*

aliquandō [**ali-** (of **alius**) + **quandō,** *when*], *adv., at some time, at length.*

aliquantō [abl. of **aliquantus**], *adv., somewhat, considerably.*

aliquantus, -a, -um [**ali-** (of **alius**) + **quantus,** *how great*], *considerable;* **aliquantum itineris,** *some distance.*

aliquī, -qua, -quod [**ali-** (of **alius**) + **quī,** *any*], *indef. adj. pron., some, some . . . or other* (less indefinite than *any*).

aliquis, -qua, -quid [**ali-** (of **alius**) + **quis,** *anybody*], *indef. subst. pron., somebody, something* (less indefinite than *anybody, anything,* although these meanings occur sometimes); **aliquid cōnsilī,** *some degree of discretion.*

aliquot [**ali-** (of **alius**) + **quot,** *how many*], *adj.,* indecl., *some, several;* not implying many.

aliter [cf. **alius**], *adv., otherwise, differently;* **aliter sē habēre ac,** *be different from what.*

alius, -a, -ud, *another, other, different, else;* **alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another;* **aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others;* **legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte,** *some in one place, some in another;* **alius aliī,** *one to one, another to another;* **alius atque** or **ac,** *different from.* Cf. **alter,** also **cēterī** and **reliquus.**

Allobrox, Allobrogis, *m., one of the Allobroges,* a Gallic people in the northeastern part of the Roman Transalpine Province, subject to Rome since 121 B.C. Pl. **Allobrogēs,** -um, acc. -ēs or -as, *the Allobroges.*

alō, alere, aluī, altus, *nourish, increase, feed, support, maintain, keep, raise.*

Alpēs, Alpium, *f.,* pl., *the Alps.*

alter, altera, alterum, *the other, another* (of two), *the second* (of two or more), *the next; either one;* **alter . . . alter,** *one . . . the other,*

pl., *one party . . . the other*. Cf. **alius.**

altercor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. **alter**], *dispute*.

alteruter, -tra, -trum [**alter uter**, *the other of two; which one?*], *indef. adj.*, *either* (of two).

altitūdō, altitūdinis [**altus**], *f.*, *height, depth; thickness.*

altum, -ī [n. of **altus**], *n.*, *the deep, sea, deep water.*

altus, -a, -um [part. of **alō**, *nourish*], (*grown*) *high, tall;* looked at from the top, *deep*.

alūta, -ae, *f.*, *soft leather*, prepared with alum (**alūmen**).

Amantia, -ae, *f.*, a town in Epirus southeast of Oricum.

Amantīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the people of Amantia.

ambactus, -ī, *m.*, *dependent, vassal.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on both sides of the Saône (Arar), closely related to the Haedui.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe on the western part of the coast of Belgium, whose name survives in *Amiens* (the ancient Samarobriva).

Ambibariī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Liger).

ambitus, -ūs [cf. **ambiō**, *go round*], *m.*, *going round* asking for votes, usually implying bribery; *bribery.*

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on the western bank of the upper Loire (Liger), dependents of the Haedui.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northeastern Belgium, on the west bank of the Meuse (Mosa).

ambō, -ae, -ō, *both.*

amīcē [**amīcus**], *adv.*, *in a friendly manner, kindly.*

amīcitia, -ae [**amīcus**], *f.*, *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um [cf. **amō**, *love*], *friendly, well-disposed;* m. as *subst.*, *friend.*

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus [**mittō**, *send*], *send away, let go, lose.*

amor, amōris [cf. **amō**, *love*], *m.*, *love.*

Amphipolis, -is, *f.*, an important commercial city of eastern Macedonia, formerly a colony of Athens.

Ampius, Ampī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Titus Ampius Balbus*, a friend of Pompey and bitter opponent of Caesar.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**amplus**, cf. **faciō**, *make*], *extend, increase.*

amplitūdō, amplitūdinis [**amplus**], *f.*, *extent, size.*

amplius [comp. of **amplē**, *largely*], *adv.*, *more, further;* sup. **amplissimē**, *most liberally.*

amplus, -a, -um, *of large extent, great; distinguished, illustrious; splendid;* **amplius**, n. comp. as *subst.*, *more.*

an, *conj.*, used only in questions, *or.*

Anartēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe in Dacia.

Ancalitēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a British tribe.

anceps, ancipitis [**an-** (= **ambi-**, *round*), **caput**, *head*], *adj.*, (*having a head on both sides*), *double;* **anceps proelium**, *battle of two fronts* (of an army facing in two directions).

ancora, -ae, *f.*, *anchor;* **in ancorīs, ad ancorās, ad ancoram**, *at anchor.*

Andēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a Celtic people north of the Loire (Liger), whose name survives in the modern *Anjou.*

Androsthenēs, -is, *m.*, a military governor of Thessaly.

ānfrāctus, -ūs [**an-** (= **ambi-**, *round*), cf. **frangō**, *break*], *m.*, *winding* (of a road).

angulus, -ī, *m.*, *corner*, *angle*.

angustē [**angustus**], *adv.*, *narrowly*, *closely*; *barely*.

angustiae, -ārum [**angustus**], *f.*, pl. (*narrows*), *narrow pass*; *straits*, *difficulties*; *scarcity*; with or without **locī**, *narrow quarters*, *tight place*.

angustus, -a, -um [cf. **angor**, *a strangling*], *narrow*, *contracted*; *scanty*; **rēs est in angustō**, *the situation is critical*.

anima, -ae [cf. **animus**], *f.*, *breath*; *soul*.

animadversiō, animadversiōnis [cf. **animadvertō**], *f.*, *taking action* (mild for *punishment*).

animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus [**animum advertō**, *turn the mind to*], *turn the mind to*, *attend to*, *take action against* (mild for *punish*); *notice*, *observe*.

animal, animālis [**anima**], *n.*, *living thing*, *animal* (including man).

animus, -ī [cf. **anima**], *mind*, *heart*; *feelings*, *character*, *spirit*, *courage*; **animī causā**, *for amusement*; **animī magnitūdō**, *nobility of purpose*.

annōtinus, -a, -um [cf. **annus**], *of the year before*, *last year's*.

annus, -ī, *m.*, *year*.

annuus, -a, -um [**annus**], *of a year*, *yearly*, *annual*.

Anquillāria, -ae, *f.*, a seaport in Africa on the eastern side of the Gulf of Carthage.

ānser, ānseris, *m.*, *goose*.

ante, (1) *adv.* of place or time, *before*, *previously*; (2) *prep.* with acc., of place or time, *before*, *in front of*.

anteā [**ante ea**, *before this*], *adv.*, *before*, *previously*.

antecēdō, antecēdere, antecessī, antecessus [**cēdō**, *go*], *go before* or *ahead of*, *get the start*, *arrive before*; *take precedence of*, *excel*, *surpass*; **multum antecēdere**, *get a long lead*.

anteferō, anteferre, antetulī, antelātus [**ferō**, *carry*], *carry before*; *place before*; **uter alterī anteferrētur**, *as to which was the better man*.

antemna, -ae, *f.*, *yard* (for sails).

antepōnō, antepōnere, anteposuī, antepositus [**pōnō**, *put*], *put before*, *give precedence*.

antesīgnānus, -ī [**ante sīgnum**, *before the standard*], *m.*, originally a soldier of the first line, fighting in front of the standards; in Caesar's army, *a skirmisher*, belonging to a body of picked men attached to each legion; see on **226**, 25.

Antiochēnsēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., *the people of Antioch*.

Antiochīa, -ae, *f.*, *Antioch*, capital of the Greek kingdom of Syria, given its independence by Pompey in 64 B.C.; an early centre of Christianity, the name of Christian being first used there (*Acts* 11, 26).

Antiochus, -ī, *m.*, king of Commagene, a supporter of Pompey in the Civil War.

antīquitus [**antīquus**], *adv.*, *long ago*, *of old*, *in ancient times*, *from ancient times*.

antīquus, -a, -um [cf. **ante**], *former*, *ancient*, *old*.

Antistius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōniānus, -a, -um, *of Antonius, Antony's.*

Antōnius, Antōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Mark Antony*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars. He was a member of the second triumvirate, and shared with Octavian the rule of the Roman world. His defeat off Actium, in 31 B.C., left Octavian sole ruler. (2) *Gaius Antonius*, see on 189, 9.

Ap. = **Appius**, Appī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus, *uncover, open.*

apertē [**apertus**], *adv.*, *openly, manifestly.*

apertus, -a, -um [part. of **aperiō**], *exposed, open.*

Apollō, Apollinis, *m.*, a Greek deity, early adopted by the Romans. He was the god of light and healing, and the patron of prophecy, music, and poetry.

Apollōnia, -ae, *f.*, a large and important Greek city in the province of Macedonia, allied with Rome since 229 B.C.; see also on 190, 3.

Apollōniātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., the people of Apollonia.

apparātus, -ūs [**apparō**, *prepare*], *m.*, *equipments*, including engines of war and materials of every sort.

appellātiō, appellātiōnis [**appellō**, *call*], *f.*, *addressing, accosting.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, name, address, accost.*

appellō, appellere, appulī, appulsus [**ad** + **pellō**, *drive*], *bring in shore* (of ships); **nāvēs appelluntur**, *ships come to land;* intr., *land.*

appetō, appetere, appetīvī or appetiī, appetītus [**ad** + **petō**, *seek*], *seek for; strike at; approach, be at hand.*

applicō, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātus [**ad** + **plicō**, *fold*], *attach;* **sē applicāre ad**, *lean against.*

appōnō, appōnere, apposuī, appositus [**ad** + **pōnō**, *put*], *put beside, set near.*

apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ad** + **portō**, *carry*], *carry to, bring.*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**ad** + **propinquō**, from **propinquus**, *near*], *approach, come near, draw near.*

appulsus, part. of **appellō**.

Apr. = **Aprīlis**, Aprīle, *adj.*, *of April.*

Apsus, -ī, *m.*, a river of southwestern Macedonia, emptying into the Ionian Sea just north of Apollonia.

aptus, -a, -um, *fitted, suitable.*

apud, *prep.* with acc., *at, among, in, with, at the house* or *quarters of, before* (in the presence of); **apud Caesarem in honōre esse**, *be honored by Caesar.*

Apulia, -ae, *f.*, a fertile district on the Adriatic coast of south central Italy.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, *water.*

aquātiō, aquātiōnis [**aquor**], *f.*, *getting water.*

aquila, -ae, *f.*, *eagle;* a silver or bronze eagle on a staff was the standard of the Roman legion; see Introd. § 40.

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul; see on 57, 27.

aquilifer, aquiliferī [**aquila**, cf. **ferō**, *bear*], *m.*, *eagle-bearer*, the standard-bearer of a legion, corresponding to the color-sergeant of a regiment; see Introd. § 40.

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*, the country of the Aquitanians, in southwestern Gaul.

Aquītānus, -ī, *m.*, *an Aquitanian*, a native of southwestern Gaul between the Garonne (Garumna) and the Pyrenees; pl., *the Aquitani* or *Aquitanians*.

aquor, -ārī, -ātus [**aqua**], *get water*.

Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, *m.*, *the Saône*, a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Rhone.

arbiter, arbitrī, *m.*, *eye-witness; appraiser, umpire*.

arbitrium, arbitrī [**arbiter**], *n.*, *will, decision, judgment; authority*.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [**arbiter**], (*state one's belief as a witness*), *think, suppose, believe;* with pass. force, *be thought*, 190, 25.

arbor, arboris, *f.*, *tree*.

arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītus, *send for, summon, call in*.

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus, *be afire, burn*.

arduus, -a, -um, *steep, high; difficult*.

Aremoricus, -a, -um, *Aremorican*, of the states on the northwestern coast of Gaul.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, *silver; silverware*.

āridus, -a, -um [cf. **āreō**, *be dry*], *dry;* n. as *subst.*, *dry land*.

ariēs, arietis, *m.*, *ram; battering ram; buttress, prop*.

Ariobarzānēs, -is, *m.*, king of Cappadocia.

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, a German chief, defeated by Caesar in Gaul, 58 B.C.; see p. 249.

arma, -ōrum, *n.* (*things fitted to the body*), *arms, armor, equipment*.

armāmenta, -ōrum [**armō**, *equip*], *n.*, pl., *tackle, rigging*.

armātūra, -ae [**armō**], *f.*, *armor, equipment; troops;* **levis armātūrae peditēs**, *light infantry*.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**arma**], *arm, equip;* perf. part. pl. as *subst.*, *armed men*.

ars, artis, *f.*, *skill; art, science*.

artē [**artus**, *close*], *adv.*, *closely*.

articulus, -ī [dim. of **artus**, *joint*], *m.*, *joint*.

artificium, artificī [**artifex**, *artificer*], *n.*, *trade*.

Arvernus, -a, -um, *Arvernian;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the Arverni*, one of the most powerful tribes of Gaul, on the headwaters of the Allier (Elaver) and touching the northern boundary of the Province.

arx, arcis, *f.*, *stronghold, fortress, citadel*.

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus [**ad** + **scandō**, *climb*], *climb, ascend, scale, mount*.

ascēnsus, -ūs [cf. **ascendō**], *m.*, *ascent, ascending, means of ascent*.

Asia, -ae, *f.*, the Roman province of *Asia*, organized in 129 B.C. from the kingdom of Pergamus, which was bequeathed to Rome in 133 B.C. by Attalus III. It comprised the districts of Mysia, Lydia, Caria, and Phrygia.

Asiāticus, -a, -um, *Asiatic*.

Asparagium, Asparagī, *n.*, a town on the Genusus, half-way between Dyrrachium and Apollonia.

aspectus, -ūs [cf. **aspiciō**, *look at*], *m.*, *appearance; sight*.

asper, aspera, asperum, *rough, wild*.

at, *conj.*, *but, yet*.

Athamānia, -ae, *f.*, a district of southeastern Epirus.

Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *Athens*, principal city of the province of Achaia. In Caesar's time it was still famous as a centre of philosophical study.

atque [**ad** + **que**, *and to* the foregoing], *conj.*, *and, and besides, and*

furthermore; as, than; **contrā atque,** *contrary to what;* **alius atque,** *different from, other than.* Before consonants **ac** is often used; this is formed from **atque,** like **nec** from **neque,** by syncope of final *e.*

Atrebās, Atrebātis, *adj., Atrebatian;* m. pl. as *subst., the Atrebates,* a tribe of Belgic Gaul west of the Nervii.

Ātrius, Ā'rī, *m.,* a Roman gentile or clan name. *Quintus Atrius,* in command of Caesar's camp on the coast of Britain, 54 B.C.

attenuō, -āre, āvī, -ātus [**ad + tenuō** (cf. **tenuis**), *make thin*], *reduce, weaken.*

Attiānus, -a, -um, *of Attius.*

attingō, attingere, attigī, attāctus [**ad + tangō,** *touch*], *touch, border on; reach, extend to.*

Attius, Attī, *m.,* a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Vārus.**

attribuō, attribuere, attribuī, attribūtus [**ad + tribuō,** *assign*], *assign, allot.*

attulī, perf. of **adferō.**

Atuatucī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul east of the Nervii.

auctor, auctōris [cf. **augeō**], *m., promoter, adviser, source* (of a report).

auctōritās, auctōritātis [**auctor**], *f., influence, reputation, prestige; example.*

audācia, -ae [**audāx,** *bold*], *f., boldness, daring.*

audācter [**audāx,** *bold*], *adv., boldly.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep., dare, venture.*

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, *hear, listen to, hear of.*

audītiō, audītiōnis [**audiō**], *f., hearing; report.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase, add to; exaggerate.*

Aulercī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a people of several branches in Celtic Gaul. (1) **Aulercī Eburovīcēs,** in the north, south of the lower Seine (Sequana). (2) **Aulercī Brannovīcēs,** south of the Haedui, to whom they were subject. (3) **Aulercī Cēnomanī,** in the northwest, south of Aremorica.

aura, -ae, *f., breeze.*

aureus, -a, -um [**aurum,** *gold*], *of gold, gold.*

aurīga, -ae [cf. **aurea,** *bridle,* and **agō,** *drive*], *m., charioteer, driver.*

auris, auris, *f., ear.*

Auruncul̄eius, Auruncul̄eī, *m.,* a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Cotta.**

Auscī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a tribe of eastern Aquitania.

auster, austrī, *m., south wind.*

aut, *conj., or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

autem, *conj., but; moreover.*

autumnus, -ī, *m., autumn.*

auxiliāris, auxiliāre [**auxilium**], *auxiliary;* m. pl. as *subst., auxiliaries* (= **auxilia**).

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus [**auxilium**], *render aid, help.*

auxilium, auxilī [cf. **augeō**], *n., aid, assistance, resource;* **auxilī causā,** *as a reënforcement;* pl., *auxiliary troops* (light-armed infantry furnished by allied and subject states), *reënforcements.*

Avaricēnsis, -e, *of Avaricum.*

Avaricum, -ī, *n.,* principal town of the Bituriges, now *Bourges.*

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus [**vertō,** *turn*], *turn away* or *aside; alienate;* with or without **domum,** *appropriate;* **āversus,** *turned away, in the rear;* **āversum hostem,** *an*

enemy turned in flight; **āversī circumveniuntur,** *they are surrounded in the rear.*

avis, avis, *f., bird.*

avus, -ī, *m., grandfather.*

B

Baculus, -ī, see **Sextius.**

Bagrada, -ae, *m.,* the principal river of the province Africa, now the Medjerda.

Balbus, -ī, *m.,* a Roman family name. *Cornelius Balbus,* a follower of Caesar in the Civil War.

balteus, -ī, *m., belt,* passing over the left shoulder and supporting the sword on the right side.

barbarus, -a, -um, *foreign, of the natives; uncivilized, barbarous;* m. pl. as *subst., savages, barbarians, natives.*

Basilus, -ī, *m.,* a Roman family name; see **Minucius.**

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., *the Batavi* or *Batavians,* occupying the islands formed by the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, *m.,* pl., *the Belgae* or *Belgians,* inhabiting the district between Celtic Gaul and the lower Rhine. They were of mixed Celtic and German stock.

Belgium, Belgī, *n.,* the country of the Belgae, in northeastern Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [**bellicus**], *fond of war, warlike.*

bellicus, -a, -um [**bellum**], *of war, in war;* **Porta Bellica,** *the War Gate,* one of the gates of Utica.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**bellum**], *wage war, carry on war.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a powerful tribe of southwestern Belgium. The name survives in *Beauvais.*

bellum, -ī [old **duellum,** from **duo,** *two;* "it takes two to make a quarrel"], *n., war, campaign, warfare.*

bene [cf. **bonus,** *good*], comp. **melius,** sup. **optimē,** *adv., well, successfully.*

beneficiārius, beneficiārī [**beneficium**], *m., favorite,* a soldier who had received, by the favor of the commander, exemption from hard and disagreeable tasks.

beneficium, beneficī [**beneficus,** *generous*], *n., favor, service, kindness.*

benevolentia, -ae [**benevolēns** (**bene** + part. of **volō,** *wish*), *well-wishing*], *f., good-will.*

Bessī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a tribe in western Thrace.

Bibracte, Bibractis, *n.,* chief town of the Haedui, on the hill now called Mont Beuvray.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a British tribe.

Bibulus, -ī, *m.,* a Roman family name. *Marcus Calpurnius Bibulus,* admiral of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War; see also on 190, 11.

bīduum, bīduī [**bī-,** akin to **duo** (cf. **bellum**), cf. **diēs,** *day*], *n., two days.*

biennium, biennī [**bi-,** akin to **duo** (cf. **bellum**), **annus,** *year*], *n.,* a period of *two years.*

Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.,* pl., a tribe of southern Aquitania. The name survives in the modern *Bigorre.*

bīnī, -ae, -a [**bi-,** akin to **duo** (cf. **bellum**)], *distr. num., two each, two at a time, in pairs;* with nouns which are used only in the pl., *two.*

bipedālis, bipedāle [**bi-,** akin to **duo** (cf. **bellum**), **pēs,** *foot*], *two feet* in thickness.

bipertītō [**bi-,** akin to **duo** (cf. **bellum**), + part. of **partior,** *divide*], *adv., in two divisions.*

birēmis, birēmis [**bi-,** akin to **duo**

(cf. **bellum**), **rēmus**, *oar*], *f.*, *bireme*, a galley with two banks of oars; cf. **trirēmis**.

bis [akin to **duo**, cf. **bellum**], *num. adv.*, *twice*.

Bīthȳnia, -ae, *f.*, a district of Asia Minor, on the shore of the Black Sea, bequeathed to Rome in 74 B.C., and organized with western Pontus as a province by Pompey in 65 B.C.

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe of central Gaul, west of the Haedui.

Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, a chieftain of the Nervii.

Boeōtia, -ae, *f.*, a district of Achaia (Greece) lying north of Attica.

Bōī, Bōiōrum, dat. and abl. Bōīs, acc. Bōiōs, *m.*, pl., a Celtic people, from whose name *Bohemia* is derived. A part of them settled in the Haeduan country between the Allier (Elaver) and the Loire (Liger).

bonitās, bonitātis [**bonus**], *f.*, *goodness; fertility*.

bonum, -ī [n. of **bonus**], *n.*, *good, advantage, blessing;* pl., *goods, possessions*.

bonus, -a, -um, comp. **melior**, sup. **optimus**, *good, kindly, useful*.

bōs, bovis, gen. pl., boum, *m.* and *f.*, *ox, cow*.

bracchium, bracchī, *n.*, *arm*.

Brannovīcēs, -um, *m.*, pl., see **Aulercī**.

brevī [abl. of **brevis**], *adv.*, *in a short time, soon*.

brevis, breve, *short, brief*.

brevitās, brevitātis [**brevis**], *f.*, *shortness*.

Britannī, Britannōrum, *m.*, pl., *the Britons, natives of Britain*.

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, *Britain*, first visited by Romans, under Caesar, 55 and 54 B.C.

brūma, -ae [for **brevuma**, old sup. of **brevis**, sc. **diēs**, *day*], *f.*, *the winter solstice*.

Brundisīnus, -a, -um, *of Brundisium*.

Brundisium, Brundisī, *n.*, a Tarentine colony on the southeastern coast of Italy, which came under Roman control in the third century B.C., and was thenceforth one of the principal naval stations of Italy. It was the southern terminus of the Appian Way, and was then, as it is now, the port of departure for Greece and the East. The name is preserved in the modern *Brindisi*.

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, a famous Roman family name. *Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus*, an able lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars; see also on **88**, 9.

būcinātor, būcinātōris, *m.*, *bugler*, who gave the signals for the change of sentries during the night.

Būthrōtum, -ī, *n.*, a town of Epirus opposite northern Corcyra, now *Butrinto*.

Byllidēnsēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., the people of Byllis.

Byllis, -idis, *f.*, a town southeast of Apollonia.

C

C. = **Gāius, Gāī**, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

C = **centum**, *hundred;* **CC** = **ducentī**; **CCC** = **trecentī**; **CCCC** = **quadringentī**; **CX** = **centum decem**.

cacūmen, cacūminis, *n.*, *point, top*.

cadāver, cadāveris [cf. **cadō**], *n.*, *corpse*.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall; be killed; fall out, happen*.

Cadūrcī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a small tribe of southwestern Gaul, dependents of the Arverni.

caedēs, caedis [cf. **caedō**], *f.*, *murder, carnage, massacre.*

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut, cut down.*

caelestis, caeleste [**caelum**, *heaven*], *heavenly;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the gods.*

caeruleus, -a, -um [for **caeluleus**, from **caelum**, *sky*], *dark blue.*

Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Julius Caesar;* see Introd. §§ 1 ff. (2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, a partisan of Pompey during the Civil War; see also on 170, 9.

caespes, caespitis, *m.*, *sod, turf.*

calamitās, calamitātis, *f.*, *disaster, misfortune, damage.*

Calēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Fufius Calenus*, a political supporter of Caesar, and one of his lieutenants in the last year of the Gallic campaign and throughout the Civil War.

Caletēs, -um, or **Caletī**, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a coast tribe at the mouth of the Seine (Sequana).

callidus, -a, -um [cf. **calleō**, *be experienced*], *experienced, shrewd.*

cālō, cālōnis, *m.*, *soldier's servant.*

campester, campestris, campestre [**campus**], *of* or *in the plain.*

campus, -ī, *m.*, *plain, field.*

Candāvia, -ae, *f.*, a mountainous district east of Dyrrachium.

Canīnius, Canīnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars.

canō, canere, cecinī, —, *sing;* of an instrument, *sound, play;* **receptuī canere**, *sound a retreat.*

Cantabrī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., *the Cantabri* or *Cantabrians*, a warlike tribe of northern Spain.

Cantium, Cantī, *n.*, *Kent*, in south-eastern Britain.

Canulēius, Canulēī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Canuleius*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War.

capillus, -ī [cf. **caput**], *m.*, *hair* (collectively).

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, take possession of, seize, capture, catch; incur, feel; reach* a place; *captivate, charm;* **initium capere**, *begin;* **cōnsilium capere**, *form a plan, plan.*

Cappadocia, -ae, *f.*, a kingdom in the central eastern part of Asia Minor, which Pompey, when he was organizing the East, in 63 B.C., left nominally independent.

capra, -ae, *f.*, *she-goat, goat.*

captīvus, -ī [cf. **capiō**], *m.*, *captive, prisoner.*

captus, -ūs [cf. **capiō**], *m.*, *capacity;* **ut est captus Germānōrum**, *from a German standpoint.*

Capua, -ae, *f.*, the principal city of Campania, famous for its wealth and luxury, now *Santa Maria di Capua.*

caput, capitis, *n.*, *head; mouth* of a river; *civil rights; life;* pl. in enumerations, *souls* (cf. 'ten head of cattle'); **capitis poena**, *penalty of death;* **capitis damnāre**, *condemn to death.*

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.*, *Carcassonne*, a city of the western part of the Province.

carīna, -ae, *f.*, *keel, bottom* of a ship.

Carnutēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe of central Gaul. Their name is preserved in the modern *Chartres.*

carō, carnis, *f.*, *flesh, meat.*

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptus, *pluck, pick at, criticise.*

carrus, -ī, *m.*, *cart*, with two wheels, used for carrying freight.

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*, *beloved.*

Carvilius, Carvilī, *m.*, a Briton, king of a part of Kent.

caseus, caseī, *m.*, *cheese.*

Cassī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a British tribe.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *of Cassius.*

cassis, cassidis, *f.*, *helmet*, of metal. Cf. **galea.**

Cassius, Cassī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B.C., slain in a battle with the Tigurini. (2) *Gaius Cassius Longinus*, an officer of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War; see also on 190, 8.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, a British chief, appointed commander against Caesar in 54 B.C.

castellum, -ī [dim. of **castrum**, *a fortified place*], *fort*, *redoubt*, *stronghold.*

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, a Sequanian nobleman.

castīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**castus**, *pure*, cf. **agō**, *do*], *correct*, *reprove*, *censure.*

Castor, -oris, *m.*, *Tarcondarius Castor*, a tetrarch in Galatia, son-in-law of Deiotarus. He sent a small contingent of cavalry under his son Castor to support Pompey in the Civil War.

castra, -ōrum [pl. of **castrum**, *a fortified place*], *n.*, *camp* (which was always fortified); **castra movēre**, *break camp*; see Introd. §§ 43, 44.

Castra Cornēlia, *n.*, pl., *Camp Cornelia*, a place on the coast of Africa near Utica; see on 171, 11.

cāsus, -ūs [cf. **cadō**, *fall*], *m.*, *a fall; chance*, *occurrence*, *fortune* (good or bad); *accident*, *mischance*, *fate; good luck;* **cāsū**, *by chance;* **extrēmus cāsus**, *the last emergency*, *direst extremity.*

Catamantāloedēs, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, *chain.*

Caturīgēs, -um, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe between the hither and the farther province.

causa, -ae, *f.*, *cause*, *reason; excuse*, *pretext; case* (at law), *matter in dispute;* abl. after a gen., *for the sake of;* **causam dīcere**, *plead a case*, *stand trial;* **in eādem causā**, *in the same position;* **per causam**, *on the pretext.*

cautēs, cautis, *f.*, *jagged rock*, *reef.*

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on one's guard.*

Cavillōnum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Haedui on the Saône (Arar). The name is preserved in the modern *Châlon-sur-Saône.*

cecidī, perf. of **cadō.**

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *go away*, *give way*, *retreat*, *retire; yield.*

celer, celeris, celere, *swift*, *sudden*, *speedy.*

celeritās, celeritātis [**celer**], *f.*, *speed*, *quickness*, *rapidity.*

celeriter [**celer**], *adv.*, *quickly*, *speedily.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **clam**, *secretly*], *conceal.*

Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, *the Celts*, inhabiting Gallia Celtica; see on 51, 3.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a British tribe.

Cēnomanī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl.; see **Aulercī.**

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *estimate*, *hold an opinion*, *propose*, *urge*, *vote.*

cēnsus, -ūs [cf. **cēnseō**], *m.*, *census, numbering.*

centō, centōnis, *m.*, *patchwork quilt.*

centum or **C**, *hundred.*

centuria, -ae [**centum**], *f.*, *century*, a division of the legion containing nominally a hundred men; see Introd. § 28.

centuriō, centuriōnis [**centuria**], *m.*, *centurion*, commander of a century; see Introd. § 35.

Ceraunii, -ōrum (sc. **montēs**), *m.*, pl., *the Ceraunian Mountains*, a range along the coast of northwestern Epirus. With the use of the pl. adj. as *subst.*, cf. 'the Alleghanies, the Rockies.'

cernō, cernere, crēvī, certus (-crētus in cpds., see **dēcernō**), *separate;* esp. of sight, *distinguish, make out, see.*

certāmen, certāminis [**certō**, *strive*], *n.*, *strife, struggle, contest.*

certātiō, certātiōnis [**certō**, *strive*], *f.*, *strife.*

certē [**certus**], *adv.*, *certainly, surely; at any rate, at least.*

certus, -a, -um [part. of **cernō**], *certain, sure, specified, definite, reliable, exact, regular;* **certiōrem facere**, *inform, tell;* **certī quid esset**, *what it really meant.*

cervus, -ī, *m.*, *stag;* pl., in military language, *spreading branches* (like stag's horns, planted as an obstacle to an enemy).

cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, pl., *the rest, the others.* Cf. **reliquus** and **alius.**

Ceutronēs, -um, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe between the hither and the farther province.

chara, -ae, *f.*, *chara*, an unknown vegetable.

cibāria, cibāriōrum [**cibus**], *n.*, *provisions;* **molita cibāria**, *meal.*

cibus, -ī, *m.*, *food.*

Cicerō, Cicerōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, brother of the great orator, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

Cilicia, -ae, *f.*, the southeastern district of Asia Minor, a stronghold of pirates, permanently organized as a province by Pompey, in 64 B.C., and extended to include Isauria and Pamphylia.

Ciliciēnsis, -e, *Cilician.*

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German people who overran Gaul; see on 161, 24.

Cingetorīx, Cingetorīgis, *m.*, a British king in Kent.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround, encircle; man* (of works encircling a place under siege).

cippus, -ī, *m.*, *stake, boundary-stake* (as a soldier's joke, see 157, 14).

circiter [**circus**, *circle*], *adv.*, *about.*

circuitus, -ūs [cf. **circumeō**], *m.*, *circuit, roundabout route;* **in circuitū**, *all round;* **magnitūdō circuitūs**, *the distance round* a thing.

circulus, -ī [dim. of **circus**, *circle*], *m.*, *circle; social group.*

circum [acc. of **circus**, *circle*], *prep.* with acc., *around, round about.*

circumclūdō, circumclūdere, circumclūsī, circumclūsus [**claudō**, *shut*], *inclose, surround, encircle.*

circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus [**dō**, *give*], *put round; surround, encircle.*

circumdūcō, circumdūcere, circumdūxī, circumductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead round.*

circumeō, circumīre, circumiī, circumitus [**eō**, *go*], *go round; go round to, visit one after another; surround.*

circumfundō, circumfundere, circumfūdī, circumfūsus [**fundō**, *pour*], *pour round; surround;* pass., *throng round.*

circummūniō, circummūnīre, circummūnīvī, circummūnītus [**mūniō**, *fortify*], *wall round, invest, fortify.*

circumplector, circumplectī, circumplexus [**plectō**, *intertwine*], *surround; build an inclosing line of works.*

circumsistō, circumsistere, circumstetī, — [**sistō**, *place* (one's self)], *surround, beset.*

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vāllō**, *fortify with a rampart*], *blockade, invest.*

circumvehor, circumvehī, circumvectus [**vehō**, *carry*], (*be carried round*), *ride round, come round.*

circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventus [**veniō**, *come*], *come round, surround; impose upon, deceive* (cf. "*I'll get round him*").

cis, *prep.* with acc., *on this side of.*

citātus, -a, -um [part. of **citō**, *put in quick motion*], *swift, rapid;* **citātus fertur,** *flows rapidly;* **equō citātō,** *with his horse at full gallop.*

citerior, citerius [cf. **citrā**], *comp. adj.*, *nearer, hither;* **Gallia** or **prōvincia citerior,** *hither Gaul, i.e.* on the side of the Alps nearer Rome.

citō [abl. of **citus**, *quick*], *adv.*, *quickly;* sup. **citissimē**, *very quickly.*

citrā [cf. **cis**], *prep.* with acc., *on this side of.*

cīvīlis, cīvīle [**cīvis**], *of citizens, civil.*

cīvis, cīvis, *m.*, *citizen.*

cīvitās, cīvitātis [**cīvis**], *f.*, *state, nation; the citizens* collectively; *citizenship.*

clam, *adv.*, *secretly; prep.* with abl., *unknown to.*

clāmor, clāmōris [cf. **clāmō**, *call out*], *m.*, *shouting, shouts, outcry.*

clārē [**clārus**, *clear*], *adv.*, *clearly, distinctly.*

classicum, -ī, *n.*, *signal, trumpet-call.*

classis, classis, *f.*, *fleet.*

Claudius, Claudī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, consul 54 B.C.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close;* **agmen claudere,** *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, -ī [cf. **claudō**], *m.*, *nail, spike.*

Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, a famous queen of Egypt. She was driven from her throne by her brother (see on **244**, 20), but was restored by Caesar in 47 B.C. She is best known as the charmer of Mark Antony, who for her sake became a traitor to his country; see Shakspere's *Antony and Cleopatra.*

cliēns, clientis [= **cluēns**, part. of **clueō**, *hear*], *m.*, (*hearer*), *client, dependent,* a free man who attached himself to a noble, and in return for services received the nobleman's protection. Used also of states.

clientēla, -ae [**cliēns**], *f.*, *clientship;* pl. *clients,* (of states) *dependencies;* **sē in clientēlam dicāre,** *attach themselves as dependents.*

clīvus, -ī, *m.*, *slope, ascent.*

Clōdius, Clōdī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Aulus Clodius*, a follower of Caesar in the Civil War; not to be confused with the demagogue, Publius Clodius, who was murdered by Milo, 52 B.C.

Clupea, -ae, *f.*, a seaport in Africa southeast of the Promontory of

Mercury. The name survives in the modern *Kelibia*.

Cn. = **Gnaeus**, Gnaeī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **acervō**, *heap up*], *heap up with* the others.

coācta, -ōrum [part. of **cōgō**, *bring together*], *n.*, pl., *felt*, coarse, thick cloth, made of closely pressed wool or hair.

coāctus, part. of **cōgō**.

coagmentum, -ī [**co-** (= **com-**), cf. **agō**, *drive*], *n.*, *joining*, *crevice*.

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **artō**, *make close*], *crowd together*.

Cocosātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania.

coëmō, coëmere, coēmī, coëmptus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **emō**, *buy*], *buy up*.

coëō, coīre, coiī, coitūrus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **eō**, *go*], *go* or *come together*, *unite*.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus (only in the perf. system), *began*; **coepī** is used with an act. infin., **coeptus sum** with a pass. infin.

coërceō, coërcēre, coërcuī, coërcitus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **arceō**, *shut up*], *restrain*, *check*.

cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis [**cōgitō**], *f.*, *deliberating*; *planning*.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **agitō**, *ponder*], *ponder*, *reflect*, *consider*, *think*; *have in mind*, *plan*.

cōgnātiō, cōgnātiōnis [**cōgnātus**, *related by birth*, from **con-** + part. of **(g)nāscor**, *be born*], *f.*, *blood-relationship*; *persons related by birth*, *clan*, *kindred*.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus [**con-** + **(g)nōscō**, *learn*], *learn*, *learn of*, *find out*, *ascertain*, *perceive*; *investigate*; *get acquainted with*; in perf. system, *know*, *be acquainted with*.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **agō**, *drive*], *bring together*, *gather*, *collect*; *compel*, *force*; **coāctus**, *under compulsion*.

cohors, cohortis, *f.*, *cohort*, *company*, the tenth part of a legion; see Introd. § 28.

cohortātiō, cohortātiōnis [**cohortor**], *f.*, *encouragement*, *address of encouragement*.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus [**co-** (= **com-**) + **hortor**, *urge*], *encourage*, *address words of encouragement*, *urge*; **cohortātī inter sē**, *urging each other*.

colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus [**com-** + **legō**, *gather*], *gather together*, *collect*; *acquire*; **sē colligere**, *recover one's self*, *rally*.

collis, collis, *m.*, *hill*.

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *till*, *cultivate*; *worship*.

colōnia, -ae [**colōnus**, *colonist*, cf. **colō** and **incolō**], *f.*, *colony*, *settlement*.

color, colōris, *m.*, *color*.

com-, **con-**, **co-** [same word as the prep. **cum**], used only in composition, *with*, *together*; as intensive, *altogether*, *completely*.

combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combustus [cf. **bustum**, *funeral pyre*], *burn up*, *consume*.

comes, comitis [**com-**, cf. **itum**, part. of **eō**, *go*], *m.*, *associate*, *companion*, *sharer*.

comitātus, -ūs [**comitor**, *accompany*], *m.*, *escort*.

comitia, comitiōrum [**com-**, cf. **itum**, part. of **eō**, *go*], *n.*, pl., *assembly* of the Roman citizens; *election*, held by the assembled citizens.

Commāgēnus, -a, -um, *of Commagene*, an independent kingdom just north of Syria.

commeātus, -ūs [**commeō**], *m.*, *going back and forth, trip; supplies, provisions.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**memorō**, *call to mind*], *call to mind, remind; mention, relate.*

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**mandō**, *give over*], *commit for protection, intrust, commend, recommend.*

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**meō**, *go*], *go and come, go back and forth;* with **ad**, *visit, resort to.*

commīlitō, commīlitōnis, [**mīles**, *soldier*], *m.*, *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

comminus [**manus**, *hand*], *adv.*, *hand to hand, in close combat.*

commissūra, -ae [cf. **committō**], *f.*, *joint, juncture.*

committō, committere, commīsī, commissus [**mittō**, *send*], *send together, join; trust, place confidence in; intrust, commit; expose;* with **proelium**, *begin battle;* **proeliō rem committere**, *risk a battle;* with **ut** or **quārē**, *give occasion for, permit.*

Commius, Commī, *m.*, a chief of the Atrebates, appointed king by Caesar, to whom he afterwards proved unfaithful.

commodē [**commodus**], *adv.*, *conveniently, to advantage, readily;* **nōn satis commodē**, *not very easily.*

commodum, -ī [n. of **commodus**], *n.*, *advantage, profit, convenience; good things.*

commodus, -a, -um [**modus**, *measure*], (*having the same measure with* anything taken as a standard), *fit, suitable; convenient, advantageous, good.*

commonefaciō, commonefacere, commonefēcī, commonefactus [cf. **commoneō**, *remind*, **faciō**, *make*], *remind.*

commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtus [**moveō**, *move*], *move violently, disturb, unsettle, alarm.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **commūnis**], (*make common*), *share, communicate; consult;* **cum dōtibus commūnicāre**, *add to the dowry in a common fund.*

commūniō, commūnīre, commūnīvī, commūnītus [**mūniō**, *fortify*], *fortify strongly, build* (of fortifications).

commūnis, commūne [cf. **mūnus**, *duty*], *common, in common, common to all, general;* **commūnī cōnsiliō**, *with a common purpose.*

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis [**commūtō**], *f.*, *change.*

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**mūtō**, *change*], *change entirely, change, exchange.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**parō**, *prepare*], *prepare, get together, procure.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**compār**, *equal to*, from **com-** + **pār**, *equal*], *pair, compare.*

compellō, compellere, compulī, compulsus [**pellō**, *drive*], *drive together, collect; drive, force.*

comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus, *learn, find out, discover.*

complector, complectī, complexus [**plectō**, *intertwine*], *embrace, inclose.*

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus [cf. **plēnus**, *full*], *fill up, fill;* **complērī hominibus**, *to be covered* or *completely occupied with men;* **complēre exercitum**, *supply the army.*

complūrēs, compluria or complura

[**plūs**, *more*], *adj.*, pl., *several, many.*

compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositus [**pōnō**, *put*], *bring together, settle.*

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**portō**, *carry*], *bring together, collect, bring in.*

compositiō, compositiōnis [cf. **compōnō**], *f.*, *settlement, agreement.*

comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus [**prehendō**, *grasp*], *grasp, seize, catch, arrest, capture.*

comprimō, comprimere, compressī, compressus [**premō**, *press*], *press together, check.*

con-, see **com-**.

cōnātum, -ī [part. of **cōnor**, *attempt*, as pass.], *n.*, (*thing attempted*), *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, -ūs [**cōnor**, *attempt*], *m.*, *attempt.*

concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus [**cēdō**, *give way*], *give way, yield; allow, grant, give up, assign; make concession, give consent.*

concelebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**celebrō**, *repeat*], *proclaim, publish.*

concidō, concidere, concidī, — [**cadō**, *fall*], *fall* in a heap, *tumble down.*

concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus [**caedō**, *cut*], *cut to pieces, destroy; cut up.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**concilium**], *bring together, reconcile, win over, gain, secure.*

concilium, concilī [cf. **calō**, *call*], *n.*, *meeting, assembly, council.*

concinō, concinere, concinuī, — [**canō**, *sound*], *sound* or *be sounded together.*

concipiō, concipere, concēpī, conceptus [**capiō**, *take*], *take up, take.*

concitātiō, concitātiōnis [**concitō**], *f.*, *outbreak, riot.*

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **conciō**, *call together*], *call out, stir up.*

conclāmātiō, conclāmātiōnis [**conclāmō**], *f.*, *loud shout* (of men together).

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**clāmō**, *call out*], *call out together, shout; give the signal for packing up;* **ad arma conclāmāre**, *call to arms.*

conclūdō, conclūdere, conclūsī, conclūsus [**claudō**, *shut*], *shut in, inclose.*

concurrō, concurrere, concurrī or concucurrī, concursūrus [**currō**, *run*], *run together, run* (in a crowd); *assemble, flock, resort* (in great numbers); *charge* (of two armies coming together); **concurrunt equitēs inter sē**, *the cavalry rush together* (in battle).

concursus, -ūs [cf. **concurrō**], *m.*, *running together, charge, assault.*

condiciō, condiciōnis [cf. **condīcō**, *agree*], *f.*, *agreement, terms, condition; state.*

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**dōnō**, *give*], *give up; overlook, pardon.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of eastern Belgium on the Meuse (Mosa), clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *bring together, assemble.*

cōnfectus, part. of **cōnficiō**.

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus [**ferō**, *bring*], *bring together, gather, collect; bestow, confer; transfer; compare;* perf. part. with dat., *near to;* **sē** (often with **suaque**, *with his possessions*) **cōnferre**, *betake himself, remove;* **culpam cōnferre**, *throw the blame on.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um [part. of **cōnferciō**, *press together*], *crowded, dense, in close array.*

cōnfestim, *adv., at once, immediately.*

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus [**faciō**, *make*], *accomplish, carry out, complete, finish; make out, write; dress* (of leather); *get together, raise* (of troops); *wear out, use up.*

cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum [**fīdō**, *trust*], *semi-dep., trust (fully), be confident, place confidence in, rely on.*

cōnfīgō, cōnfīgere, cōnfīxī, cōnfīxus [**fīgō**, *fix*], *fasten together.*

cōnfirmātiō, cōnfirmātiōnis [**cōnfirmō**], *f., confirmation, affirmation.*

cōnfirmātus, -a, -um [part. of **cōnfirmō**], *encouraged, confident.*

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**firmō**, *strengthen*], *strengthen, establish, fix; reassure, encourage; corroborate; assert, declare;* **sē cōnfirmāre**, *resolve.*

cōnflīctor, -ārī, -ātus [freq. of **cōnflīgō**], *fight, be afflicted.*

cōnflīgō, cōnflīgere, cōnflīxī, cōnflīctus [**flīgō**, *strike*], *strike together, fight, engage in conflict.*

cōnfluēns, cōnfluentis [part. of **cōnfluō**], *m., junction* of two rivers, *confluence.*

cōnfluō, cōnfluere, cōnflūxī, — [**fluō**, *flow*], *flow together, flock.*

cōnfugiō, cōnfugere, cōnfūgī, cōnfugitūrus [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flee for refuge.*

cōnfundō, cōnfundere, cōnfūdī, cōnfūsus [**fundō**, *pour*], *pour together, bring together* (in confusion), *unite.*

congerō, congerere, congessī, congestus [**gerō**, *carry*], *collect.*

congredior, congredī, congressus [**gradior**, *step*], *come together, meet, engage* (in battle).

congressus, -ūs [cf. **congredior**], *m., meeting; encounter.*

coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus [**con-** + **iaciō**, *throw*], *throw together, hurl, cast; drive together, gather;* **in fugam conicere**, *put to flight.*

coniectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **coniciō**], *infer, conjecture.*

coniectūra, -ae [**iactūra**, *a throwing*], *f.,* (*a throwing together*, cf. "I infer by putting this and that together"), *conjecture.*

coniūnctim [cf. **coniūnctus**, part. of **coniungō**], *adv., jointly, together.*

coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus [**iungō**, *join*], *join together, join, unite;* **sē coniungere**, *unite;* perf. part. with a dat., *close to, united to, reaching to.*

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis [**coniūrō**], *f., swearing together, conspiracy.*

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**iūrō**, *swear*], *take oath together, form a conspiracy;* **inter sē coniūrāre**, *give oath to each other.*

conlātus, part. of **cōnferō**.

conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**laudō**, *praise*], *praise highly.*

conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ligō**, *bind*], *fasten together.*

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**locō**, *place*], *place, set, station; arrange, order; store;* with or without **nūptum**, *give in marriage.*

conloquium, conloquī [cf. **conloquor**], *n., interview, conference, conversation.*

conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus [**loquor**, *speak*], *hold an interview, converse.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *try, attempt, en-*

deavor; **idem cōnārī,** *make the same attempt.*

conquiēscō, conquiēscere, conquiēvī, conquiētūrus [**quiēscō,** *rest*], *rest, take a nap.*

conquīrō, conquīrere, conquīsīvī, conquīsītus [**quaerō,** *look for*], *search for, hunt up, seek.*

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [**sanguis,** *blood*], *of the same blood;* as *subst., kinsman, relative.*

cōnscendō, cōnscendere, cōnscendī, cōnscēnsus [**scandō,** *climb*], *climb upon;* with or without **nāvēs,** *go on board, embark.*

cōnscientia, -ae [**cōnsciēns,** part. of **cōnsciō,** *be conscious*], *f., consciousness; conscience.*

cōnscīscō, cōnscīscere, cōnscīvī, cōnscītus [**scīscō,** *decree*], *decree;* sibi **mortem cōnscīscere,** *make way with himself.*

cōnscius, -a, -um [cf. **sciō,** *know*], *conscious* (with **sibi,** *to himself*), *aware.*

cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus [**scrībō,** *write*], (*write together* in a list), *enroll, enlist, levy.*

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sacrō,** *set aside as sacred*], *dedicate, consecrate.*

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus [freq. of **cōnsequor**], *follow up, overtake.*

cōnsēnsiō, cōnsēnsiōnis [cf. **cōnsentiō,** *agree*], *f., agreement, unanimity.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs [cf. **cōnsentiō,** *agree*], *m., agreement, consent.*

cōnsentāneus, -a, -um [cf. **cōnsentiō,** *agree*], *agreeing, suited.*

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus [**sequor,** *follow*], *follow up* (*along with*), *overtake; follow, ensue; obtain, gain, succeed in.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**servō,** *save*], *save, preserve, keep, spare; observe.*

cōnsīderātē [**cōnsīderātus,** *deliberate*], *adv., deliberately.*

Cōnsidius, Cōnsidī, *m.,* a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Publius Considius,* a veteran officer of Caesar in Gaul. (2) *Gaius Considius Longus,* propraetor of Africa in 50 B.C., a follower of Pompey in the Civil War.

cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessūrus [**sīdō,** *sit down*], *sit down; settle down, halt, encamp; hold sessions.*

cōnsilium, cōnsilī [cf. **cōnsulō**], *n., consultation, deliberation; plan, purpose; advice, prudence, discretion; council,* of war, etc. (cf. **concilium**); **commūnī cōnsiliō,** *with a common purpose, by common consent.*

cōnsimilis, cōnsimile [**similis,** *like*], *just like, very similar.*

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, — [**sistō,** *place* (one's self)], *make a stand, take a position; settle; stop, halt,* (of ships) *anchor; stay; depend on, consist of.*

cōnsobrīnus, -ī [cf. **soror,** *sister*], *m., cousin* (son of a mother's sister).

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus [**sōlor,** *comfort*], *comfort, console.*

cōnspectus, -ūs [cf. **cōnspiciō**], *m., sight; presence.*

cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus [**speciō,** *look*], *catch sight of, descry, see.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. **cōnspiciō**], *catch sight of, see.*

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**spīrō,** *breathe*], *league together, conspire.*

cōnstanter [**cōnstāns,** *firm*], *adv., firmly, resolutely.*

cōnstantia, -ae [**cōnstāns,** *firm*], *f., firmness, constancy.*

cōnsternō, cōnsternere, cōnstrāvī, cōn-

strātus [**sternō**, *spread*], *spread over, cover;* **cōnstrātus**, of ships, *decked.* Ancient ships of war had only one deck, sometimes only quarter-decks at bow and stern; transports and merchantmen might have two or three decks.

cōnstitī, perf. of **cōnsistō**.

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus [**statuō**, *set up*], *set up, establish, station, settle, draw up, moor* ships; *determine on, appoint, fix; determine, decide.*

cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstitī, cōnstātūrus [**stō**, *stand*], *stand firm; remain* (unchanged); with **in** and the abl., *depend on;* usually with **ex**, *consist of;* often impers., *be agreed, be evident, be clear.*

cōnstrātus, part. of **cōnsternō**.

cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus [**suēscō**, *get used*], *become accustomed;* perf. tenses, *be accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis [for **cōnsuētitūdō**, from **cōnsuētus**, part. of **cōnsuēscō**], *f., custom, habit, way, way of living; intimacy;* **cōnsuētūdine suā**, *in accordance with his* (*their*) *custom;* **est Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis**, *it is a Gallic custom.*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, *m., consul,* one of the two chief magistrates at Rome, elected annually.

cōnsulāris, cōnsulāris [**cōnsul**], *m., man of consular rank, ex-consul.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs [cf. **cōnsul**], *m., consulship.*

cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus, *consult, take counsel;* with dat. of interest, *look out for, take thought for.*

cōnsultō, -āre, āvī, -ātus [freq. of **cōnsulō**], *consult, deliberate.*

cōnsultō [impers. abl. abs. of part. of **cōnsulō**], *adv., designedly, on purpose.*

cōnsultum, -ī [part. of **cōnsulō**], *n., decree.*

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus [**sūmō**, *take*], *use up, destroy, consume, spend.*

cōnsurgō, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrēxī, cōnsurrēctus [**surgō**, *rise*], *rise together, rise.*

contāgiō, contāgiōnis [cf. **tangō**, *touch*], *f., contact.*

contegō, contegere, contēxī, contēctus [**tegō**, *cover*], *cover over.*

contemptiō, contemptiōnis [cf. **contemnō**, *disregard*], *f., disdain, contempt;* **hostibus in contemptiōnem venīre**, *incur the enemy's disdain.*

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus [**tendō**, *stretch*], *strive for, strive; struggle, contend; entreat; hasten;* **vī contendere**, *use force;* **dē locō contendere**, *strive for precedence;* **ab utrīsque contenditur**, *both sides fight.*

contentiō, contentiōnis [cf. **contendō**], *f., struggle, contest, dispute.*

contentus, -a, -um [part. of **contineō**], *contented, satisfied.*

contexō, contexere, contexuī, contextus [**texō**, *weave*], *weave together, join together;* **contexta vīminibus membra**, *limbs formed of interwoven twigs.*

continēns, continentis [part. of **contineō**], *adj., continuous, uninterrupted, successive;* f. as *subst.* (sc. **terra**), *continent, mainland.*

continenter [**continēns**], *adv., continuously, incessantly, continually.*

continentia, -ae [**continēns**, part. of **contineō**], *f., self-restraint; self-control.*

contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus [**teneō**, *hold*], *hold together*, *keep*; *keep back* or *within bounds*, *restrain*, *hold*; *bound*, *inclose*, *shut in*; **sē continēre**, *keep himself*, *remain*.

contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus [**tangō**, *touch*], *touch*, *reach*, *adjoin*.

continuātiō, continuātiōnis [**continuō**], *f.*, *continuance*.

continuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**continuus**], *make continuous*, *continue*.

continuō [abl. of **continuus**], *adv.*, *immediately*, *straightway*.

continuus, -a, -um [cf. **contineō**], *continuous*, *in succession*.

cōntiō, cōntiōnis [**co-** (= **com-**) + **ventiō**, *coming*], *f.*, *meeting*, *assembly*; *address* (to an assembly).

cōntiōnor, -ārī, -ātus [**cōntiō**], *make an address*.

contrā, (1) *adv.*, *opposite*, *in opposition*; **contrā atque**, *contrary to what*; (2) *prep.* with acc., *opposite*, *facing*; *against*, *contrary to*.

contrahō, contrahere, contrāxī, contractus [**trahō**, *draw*], *draw together*, *bring together*.

contrārius, -a, -um [**contrā**], *opposite*, *over against*.

contrōversia, -ae [**contrōversus** (**contrā** + part. of **vertō**, *turn*), *disputed*], *f.*, *dispute*, *quarrel*.

contubernium, contubernī [**con**, cf. **taberna**, *hut*], *n.*, *tent*, commonly occupied by ten soldiers together.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, *affront*, *insult*; *violence*; **cum contumēliā**, *insultingly*; **ad gravissimās verbōrum contumēliās**, *to the most offensive and insulting remarks*.

contundō, contundere, contudī, contūsus [**tundō**, *pound*], *bruise*, *grind*.

convalēscō, convalēscere, convaluī, — [**valēscō**, *grow strong*; cf. **valeō**], *recover*.

convallis, convallis [**vallēs**, *valley*], *f.*, *valley*, *ravine*.

convehō, convehere, convēxī, convectus [**vehō**, *carry*], *carry together*, *collect*.

conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus [**veniō**, *come*], *come together*, *assemble*; *come* (of several); *meet*; *agree with*; *be agreed upon*; *be fitting*, *be called for*.

conventus, -ūs [cf. **conveniō**], *m.*, *gathering*, *assembly*; esp. a gathering of persons in a province to attend a court of justice presided over by the governor, *court*; also an association of Roman citizens living in a province or provincial town, *association*, *corporation*.

convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus [**vertō**, *turn*], *turn about*, *turn*; *direct*; **sē convertere**, *turn*; **itinere conversō**, *turned back*; **convertere sīgna**, *change front*, *face about*.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vocō**, *call*], *call together*, *assemble*.

coörior, coörīrī, coörtus [**co-**(= **com-**) + **orior**, *rise*], *rise*, *break out* (of war).

cōpia, -ae [**co-**(= **com-**), cf. **ops**, *aid*], *f.*, *abundance*, *supply*, *number*; pl., *resources*, *supplies*, *stores*; *troops*, *forces*, *force*.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [**cōpia**], *abundantly supplied*, *wealthy*.

Cōpōnius, Cōpōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Gaius Coponius*, commander of a division of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War.

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, *grappling hook*.

cor, cordis, *n.*, *heart*; **cordī esse**, *be dear*.

cōram [**co-**(= **com-**), cf. **ōs**, *face*], *adv.*, *face to face;* **cōram perspicit,** *he sees with his own eyes.*

Corcȳra, -ae, *f.*, an island, with capital of the same name, off Epirus. It had long been an important naval power. The modern name is *Corfu.*

Corfīniēnsis, -e, *of Corfinium.*

Corfīnium, Corfīnī, *n.*, a strongly situated town in the Apennines, east of Rome; see on 174, 4.

Coriosolitēs, -um, acc. -as, *m.*, pl., a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul.

corium, corī [cf. **cortex**], *n.*, *skin, hide.*

Cornēlius, Cornēlī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Balbus.**

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, *horn; wing* (of an army).

corōna, -ae, *f.*, *wreath, crown; encircling line;* **sub corōnā vēndere,** *sell into slavery;* see on 92, 5.

corpus, corporis, *n.*, *body.*

corrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**com-** + **rogō**, *ask*], (*get together by asking*), *collect.*

corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptus [**com-** + **rumpō**, *break*], *ruin, weaken.*

cortex, corticis [cf. **corium**], *m.*, *bark.*

cotīdiānus, -a, -um [**cotīdiē**], *daily, ordinary.*

cotīdiē [**quot**, *how many*, **diēs**, *day*], *adv.*, *daily, every day,* implying recurrence merely; cf. **in diēs**, s.v. **diēs.**

Cotta, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

Cotys, Cotyis, *m.*, king of the Odrysae, a Thracian tribe.

crassitūdō, crassitūdinis [**crassus**, *thick*], *f.*, *thickness.*

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* consul with Pompey, 70 and 55 B.C., member of the First Triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey. (2) *Publius Licinius Crassus,* son of (1), a skillful lieutenant of Caesar, 58–56 B.C. (3) *Otacilius Crassus,* one of Pompey's officers.

Crāstinus, -ī, *m.*, a reënlisted veteran in Caesar's army.

crātis, crātis, *f.*, *wickerwork, hurdle.*

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *thick, thickly growing, close; numerous, frequent, repeated.*

crēbrō [abl. of **crēber**], *adv.*, *frequently, repeatedly.*

crēditor, crēditōris [**crēdō**], *m.*, *creditor.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *believe, trust, suppose; loan.*

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *burn.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *create, make, elect.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus [cf. **creō**], *grow, increase, gain power* or *influence.*

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, *Crete,* organized by Pompey as a Roman province in 67 B.C.

Critognātus, -ī, *m.*, an Arvernian chief.

cruciātus, -ūs [**cruciō**, *torture*], *m.*, *torture.*

crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis [**crūdēlis**, *cruel*], *f.*, *cruelty.*

crūdēliter [**crūdēlis**, *cruel*], *adv.*, *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, *n.*, *leg.*

cubīle, cubīlis [cf. **cubō**, *lie;* see **prōcumbō**], *n.*, *bed, resting-place.*

culmen, culminis, *n.*, *height, top, summit.*

culpa, -ae, *f.*, *fault, blame, error.*

cultūra, -ae [cf. **colō**, *till*], *f.*, *tilling, cultivation.*

cultus, -ūs [cf. **colō**, *cultivate*], *m.*, *cultivation, care,* especially of one's self; *way of living, civilization, degree of civilization.*

cum, *conj.*, *when, whenever, while, since, although;* **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but furthermore, but also;* **cum prīmum**, *as soon as.*

cum, *prep.* with abl., *with.* With pers. and rel. pronouns **cum** is enclitic.

cumulus, -ī, *m.*, *heap, pile.*

cūnctātiō, cūnctātiōnis [**cūnctor**], *f.*, *delay, hesitation.*

cūnctor, -ārī, -ātus, *delay, hesitate.*

cūnctus, -a, -um [co- (= com-) + **iūnctus**, part of **iungō**, *join together*], *all together, the whole;* **cūncta administrāre**, *have general management.*

cunīculus, -ī, *m.*, *rabbit; burrow; tunnel, mine* (in military sense, the only use in Caesar); see Introd. § 47.

cupidē [**cupidus**], *adv.*, *eagerly, enthusiastically.*

cupiditās, cupiditātis [**cupidus**], *f.*, *desire, eagerness.*

cupidus, -a, -um [cf. **cupiō**], *eager for, desirous, fond.*

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire earnestly, be eager for* (with acc.); *wish well to* (with dat.).

cūr, *rel.* and *interrog. adv.*, *why.*

Curicta, -ae, *f.*, an island in the upper Adriatic near the coast of Illyricum, where Caesar's lieutenant, Gaius Antonius, with fifteen cohorts, surrendered in 49 B.C. Now *Veglia.*

Curicum, -ī, *n.*, a town on the island of Curicta.

Cūriō, Cūriōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Gaius Scribonius Curio*, a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War. He lost his life in the ill-fated expedition to Africa, 49 B.C.; see also on 170, 1.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**cūra**, *care*], *care for, attend to;* with acc. gerundive, *have* a thing done.

currus, -ūs [cf. **currō**, *run*], *m.*, *chariot.*

cursus, -ūs [cf. **currō**, *run*], *m.*, *running; speed; course;* **eōdem cursū**, *without stopping;* **cursū incitātō**, *quickened their speed.*

custōdia, -ae [**custōs**], *f.*, *a watching, protection; guard, sentinel; prison.*

custōs, custōdis, *m.*, *guard, watchman, spy.*

Cyclades, -um [derived from the Greek word for *circle;* cf. *cycle, bicycle*], *f.*, pl., the islands in the Aegean Sea which encircle Delos.

Cyprus, -ī, *f.*, an island in the northeastern corner of the Mediterranean, taken by Rome from Egypt, in 58 B.C., and governed as part of the province of Cilicia.

Cȳrēnae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *Cyrene*, an ancient Greek city in northern Africa west of Alexandria, a seat of learning and culture, capital of the Roman province of Cyrenaica organized in 74 B.C.

D

D. = **Decimus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

D = **quīngentī**, *five hundred;* **DC** = **sescentī**; **DCC** = **septingentī**; **DCCC** = **octingentī**; **DCCCC** = **nōngentī**.

Dācī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., *the Dacians*, a barbarous people occupying an ex-

tensive territory north of the lower Danube, comprising modern Rumania and eastern Hungary.

Damasippus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Licinius Damasippus*, a Roman senator.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**damnum**, *loss*], (*inflict loss by fine*), *convict, condemn.*

Dānuvius, Dānuvī, *m.*, *the Danube.*

Dardanī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe in southwestern Moesia, just north of Macedonia.

dē, *prep.* with abl., *down from, from; out of, of; about, in regard to, concerning; for, on account of;* of time, *just after* the beginning of, *during.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus [**dē** + **habeō**, *have from* a person], *owe;* with infin., *be bound, ought.*

dēbitor, dēbitōris [**dēbeō**], *m.*, *debtor.*

dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessī, dēcessūrus, [**cēdō**, *go*], *go away, move away; pass away, die.*

decem or **X**, *ten.*

dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus [**cernō**, *separate, distinguish*], (*separate* one opinion *from* others), *decide, determine, make up one's mind, decree.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**certō**, *fight*], *fight decisively, fight;* sometimes with **pugnā** or **proeliō**, *fight a decisive engagement.*

dēcessus, -ūs [cf. **dēcēdō**], *m.*, *withdrawal; ebbing* of the tide.

decimus, -a, -um [**decem**], *tenth.*

dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dēceptus [**capiō**, *take*], *catch, deceive.*

dēclīvis, dēclīve [**clīvus**, *slope*], *sloping down, descending;* n. as *subst.*, *slope.*

dēclīvitās, dēclīvitātis [**dēclīvis**], *f.*, *downward slope;* **ad dēclīvitātem**, *downward.*

dēcrētum, -ī [part. of **dēcernō**], *n.*, *decision, decree.*

decumānus, -a, -um [**decimus**], *of the tenth;* **decumāna porta**, *the rear gate* of the Roman camp (see Introd. § 44), near which the tenth cohort of each legion was originally stationed.

decuriō, decuriōnis [cf. **decem**], *m.*, *decurion*, an under officer of cavalry, in charge of about ten men.

dēcurrō, dēcurrere, dēcucurrī, dēcursūrus [**currō**, *run*], *run down, rush down.*

dēdecus, dēdecoris [**decus**, *grace*], *n.*, *disgrace, dishonor.*

dēditīcius, -a, -um [**dēditus**, part. of **dēdō**], *surrendered;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *prisoners of war.*

dēditiō, dēditiōnis [**dēdō**], *f.*, *surrender;* **eōs in dēditiōnem accipere** or **recipere**, *accept their surrender;* **in dēditiōnem venīre**, *surrender.*

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus [**dē** + **dō**, *put*], *give up, surrender; devote.*

dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead down* or *away, withdraw, bring; bring home* a bride, *marry;* of ships, *launch.*

dēfatīgātiō, dēfatīgātiōnis [**dēfatīgō**], *f.*, *exhaustion.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**fatīgō**, *tire*], *tire out, exhaust.*

dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis [cf. **dēficiō**], *f.*, *a falling away, defection, revolt.*

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *ward off; defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis [cf. **dēfendō**], *f.*, *defense.*

dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris [cf. **dēfendō**], *m.*,

defender, *protector;* sometimes used of things, as of piles protecting a bridge.

dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus [**ferō**, *bear*], *carry down*, *bring down* or *away*, *bring; report*, *lay before;* **dēlātus aestū**, *drifting*.

dēfessus, part. of **dēfetīscor**.

dēfetīscor, dēfetīscī, dēfessus [**fatīscor**, *grow weak*], *become exhausted;* perf. part., *exhausted*, *worn out*.

dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus [**faciō**, *do*], *fail*, *be lacking*, *be lost; abandon*, *fall away*, *desert*, *revolt;* **animō dēficere**, *lose courage*.

dēfīgō, dēfīgere, dēfīxī, dēfīxus [**fīgō**, *fix*], *fix*, *fasten*, *set firmly*, *drive down*.

dēfīniō, dēfīnīre, dēfīnīvī, dēfīnītus [**fīniō**, *bound*], *set bounds to*, *fix*, *appoint*.

dēfōrmis, dēfōrme [**fōrma**, *shape*], *misshapen*, *deformed*, *ugly*.

dēfugiō, dēfugere, dēfūgī, dēfugitūrus [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flee from*, *avoid*.

dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw down*, *overthrow*, *dismount; drive down*, *carry down*, *dislodge; disappoint*.

dēiectus, -ūs [cf. **dēiciō**], *m.*, *descent*, *slope*.

deinceps [cf. **deinde** and **capiō**, *take;* see **prīnceps**], *adv.*, (*taking next rank*), *in succession*, *without interruption*.

deinde [**dē inde**, *from thence*], *adv.*, *then*, *next*, *afterwards*.

Dēiotarus, -ī, *m.*, a tetrarch of the Gauls in Galatia, an ally of Rome against Mithridates, rewarded with nominal independence and an addition of territory.

dēlātus, part. of **dēferō**.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *please;* **maximē dēlectārī** with abl., *take the greatest pleasure in*.

dēlēctus, part. of **dēligō**.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *wipe out*, *destroy*.

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**līberō**, probably from **lībra**, *scales*], *weigh well*, *consider*, *deliberate*.

dēlibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **liber**, *bark*], *strip* a tree *of bark*.

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ligō**, *bind*], *bind down*, *make fast*, *tie*.

dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus [**legō**, *choose*], *choose*, *pick out*, *select;* perf. part., *picked*, *select*.

dēlitēscō, dēlitēscere, dēlituī, — [**latēscō**, inch. of **lateō**, *lie hidden*], *go into hiding*, *hide away*.

dēmentia, -ae [**dēmēns**, *bereft of mind*], *f.*, *madness*, *folly*.

dēmetō, dēmetere, dēmessuī, dēmessus [**metō**, *reap*], *reap*, *cut down*.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**migrō**, *move*], *move away*, *depart*, *emigrate*.

dēminuō, dēminuere, dēminuī, dēminūtus [**minuō**, *lessen*, cf. **minus**], *lessen*, *diminish*, *impair*.

dēminūtiō, dēminūtiōnis [**dēminuō**], *f.*, *lessening;* **capitis dēminūtiō**, *loss of civil rights*, such as voting and holding office, and, in its severest form, personal freedom.

dēmissus, -a, -um [part. of **dēmittō**], *low*.

dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmissus [**mittō**, *send*], *send* or *drive down*, *let down;* **sē dēmittere**, *descend*.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**mōnstrō**, *show*], *point out*, *show*, *mention*, *describe*.

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus [**moror**, *delay*], *delay*, *retard*.

dēmoveō, dēmovēre, dēmōvī, dē-

mōtus [**moveō**, *move*], *move away, drive away.*

dēmum, *adv., at length, at last.*

dēnī, -ae, -a [cf. **decem**, *ten*], *distr. num., ten each, ten at a time; ten* (acting as a group).

dēnique, *adv., at last, finally.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, *thick, dense, close together.*

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūntiō**, *report*], *announce, order.*

dēpellō, dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus [**pellō**, *drive*], *drive off, dislodge; ward off;* **ab cōnsiliīs dēpulsus**, *forced to give up his plans.*

dēperdō, dēperdere, dēperdidī, dēperditus [**perdō**, *ruin, lose*], *lose.*

dēpereō, dēperīre, dēperiī, dēperitūrus [**pereō**, *perish*], *be lost* or *destroyed.*

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus [**pōnō**, *put*], *put* or *lay down* or *aside, leave, deposit; give up.*

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus [**populor**, *devastate*], *devastate, ravage, plunder;* perf. part. as pass., *plundered.*

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**portō**, *carry*], *carry away, remove.*

dēposcō, dēposcere, dēpoposcī, — [**poscō**, *demand*], *demand.*

dēprecātor, dēprecātōris [**dēprecor**], *m., mediator, intercessor.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus [**precor**, *pray*], *pray to escape from, beg off, sue for mercy.*

dēprehendō, dēprehendere, dēprehendī, dēprehēnsus [**prehendō**, *seize*], *seize, catch, surprise.*

dēprimō, dēprimere, dēpressī, dēpressus [**premō**, *press*], *weigh down, sink.*

dērēctē [**dērēctus**], *adv., straight, directly.*

dērēctus, -a, -um [part. of **dērigō**], *straight, direct; perpendicular.*

dērigō, dērigere, dērēxī, dērēctus [**regō**, *keep straight*], *lay straight, direct, aim.*

dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **rīvus**, *brook*], *draw off, divert.*

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**rogō**, *ask*], *take away, withhold.*

dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus [**scandō**, *climb*], *climb down, descend, come down; have recourse to, resort to.*

dēscīscō, dēscīscere, dēscīvī, dēscītus [**scīscō**, *approve*], (*withdraw approval*), *desert, be unfaithful;* **ā nōbīs dēscīscere**, *be unfaithful to us.*

dēsecō, dēsecāre, dēsecuī, dēsectus [**secō**, *cut*], *cut down.*

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus [**serō**, *unite*], (*disunite*); *abandon, desert.*

dēsertor, dēsertōris [**dēserō**], *m., deserter.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wish for, desire, wait for, miss, lose;* pass., *be missing* or *lost.*

dēsidia, -ae [**dēses**, *idle*, cf. **dēsideō**, *sit idle*], *f., idleness.*

dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sīgnō**, *mark*], *mark out, point out, mean, indicate.*

dēsiliō, dēsilīre, dēsiluī, — [**saliō**, *leap*], *leap* or *jump down, dismount.*

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī, dēsitus [**sinō**, *give leave*], *leave off, cease.*

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, [**sistō**, *place* (one's self)], *stand off, cease, desist.*

dēspectus, -ūs [cf. **dēspiciō**, *look down*], *m., view down* (from a height).

dēspērātiō, dēspērātiōnis [**dēspērō**], *f., despairing, despair.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**spērō**, *hope*], *give up hope, despair of.*

dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspēxī, dēspectus [**speciō**, *look*], *look down on, despise, scorn, express contempt for.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fasten, secure; appoint, detail.*

dēstituō, dēstituere, dēstituī, dēstitūtus [**statuō**, *set up*], (*set away from* one's self), *abandon, desert.*

dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrīnxī, dēstrīctus [**stringō**, *strip*], *strip off; draw* (of a sword, stripping off its scabbard).

dēsum, deësse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus [**sum**, *be*], (*be from*), *be lacking, fail;* **omnia deërant**, *there was a lack of everything.*

dētendō, dētendere, dētendī, dētēnsus [**tendō**, *stretch*], *unstretch, strike* (of tents).

dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus [**terreō**, *frighten*], *frighten off, hinder, prevent.*

dētineō, dētinēre, dētinuī, dētentus [**teneō**, *hold*], *hold off, detain, delay.*

dētrahō, dētrahere, dētrāxī, dētractus [**trahō**, *draw*], *draw away, seize; take away, detach, take off.*

dētrīmentum, -ī [cf. **dēterō**, *rub away*], *n.*, (*wear and tear*), *loss; defeat, reverse.*

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**turbō**, *to disorder*], *drive off* or *away* (in confusion).

deus, -ī, nom. pl. diī, *m.*, *god.*

dēveniō, dēvenīre, dēvēnī, dēventūrus [**veniō**, *come*], *come down, come.*

dēvexus, -a, -um [old part. of **dēvehō**, *carry down*], *sloping;* n. pl. as *subst.*, *hillsides.*

devincō, dēvincere, dēvīcī, dēvictus [**vincō**, *conquer*], *conquer completely, subdue.*

dēvoveō, dēvovēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus [**voveō**, *vow*], *pledge, devote;* **dēvōtus**, as *subst.*, *devoted follower.*

dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right.*

dextra, -ae [**dexter**, sc. **manus**, *hand*], *f.*, *right hand.*

Diablintēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe in central Aremorica. The name survives in *Jablins.*

Diāna, -ae, *f.*, the great goddess of the Ephesians (*Acts* 19, 27 f. and 34 f.). Her temple, of vast size and magnificence, was one of the seven wonders of the world. Her statue was of wood, and its great antiquity was attested by its rude workmanship, but it was gorgeously appareled and kept in a shrine of costly splendor. This goddess had nothing in common with the Roman Diana, who was a patroness of hunting.

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **dīcō**], *dedicate, devote, attach.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *say, tell, speak; call, name, appoint, mention; take* oath.

dictātor, dictātōris [**dictō**, *dictate*], *m.*, *dictator*, a Roman magistrate; see on 187, 1.

dictātūra, -ae [**dictō**, *dictate*], *f.*, *dictatorship.*

dictiō, dictiōnis [cf. **dictus**, part. of **dīcō**], *f.*, *speaking, pleading.*

dīdūcō, dīdūcere, dīdūxī, dīductus [**dis-** + **dūcō**, *lead*], *lead apart, divide.*

diēs, diēī [cf. **diū**, *for a long time*], *m.*, *day; f.*, *time*, an appointed *day;* **diem ex diē**, *day after day;* **multō diē**, *late in the day;* **hīs paucīs diēbus**, *within a few days;* **in diēs**, *from day to day*, implying progression, cf. **cotīdiē**; **ad diem**, *on the appointed day.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus [**dis- + ferō**, *carry*], *carry apart, scatter; put off, postpone; differ.*

difficilis, difficile [**dis- + facilis**, *easy*], *difficult, hard.*

difficultās, difficultātis [**difficilis**], *f., difficulty, embarrassment.*

diffīdō, diffīdere, diffīsus sum [**dis- + fīdō**, *trust*], *semi-dep., distrust, despair of.*

diffluō, diffluere, difflūxī, — [**dis- + fluō**, *flow*], *flow apart, divide.*

diffundō, diffundere, diffūdī, diffūsus [**dis- + fundō**, *scatter*], *spread out.*

digitus, -ī, *m., finger;* as a measure, *finger, finger's breadth;* **digitus pollex**, *thumb.*

dignitās, dignitātis [**dignus**, *worthy*], *f., worth, merit, prestige, high position.*

diī, see **deus**.

diiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**dis- + iūdicō**, *judge*], *decide.*

dīlēctus, -ūs [**dis-**, cf. **legō**, *choose*], *m., choosing, levy, enrollment.*

dīligēns, dīligentis [part. of **dīligō**], *adj., careful, watchful.*

dīligenter [**dīligēns**], *adv., carefully, scrupulously, faithfully.*

dīligentia, -ae [**dīligēns**], *f., care, pains, diligence.*

dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus [**dis- + legō**, *choose*], (*choose apart*), *love, esteem.*

dīmētior, dīmētīrī, dīmēnsus [**dis- + mētior**, *measure*], *measure out; mark out; proportion.*

dīmicātiō, dīmicātiōnis [**dīmicō**], *f., fight, struggle.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**dis- + micō**, *shake*], (*brandish weapons*), *fight;* impers. pass., *the battle is carried on.*

dīmidium, dīmidī [n. of adj. **dīmidius** (**dis- + medius**, *apart in the middle*), *half*], *n., a half.*

dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus [**dis- + mittō**, *send*], *send away, dismiss, let go, discharge; lose; send out* (in different directions), *send to their posts; give up, abandon, throw away.*

dīripiō, dīripere, dīripuī, dīreptus [**dis- + rapiō**, *seize*], *tear apart, plunder, pillage.*

dis-, dī-, dif-, dir-, used only in composition, *apart, in different directions; un-, not.*

dīs, contr. from **diīs**, see **deus**.

Dīs, Dītis, *m., Dis,* more commonly called Pluto, the Roman god of the lower world and king of the dead.

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrus [**cēdō**, *go*], *disperse, scatter; go away, depart, withdraw;* **ab armīs discēdere**, *lay down their arms;* **victōrēs discēdere**, *come off conquerors.*

disceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**captō**, freq. of **capiō**, *take*], (*take apart* for examination), *settle.*

discernō, discernere, discrēvī, discrētus [**cernō**, *separate*], *distinguish, know apart.*

discessus, -ūs [cf. **discēdō**], *m., departure.*

disciplīna, -ae [**discipulus**, *learner*], *f., instruction, discipline, system;* **in disciplīnā**, *under instruction.*

disclūdō, disclūdere, disclūsī, disclūsus [**claudō**, *shut*], *keep apart.*

discō, discere, didicī, —, *learn.*

discrībō, discrībere, discrīpsī, discrīptus [**dis- + scrībō**, *write*], *apportion, assign.*

discurrō, discurrere, discurrī or discucurrī, discursūrus [**currō**, *run*], *run to and fro.*

disiciō, disicere, disiēcī, disiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *hurl asunder, break up, disperse, scatter.*

dispār, disparis [**pār**, *equal*], *adj., unequal, ill-matched.*

dispergō, dispergere, dispersī, dispersus [**dis-** + **spargō**, *scatter*], *scatter.*

dispertiō, dispertīre, dispertīvī or dispertiī, dispertītus [**partiō**, *part*], *distribute.*

dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus [**pōnō**, *place*], *place here and there; station in several places; set in order, arrange.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**putō**, *think*], *discuss, argue;* **multa disputāre**, *have many discussions.*

dissēnsiō, dissēnsiōnis [cf. **dissentiō**, *disagree*], *f., disagreement, dissension.*

disserō, disserere, —, — [**serō**, *sow*], *plant here and there.*

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**simulō**, *pretend a thing is* what it really is not], *pretend a thing is not* what it really is, *conceal.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disperse.*

distendō, distendere, distendī, distentus [**tendō**, *stretch*], *stretch apart, separate.*

distineō, distinēre, distinuī, distentus [**teneō**, *hold*], *hold apart, separate, keep back, detain, divert.*

distō, distāre, —, — [**dis-** + **stō**, *stand*], *stand apart, be separated; be distant;* **quantum iūnctūra distābat**, *just filling the space between.*

distrahō, distrahere, distrāxī, distractus [**trahō**, *draw*], *draw apart, break.*

distribuō, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtus [**tribuō**, *assign*], *assign* (in parts), *distribute, divide.*

dītissimus, -a, -um [sup. of **dīves**, *rich*], *richest.*

diū [cf. **diēs**, *day*], *adv., long, for a long time;* comp. **diūtius**, *longer, too long, very long;* sup. **diūtissimē**, *longest;* **quam diū**, *as long as;* **quam diūtissimē**, *as long as possible.*

diurnus, -a, -um [cf. **diēs**, *day*], *by day.*

diūturnitās, diūturnitātis [**diūturnus**], f., *length* (of time), *long continuance.*

diūturnus, -a, -um [**diū**], *long* (of time), *long continued.*

dīversus, -a, -um [part. of **dīvertō**, *separate*], *separate, apart, different; facing in the opposite direction, opposite.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, a Haeduan nobleman, leader of the pro-Roman faction among the Haedui; loyal to Caesar, by whom he was highly favored.

Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetii.

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus, *divide, part, separate.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um [**dīvus**, *god*], *of a god, divine;* **rēs dīvīnae**, *religious matters, worship.*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give; appoint;* **sē ventō dare**, *run before the wind;* **in fugam dare**, *put to flight.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach, show, tell of.*

documentum, -ī [cf. **doceō**], *n., example, warning, proof.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *suffer, be grieved.*

dolor, dolōris [cf. **doleō**], *m., pain; grief; vexation, indignation.*

dolus, -ī, *m., trickery, cunning.*

domesticus, -a, -um [**domus**], *of the home, native, civil* (of war); *his (their) own.*

dominus, -ī [cf. **domō**, *tame*], *m.*, *master.*

Domitius, Domitī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in 54 B.C., an officer of Pompey in the Civil War, one of Caesar's bitterest opponents. He was killed at Pharsalus, 48 B.C. (2) *Gnaeus Domitius*, a cavalry commander in Curio's army. (3) *Gnaeus Domitius Calvinus*, one of Caesar's most trusted officers in the Civil War.

Domnilāus, -ī, *m.*, a tetrarch of Galatia, who led a contingent of cavalry to Pompey's support in the Civil War.

domus, -ūs, *f.*, *house*, *home;* **domī**, loc., *at home;* **domō**, abl., *from home;* **domum**, end of motion, *home.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**dōnum**], *reward*, *present* (with).

dōnum, -ī [cf. **dō**], *n.*, *gift.*

dorsum, -ī, *n.*, *back;* of a mountain ridge, *top.*

dōs, dōtis [cf. **dō**], *f.*, *dowry.*

druidēs, druidum, *m.*, pl., *the druids*, priests of the native religion in Gaul and Britain. They were also the supreme judges in all disputes, and failure to abide by their decisions was punished by a sort of excommunication. Admittance to their order was granted only after a long period of study. Their teachings were transmitted orally and in verse form.

dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis [**dubitō**], *f.*, *doubt*, *hesitation.*

dubitō, -āre, āvī, -ātus [cf. **dubius**], *doubt;* *hesitate* (so regularly with complementary infin.).

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful*, *of doubtful meaning;* **nōn est dubium quīn**, *there is no doubt that.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, or CC [**duo** + **centum**, *hundred*], *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [cf. **dux**], *lead*, *conduct;* *bring;* *draw;* *dig* a trench; *drag out*, *prolong*, *put off;* *calculate*, *consider*, *regard*, *think;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *marry* (of the man), cf. **nūbō.**

dum, *conj.*, *while*, *so long as;* *until.*

Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, *m.*, a Haeduan nobleman, brother of Diviciacus; a leader of the anti-Roman faction among the Gauls, he constantly endeavored to thwart Caesar's plans, until he was put to death in 54 B.C., just before Caesar sailed the second time to Britain.

dumtaxat, *adv.*, *only.*

duo, -ae, -o, or II, *two.*

duodecim, or XII [**duo** + **decem**, *ten*], *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um [**duodecim**], *twelfth.*

duodēnī, -ae, -a [cf. **duodecim**], *distr. num.*, *twelve each*, *twelve at a time;* *twelve* (acting as a group).

duodēvīgintī, or XVIII [**duo dē vīgintī**, *two from twenty*], *eighteen.*

duplex, duplicis [**duo**, cf. **plicō**, *fold*], *adj.*, *twofold*, *double.*

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**duplex**], *double*, *increase.*

dūrē [**dūrus**], *adv.*, *hardly*, *harshly.*

dūritia, -ae [**dūrus**], *f.*, *hardness*, *hardship.*

dūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**dūrus**], *harden*, *toughen.*

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard.*

Dūrus, ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune in Caesar's army.

dux, ducis [cf. **dūcō**], *m.*, *leader, guide, officer.*

dynastēs, -ae [Greek = *mighty man*], *m.*, *dynast.*

Dyrrachīnus, -a, -um, *of* or *near Dyrrachium;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the people of Dyrrachium.*

Dyrrachium, Dyrrachī, *n.*, famous in Greek history as Epidamnus. When in 229 B.C. it was allied with Rome, the name was changed to avoid the suggestion of **damnum**, *loss.* Pompey made his headquarters there in 49–48 B.C. See also on 190, 3. The name survives in the modern *Durazzo.*

E

ē, ex [**ē** is used only before consonants, **ex** before either vowels or consonants], *prep.* with abl., *out of, out from* (cf. **ā, ab**, *away from*), *from, of; in, on; according to;* of time, *from, after;* **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side;* **ē rē**, *expedient.*

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of eastern Belgium, clients of the Treveri.

Eburovīcēs, -um, *m.*, pl., see **Aulercī.**

ēdictum, -ī [part. of **ēdīcō**, *proclaim*], *n.*, *proclamation.*

ēdiscō, ēdiscere, ēdidicī, — [**discō**, *learn*], *learn by heart.*

ēditus, -a, -um [part. of **ēdō**], *high, elevated.*

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus [**dō**, *put*], (*put out*), *publish;* **ēdere in vulgus**, *spread abroad.*

ēdoceō, ēdocēre, ēdocuī, ēdoctus [**doceō**, *teach*], *teach thoroughly, show clearly, instruct.*

ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead out* or *forth; draw* a sword.

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ex, fēmina**, *woman*], *make womanish, weaken, enfeeble.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [**ex + ferō**, *carry*], *carry out, take away; spread abroad, publish; lift up, raise; extol; elate, carry away, puff up.*

efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus [**ex + faciō**, *make*], *make out, make, produce, accomplish, bring about, complete.*

effugiō, effugere, effūgī, effugitūrus [**ex + fugiō**, *flee*], *escape.*

effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus [**ex + fundō**, *pour*], *pour out;* **sē in agrōs effundere**, *pour forth*, or *spread, over the fields.*

egēns, egentis [part. of **egeō**], *adj.*, *needy, poor.*

egeō, egēre, eguī, —, *lack, be without.*

egestās, egestātis [cf. **egeō**], *f.*, *privation, penury.*

ēgī, perf. of **agō.**

ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, *I;* pl. **nōs**, *we.*

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus [**gradior**, *step*], *go out, march out;* with or without **nāvī (nāvibus)**, *land, disembark.*

ēgregiē [**ēgregius**], *adv.*, *uncommonly well, admirably.*

ēgregius, -a, -um [**grex**, *herd*], *uncommon, distinguished, remarkable.*

ēgressus, -ūs [cf. **ēgredior**], *m.*, *way out, landing.*

Egus, -ī, *m.*, an Allobrogan, paymaster in Caesar's Gallic cavalry.

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *cast* or *drive out, cast up, run on shore;* **sē ēicere**, *rush out.*

ēlātē [**ēlātus**, part. of **efferō**, *elate*], *adv.*, *with elation.*

ēlātus, part. of **efferō.**

Elaver, Elaveris, *n.*, *the Allier*, a tributary of the Loire (Liger).

ēlēctus, part. of **ēligō**.

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, *elephant*.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a small tribe of southwestern Gaul, dependents of the Arverni.

ēliciō, ēlicere, ēlicuī, — [**laciō**, *entice*], *entice* or *lure out*.

ēlīdō, ēlīdere, ēlīsī, ēlīsus [**laedō**, *injure*], *break to pieces*.

ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus [**legō**, *choose*], *pick out, select*.

Ēlis, Ēlidis, *f.*, capital of the country Elis in western Peloponnesus, near Olympia.

ēloquor, ēloquī, ēlocutus [**loquor**, *speak*], *speak out, call out*.

Elusātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe of east central Aquitania.

ēmineō, ēminēre, ēminuī, —, *stand out, project*.

ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissus [**mittō**, *send*], *send out* or *forth; hurl; let go, drop*.

emō, emere, ēmī, emptus, *buy* (orig. *take;* cf. Eng. *sell*, orig. *give*).

ēnāscor, ēnāscī, ēnātus [**nāscor**, *be born*], *grow out*.

enim, *conj.*, postpositive, *for;* **neque enim**, *for . . . not, and in fact . . . not*.

ēnītor, ēnītī, ēnīsus or ēnīxus [**nītor**, *struggle*], *struggle out, climb up*.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūntiō**, *announce*], *speak out, reveal, report*.

eō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go, pass, march, advance;* **quō simul atque intrō est itum**, *as soon as they had gone in here*.

eō [old dat. of **is**, *that;* cf. **eōdem**], *adv.*, *thither*,[1] *there, to that place*.

eō [abl. of **is**, *that*], *adv.*, *on that account, therefore;* with comparatives, *the, all the, so much;* **eō magis**, *all the more*.

eōdem [old dat. of **īdem**, *the same;* cf. **eō**, *thither*], *adv.*, *to the same place*,[1] *to the same issue*.

Ephesius, -a, -um, *of* or *at Ephesus, Ephesian*.

Ephesus, -ī, *f.*, an old Greek city, large and wealthy, on the west coast of Asia Minor, famous for its worship of Diana. A Christian church was established there by St. Paul, who afterwards wrote to it one of his best epistles. This was one of the seven great churches of Asia, mentioned in *Revelation* 1, 11, and 2, 1.

ephippiātus, -a, -um [**ephippium**], *supplied with a horse-cloth*.

ephippium, ephippī, *n.*, *horse-cloth*. The saddle, **sella equestris**, does not appear to have been used before the fourth century A.D.

Ēpīrus or **Ēpīros**, -ī, *f.*, the northwestern district of Greece, included in the province of Macedonia in 148 B.C.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, *m.*, a Haeduan noble, one of the Gallic commanders in the uprising of 52 B.C.

epulum, -ī, *n.*, pl. **epulae**, *f.*, *banquet, feast*.

eques, equitis [**equus**], *m.*, *horseman, cavalryman; knight* (member of the equestrian order, the moneyed class at Rome; applied also to the wealthy classes in Gaul); pl. collectively, *cavalry*.

equester, equestris, equestre [**eques**], *of cavalry, cavalry-*.

[1] For the dat. in this use, see H. 428, 1 (385, 4, 1); L. M. 540; A. 428, *h* (225, *b*, 3); G 358; B. 193, 1.

equidem, *adv.*, *for my part.*

equitātus, -ūs [**equitō**, *ride*], *m.*, *cavalry.*

equus, equī, *m.*, *horse*; **equō**, *on horseback.*

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, a famous Greek geographer, historian, grammarian, and astronomer. He died about 200 B.C. at Alexandria, where he was librarian of the most celebrated library of antiquity.

ergō, *adv.*, *therefore*, *then.*

ēricius, ēricī [**ēr**, *hedgehog*], *m.*, *beam bristling with spikes*, used to blockade an entrance or approach.

ērigō, ērigere, ērēxī, ērēctus [**regō**, *keep straight*], *set up straight*, *lift up*; **sē ērigere**, *stand up*; perf. part. as *adj.*, *high and straight*, *high.*

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus [**rapiō**, *seize*], *wrest away*, *tear away*, *rescue*; **sē ēripere**, *escape from.*

error, errōris [cf. **errō**, *wander*], *m.*, *mistake.*

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus [**rumpō**, *burst*], *burst forth*, *break out*, *make a sally*; transitive, *pour out*, *vent.*

ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis [cf. **ērumpō**], *f.*, *sally*, *sortie.*

essedārius, essedārī [**essedum**], *m.*, *fighter from a war chariot.*

essedum, -ī, *n.*, two-wheeled *war chariot*, of the Britons.

Esuviī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe in northwestern Gaul.

et, *conj.*, *and*, *even*, *too*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*, *not only . . . but also.*

etēsiae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *the etesian winds*, blowing regularly from the north, during the summer, in the eastern Mediterranean.

etiam [**et iam**, *and now*], *conj.*, *also*, *even*, *too.*

etsī [**et sī**, *even if*], *conj.*, *even if*, *although.*

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus [**vādō**, *go*], *escape.*

ēvellō, ēvellere, ēvellī, ēvulsus [**vellō**, *pluck*], *pull out.*

ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī, ēventūrus [**veniō**, *come*], *turn out*, *result.*

ēventus, -ūs [cf. **ēveniō**], *m.*, *outcome*, *issue*, *end.*

ēvocātus, -ī [part. of **ēvocō**], *m.*, *reenlisted veteran*, a soldier who had served his full time and received an honorable discharge, but had reëntered service upon the invitation (hence the name) of a commander. He was exempt from menial duties, and received high wages and generous rewards.

ēvocō, -āre, āvī, ātus [**vocō**, *call*], *call out*, *invite*, *summon.*

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**volō**, *fly*], *fly out*, *rush forth.*

ex, see **ē**.

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**agitō**, freq. of **agō**, *drive*], *pursue constantly*, *harass.*

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**exāmen**, *tongue of a balance*], *weigh*; **ad certum pondus exāminātīs**, *of a definite weight* (lit., *weighed up to a definite weight*).

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**exanimus**, *out of breath*, *lifeless*], *put out of breath*; *kill*; perf. part., *breathless*, *exhausted*; *killed.*

exārēscō, exārēscere, exāruī, — [cf. **āridus**, *dry*], *dry up.*

exaudiō, exaudīre, exaudīvī, exaudītus [**audiō**, *hear*], *hear clearly.*

excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessūrus [**cēdō**, *go*], *go out*, *withdraw*, *retire.*

excellēns, excellentis [part. of **excellō**], *adj.*, *eminent, superior, remarkable.*

excellō, excellere, excelluī, excelsus, *be eminent, excel.*

excelsus, -a, -um [part. of **excellō**], *high, elevated.*

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **excipiō**], *catch up.*

excīdō, excīdere, excīdī, excīsus [**caedō,** *cut*], *cut out, cut away.*

excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptus [**capiō,** *take*], *receive, take, catch; withstand, support; follow, succeed;* **vada excipere** (of ships), *stand the shallows.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**excitus,** part. of **ecieō,** *call out*], *call out, rouse, excite, spur on; raise, erect.*

exclūdō, exclūdere, exclūsī, exclūsus [**claudō,** *shut*], *shut out, cut off, prevent.*

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**cruciō,** *torture*], *torture, torment.*

excubiae, -ārum [cf. **excubō**], *f.*, pl., *standing guard;* **in excubiīs,** *on guard.*

excubitor, excubitōris [cf. **excubō**], *m.*, *sentinel.*

excubō, excubāre, excubuī, excubitūrus [**cubō,** *lie*], *lie out, bivouac, stand guard, keep watch.*

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**calcō,** *tread*, from **calx,** *heel*], *tread down, stamp down.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex, causa,** *reason;* cf. **accūsō**], (*bring a reason for setting free*), *excuse, make excuses for* (with acc.).

exemplum, -ī [**ex,** cf. **emō,** *take*], *n.*, (*sample*), *example, precedent.*

exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus [**eō,** *go*], *go out, emigrate; march off.*

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus [**arceō,** *hold off*], *keep at work; exercise, train, discipline.*

exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis [**exercitō,** freq. of **exerceō**], *f.*, *practice, training, exercise.*

exercitātus, -a, -um [part. of **exercitō,** freq. of **exerceō**], *practiced, trained.*

exercitus, -ūs [**exerceō,** *train*], *m.*, (*a training, a trained body*), *army.*

exigō, exigere, exēgī, exāctus [**agō,** *drive*], *exact, collect, demand;* (of time) *pass, spend;* pass., *be past, be over.*

exiguē [**exiguus**], *adv.*, *scantily, barely.*

exiguitās, exiguitātis [**exiguus**], *f.*, *scantiness, smallness, lack, small number.*

exiguus, -a, -um, *scanty, small, short.*

exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis [**exīstimō**], *f.*, *judgment, estimate, opinion; reputation, credit.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**aestimō,** *estimate the value of*], *estimate, think, believe; determine.*

exitus, -ūs [cf. **exeō**], *m.*, *a going out, departure, escape; end, conclusion; result, issue, outcome.*

expediō, expedīre, expedīvī, expedītus [**ex, pēs,** *foot*], (*free the foot from*), *disentangle, free, arrange.*

expedītiō, expedītiōnis [**expediō**], *f.*, *expedition* (in light marching order).

expedītus, -a, -um [part. of **expediō**], *unobstructed, unencumbered, free, without baggage, light-armed; ready, easy.*

expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus [**pellō,** *drive away*], *drive out, expel.*

experior, experīrī, expertus, *try, test, learn by experience; attempt;* **reī ēventum experīrī,** *wait and see how things will turn out.*

expleō, explēre, explēvī, explētus [**pleō**, *fill*], *fill up*.

explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, and -uī, -itus [**plicō**, *fold*], *unfold, spread out, deploy, arrange*.

explōrātor, explōrātōris [**explōrō**], *m.*, *a scout*.

explōrātus, -a, -um [part. of **explōrō**], *certain, undoubted*.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *search out, examine, investigate, reconnoitre*.

expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus [**pōnō**, *place*], *set out, array; disembark, land; set forth* (in words), *state;* **hīs rēbus expositīs**, *having made these statements*.

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**portō**, *carry*], *carry away*.

exposcō, exposcere, expoposcī, — [**poscō**, *demand*], *demand, ask eagerly*.

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**pugnō** *fight*], (*take away by fighting*), *take by storm, capture* (by assault), *reduce*.

exquīrō, exquīrere, exquīsīvī, exquīsītus [**quaerō**, *look for*], *ask for, seek out*.

exsequor, exsequī, exsecūtus [**sequor**, *follow*], *follow out* or *up, enforce*.

exserō, exserere, exseruī, exsertus [**serō**, *weave*], *thrust out, uncover*.

exsistō, exsistere, exstitī, — [**sistō**, *place* (one's self)], *arise, ensue;* of horns, *grow out*.

exspectātiō, exspectātiōnis [**exspectō**], *f.*, *expectation*.

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**spectō**, *look at*], *look out for, expect, wait for, wait, wait to see*.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**spoliō**, *strip*], *strip off; deprive*.

exstitī, perf. of **exsistō**.

exstō, exstāre, —, exstātūrus [**stō**, *stand*], *stand out from; be above*.

exstruō, exstruere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus [**struō**, *arrange*], *heap up; construct*.

extendō, extendere, extendī, extentus or extēnsus [**tendō**, *stretch*], *stretch out;* **sē extendere**, *exert himself*.

exter or **exterus**, extera, exterum [**ex**, *out of*], *foreign, outer*. Comp. **exterior**, *outer;* **exterior hostis**, *an enemy from without*. Sup. **extrēmus**, *outermost, extreme, farthest, last, end of; worst;* **ad extrēmum**, *at last;* **ab extrēmā parte**, *at the end;* **ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem**, *towards the end of the speech*.

exterreō, exterrēre, exterruī, exterritus [**terreō**, *frighten*], *frighten greatly, terrify*.

extimēscō, extimēscere, extimuī, — [**timēscō**, inch. of **timeō**, *fear*], *fear greatly, dread*.

extrā [cf. **ex**, *out of*], (1) *adv.*, *without;* (2) *prep.* with acc., *outside, out of, without; contrary to*.

extrahō, extrahere, extrāxī, extractus [**trahō**, *draw*], *draw out, waste*.

extrēmus, see **exter**.

extrūdō, extrūdere, extrūsī, extrūsus [**trūdō**, *thrust*], *thrust out, shut out*.

exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtus, *strip, deprive, despoil*.

exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus [**ūrō**, *burn*], *burn up*.

F

faber, fabrī, *m.*, *mechanic, carpenter*.

Fabius, Fabī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion in Caesar's army in Gaul. (2) *Gaius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. (3) *Fabius*, a Paelig-

nian centurion in Curio's army in Africa.

facile [n. of **facilis**], *adv., easily.*

facilis, facile [cf. **facio**], *easy.*

facinus, facinoris [cf. **faciō**], *n., deed;* esp. *misdeed, crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, accomplish;* **proelium facere**, *fight a battle;* **praedam facere**, *get booty.* For pass., see **fīō**.

factiō, factiōnis [cf. **faciō**], *f., party, faction.*

factum, -ī [part. of **faciō**], *n., thing done, deed, act.*

facultās, facultātis [cf. **facilis**], *f., ability, power; opportunity, means, chance; supply, store, goods.*

fāgus, -ī, *f., beech,* the tree or the timber.

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive, disappoint, escape the notice of.*

falsus, -a, -um [part. of **fallō**], *false, unfounded.*

falx, falcis, *f., a curved blade* or *hook;* **mūrālis falx**, *wall-hook,* for pulling down city walls.

fāma, -ae, *f., report, good report.*

famēs, famis, *f., hunger, starvation.*

familia, -ae [**famulus**, *servant*], *f., body of slaves* in a household; *household;* **pater familiae**, *head of a family.*

familiāris, familiāre [**familia**], *of a household;* **rēs familiāris**, *private property, estate;* m. as *subst., friend, intimate.*

fānum, -ī, *n., temple.*

fās, *n.,* indecl., *right* (in the sight of Heaven). Cf. **iūs**, which is *right* according to human law.

fascis, fascis, *m., bundle;* pl., *the rods, the fasces,* a bundle of rods carried by a lictor before the highest Roman magistrates as a symbol of authority. The number of lictors depended on the office of the magistrate; consuls had twelve. **Prōicere fascēs**, *to throw away the fasces,* i.e. to give up an office. Provincial governors, and other magistrates in time of war, had an ax bound up with the rods, symbolizing the power of life and death.

fastīgātē [**fastīgātus**, *sloping*], *adv., sloping, slanting.*

fastīgium, fastīgī, *n., top; slope, descent;* **altitūdinis fastīgium**, *height.*

faucēs, faucium, *f.,* pl., *throat; narrow way, entrance.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *favor, be favorable to.*

fefellī, perf. of **fallō**.

fēlīcitās, fēlīcitātis [**fēlīx**, *lucky*], *f., luck, good fortune.*

fēlīciter [**fēlīx**, *lucky*], *adv., luckily, happily, successfully.*

fēmina, -ae, *f., woman, female.*

femur, femoris and feminis, *n., thigh.*

fera, -ae [**ferus**], *f., wild beast.*

ferē, *adv., almost, about, for the most part, generally, usually;* **hoc ferē differunt**, *they differ chiefly in this.*

fēriae, -ārum, *f.,* pl., *holidays;* **fēriae Latīnae**, *the Latin festival;* see on 188, 6.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry, bring; carry off, win; bear, endure, suffer; report, say;* with refl. or in pass., *hurry, rush;* **graviter ferre**, *be annoyed* or *indignant at;* **condiciōnem ferre**, *propose terms;* **ventus fert**, *the wind blows;* **cōnsuētūdō fert**, *it is usual;* **fert illōrum opīniō**, *they suppose;* **ut nātūra montis ferēbat**, *according to the form of the mountain.*

ferreus, -a, -um [**ferrum**], *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, -ī, *n., iron.*

fertilis, fertile [**ferō**], *bearing, productive, fertile.*

ferus, -a, -um, *wild, fierce.*

festūca, -ae, *f., rammer, pile-driver.*

fībula, -ae [cf. **fīgō**, *fix*], *f., fastener, clasp.*

fictus, part. of **fingō**.

fidēlis, fidēle [**fidēs**], *faithful, true.*

fidēs, fideī, *f., good faith, fidelity, loyalty; pledge, promise; confidence, trust; credit;* **fidem facere**, *give a promise;* **fidem sequī**, *seek the protection;* **in fidem recipere**, *receive under protection.*

fidūcia, -ae [cf. **fidēs**], *f., confidence.*

figūra, -ae [cf. **fingō**], *f., shape, form.*

fīlia, -ae, *f., daughter.*

fīlius, fīlī, *m., son.*

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fīctus, *mold, shape; invent;* **fīcta respondēre**, *mold their answers.*

fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītus [**fīnis**], *bound, limit, measure, end, finish.*

fīnis, fīnis [cf. **findō**, *cut*], *m., boundary, limit, end;* pl., *borders, country, territory;* **fīnem facere**, *stop.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um [**fīnis**], *bordering on, neighboring;* m. pl. as *subst., neighbors;* **fīnitimum bellum**, *a war with neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus, used as pass. of **faciō**, *be made, be done, be given; become; be brought to pass, come about, result, happen, be.*

firmiter [**firmus**], *adv., firmly, steadily.*

firmitūdō, firmitūdinis [**firmus**], *f., strength, firmness.*

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**firmus**], *strengthen, encourage.*

firmus, -a, -um, *strong, firm, stable.*

Flaccus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. See **Valerius**.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask earnestly, demand, dun.*

flamma, -ae, *f., flame, blazing fire.*

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn.*

Flegīnās, -ātis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Gaius Fleginas*, a Roman knight from Placentia, in Caesar's army in the Civil War.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *weep, shed tears.*

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, *blow.*

flōrēns, flōrentis [part. of **flōreō**, *bloom*], *adj., prosperous, flourishing.*

flōs, flōris, *m., flower.*

fluctus, -ūs [cf. **fluō**], *m., wave, billow.*

flūmen, flūminis [cf. **fluō**], *n., river, current.*

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxūrus, *flow.*

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, *dig.*

folium, folī [cf. **flōs**], *n., leaf.*

fōns, fontis, *m., spring, fountain.*

forāmen, forāminis, *n., opening, hole.*

fore = **futūrum esse**, fut. infin. of **sum**.

forīs, *adv., out of doors; outside.*

fōrma, -ae, *f., shape, form.*

fors, fortis [cf. **ferō**], *f., chance.*

fortasse [cf. **forte**], *adv., perhaps.*

forte [abl. of **fors**], *adv., by chance, perchance.*

fortis, forte, *brave, strong.*

fortiter [**fortis**], *adv., bravely, gallantly.*

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis [**fortis**], *f., bravery.*

fortūna, -ae [**fors**], *f., fortune, chance, fate; good fortune;* pl., *fortunes, property.*

fossa, -ae [part. of **fodiō**], *f., ditch, trench.*

fovea, -ae, *f., pitfall.*

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, *break, wreck.*

frāter, frātris, *m.*, *brother.*

frāternus, -a, -um [**frāter**], *of* or *for a brother*, *brotherly.*

fraudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**fraus**, *cheating*], *cheat*, *steal.*

fremitus, -ūs [**fremō**, *roar*], *m.*, *uproar*, *din.*

frequēns, frequentis, *adj.*, *in great numbers;* **quam frequentissimī**, *in as great numbers as possible.*

frequentia, -ae [**frequēns**], *f.*, *crowd*, *throng.*

frētus, -a, -um, *relying on.*

frīgidus, -a, -um [cf. **frīgus**], *cold.*

frīgus, frīgoris, *n.*, *cold;* pl., *cold weather*, as consisting of cold spells.

frōns, frondis, *f.*, *foliage.*

frōns, frontis, *f.*, *forehead; front.*

frūctus, frūctūs [cf. **fruor**], *m.*, (*enjoyment*), *fruit; income*, *profit; reward.*

frūgēs, frūgum [cf. **frūctus**], *f.*, pl., *fruits* (of the soil rather than of trees), *crops.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um [**frūmentum**], *of grain*, *productive of grain*, *grain-producing;* **rēs frūmentāria**, *grain supplies;* **nāvis frūmentāria**, *grain transport.*

frūmentātiō, frūmentātiōnis [**frūmentor**], *f.*, *foraging.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus [**frūmentum**], *get grain* or *supplies*, *forage.*

frūmentum, -ī [cf. **fruor**], *n.*, *grain;* pl., *crops*, *standing grain.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus, *enjoy.*

frūstrā, *adv.*, *in vain*, *without effect*, *without reason.*

Fūfius, Fūfī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Calēnus.**

fuga, -ae, *f.*, *flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus [cf. **fuga**], *flee*, *run away;* **fugientēs**, as *subst.*, *fugitives.*

fugitīvus, -a, -um [cf. **fugiō**], *fleeing;* m. as *subst.*, *runaway slave*, *fugitive.*

Fulvius, Fulvī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Fulvius Postumus*, one of Caesar's soldiers in the Civil War.

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, *smoke.*

funda, -ae [cf. **fundō**], *f.*, *sling.*

funditor, funditōris [cf. **funda**], *m.*, *slinger.*

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, *scatter*, *rout.*

fūnebris, fūnebre [cf. **fūnus**], *of a funeral;* n. pl. as *subst.*, *funeral service.*

fūnis, fūnis, *m.*, *rope.*

fūnus, fūneris, *n.*, *funeral.*

fūrtum, -ī [cf. **fūr**, *thief*], *n.*, *theft.*

futūrus, with or without **esse**, fut. infin. of **sum.**

G

Gabalī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a small tribe of southern Gaul, bordering on the province, dependents of the Arverni.

Gabīnius, Gabīnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Aulus Gabinius*, consul 58 B.C. In 67 B.C. he proposed the Gabinian law, which gave Pompey command against the pirates. As consul he acquiesced in Cicero's banishment. In 55 B.C. he was sent by Pompey to restore Ptolemy Auletes to his throne.

gaesum, -ī, *n.*, *javelin*, of the Alpine Gauls.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul; see also on 81, 2.

galea, -ae, *f.*, *helmet*, usually of leather strengthened by metal.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, *Gaul.* (1) Commonly applies to *Gallia trānsalpīna* or

ulterior, comprising France, Belgium, the parts of Germany and of Holland west of the Rhine, and Switzerland. (2) Restricted to *Gallia Celtica* in **51, 19**. (3) Restricted to the Roman province, *prōvincia ulterior* or simply *prōvincia*. (4) *Gallia cisalpīna* or *citerior*, northern Italy between the Rubicon and the Alps.

Gallicus, -a, -um [**Gallus**], *Gallic*.

gallīna, -ae [**gallus**, *cock*], *f.*, *hen*.

Gallograecia, -ae, *f.*, a name of Galatia; see on **Gallos, 189, 14**.

Gallus, -a, -um, *Gallic;* m. as *subst.*, *a Gaul, the Gauls;* also a Roman family name, see **Trebius** and **Tūticānus**.

Garumna, -ae, *f.*, *the Garonne*, a river of southwestern Gaul.

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southeastern Aquitania, on the upper Garonne (Garumna).

Gatēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northeastern Aquitania.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *semidep.*, *be pleased* or *delighted*.

gāvīsus, part. of **gaudeō**.

gemellus, -a, -um, *twin*.

Genava, -ae, *f.*, *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.

gēns, gentis [cf. **genus**], *f.*, *clan, family; race, nation*.

genus, generis [cf. **gēns**], *n.*, *family, race, kind, sort; class, species; character, nature, method*.

Genusus, -ī, *m.*, a river in the western part of the province of Macedonia, emptying into the sea between Dyrrachium and Apollonia.

Gergovia, -ae, *f.*, the principal city of the Arverni, where Caesar's army met its only repulse in Gaul when under his personal command.

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, *Germany*, including Denmark, most of Holland and of Germany, the northwest corner of Austria, and part of Russian Poland; bounded by the sea, the Rhine, the Danube, and the Vistula.

Germānicus, -a, -um [**Germānus**], *German, of* or *with the Germans*.

Germānus, -a, -um, *German;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the Germans*.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *carry, bear; manage, do;* pass., *be done, go on;* **negōtī bene gerendī**, *of successfully accomplishing their enterprise;* **bellum gerere**, *fight, carry on a campaign, wage war;* **rem gerere**, *fight;* **rēs gerēbātur**, *the action was taking place;* **rēs gesta**, *exploit*.

gladius, gladī, *m.*, *sword;* see Introd. § 39.

glāns, glandis, *f.*, *acorn; bullet*.

glōria, -ae, *f.*, *glory, renown; vainglory, pride*.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus [**glōria**], *glory in, boast of*.

Gomphēnsis, -e, *of Gomphi;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the people of Gomphi*.

Gomphī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a town of western Thessaly, near the borders of Epirus.

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the Greeks*.

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe between the hither and the farther province of Gaul.

grandis, grande, *large, great*.

Grānius, Grānī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Aulus Granius*, a Roman knight from Puteoli, in Caesar's army in the Civil War.

grātia, -ae [**grātus**], *f.*, *favor, influence, popularity; friendship; gratitude;* **grātiam referre**, *repay a*

favor, make requital; **grātiam habēre,** *be grateful;* **grātiās agere,** *thank.*

grātulātiō, grātulātiōnis [**grātulor,** *congratulate*], *f., congratulation;* **fit grātulātiō inter eōs,** *they congratulate each other.*

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, acceptable.*

gravis, grave, *heavy, oppressive; offensive; severe, serious, harsh;* **gravior aetās,** *more advanced age;* **gravis autumnus,** *the trying autumn.*

gravitās, gravitātis [**gravis**], *f., weight; importance.*

graviter [**gravis**], *adv., heavily; severely, bitterly;* **graviter ferre,** *be annoyed* or *indignant at.*

gubernātor, gubernātōris [**gubernō,** *steer*], *m., helmsman, pilot.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, possess, hold; make* a speech; *regard, consider;* **sē habēre,** *be;* **cōnsilium habēre,** *hold a consultation;* **ratiōnem habēre,** *keep an account, have regard for; have a way, propose;* **cōntiōnem habēre,** *make an address;* **comitia habēre,** *hold the elections;* **iter habēre,** *be on his way.*

Hadrūmētum, ī, *n.,* one of the oldest Phoenician settlements in Africa, on the coast south of Carthage.

Haeduus, Haeduī, *m., a Haeduan;* pl., *the Haedui* or *Haeduans,* a powerful tribe of east central Gaul, allied to Rome since about 123 B.C.

hāmus, -ī, *m., hook.*

harpagō, harpagōnis, *m., hook, grappling hook,* with a long pole, used for tearing down walls.

harundō, harundinis, *f., reed.*

hedera, -ae, *f., ivy.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii;* m. pl. as *subst., the Helvetii* or *Helvetians,* a Celtic nation whose territory nearly coincided with modern Switzerland.

Hēraclīa, -ae, *f.,* an important city of central Macedonia, on the Via Egnatia.

herba, -ae, *f., grass.*

Hercynius, -a, -um, *Hercynian,* used only with **silva.** The Hercynian forest covered southern Germany; see on 143, 18.

hērēditās, hērēditātis [**hērēs,** *heir*], *f., inheritance.*

Hibernia, -ae, *f., Ireland.*

hībernus, -a, -um [**hiems**], *of winter;* n. pl. as *subst.* (sc. **castra**), *winter quarters, winter camp.*

hīc, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.;* referring to what is near in place, time, or thought (cf. **ille**), *this, this man; he, she,* etc.; *the following, as follows;* **hōc,** n. abl., *on this account;* **hīc . . . ille,** *the latter* (i.e. the nearer in the narrative) . . . *the former,* rarely *the former* (when this is nearer in place, time, or thought, though farther away in the narrative) . . . *the latter.*

hīc [loc. of **hīc,** *this*], *adv., here, in this place* (of what is near either in fact or in the narrative; cf. **illīc**).

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**hiems**], *pass the winter, winter.*

hiems, hiemis, *f., winter; stormy weather.*

hinc [old case form of **hīc,** *this*], *adv., hence, from here.*

hippotoxota, -ae [Greek = *horse-bowman*], *m., mounted archer.*

Hirrus, -ī, *m.,* a Roman family name.

Gaius Lucilius Hirrus, a follower of Pompey in the Civil War.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, *Spain*, including Portugal; organized as two provinces, Hither and Farther Spain, whence the pl. **Hispāniae**, *the Spains* (cf. "the Carolinas," of North and South Carolina).

Hispānus, -a, -um, *Spanish*.

hodiē [cf. **hīc**, *this*; abl. of **diēs**, *day*], *adv.*, *to-day*.

homō, hominis, *m.*, *human being, man, fellow*; pl., *men, people, mankind, population*.

honestus, -a, -um [**honor**], *honorable*.

honor or **honōs**, honōris, *m.*, *honor, distinction*.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, *hour*. The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve hours, varying in length from about forty-five minutes in December to about seventy-five minutes in June. **Hōra septima**, *between twelve and one o'clock*.

hordeum, -ī, *n.*, *barley*.

horreum, -ī, *n.*, *storehouse, granary*.

horribilis, horribile [cf. **horreō**, *shudder at*], *to be shuddered at, frightful*.

hortātus, -ūs [**hortor**], *m.*, *urging*.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *urge, exhort, encourage, instigate*.

hospes, hospitis, *m.*, *guest; friend; stranger*.

hospitium, hospitī [**hospes**], *n.*, *relation of guest and host, guest-friendship, friendship; lodging, inn*.

hostis, hostis, *m.* (*stranger*), *enemy, the enemy* (both sing. and pl.); used of a public enemy, while an **inimīcus** is a personal enemy.

hūc [old case form of **hīc**, *this*], *adv.*, *hither, here* (= *hither*), *to this place; to this;* **hūc accēdēbant**, *to these were added*.

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis [**hūmānus**], *f.*, *refinement, culture*.

hūmānus, -a, -um [cf. **homō**], *civilized, refined*.

humilis, humile [**humus**, *ground*], *low; lowly, humble, obscure;* **multō humiliōrēs redigere**, *reduce to much greater obscurity*.

humilitās, humilitātis [**humilis**], *f.*, *lowness*.

I

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, iacitūrus, *lie, lie dead;* **iacentēs**, *the fallen*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, cast*.

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **iaciō**], *throw, toss back and forth; discuss, throw out, utter; boast of*.

iactūra, -ae [cf. **iaciō**], *f.*, *throwing away; loss, sacrifice, cost*.

iam, *adv.*, *now, already, at length; even, in fact;* with a fut. idea, *soon;* **nōn iam** or **iam nōn**, *no longer*. Cf. **nunc**.

Iān. = **Iānuārius**, -a, -um, *of January*.

ibi, *adv.*, *there, in that place*.

ibīdem [ibi], *adv.*, *just there, in that very place*.

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, *blow, stroke*.

īdem, eadem, idem, *dem. pron.*, *the same, the same thing; likewise, also*.

identidem [**idem**], *adv.*, *repeatedly, again and again*.

ideō, *adv.*, *therefore*.

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit, favorable, capable*.

Īdūs, Īduum, *f.*, pl., *the Ides*, the 15th of March, May, July, October, the 13th of other months.

ignis, ignis, *m.*, *fire*.

īgnōminia, -ae [**in-** neg., **(g)nōmen**, *name*], *f.*, *disgrace*.

īgnōrantia, -ae [**īgnōrāns**, part. of **īgnōrō**], *f.*, *ignorance*.

īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **īgnōscō**], *not know, be ignorant of;* pass., *be unknown.*

īgnōscō, īgnōscere, īgnōvī, īgnōtūrus [**in**- neg. + **(g)nōscō**, *learn*], (*not to learn* of wrong-doing, *wink at*), *pardon, overlook.*

īgnōtus, -a, -um [**in**- neg. + **(g)nōtus**, *known*], *unknown, unfamiliar.*

ille, illa, illud, *dem. pron.*, referring to what is remote in place, time, or thought (cf. **hīc**, *this*), *that, that man; he, she,* etc.; *the following.*

illīc [loc. of **ille** + **ce**], *adv., there, in that place* (of what is remote; cf. **hīc**, *here*).

illō [old dat. of **ille**, cf. **eō**, *thither*], *adv., to that place, to that end.*

Illyricum, -ī, a Roman province from 167 B.C., on the east shore of the Adriatic. It was a part of Caesar's province; see Introd. § 8.

imbēcillitās, imbēcillitātis [**imbēcillus**, *weak*], *f., weakness.*

imber, imbris, *m., rain.*

immānis, immāne, *immense, huge.*

imminuō, imminuere, imminuī, imminūtus [**in** + **minuō**, *lessen*], *lessen, impair.*

immittō, immittere, immīsī, immissus [**in** + **mittō**, *send*], *send into* or *against; let down* into or between; *throw, throw against.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**in**, **mola**, *meal*], (*sprinkle meal on* a sacrificial victim), *sacrifice.*

immortālis, immortāle [**in**- neg. + **mortālis**, *mortal*], *immortal.*

immūnis, immūne [**in**- neg., cf. **mūnus**, *duty, service*], *free from obligations, free from tribute.*

impedīmentum, -ī [**impediō**], *n., hindrance;* pl., *baggage* (of a legion, see Introd. § 42), *baggage train;* rarely, *baggage animals.*

impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītus [**in**, **pēs**, *foot*], *entangle, hamper, obstruct; block, hinder, prevent;* perf. part., *obstructed, hampered, embarrassed, burdened with baggage* (cf. **impedīmentum**); **impedītiōribus locīs**, *over ground unusually obstructed.*

impellō, impellere, impulī, impulsus [**in** + **pellō**, *drive*], *drive on, incite, induce.*

impendeō, impendēre, —, —, [**in** + **pendeō**, *hang*], *hang over, overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um [part. of **impendō**, *expend*], *expensive, high.*

imperātor, imperātōris [**imperō**], *m., commander-in-chief, general.*

imperātōrius, -a, -um [**imperātor**], *of a general, general's.*

imperātum, -ī [part. of **imperō**], *n., command, order.*

imperītus, -a, -um [**in**- neg. + **perītus**, *experienced*], *inexperienced, unacquainted.*

imperium, imperī [cf. **imperō**], *n., command, absolute control, supremacy, sovereignty, government.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**in**, cf. **pariō**, *get*], *make requisition, require,* see on 55, 11; *command, order, enjoin.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**in** + **patrō**, *effect*], *obtain* (by request or influence), *obtain one's request.*

impetus, -ūs [**in**, cf. **petō**, *aim at*], *m., onset, attack, assault; violence.*

impius, -a, -um [**in**- neg. + **pius**, *dutiful*], *impious* (*undutiful* towards heaven).

implicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, and -uī, -itus [**in** + **plicō**, *fold*], *intertwine;* **gra-**

viōre morbō implicitus, *attacked by a severe sickness.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**in** + **plōrō,** *bewail*], *entreat* (with tears), *appeal to.*

impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus [**in** + **pōnō,** *place*], *place* or *put in* or *on; impose; put on board, embark.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [**in** + **portō,** *carry*], *bring in, import.*

imprīmīs [**in prīmīs,** *among the first*], *adv., especially, particularly.*

improbō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [**improbus**], (*think base,* see **probō**), *disapprove, reject.*

improbus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **probus,** *good*], *base, shameless.*

imprōvīsus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + part. of **prōvideō,** *foresee*], *unforeseen;* n. abl., alone or with **de, ex,** *unexpectedly.*

imprūdēns, imprūdentis [**in-** neg. + **prūdēns** (contr. from **prōvidēns**), *foreseeing*], *adj., not expecting, off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, -ae [**imprūdēns**], *f., lack of foresight, lack of discretion, ignorance.*

impūbēs, impūberis [**in-** neg. + **pūbēs,** *mature*], *adj., immature; unmarried, chaste;* as *subst., boy.*

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**in** + **pugnō,** *fight*], *fight against, attack.*

impulsus, part. of **impellō.**

impūne [n. of **impūnis** (**in-** neg., cf. **poena,** *punishment*) *unpunished*], *adv., with impunity.*

impūnitās, impūnitātis [**impūnis** (**in-** neg., cf. **poena,** *punishment*), *unpunished*], *f., impunity, freedom from punishment.*

īmus, see **īnferior.**

in, *prep.* (1) with acc., *into, to, among, towards, upon, against; according to, in; for, till;* (2) with abl., *in, among, on, over; in the case of; during, in the course of.*

in- neg., used only in composition, *not, un-.*

inānis, ināne, *empty.*

incautē [**incautus,** *incautious*], *adv., incautiously, recklessly.*

incēdō, incēdere, incessī, incessūrus [**cēdō,** *go*], *enter, fill; break out.*

incendium, incendī [cf. **incendō**], *n., fire.*

incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus [cf. **candeō,** *shine*], *set fire to, kindle, burn.*

incertus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **certus,** *certain*], *uncertain, untrustworthy;* **incertīs ōrdinibus,** *since the ranks were not formed.*

incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsūrus [**cadō,** *fall*], *fall into* or *upon, occur;* of war, fear, etc., *break out.*

incīdō, incīdere, incīdī, incīsus [**caedō,** *cut*], *cut into.*

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus [**capiō,** *take*], *take in hand, begin.*

incitātiō, incitātiōnis [**incitō**], *f., excitement, enthusiasm.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**citō,** *put in quick motion*], *excite, rouse, urge, drive on, spur on, instigate;* **sē incitāre,** *rush on, come in* (of the tide); perf. part., *stirred up, angered; on the gallop;* **cursū incitātō,** *quickening their speed.*

inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus [**claudō,** *shut*], *shut in, inclose.*

incōgnitus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + part. of **cōgnōscō,** *learn*], *unknown.*

incolō, incolere, incoluī, — [**colō,** *dwell*], *inhabit, dwell in, live.*

incolumis, incolume, *unharmed, all safe and sound.*

incolumitās, incolumitātis [**incolumis**], *f.*, *safety.*

incommodum, -ī [**incommodus**], *n.*, *disadvantage, misfortune, trouble, loss, disaster, harm*; **quid incommodī**, *what disadvantage, any harm.*

incommodus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **commodus**, *convenient*], *inconvenient, unfavorable.*

incrēbrēscō, incrēbrēscere, incrēbruī, — [cf. **crēber**, *thick*], *increase, freshen.*

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile [**in-** neg. + **crēdibilis**, *believable*], *past belief, incredible, extraordinary.*

increpitō, -āre, —, — [freq. of **increpō**, *chide*], *keep chiding* or *nagging, reproach.*

incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, incubitūrus [cf. **cubō**, *lie*], *lean* or *press upon*; **in bellum incumbere**, *give one's self to war.*

incursiō, incursiōnis [cf. **incurrō**, *run upon*], *f.*, *invasion, attack.*

incursus, -ūs [cf. **incurrō**, *run upon*], *m.*, *assault, onset.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**in**, **causa**, *reason*], (*bring a reason against*), *blame, complain of.*

inde [cf. **is**, *that*, + **dē**, *from*], *adv.*, *from that place, from there, thence; after that, then.*

indicium, indicī [**index**, *discloser*], *n.*, *disclosure.*

indīcō, indīcere, indīxī, indictus [**dīcō**, *say*], *proclaim, appoint, convoke.*

indigeō, indigēre, indiguī, —, *lack, be without.*

indīligēns, indīligentis [**in-** neg. + **dīligēns**, *careful*], *adj.*, *careless, negligent.*

indīligentia, -ae [**indīligēns**], *f.*, *carelessness.*

indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead in, lead on; influence, impel.*

induō, induere, induī, indūtus, *put on*; **sē induere**, *impale themselves.*

industria, -ae, *f.*, *diligence.*

industriē [**industrius**, *diligent*], *adv.*, *diligently.*

indūtiae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *truce.*

ineō, inīre, iniī, initus [**eō**, *go*], *go into, enter upon, begin, form* (plans); **tertiā initā vigiliā**, *early in the third watch*; **initā hieme**, *in early winter*; **ratiōnem inīre**, *make a calculation*; **numerus inībatur**, *the number was counted.*

inermis, inerme [**in-** neg., **arma**, *arms*], *unarmed.*

iners, inertis [**in-** neg., **ars**, *skill*], *adj.*, *unskilful, weak, unmanly.*

īnfāmia, -ae [**īnfāmis**, *disreputable*, from **in-** neg., **fāma**, *good report*], *f.*, *disrepute, disgrace*; **īnfāmiam habēre**, *bring disgrace.*

īnfāns, īnfantis [**in-** neg. + pres. part. of **for**, *speak*], *m.* and *f.*, *infant, child.*

īnfectus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + part. of **faciō**, *do*], *not done*; **rē īnfectā**, *without accomplishing his* (*their*) *purpose.*

īnferior, īnferius [cf. **īnfrā**], *comp. adj.*, *lower, weaker, smaller*; **ab īnferiōre parte**, *down-stream.* Sup. **īnfimus** or **īmus**, *lowest, bottom of, foot of*; **ab īmō, ab īnfimō**, *from* or *at the foot.*

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus [**ferō**, *carry*], *carry* or *bring in* or *upon; import; inspire in; inflict on; put upon*; **bellum īnferre** with dat., *make war upon*; **signa īnferre**, *advance, charge*; **conversa signa īnferre**, *face about and charge.*

īnfestus, -a, -um, *unsafe; hostile, threatening;* **īnfestīs sīgnīs**, *in battle array.*

īnficiō, īnficere, īnfēcī, īnfectus [**faciō**, *do*], *stain.*

īnfidēlitās, īnfidēlitātis [**īnfidēlis**, *unfaithful*], *f., unfaithfulness, disloyalty.*

īnfīgō, īnfīgere, īnfīxī, īnfīxus [**fīgō**, *fix*], *fix in, fasten in.*

īnfimus, see **īnferior.**

īnfīnītus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + part. of **fīniō**, *bound*], *boundless, unlimited, countless.*

īnfirmitās, īnfirmitātis [**īnfirmus**], *f., weakness; inconstancy.*

īnfirmus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **firmus**, *strong*], *weak, feeble;* **īnfirmiōrēs animō**, *weakened in spirit.*

īnflātius [**īnflātus**, *puffed up*], *comp. adv., with more exaggeration; with considerable exaggeration.*

īnflectō, īnflectere, īnflexī, īnflexus [**flectō**, *bend*], *bend, bend over.*

īnfluō, īnfluere, īnflūxī, — [**fluō**, *flow*], *flow into, flow.*

īnfodiō, īnfodere, īnfōdī, īnfossus [**fodiō**, *dig*], *dig in, bury.*

īnfrā [cf. **īnferior**], *adv.*, and *prep.* with acc., *below, farther down.*

īnfrequēns, īnfrequentis [**in-** neg. + **frequēns**, *in great numbers*], *adj., in small numbers.*

īnfringō, īnfringere, īnfrēgī, īnfrāctus [**frangō**, *break*], *break, weaken.*

ingēns, ingentis, *adj., vast, huge, large.*

ingrātus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **grātus**, *grateful*], *ungrateful.*

ingredior, ingredī, ingressus [**gradior**, *step*], *enter, go into; enter upon, begin.*

iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw into* or *on, lay on; inspire.*

inimīcitia, -ae [**inimīcus**], *f.*, usually pl., *enmity, hostility.*

inimīcus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **amīcus**, *friendly*], *unfriendly, hostile;* m. as *subst., enemy;* used of a personal enemy, while **hostis** is a public enemy.

inīquitās, inīquitātis [**inīquus**], *f., unevenness, diversity, inequality, unfavorableness.*

inīquus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **aequus**, *even*], *uneven, unfavorable, disadvantageous.*

initium, initī [cf. **ineō**, *go into*], *n., beginning, edge* (of forests); pl., *elements.*

initus, part. of **ineō.**

iniungō, iniungere, iniūnxī, iniūnctus [**iungō**, *join*], *fasten upon.*

iniūria, -ae [**in-** neg., **iūs**, *right*], *f., wrong, injustice, outrage.*

iniussū, abl. only [**in-** neg. + **iussū**, *by the orders*], *m., without the command* or *orders.*

inlātus, part. of **īnferō.**

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ligō**, *bind*], *bind on, bind.*

inlūstris, inlūstre [**in**, **lūx**, *light*], *distinguished, famous.*

innāscor, innāscī, innātus [**nāscor**, *be born*], *be born in;* perf. part., *inborn.*

innītor, innītī, innīsus and innīxus [**nītor**, *rely on*], *lean on, support one's self with.*

innocēns, innocentis [**in-** neg. + part. of **noceō**, *harm*], *adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.*

inopia, -ae [**inops**, *needy*], *f., need, lack, want.*

inopīnāns, inopīnantis [**in-** neg. + part. of **opīnor**, *suppose*], *adj., unsuspecting, off one's guara, taken by surprise.*

inquit, *defective vb., he says;* always after one or more words of a direct quotation, cf. "says he."

inrumpō, inrumpere, inrūpī, inruptus [**rumpō,** *burst*], *burst in, rush in* or *upon.*

inruptiō, inruptiōnis [cf. **inrumpō**], *f., invasion, attack.*

īnsciēns, īnscientis [**in-** neg. + part. of **sciō,** *know*], *unaware, without the knowledge of.*

īnscientia, -ae [**īnsciēns**], *f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with, inexperience.*

īnscius, -a, -um [**in-** neg., cf. **sciō,** *know*], *ignorant, taken unawares.*

īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus [**sequor,** *follow*], *follow on* or *up, pursue.*

īnserō, īnserere, īnseruī, īnsertus [**serō,** *to string*], *insert.*

īnsidiae, -ārum [cf. **īnsideō,** *sit in*], *f.,* pl., *ambush, ambuscade, trap, stratagem.*

īnsīgne, īnsīgnis [**īnsīgnis**], *n., mark, sign; ornament, decoration* (for valor); *distinguishing garb.*

īnsīgnis, īnsīgne [**sīgnum,** *mark*], *marked, notable.*

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sinuō,** *wind*], *wind in;* **sē īnsinuāre,** *work their way in.*

īnsistō, īnsistere, īnstitī, — [**sistō,** *place* (one's self)], *step on, stand on, stand; pursue, adopt.*

insolēns, īnsolentis [**in-** neg. + part. of **soleō,** *be accustomed*], *adj., unused to.*

īnsolenter [**īnsolēns,** *insolent*], *adv., insolently, arrogantly.*

īnsolitus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **solitus,** *accustomed*], *unaccustomed, unused.*

īnstabilis, īnstabile [**in-** neg. + **stabilis,** *standing firm*], *unsteady.*

īnstar, *n.,* indecl., *likeness;* with gen., *like, as large as.*

īnstīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *goad on, urge.*

īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus [**statuō,** *set up*], *set in order, draw up, form, make ready, furnish, adopt; build; set about, undertake, begin, institute, ordain; teach, train.*

īnstitūtum, -ī [part. of **īnstituō**], *n., usage, custom, institution, plan.*

īnstō, īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātūrus [**stō,** *stand*], *be at hand; press on; insist.*

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus [**struō,** *arrange*], *draw up* an army in battle array, *form; build; provide, equip.*

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um [cf. **īnsuēscō,** *accustom,* part of **faciō,** *make*], *accustomed, well-trained.*

īnsuētus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **suētus,** *accustomed;* cf. **cōnsuēscō**], *unaccustomed, unused.*

īnsula, -ae, *f., island.*

īnsuper [**super,** *above*], *adv., on top, from above.*

integer, integra, integrum [**in-** neg., cf. **tangō,** *touch*], *untouched, unimpaired, intact, fresh, unwearied, unwounded.*

integō, integere, intēxī, intēctus [**tegō,** *cover*], *cover over.*

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus [**inter** + **legō,** *select*], (*select* or *distinguish between*), *see plainly, understand, comprehend, know.*

intentus, -a, -um [part. of **intendō,** *stretch*], *intent, eager;* with **in** or **ad** and acc., *intent on, absorbed in.*

inter [**in**], *prep.* with acc., *between, among;* in reciprocal idea with pers. pron., *from, to,* or *with each other.*

intercēdō, intercēdere, **intercessī,** in-

tercessūrus [**cēdō**, *go*], *go between, be between, intervene;* **huic bella intercesserant,** *he had been engaged in wars;* **huic simultās cum Cūriōne intercēdēbat,** *there was enmity between him and Curio.*

intercipiō, intercipere, intercēpī, interceptus [**capiō,** *take*], *cut off, intercept.*

interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus [**claudō,** *shut*], *shut off, cut off, close up, blockade.*

interdīcō, interdīcere, interdīxī, interdictus [**dīcō,** *speak*], (*interfere by speaking*), *forbid, prohibit, exclude;* **interdīcere nē,** *forbid to, order not to.*

interdiū [**inter,** cf. **diēs,** *day*], *adv., by day.*

interdum [**inter dum,** *betweenwhiles*], *adv., for a time; sometimes.*

intereā [**inter ea,** *between those things*], *in the meantime, meanwhile; presently.*

intereō, interīre, interiī, interitūrus [**eō,** *go*], *perish, die, be destroyed.*

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus [**faciō,** *do*], *put out of the way, kill, slay.*

intericiō, intericere, interiēcī, interiectus [**iaciō,** *throw*], *throw between, put between, intersperse;* pass., *intervene;* **brevī spatiō interiectō,** *after a brief interval;* **portibus interiectīs,** *harbors scattered* (along the coast).

interim [cf. **inter**], *adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.*

interior, interius [cf. **intrā**], *comp. adj., inner, interior, inner part of;* **interiōrēs,** *the inland peoples; the besieged.*

intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissus [**mittō,** *send*], *interrupt, cease, discontinue; let pass* (of time); *leave vacant;* **intermissō spatiō,** *at a distance;* **trīduō intermissō,** *after an interval of three days;* **ventō intermissō,** *the wind died out;* **intermissus collibus,** *free from hills.*

interneciō, interneciōnis [cf. **necō,** *kill*], *f., annihilation, utter destruction.*

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **pellō,** *strike*], *interrupt, prevent.*

interpōnō, interpōnere, interposuī, interpositus [**pōnō,** *put*], *put between, interpose, allow to elapse; arouse* suspicion; **nūllā interpositā morā,** *without delay.*

interpres, interpretis, *m., interpreter.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus [**interpres**], *interpret, explain.*

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**rogō,** *ask*], *ask, question.*

interrumpō, interrumpere, interrūpī, interruptus [**rumpō,** *burst*], *burst into, interrupt.*

intersum, interesse, interfuī, interfutūrus [**sum,** *be*], *be between; take part in* (a battle, worship, etc.); *be for the interest of.*

intervāllum, -ī [**vāllus,** *stake*], (*space between two stakes*), *space, interval, distance apart, distance.*

interventus, -ūs [cf. **interveniō,** *come between*], *m., coming on, intervention.*

intoleranter [**intolerāns,** *impatient,* from **in-** neg. + part. of **tolerō,** *endure*], *adv., impatiently;* **intolerantius īnsequī,** *be in hot pursuit.*

intrā [cf. **in**], *prep.* with acc., *within, inside of;* **intrā annum vīcēsimum,** *before the twentieth year.*

intrītus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **trītus,**

rubbed away], *not worn, not exhausted.*

intrō [cf. **in**], *adv., to the inside, in.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **intrō**, *adv.*], *go into, enter, step in.*

intrōdūcō, intrōdūcere, intrōdūxī, intrōductus [**intrō**, *adv.*, + **dūcō**, *lead*], *lead in.*

introitus, -ūs [cf. **introeō**, *enter*], *m., entrance.*

intrōrsus [contr. from **intrōvorsus**, *turned in;* cf. **rūrsus**], *adv., inside, into the interior.*

intus [cf. **in**], *adv., within.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + **ūsitātus**, *usual*], *unusual, strange.*

inūtilis, inūtile [**in-** neg. + **ūtilis**, *useful*], *useless.*

invehō, invehere, invēxī, invectus [**vehō**, *carry*], *carry in;* pass., *ride in.*

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus [**veniō**, *come*], *come upon, find* (by chance, cf. **reperiō**); *discover, learn.*

inventor, inventōris [cf. **inveniō**], *m., discoverer, inventor.*

invidia, -ae [**invidus**, *envious*], *f., envy, jealousy.*

inviolātus, -a, -um [**in-** neg. + part. of **violō**, *violate*], *inviolate; inviolable.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *invite.*

invītus, a, -um, *unwilling;* **sē invītō**, *against his will.*

Iovem, acc. of **Iuppiter.**

ipse, -a, -um, *intensive pers. pron., himself, he himself, he* (emphatic), *his own; herself,* etc.; *very, the very one.*

īrācundia, -ae [**īrācundus**, *irritable*], *f., hasty temper, irritability, wrath.*

īrātus, -a, -um [part. of **īrāscor**, *be angry*], *angered, in anger.*

is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, not emphasizing nearness like **hīc**, nor remoteness like **ille**, *that, this, the; he, she, it;* followed by a result clause, *such.*

ita [cf. **is**], *adv., so, thus, in this way, as follows;* **nōn ita**, *not so very.*

Italia, -ae, *f., Italy;* see on 57, 26.

Italicus, -a, -um, *Italian, from Italy.*

itaque [**ita** + **que**, *and*], *conj., and so, accordingly, consequently.*

item [cf. **ita**], *adv., likewise, also, in like manner.*

iter, itineris [cf. **itum**, part. of **eō**, *go*], *n., a going, marching; journey, march; course, road, route;* **magnīs itineribus**, *by forced marches* (see Introd. § 45); **iter facere**, *to march;* **iter dare**, *grant a passage;* **in itinere, in itineribus**, *on the march;* **ex itinere**, *right from the march.*

iterum, *adv., again, a second time.*

Itius, -a, -um, only with **portus**, the port from which Caesar sailed to Britain, either Wissant or, less probably, Boulogne. See on 112, 17.

itum, part. of **eō**, *go.*

Iuba, -ae, *m.*, king of Numidia, a supporter of the Pompeian party in the Civil War. See also on 172, 16.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command.*

iūdex, iūdicis [**iūs**, cf. **dīcō**, *speak*], *m., (one who declares justice), juror.*

iūdicium, iūdicī [**iūdex**], *n., judicial investigation, trial, court; judgment, decision, opinion.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**iūdex**], *judge, decide, give a verdict, vote; be of the opinion, think.*

iugum, -ī [cf. **iungō**], *n., yoke;* (of mountains) *ridge.*

Iūlius, Iūlī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Caesar.**

iūmentum, -ī [for **iugmentum**, cf. **iugum** and **iungō**], *n., yoke-animal, beast of burden, pack-horse, horse.*

iūnctūra, -ae [**iungō**], *f.*, *joining;* **quantum iūnctūra distābat**, *just filling the space between.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join, unite.*

iūnior, iūniōris [contr. comp. of **iuvenis**, *young*], *m.*, *young man;* see on **243**, 16.

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, *Jupiter*, god of the sky, the chief deity of the Romans, worshiped as the king of gods and men.

Iūra, ae, *m.*, *the Jura*, a mountain range separating the Helvetii from the Sequani.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**iūs**], *take oath, swear.*

iūs, iūris, *n.*, *right, justice, rights;* **iūs dīcere**, *administer justice;* **iūre**, *according to justice, rightly.*

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī [**iūs** + gerundive of **iūrō**], *n.*, *oath.*

iussū, abl. only [cf. **iubeō**], *m.*, *under the command, by the orders.*

iūstitia, -ae [**iūstus**], *f.*, *justice, uprightness.*

iūstus, -a, -um [**iūs**], *rightful, just;* (of a reason) *forcible; regular.*

iuventūs, iuventūtis [**iuvenis**, *young*], *f.*, *youth; young men.*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid.*

iūxtā, *adv.*, *near, near by.*

K

Kal. = **Kalendae**, -ārum, *f.*, *Calends*, the first day of the month, the name of the month being a limiting adj.; see on **55**, 5.

L

L. = **Lūcius**, Lūcī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

L = **quīnquāgintā**, *fifty;* LX = **sexāgintā**; LXX = **septuāgintā**; LXXX = **octōgintā.**

Labeātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., an Illyrian people just north of Lissus.

Laberius, Laberī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Dūrus.**

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Titus Labienus*, Caesar's ablest lieutenant in the Gallic War. See also on **195**, 20.

labor, labōris, *m.*, *toil, effort, exertion, hardship.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**labor**], *toil, make effort; be in distress, be in danger.*

labrum, -ī [cf. **lambō**, *lick*], *n.*, *lip; brim, rim, edge.*

lac, lactis, *n.*, *milk.*

Lacedaemon, -onis, *f.*, *Sparta*, capital of Laconia in Peloponnesus, once the most powerful city of Greece, but in Caesar's time of greatly diminished importance.

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, *harass, annoy, assail, attack.*

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, *tear.*

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, *lake.*

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, *injure; break* (a promise).

Laelius, Laelī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Decimus Laelius*, a naval officer of Pompey in the Civil War.

laetitia, -ae [**laetus**], *f.*, *rejoicing, gladness.*

laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyful.*

langnidus, -a, -um, *weak, listless.*

lapis, lapidis, *m.*, *stone.*

largior, largīrī, largītus [**largus**, *abundant*], *give freely, supply with; bribe.*

largiter [**largus**, *abundant*], *adv.*, *abundantly;* **largiter posse**, *have abundant influence.*

largītiō, largītiōnis [**largior**], *f.*, *lavish giving, corruption.*

Lārīsa, -ae, *f.*, *Larissa*, a city of central Thessaly.

Lārīsaeī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the people of Larissa.

lassitūdō, lassitūdinis [**lassus**, *weary*], *f.*, *weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē [**lātus**], *adv.*, *widely, extensively*; **longē lātēque**, *far and wide.*

lateō, latēre, latuī, —, *lie hidden, lurk; pass unnoticed.*

Latīnus, -a, -um, *of Latium* (the district of Italy in which Rome was situated), *Latin.*

lātitūdō, lātitūdinis [**lātus**], *f.*, *width, breadth, extent.*

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German tribe, north of the Helvetii and the Tulingi.

latrō, latrōnis, *m.*, *bandit, robber.*

latrōcinium, latrōcinī [cf. **latrōcinor**, *rob*], *n.*, *robbery, free-booting.*

latus, lateris, *n.*, *side, flank*; **ab latere**, *on the flank.*

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide, extensive.*

lātus, part. of **ferō**.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**laus**], *praise.*

laurea, -ae, *f.*, *laurel wreath.*

laus, laudis, *f.*, *praise, title to praise, glory; achievement.*

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus, *wash*; pass. used reflexively, *bathe.*

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**laxus**, *wide open*], *open out, spread out.*

lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis [**lēgō**, *send on a mission*], *f.*, *embassy.*

lēgātus, -ī [part. of **lēgō**, *send on a mission*], *m.*, *envoy, ambassador*; in the army, *lieutenant*; see Introd. § 32.

legiō, legiōnis [cf. **legō**, *collect*], *f.*, *levy, legion*; see Introd. § 27.

legiōnārius, -a, -um [**legiō**], *of a legion, legionary*; m. pl. as *subst.*, *legionary soldiers.*

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, *gather, choose.*

legūmen, legūminis [cf. **legō**, *collect*], *n.*, *legume* (the fruit of podded plants, including beans, peas, and lentils).

Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, *Lake Geneva*; in Caesar always with *lacus.*

Lemovīcēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southwestern Gaul, west of the Arverni. The name survives in *Limoges.*

lēnis, lēne, *smooth, gentle.*

lēnitās, lēnitātis [**lēnis**], *f.*, *smoothness, gentleness, leniency.*

lēniter [**lēnis**], *adv.*, *gently*; **lēnius**, *less vigorously.*

lentē [**lentus**, *slow*], *adv.*, *slowly.*

Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus Crus*, consul in 49 B.C., bitter opponent of Caesar. (2) See **Mārcellīnus**. (3) *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther*, consul in 57 B.C. and active in procuring Cicero's recall from exile. In the Civil War he followed Pompey.

lēnunculus, -ī, *m.*, *small sailing vessel.*

Lepontiī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe, near the frontier of Cisalpine Gaul.

Leptitānī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., the people of Leptis Minor, a town on the coast of the province of Africa.

lepus, leporis, *m.*, *hare.*

levis, leve, *light, trifling, unimportant.*

leviter [**levis**], *adv.*, *lightly.*

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**levis**], *lighten, relieve.*

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, *law, statute; bill.*

Lexoviī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe just west of the mouth of the Seine (Sequana). Their name is preserved in the modern *Lisieux*.

libenter [**libēns**, *willing*], *adv.*, *willingly*, *gladly*.

līber, lībera, līberum, *free*, *independent*.

līberālitās, līberālitātis [**līberālis**, *befitting a freeman*], *f.*, *generosity*, *liberality*.

līberāliter [**līberālis**, *befitting a freeman*], *adv.*, *generously*, *liberally*, *courteously*.

līberē [**līber**], *adv.*, *freely*, *openly*.

līberī, -ōrum [pl. of **līber**], *m.*, pl., *children* (the free-born, never including slaves).

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**līber**], *free*, *deliver*, *rescue*.

lībertās, lībertātis [**līber**], *f.*, *freedom*, *liberty*.

libet, libēre, libuit, *impers.*, *it is pleasing*, *it pleases*.

Libō, Libōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Lucius Scribonius Libo*, an intimate friend of Pompey and a commander in his fleet. With Octavius he conquered Illyricum in 49 B.C.

lībra, -ae, *f.*, *balance*, *level*; **ad lībram**, *of equal height* (lit., *according to the level*).

lībrīlis, lībrīle [**lībra**, *pound*], *of a pound*; **fundae lībrīlēs**, *slings throwing stones weighing a pound*.

Liburnicus, -a, -um, *Liburnian*. The people of Liburnia, the coast district of northern Illyricum, were famous for their seamanship and their swift galleys.

licentia, -ae [**licēns**, part. of **licet**], *f.*, *freedom*; *presumption*, *lawlessness*.

liceor, licērī, licitus, *bid* (at auction).

licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, *be permitted*, *be allowed*; **cōnspicārī licet**, *we can see*.

Licinius, Licinī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Damasippus**.

Liger, Ligeris, *m.*, *the Loire*.

lignor, -ārī, -ātus [**lignum**], *gather wood*.

lignum, -ī, *n.*, *wood*, *timber*; pl., *firewood*.

līlium, līlī, *n.*, *lily*. The name was jokingly given to one of Caesar's defensive devices at Alesia; see 158, 5.

līmen, līminis, *n.*, *threshold*, *entrance*.

Lingonēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe of east central Gaul.

lingua, -ae, *f.*, *tongue*; *language*.

lingula, -ae [dim. of **lingua**], *f.*, *tongue of land*.

linter, lintris, *f.*, *boat*.

līnum, -ī, *n.*, *flax*.

Liscus, -ī, *m.*, chief magistrate of the Haedui in 58 B.C.

Lissus, -ī, *m.*, a town of southwestern Illyricum, near the coast.

littera, -ae, *f.*, *letter* of the alphabet. Pl., *letters*; collectively, *letter* (epistle), *despatch*, *writing*; sometimes *letters*, *despatches*.

lītus, lītoris, *n.*, *shore*, *beach*, *coast*.

locuplēs, locuplētis [**locus**, cf. **plēnus**, *full*], *adj.*, *rich in lands*, *wealthy*.

locus, -ī, *m.*, pl. loca, *n.*, *place*, *site*, *position*, *ground*; *degree*, *footing*; *rank*; *opportunity*; **servōrum locō**, *as slaves*; **locō cēdere**, *give ground*.

locūtus, part. of **loquor**.

longē [**longus**], *adv.*, *far*, *by far*; *away*, *distant*. Comp. **longius**, *farther*, *too far*, *very far*, *to some distance*; *longer* (of time).

longinquus, -a, -um [**longus**], *far removed, distant.*

longitūdō, longitūdinis [**longus**], *f., length.*

longurius, longurī [**longus**], *m., long pole.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

Longus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. See **Cōnsidius**.

loquor, loquī, locūtus, *speak, talk, tell.*

lōrīca, -ae [**lōrum**, *strap*], *f., coat of mail* (originally of leather); *breastwork.*

Luccēius, Luccēī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Lucceius*, a confidant of Pompey; see on 198, 29.

Lūcīlius, Lūcīlī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Hirrus**.

Lucrētius, Lucrētī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucretius Vespillo*, one of Pompey's naval officers.

lūctus, -ūs [cf. **lūgeō**, *mourn*], *m., mourning, grief.*

Lugotorīx, -īgis, *m.*, a British chief.

lūna, -ae [cf. **lūx**], *f., moon;* personified, *Luna, the Moon.*

lūx, lūcis, *f., light;* **prīmā lūce, ortā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae [**lūxus**, *excess*], *f., extravagance, riotous living.*

M

M. = **Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, **M'.** = **Mānius**, Mānī, *m.*, Roman praenomina or given names.

M = **mīlle**, *thousand;* **MC** = **mīlle centum**, *eleven hundred;* **MCC** = **mīlle ducentī**, *twelve hundred.*

Macedonēs, -um, *m.*, pl., *Macedonians.*

Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, organized as a province in 148 B.C., including Epirus, Thessaly, and southern Illyricum, with Dyrrachium and Apollonia.

māceria, -ae, *f., wall.*

māchinātiō, māchinātiōnis [**māchinor**, *contrive*], *f., contrivance, machine* (in general).

maciēs, —, abl. **maciē**, *f., leanness, loss of fodder.*

maestus, -a, -um [cf. **maereō**, *be sad*], *sad, dejected.*

magis [cf. **magnus**], *comp. adv., more, rather.* Sup. **maximē**, *most, very, exceedingly, especially;* **quam maximē**, *as much as possible;* **quam maximē potest**, *as much as he can.*

magister, magistrī [cf. **magis**], *m., master, captain* (of a ship).

magistrātus, -ūs [cf. **magister**], *m., magistrate; magistracy.*

magnificus, -a, -um [**magnus**, cf. **faciō**, *make*], *grand, magnificent.*

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis [**magnus**], *f., greatness, size, extent.*

magnopere [abl. **magnō opere**, *with great labor*], *adv., very much, greatly, earnestly.*

magnus, -a, -um, comp. **maior**, sup. **maximus**, *great, large, mighty, important;* **vōx magna**, *loud voice.* Comp. also, *older;* pl. as *subst., ancestors, fathers,* (with **nātū**) *elders.*

maiestās, maiestātis [**maior**], *f., greatness, majesty.*

maior, see **magnus**.

malacia, -ae, *f., calm* (at sea).

maleficium, maleficī [**maleficus**, *wrongdoer*], *n., wrong, harm, damage.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, — [**mags** (syncopated form of **magis**) + **volō**, *wish*], *wish rather, prefer rather.*

malum, -ī [**malus**, *bad*], *n., disaster, misfortune.*

mālus, -ī, *m.*, *mast.*

mancipium, mancipī [cf. **manus**, **capiō**, *take*], *n.*, (*taking by hand*, in formal acceptance of ownership), *slave*, obtained by legal transfer.

mandātum, -ī [part. of **mandō**], *n.*, *commission*, *instruction*, *order*, *errand.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **manus**, **dō**, *give*], *give over* into one's hands, *intrust*, *commit; commission*, *direct*, *order;* **fugae sē mandāre**, *take to flight.*

Mandubiī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of east central Gaul, before whose chief city, Alesia, the most decisive struggle of the Gallic War was fought.

Mandubracius, Mandubracī, *m.*, a chief of the Trinovantes in Britain, friendly to Caesar.

māne, *adv.*, *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *stay*, *remain.*

manipulāris, manipulāris [**manipulus**], *m.*, *comrade* (of the same maniple).

manipulus, -ī [**manus**, cf. **pleō**, *fill*], *m.*, (*handful*) ; *maniple*, *company*, in the Roman legion. Its standard was originally a *handful* of hay about a pole. See Introd. § 28.

Mānlius, Mānlī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Manlius*, governor of the Province in 78 B.C., defeated by the Aquitanians.

mānsuēfaciō, mānsuēfacere, mānsuēfēcī, mānsuēfactus [cf. **mānsuēscō**, *grow tame*, **faciō**, *make*], *tame;* pass. **mānsuēfīō**, *be tamed.*

mānsuētūdō, mānsuētūdinis [for **mānsuētitūdō**, from **mānsuētus**, *tamed*], *f.*, *gentleness*, *clemency.*

manus, -ūs, *f.*, *hand; troop*, *force*, *band* (of soldiers) ; **manū mūnītus**, *artificially fortified.*

Mārcellīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus*, a quaestor in Caesar's army in 48 B.C.

Mārcellus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Gaius Claudius Marcellus*, consul 49 B.C., a bitter opponent of Caesar, commander of a division of Pompey's fleet in the Civil War.

Mārcius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcius Rufus*, an officer of Curio in Africa.

mare, maris, *n.*, *sea*, *sea-water ;* **mare Ōceanus**, *the Ocean.*

maritimus, -a, -um [**mare**], *of* or *on the sea*, *sea-*, *on the coast; naval;* **rēs maritimae**, *manœuvres by sea.*

Marrūcīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of central Italy on the Adriatic, neighbors of the Paelignians.

Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, *Mars*, a Roman god of flocks and herds, who became identified with Ares, the Greek god of war.

Mārsus, -a, -um, *Marsian*, *of the Marsians ;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the Marsians*, a people inhabiting the mountains of central Italy, famous as soldiers.

mās, maris, *m.*, *male.*

matara, -ae, *f.*, a Gallic *javelin.*

māter, mātris, *f.*, *mother;* **mātrēs familiae**, *matrons.*

māteria, -ae [**māter**], *f.*, *timber*, *wood.*

māterior, -ārī, — [**māteria**], *get timber.*

Matiscō, -ōnis, *f.*, a town of the Haedui on the Saône (Arar). The name survives in the modern *Mâcon.*

mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī [**māter**], *n.*, (*motherhood*), *marriage ;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *marry*, of the husband only; cf. **nūbō.**

Matrona, -ae, *f.*, *the Marne*, flows into the Seine (Sequana) near Paris (Lutetia).

mātūrē [**mātūrus**], *adv.*, *early*.

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī, — [cf. **mātūrus**], *ripen*.

mātūritās, mātūritātis [**mātūrus**], *f.*, *ripeness*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**mātūrus**, *early*], *hasten*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe; early*.

maximē, see **magis**.

maximus, see **magnus**.

mediocris, mediocre [**medius**], *middling, ordinary, unimportant, common; small;* of distance, *short, no great*.

Mediomatricī, -ōrum or -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northeastern Celtic Gaul.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [**medius, terra**, *land*], *inland*.

medius, -a, -um, *the middle of, mid-;* **a** or **in colle mediō**, *half-way up the hill;* **per mediōs**, *through the midst of them*.

melior, see **bonus**.

membrum, -ī, *n.*, *limb*, of the body.

meminī, meminisse, perf. with pres. force, *remember*.

memoria, -ae [**memor**, *mindful*], *f.*, *memory, recollection;* **memoriā tenēre**, *remember;* **memoriā prōditum est**, *there is a tradition;* **memoriae prōdendum**, *worthy to be recorded;* **suprā hanc memoriam**, *before our time*.

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a people in northeastern Belgium, having possessions also across the Rhine.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, *mind, intellect, purpose*.

mēnsis, mēnsis, gen. pl. until post-classical period, mēnsum [cf. **mētior**, *measure*], *m.*, *month*.

mēnsūra, -ae [cf. **mētior**], *f.*, *measurement, measure*.

mentiō, mentiōnis [cf. **mēns**], *f.*, *calling to mind, mention*.

mercātor, mercātōris [**mercor**, *trade*], *m.*, *trader, merchant*.

mercātūra, -ae [**mercor**, *trade*], *f.*, *trade, traffic;* pl., *trading transactions*.

mercēnnārius, -a, -um [**mercēs**, *pay*], *serving for pay, mercenary*.

Mercurius, Mercurī [cf. **mercor**, *trade*], *m.*, *Mercury*, the Roman god of trade. In time he became identified with the Greek Hermes and was considered the messenger of the gods, the conductor of souls to the lower world, the protector of streets and roads, the inventor of the lyre, of the alphabet, and of the power of speech, and the patron of eloquence.

mereor, merērī, meritus, *deserve;* **merērī dē**, *serve (deserve from), serve the interests of;* **bene meritus**, *well-deserving*.

merīdiānus, -a, -um [**merīdiēs**], *of midday;* **merīdiānō tempore**, *at noon*.

merīdiēs, merīdiēī [for **medīdiēs**, from **medius** + **diēs**, *day*], *m.*, *midday; south*.

meritum, -ī [part. of **mereor**], *n.*, *deserts, service*.

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul 61 B.C.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus [cf. **mētor**], *measure, measure out, distribute*.

metō, metere, messuī, messus, *reap*.

mētor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. **mētior**], *measure, lay out*.

Mētropolis, -is, *f.*, a city of western Thessaly.

Mētropolītae, -ārum or -um, *m.*, pl., the people of Metropolis.

metus, -ūs, *m.*, *fear.*

meus, -a, -um [cf. **mē**, acc. of **ego**, *I*], *poss. pron.*, *my, mine.*

mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, *soldier, foot-soldier.*

mīlitāris, mīlitāre [**mīles**], *military;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *military science, warfare.*

mīlitia, -ae [**mīles**], *f.*, *military service.*

mīlle or **M**, *indecl. adj.* in sing., *thousand;* pl. as *subst.*, **mīllia**, mīllium, *n.*, usually with partit. gen.; **mīlle passūs**, *thousand paces, mile;* pl. **mīllia passuum**, or **mīllia** alone, *miles.*

minae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *threats.*

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, the Roman goddess of wisdom, who presided over the arts and sciences and all the handiwork of women. She was patroness of schools, and schoolboys took part in the celebration of her festival, which lasted five days in March. She was identified with the Greek goddess Athena.

minimē, see **minus.**

minimus, see **parvus.**

minor, see **parvus.**

Minucius, Minucī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers in Gaul. (2) *Minucius Rufus*, one of Pompey's naval officers.

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus [**minus**], *lessen, diminish; ebb* (of the tide); *settle* disputes.

minus [n. acc. of **minor**], *comp. adv.*, *less, less easily, not well, not very;* sup. **minimē**, *least, very little; not at all, by no means.*

miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, unfortunate, sad;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *unfortunates.*

misericordia, -ae [**misericors**, *merciful*], *f.*, *mercy, compassion, pity.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [**miser**], *lament, deplore.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send; hurl, throw* weapons.

mōbilis, mōbile [cf. **moveō**], *easily moved, hasty.*

mōbilitās, mōbilitātis [**mōbilis**], *f.*, *ease of movement, agility.*

mōbiliter [**mōbilis**], *adv.*, *easily.*

moderor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. **modus**], (*set a measure*), *bring under control.*

modestia, -ae [**modestus**, *keeping due measure;* cf. **modus**], *f.*, *moderation, discretion.*

modo [abl. of **modus**], *adv.*, *only, merely, even; just now;* **nōn modo**, *not only.*

modus, -ī, *m.*, *measure, amount; way, manner, style;* **sublicae modō**, *like a pile;* **eius modī**, *of this sort* or *nature, of such violence* (of storms); **ad hunc modum**, *in this fashion;* **quem ad modum**, *in what way, how;* **nūllō modō**, *in no way.*

moenia, moenium, *n.*, pl., *walls* of a city, *fortifications.*

mōlēs, mōlis, *f.*, *mass; dike, dam, breakwater.*

molliō, mollīre, mollīvī, mollītus [**mollis**], *soften; make easier.*

mollis, molle, *soft, weak, infirm; gently sloping.*

mollitia, -ae [**mollis**], *f.*, *weakness.*

molō, molere, moluī, molitus, *grind;* **molita cibāria**, *meal.*

mōmentum, -ī [cf. **moveō**], *n.*, *influence, weight;* **mōmentum habēre**, *be of importance.*

Mona, -ae, *f.*, *the Isle of Man.*

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, *warn, advise, urge;* **monēre aliquid,** *give some advice.*

mōns, montis, *m., mountain.*

montuōsus, -a, -um [**mōns**], *mountainous.*

mora, -ae, *f., delay.*

morbus, -ī [cf. **morior**], *m., sickness, disease.*

Morinī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a powerful tribe on the coast of Belgium.

morior, morī, mortuus [cf. **mors**], *die;* perf. part., *dead.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus [**mora**], *delay, wait, stay; hinder.*

mors, mortis, *f., death.*

mortuus, part. of **morior.**

mōs, mōris, *m.*; *habit, usage, way, custom;* pl., *customs, regular practice, character* (as molded by habits); **mōribus suīs,** *in conformity to their regular practice.*

Mosa, -ae, *f., the Meuse,* a river of eastern Belgium.

mōtus, -ūs [cf. **moveō**], *m., movement; uprising, outbreak.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, remove; influence;* **sē movēre,** *stir;* **castra movēre,** *break camp,* sometimes *move camp;* **locō movēre,** *degrade, drive from a position.*

mulier, mulieris, *f., woman.*

mūliō, mūliōnis [**mūlus**], *m., muledriver, muleteer.*

multitūdō, multitūdinis [**multus**], *f., great number, crowd, multitude; the public, the common people.*

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**multa,** *fine*], *punish;* **pecūniā multāre,** *sentence to pay a fine.*

multō [abl. of **multus**], *adv., much, far.*

multum [n. acc. of **multus**], *adv.,* comp. **plūs,** sup. **plūrimum,** *much, greatly, a great deal;* **plūrimum,** *most, very, very great, very much.*

multus, -a, -um, comp. **plūs,** sup. **plūrimus,** *much;* pl., *many;* **multō diē,** *late in the day;* **plūrēs,** *more, many, several;* **plūrimī,** *most, the greatest number.*

mūlus, -ī, *m., mule.*

mundus, -ī, *m., universe, world.*

mūnicipium, mūnicipī [**mūniceps** (**mūnia,** *official duties,* cf. **capiō,** *take*), *a man who takes part in official duties*], *n., free town,* the name of many communities in Italy which had been conquered by Rome, but were allowed local self-government and given more or less complete rights of Roman citizenship.

mūnīmentum, -ī [**mūniō**], *n., fortification, defense.*

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus [cf. **moenia**], *fortify, defend; construct* (of a camp).

mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis [**mūniō**], *f., a fortifying, defending; fortification, defense, lines.*

mūnītus, -a, -um [part. of **mūniō**], *fortified;* **mūnītissimus,** *most strongly fortified.*

mūnus, mūneris, *n., duty, service;* **mūnus mīlitiae,** *military service.*

mūrālis, mūrāle [**mūrus**], *of a wall, wall-;* **mūrālis falx,** *wall-hook.*

Murcus, -ī, *m.,* a Roman family name. *Lucius Statius Murcus,* a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War.

mūrus, -ī, *m., wall; rampart.*

mūsculus, -ī [dim. of **mūs,** *mouse*], *m., shed.* See Introd. § 47.

mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis [**mūtō**], *f., changing, change.*

mutilus, -a, -um, *mutilated.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change.*

mūtuor, -ārī, -ātus [**mūtuus**, *borrowed*], *borrow*.

Mytilēnae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., an important Greek city on the island of Lesbos.

N

nactus, part. of **nancīscor**.

nam, *conj.*, *for*.

Namměius, Nammēī, *m.*, a Helvetian nobleman.

Namnetēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe north of the mouth of the Loire (Liger). Their name is preserved in the modern *Nantes*.

namque [**nam** + **que**, *and*], *conj.*, *for you see, for*; see on 89, 1.

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus, *get, obtain, meet with, find, light upon, reach*.

Nantuātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe south of Lake Geneva (Lacus Lemannus).

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.*, *Narbonne*, an important city in the western part of the Province. It was made a Roman colony in 118 B.C.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus [old form **gnāscor**], *be born, spring up, rise, originate*; of animals, *be raised, be found*; of metals, *be found*.

nātālis, nātāle [cf. **nātū**], *of birth*; **diēs nātālis**, *birthday*.

nātiō, nātiōnis [cf. **nāscor**], *f.*, (*birth*), *race, people, nation, tribe*.

nātū, abl. only [cf. **nāscor**], *m.*, *in age*; **maiōrēs nātū**, *elders*.

nātūra, -ae [cf. **nāscor**], *f.*, *nature, character*; **dē rērum nātūrā**, *on nature* or *natural science*.

nātūrālis, nātūrāle [**nātūra**], *natural*.

nātūrāliter [**nātūrālis**], *adv.*, *naturally*.

nātus, part. of **nāscor**.

naufragium, naufragī [**nāvis**, cf. **frangō**, *break*], *n.*, *shipwreck*.

nausea, -ae [cf. **nāvis**], *f.*, *seasickness*.

nauta, -ae [cf. **nāvis**], *m.*, *sailor*.

nauticus, -a, -um [**nauta**], *naval, nautical*.

nāvālis, nāvāle [**nāvis**], *naval*; **nāvālis pugna**, *sea-fight*.

nāvicula, -ae [dim. of **nāvis**], *f.*, *little boat*.

nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis [**nāvigō**], *f.*, *sailing, navigation, voyage*.

nāvigium, nāvigī [cf. **nāvigō**], *n.*, *vessel, boat*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nāvis**, cf. **agō**, *drive*], *sail*.

nāvis, nāvis, *f.*, *ship, boat*; **nāvis longa**, *ship of war*; see Introd. § 48.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nāvus**, *busy*], *do diligently*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.

nē, (1) *conj.*, *that . . . not, not to*; with verbs of fearing, *that*; with words of hindering, *from* (with verbal in *-ing*); **ut nē**, *that not*, see on 214, 15; (2) *adv.*, *not*; **nē . . . quidem**, inclosing the emphasized words, *not even, not . . . either*.

-ne, enclitic, (1) *conj.*, used in an indir. quest., *whether*; (2) *adv.*, used in a dir. quest. and translated only by the interrogative form of sentence.

nec, see **neque**.

necessāriō [abl. of **necessārius**], *adv.*, *necessarily*.

necessārius, -a, -um [**necesse**], *necessary*; *urgent, critical*; as *subst.* (*one bound*), *friend, relative*.

necesse, *adj.*, indecl., *necessary, inevitable*.

necessitās, necessitātis [**necesse**], *f.*, *necessity, urgency, need*.

necessitūdō, necessitūdinis [**necesse**], *f.*, *bond of friendship.*
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nex**, *violent death*], *put to death, murder.*
nefārius, -a -um [**nefās**, *impious deed;* cf. **fās**], *impious, atrocious.*
neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus [**nec**, *not,* + **legō**, *collect*], *disregard, neglect.*
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say . . . not.*
negōtiātor, negōtiātōris [**negōtior**], *m.*, *business man, merchant.*
negōtior, -ārī, -ātus [**negōtium**], *do business.*
negōtium, negōtī [**nec**, *not,* + **ōtium**, *leisure*], *n.*, *business, enterprise, undertaking, work, trouble, difficulty.*
Nemetēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a German tribe with settlements on both banks of the Rhine, south of the Treveri and the Ubii.
nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem** [**nē**, *not,* + **homō**, *man*], *m.*, *nobody, no one.* For the other forms **nūllus** was used.
nēquāquam [**nē**, *not,* + **quāquam**, *in any way*], *adv.*, *in no way, not at all, by no means.*
neque or **nec** [**ne** = **nē**, *not,* + **que**, *and*], *conj.*, *and . . . not, but . . . not, nor;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor, not . . . and not either, not only not . . . but also not.*
nēquīquam [**nē**, *not,* + **quīquam**, *anyhow*, old abl. of **quisquam**], *adv.*, *in vain, to no purpose, without reason.*
Nervicus, -a, -um, *Nervian, with the Nervii.*
Nerviī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., *the Nervii,* a brave tribe of central Belgic Gaul.
nervus, -ī, *m.*, *sinew;* pl. also, *power.*
neu, see **nēve**.
nēve or **neu** [**nē**, *not,* + **ve**, *or*], *conj.*, *and that not, nor, and not.*
nex, necis, *f.*, violent *death.*
nihilum, -ī, or indecl. **nihil** [**ne** = **nē**, *not,* + **hīlum**, *a whit*], *n.*, *nothing;* = emphatic **nōn**, *not at all;* **nihil reliquī**, *nothing left;* **nihil vīnī**, *no wine at all;* **nihilō minus** and **nihilō sētius**, *none the less;* **nōn nihil**, *somewhat.*
nimius, -a, -um, *too much, excessive.*
nisi [**ne** = **nē**, *not,* + **sī**, *if*], *conj.*, *if not, unless, except.*
Nitiobrogēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southwestern Gaul, on the Garonne (Garumna).
nītor, nītī, nīsus and nīxus, *rely on; struggle, make an effort.*
nōbilis, nōbile [cf. **nōscō**], *well-known, famous; noble, high-born;* pl. as *subst.*, *nobles.*
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis [**nōbilis**], *f.*, *nobility;* usually collective, *the nobility.*
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, *harm, injure, damage.*
noctū [cf. **nox**], *adv.*, *by night, in the night.*
nocturnus, -a, -um [**nox**], *of the night, by night, night-;* **nocturnīs temporibus**, *in the night-time.*
nōdus, -ī, *m.*, *knot; knotlike protuberance* of a joint.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — [**ne** = **nē**, *not,* + **volō**, *wish*], *not wish, be unwilling.*
nōmen, nōminis [cf. **nōscō**], *n.*, *name* (that by which one is known); *renown;* **suō nōmine**, *on his (their) own account;* **dōtis nōmine**, *as a dowry.*
nōminātim [cf. **nōminō**], *adv.*, *by name.*
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nōmen**], *name, mention.*

nōn, *adv.*, *not.*

Nōnae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *the Nones*, the seventh of March, May, July, and October, the fifth of the other months.

nōnāgintā or **XC** [**novem**], *ninety.*

nōndum [**nōn** + **dum**, *while*], *adv.*, *not yet.*

nōngentī, -ae, -a, or **DCCCC** [**novem** + **centum**, *hundred*], *nine hundred.*

nōnne [**nōn** + **-ne**], *interrog. adv.*, expecting an affirmative answer, *not?*

nōn nūllus, see **nūllus.**

nōn numquam, see **numquam.**

nōnus, -a, -um [for **novenus**, from **novem**], *ninth.*

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*, a town of Noricum, now Neumarkt, in west Austria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, *Norican*, *of Noricum*, a district east of the Helvetii, in modern Austria.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus [old form **gnōscō**], *learn*, *get acquainted with;* in perf. system, *know*, *be acquainted with.*

noster, nostra, nostrum, *poss. pron.*, *our*, *ours;* *m.*, pl., *our men*, *our troops.*

nōtitia, -ae [**nōtus**], *f.*, *knowledge*, *familiarity*, *acquaintance.*

notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nota**, *mark*], *mark*, *brand.*

nōtus, -a, -um [part. of **(g)nōscō**], *known*, *familiar*, *well-known.*

novem or **VIIII**, *nine.*

novitās, novitātis [**novus**], *f.*, *newness*, *strangeness*, *strange kind.*

novus, -a, -um, *new*, *recent;* *strange;* sup., *last*, *rear;* **rēs nova**, *news;* **rēs novae**, *revolution;* **novissimum agmen**, *rear* (of *marching* troops), i.e. the last part to pass by.

nox, noctis, *f.*, *night;* **ad multam noctem**, *till late at night;* **dē mediā nocte**, *just after midnight.*

noxia, -ae [cf. **noceō**, *harm*], *f.*, *wrongdoing*, *offense*, *trespass.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūpta [cf. **nūbēs**, *cloud*], *veil one's self* (of a bride), *marry* (of the woman); cf. **dūcō.**

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūdus**], *lay bare*, *strip*, *expose*, *leave unprotected.*

nūdus, -a, -um, *naked*, *bare*, *unprotected.*

nūllus, -a, -um [**nē**, *not*, + **ūllus**, *any*], *not any*, *no*, *none;* **nōn nūllus**, *some*, *several;* m. as *subst.*, *no one.*

num, *interrog. adv.*, expecting the answer *no*, translated only by the form of the question; **num possum**, *can I? I can't, can I?*

nūmen, nūminis [cf. **nuō**, *nod*], *n.*, *divine will*, *divine power.*

numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**numerus**], *count out*, *pay.*

numerus, -ī, *m.*, *number*, *amount*, *quantity;* **ad numerum**, *to the required number;* **aliquō numerō esse**, *be of some account;* **numerō** or **in numerō** with a gen., *as.*

Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, pl., *Numidians*, a barbarian people of northern Africa. Numidian archers served as auxiliaries in Caesar's army.

nummus, -ī, *m.*, *coin.*

numquam [**nē**, *not*, + **umquam**, *ever*], *adv.*, *never;* **nōn numquam**, *sometimes.*

nunc, *adv.*, *now*, always used of the present; cf. **iam**, which may be used also of the past or the future.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūntius**], *send news*, *report*, *announce.*

nūntius, nūntī, *m.*, *messenger;* *message.*

nūper [for **noviper**, from **novus**], *adv.*, *recently*, *lately.*

nūtus, -ūs [cf. **nuō**, *nod*], *m.*, *nod;* **ad nūtum**, *at a nod, at a mere hint.*

Nymphaeum, -ī, *n.*, a port of the Labeates in southwestern Illyricum.

O

ob, *prep.* with acc., *on account of, for.*

obaeratus, -ī [cf. **aes**, *money*], *m.*, (*liable for debt*), *debtor.*

obiciō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw up in front, blockade, set against, oppose, expose; cast in the teeth, taunt with;* perf. part., *lying before* or *near, opposing.*

obiectātiō, obiectātiōnis [**obiectō**], *f.*, *taunt, reproach.*

obiectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **obiciō**], *throw in one's face, taunt;* **famem nostrīs obiectāre**, *taunt our men with hunger.*

oblātus, part. of **offerō**.

oblīquē [**oblīquus**], *adv.*, *slantwise.*

oblīquus, -a, -um, *slanting, crosswise.*

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus, *forget.*

obloquor, obloquī, oblocūtus [**loquor**, *talk*], *talk abusively.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sacrō**, *regard as sacred*], *implore* (in the name of something sacred), *entreat.*

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**servō**, *keep*], *keep, mark.*

obses, obsidis [**ob**, cf. **sedeō**, *sit*], *m.*, (*a guarded person*), *hostage*, a person, generally of noble birth, often a child, deposited by one state with another as a pledge of fidelity.

obsessiō, obsessiōnis [cf. **obsideō**], *f.*, *besieging, blockade.*

obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus [**sedeō**, *sit*], (*sit down against*), *besiege, blockade, block.*

obsidiō, obsidiōnis [cf. **obsideō**], *f.*, *siege, blockade; oppression.*

obstringō, obstringere, obstrīnxī, obstrīctus [**stringō**, *bind*], *bind* (lit. or by favors), *entangle.*

obstruō, obstruere, obstrūxī, obstrūctus [**struō**, *arrange*], *block, stop up, barricade.*

obtegō, obtegere, obtēxī, obtēctus [**tego**, *cover*], *cover over, protect.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**temperō**, *restrain one's self*], *comply with, submit to, obey.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus [**testor**, *call to witness*, cf. **testis**], *appeal to, implore.*

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus [**teneō**, *hold*], *hold, possess, occupy; govern* (a province); **rem obtinēre**, *be successful.*

obtulī, perf. of **offerō**.

obveniō, obvenīre, obvēnī, obventūrus [**veniō**, *come*], *come to, meet* (by chance), *fall to* (by lot).

occāsiō, occāsiōnis [cf. **occidō**], *f.*, *opportunity.*

occāsus, -ūs [cf. **occidō**], *m.*, in Caesar always with **sōlis**, *sunset, the west.*

occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus [**ob**+**cadō**, *fall*], *fall, set;* **occidēns sōl**, *sunset, west;* cf. **orior**.

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus [**ob** + **caedō**, *cut*], *cut down, kill, slay.*

occultātiō, occultātiōnis [**occultō**], *f.*, *concealment.*

occultē [**occultus**], *adv.*, *secretly.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **occulō**, *cover*], *hide, conceal.*

occultus, -a, -um [part. of **occulō**, *cover*], *covered, hidden, concealed, secret;* **in occultō**, *in hiding.*

occupātiō, occupātiōnis [**occupō**], *f.*, *employment, occupation, business;* **occupātiōnēs reī pūblicae**, *state business.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ob**, cf. **capiō**, *take*], *take possession of, seize;*

fill up; perf. part., *busy, engaged, occupied.*

occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursūrus [**ob**+**currō**, *run*], *run to meet, meet, come upon, find, encounter, head off; run up, come up; come, suggest itself.*

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, *the ocean.*

Ocelum, -ī, *n.*, a town on the western frontier of Cisalpine Gaul, occupying the site of modern Drubiaglio or Avigliana.

Octāvius, Octāvī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Octavius*, a naval officer of Pompey; conqueror, with Libo, of Illyricum, 49 B.C.

octāvus, -a, -um [**octō**], *eighth.*

octingentī, -ae, -a, or DCCC [cf. **octō**, **centum**, *hundred*], *eight hundred.*

octō or VIII, *eight.*

Octōdūrus, -ī, *m.*, a town of the Veragri, now Martigny.

octōgintā or LXXX [**octō**], *eighty.*

octōnī, -ae, -a [**octō**], *distr. num.*, *eight each, eight at a time.*

oculus, -ī, *m.*, *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, perf. with pres. force, *hate.*

odium, odī [cf. **ōdī**], *n.*, *hatred.*

odor, odōris, *m.*, *smell, stench.*

offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus, *hit against, hurt; meet with disaster;* **animum offendere**, *hurt the feelings, offend;* **in mē offendere**, *be displeased with me.*

offēnsiō, offēnsiōnis [cf. **offendō**], *f.*, *a hurting, wounding; mishap; discredit, disfavor.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [**ob** + **ferō**, *bring*], *bring to, offer; expose.*

officium, officī [**ob**, cf. **faciō**, *do*], *n.*, (*a doing for* somebody), *service; obligatory service, duty; allegiance; business.*

omittō, omittere, omīsī, omissus [**ob** + **mittō**, *send*], *let go, give up, neglect.*

omnīnō [**omnis**], *adv.*, *altogether, in all, only, entirely;* with neg. ideas, *at all, whatever.*

omnis, omne, *all, every, the whole of, whole.*

onerārius, -a, -um [**onus**], *for burdens;* **nāvis onerāria**, *transport;* see Introd. § 48.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**onus**], *load.*

onus, oneris, *n.*, *load, burden, cargo; weight.*

onustus, -a, -um [**onus**], *laden, loaded.*

opera, -ae [**opus**], *f.*, *effort, work, pains; services;* **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best;* **operam dare**, *make an effort, render a service.*

opēs, opum, *f.*, pl., *resources, means, power.*

opīniō, opīniōnis [cf. **opīnor**, *suppose*], *f.*, *notion, fancy, opinion; expectation; esteem; reputation;* **opīniōnem praebēre**, *give an impression;* **minus opīniōne**, *less than is fancied.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.*, *it is necessary, it is proper, it ought, it is due;* **īrī oportēre**, *they ought to go;* **pudentēs suspicārī oportet**, *men of honor ought to suspect.*

oppidānus, -a, -um [**oppidum**], *of* or *from the town;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, *town* (with fortifications), *stronghold.*

oppleō, opplēre, opplēvī, opplētus [**ob**, cf. **plēnus**, *full*], *fill* or *occupy completely.*

oppōnō, oppōnere, opposuī, oppositus [**ob** + **pōnō**, *put*], *set against, place opposite, oppose;* perf. part., *lying over against, opposite.*

opportūnē [**opportūnus**], *adv.*, *opportunely, advantageously.*

opportūnitās, opportūnitātis [**opportūnus**], *f.*, *fitness, suitableness, advantage.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, *fit, advantageous, opportune.*

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus [**ob** + **premō**, *press*], *crush, overwhelm; fall upon, surprise;* **oppressus somnō**, *dazed by sleep.*

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis [**oppugnō**], *f.*, *attack, assault, storming.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ob** + **pugnō**, *fight*], *attack, storm.*

optātus, -a, -um [part. of **optō**, *wish for*], *wished for, desired, desirable.*

optimē, see **bene**.

optimus, see **bonus**.

opulentus, -a, -um [**opēs**], *rich.*

opus, operis, *n.*, *work*, both of the effort and of the product; **operum atque artificiōrum**, *of crafts and trades;* in military sense, *works, fortifications;* in nom. or acc. with **esse**, *it is necessary, there is need;* **quantō opere . . . tantō opere**, *as much as . . . so much.*

ōra, -ae, *f.*, *shore, coast;* **ōra maritima**, *seacoast.*

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis [**ōrō**, *talk*], *f.*, *talk, words, speech, address.*

ōrātor, ōrātōris [**ōrō**, *talk*], *m.*, *speaker; envoy.*

orbis, orbis, *m.*, *circle;* **orbis terrārum**, *world*, the circle of lands round the Mediterranean, comprising the world as known to the early Romans.

Orcynius, -a, -um, a Greek form for the Latin **Hercynius**.

ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, *row, line, rank; company, century; order, arrangement;* **extrā ōrdinem**, *out of order, irregularly; rank, grade,* of centurions, see Introd. § 35.

Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, *m.*, a Helvetian nobleman.

Ōricius, -a, -um, *of* or *near Oricum.*

Ōricum, -ī, *n.*, an important port on the upper coast of Epirus, now *Ericho.*

orior, orīrī, ortus, *arise, rise, spring from, begin;* **oriēns sōl**, *sunrise, east*, cf. **occidō**; **ortā lūce**, *at daybreak.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish, equip;* perf. part. as *adj.*, *furnished, equipped.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ōs**, *mouth*], (*talk*), *beg, entreat.*

ortus, part. of **orior**.

ōs, ōris, *n.*, *face; mouth.*

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe in the northwestern corner of Gaul.

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus [**obs** (= **ob**) + **tendō**, *stretch*], (*stretch towards*), *show, point out, disclose, declare;* **sē ostendere**, *appear.*

ostentātiō, ostentātiōnis [**ostentō**], *f.*, *display, show.*

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **ostendō**], *display, exhibit, hold up.*

Otācilius, Otācilī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Crassus**.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um [**ōtium**], *at leisure, undisturbed.*

ōtium, ōtī, *n.*, *leisure, idleness; peace.*

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, *egg.*

P

P. = **Pūblius**, Pūblī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis [**pābulor**], *f.*, *foraging.*

pābulātor, pābulātōris [**pābulor**], *m.*, *forager.*

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus [**pābulum**], *gather fodder, forage.*

pābulum, -ī [cf. **pāscō**, *feed*], *n.*, *fodder.*

pacīscor, pacīscī, pactus, *agree, stipulate;* perf. part. with pass. force, *agreed upon.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**pāx**, *peace*], *subdue* (euphemistic, lit. = *make peaceful;* cf. "*benevolently assimilate*").

pactiō, pactiōnis [cf. **pacīscor**], *f.*, *agreement.*

pactum, -ī [part. of **pacīscor**], *n.*, *agreement; way, manner.*

Paelignus, -a, -um, *Paelignian, of the Paelignians;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the Paelignians*, a people inhabiting the mountains of central Italy. Corfinium was their capital.

paene, *adv.*, *nearly, almost.*

paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, *impers.*, *it repents* one; **quōrum eōs paenitet**, *of which they repent;* **paenitet vōs quod**, etc., *do you regret that*, etc.?

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, *district, canton; division.* The inhabitants of Helvetia were divided into four cantons, the Suebi into a hundred; but in the case of the Suebi the word is apparently applied only to the population, not at all to the territory. See 100, 9, and 15.

Palaestē, -ēs (with Greek endings), *f.*, a town on the coast of Epirus above Corcyra.

palam, *adv.*, *openly, publicly.*

palma, -ae, *f.*, *palm* of the hand; *palm tree.*

palūs, palūdis, *f.*, *swamp, marsh.*

palūster, palūstris, palūstre [**palūs**], *swampy.*

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus, *spread out;* **passīs manibus**, *with outstretched hands;* **passus capillus**, *disheveled hair.*

pānis, pānis [cf. **pāscō**], *m.*, *bread, loaf.*

pār, paris, *adj.*, *like, equal, the same; a match for.*

parātus, -a, -um [part. of **parō**], *prepared, ready.*

parcē [**parcus**, *sparing*], *adv.*, *sparingly, frugally.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī, —, *spare;* **parcendō**, *by economizing.*

parēns, parentis [cf. **pariō**, *get*], *m.*, *parent.*

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, —, *obey, comply.*

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, *get, obtain, secure, win.*

Parīsiī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on the Seine (Sequana). Their name survives in *Paris* (the ancient Lutetia).

pariter [**pār**], *adv.*, *equally, at the same time.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare, make ready, get ready for, procure, acquire.*

pars, partis, *f.*, *part, share, branch* (of a river); *district, place, division; side, direction; party, faction;* pl., *rôle, duty;* **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side;* **quā ex parte**, *in which respect, and on this point;* **magnā ex parte**, *in great part;* **aliam in partem**, *in another direction;* **maior pars**, *the majority;* **maximam partem**, *chiefly;* **omnibus partibus**, *in all respects;* **multīs partibus**, *many fold, far.*

Parthī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., *the Parthians*, a barbarous people, whose empire, at the time of the Civil War, extended from the Euphrates to the

Indus. After the death of Mithridates, 63 B.C., they were the most formidable enemies of the Romans, their victory over the triumvir Crassus at Carrhae, 53 B.C., being one of the greatest disasters that ever befell a Roman army.

Parthīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Greek people near Dyrrachium.

particeps, participis [**pars**, cf. **capiō**, *take*], *m.*, *participant, partner.*

partim [old acc. of **pars**], *adv.*, *partly, in part.*

partior, partīrī, partītus [**pars**], *part, divide.*

partus, part. of **pariō**.

parum, *adv.*, *not enough, too little, not much;* **parum dīligenter**, *not carefully enough.*

parvulus, -a, -um [dim. of **parvus**], *very small, very young; trivial.*

parvus, -a, -um, comp. **minor**, sup. **minimus**, *little, small, trifling;* **ā parvīs**, *from childhood;* n. comp. as *subst.*, *less;* sup., *least;* **minimum posse**, *have very slight influence.*

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed, pasture.*

passim [cf. **passus**, part. of **pandō**], *adv.*, *in all directions, at random.*

passus, -ūs, *m.*, *pace*, a measure of five Roman feet = four feet ten and one quarter inches; **mīlle passūs**, *mile.*

passus, part. of **pandō**.

passus, part. of **patior**.

pāstor, pāstōris [cf. **pāscō**], *m.*, *shepherd.*

patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus [cf. **pateō**, **faciō**, *make*], *open up, open.*

patefīō, pass. of **patefaciō**.

pateō, patēre, patuī, —, *be open, extend;* **tantundem patēre**, *be just as wide.*

pater, patris, *m.*, *father.*

paternus, -a, -um [**pater**], *of a father, paternal.*

patiēns, patientis [part. of **patior**], *adj.*, *patient, long-suffering.*

patienter [**patiēns**], *adv.*, *patiently.*

patientia, -ae [**patiēns**], *f.*, *endurance.*

patior, patī, passus, *suffer, endure, allow, permit.*

patrius, -a, -um [**pater**], *of a father, of their fathers, ancestral.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, pl., *few, only a few;* as *subst.*, *a few, only a few, a few words.*

paucitās, paucitātis [**paucī**], *f.*, *small number.*

paulātim [cf. **paulum**], *adv.*, *little by little, gradually.*

paulisper [cf. **paulum, per**], *adv.*, *a little while.*

paulō [abl. of **paulus**, *little*], *adv.*, *a little, somewhat.*

paulum [**paulus**, *little*], *n.*, *a little.*

paulum [n. acc. of **paulus**, *little*], *adv.*, *a little, somewhat; a short distance.*

pavīmentum, -ī [**paviō**, *beat*], *n.*, *hard floor, pavement.*

pāx, pācis, *f.*, *peace.*

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *do wrong, transgress.*

pectus, pectoris, *n.*, *breast.*

pecuārius, -a, -um [cf. **pecus**], *of cattle;* **rēs pecuāria**, *cattle.*

pecūnia, -ae [cf. **pecus**], *f.*, *property* (once chiefly represented by cattle), *money, sum of money.*

pecus, pecoris, *n.*, *cattle* (including sheep, goats, and swine); *meat;* **pecore vīvere**, *live on meat.*

pedālis, pedāle [**pēs**, *foot*], *of a foot, measuring a foot.*

pedes, peditis [**pēs**, *foot*], *m.*, *foot-soldier*; pl., *infantry.*

pedester, pedestris, pedestre [**pedes**], *on foot; of infantry; on land.*

peditātus, -ūs [cf. **pedes**], *m.*, *infantry.*

pellis, pellis, *f.*, *hide, skin*; **sub pellibus**, *in tents*, made of skins spread like our canvas over wooden supports.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *strike; drive away, put to flight, rout.*

Pēlūsium, Pēlūsī, *n.*, a city of Egypt at the eastern mouth of the Nile, an important strategic point for the defense of Egypt against the East.

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, *suspend, weigh out; pay* (before coinage was adopted payment was made by weight; see 127, 16, and note).

per, *prep.* with acc., *through, over, along; for, during; by means of, by, by the agency of, by reason of, with*; **per sē**, *of* or *by himself* or *themselves, independently*; **per virtūtem**, *courageously.*

peragō, peragere, perēgī, perāctus [**agō**, *do*], *finish, carry through.*

percellō, percellere, perculī, perculsus, *strike with terror, dishearten.*

percipiō, percipere, percēpī, perceptus [**capiō**, *take*], *seize entirely, obtain, gain*; **praemia percipere**, *reap the rewards.*

percontātiō, percontātiōnis [**percontor**, *inquire*], *f.*, *inquiry, questioning.*

percrēbrēscō, percrēbrēscere, percrēbruī, — [cf. **crēber**, *thick*], *become frequent, be spread abroad.*

perculsus, part. of **percellō**.

percurrō, percurrere, percucurrī or percurrī, percursūrus [**currō**, *run*], *run through* or *along.*

percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus [**quatiō**, *shake*], *strike through, run through, hit.*

perdiscō, perdiscere, perdidicī, — [**discō**, *learn*], *learn thoroughly.*

perditus, -a, -um [part. of **perdō**, *ruin*], *ruined, abandoned, desperate.*

perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead through, bring, bring over; continue; dig* a ditch; **nāvēs perdūcere**, *bring ships to port*; **ad sē perdūcere**, *win to their cause.*

pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus [**eō**, *go*], *perish, be ruined.*

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, — [**equitō**, *be a horseman, ride*], *ride through, ride about.*

perexiguus, -a, -um [**exiguus**, *scanty*], *very small, very little.*

perfacilis, perfacile [**facilis**, *easy*], *very easy.*

perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus [**ferō**, *carry*], *carry through* or *over, bring; report; bear, endure, put up with.*

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus [**faciō**, *make*], *make* or *do thoroughly, accomplish, bring about, carry through, finish, complete*; **utī dent perficit**, *he gets them to give.*

perfidia, -ae [**perfidus**, *faithless*], *f.*, *faithlessness, treachery.*

perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus [**frangō**, *break*], *break through.*

perfuga, -ae [cf. **perfugiō**], *m.*, *deserter.*

perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitūrus [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flee for refuge; desert.*

perfugium, perfugī [cf. **perfugiō**], *n.*, *refuge, place of refuge.*

Pergamum, -ī, *n.*, capital of the Roman province of Asia, an important centre of art and learning. Its famous library was given by Antony to Cleopatra and carried to Alexandria to augment the library there.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus [**regō**, *keep straight*], *keep on, go on, proceed.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus [**perīculum**], *try, test.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um [**perīculum**], *dangerous.*

perīculum, -ī [cf. **experior**, *test*], *n.*, *trial, attempt; risk, danger.*

peridōneus, -a, -um [**idōneus**, *suitable*], *very suitable.*

perītus, -a, -um [cf. **experior**, *test*], (*tested*), *experienced, skilled, familiar with.*

perluō, perluere, perluī, perlūtus [**luō**, *wash*], *wash thoroughly;* pass. used reflexively, *bathe.*

permaneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsūrus [**maneō**, *stay*], *stay through* to the end, *remain, continue.*

permānō, -āre, -āvī, — [**mānō**, *flow*], *flow through; reach the ears of* (of reports).

permittō, permittere, permīsī, permissus [**mittō**, *send*], *allow, permit; intrust.*

permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus [**moveō**, *move*], *move thoroughly, rouse, influence, prevail upon; alarm.*

permulceō, permulcēre, permulsī, permulsus [**mulceō**, *stroke*], *soothe, quiet.*

permultus, -a, -um [**multus**, *much*], *very much;* pl., *very many.*

perniciēs, perniciēī [**per**, cf. **nex**, *violent death*], *f.*, *destruction.*

pernīcitās, pernīcitātis [**pernīx**, *nimble*], *f.*, *nimbleness, speed.*

perpaucī, -ae, -a [**paucī**, *few*], *very few.*

perpendiculum, -ī [**perpendō**, *weigh* (and so, *let hang down*)], *n.*, *plumb-line;* **ad perpendiculum**, *perpendicular.*

perpetior, perpetī, perpessus [**patior**, *suffer*], *bear patiently.*

perpetuus, -a, -um, *continuous, uninterrupted, endless, permanent;* **in perpetuum**, *forever.*

perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus [**rumpō**, *break*], *break through.*

persequor, persequī, persecūtus [**sequor**, *follow*], *follow up* (through thick and thin), *pursue; avenge.*

persevērantia, -ae [**persevērāns**, part. of **persevērō**], *f.*, *perseverance.*

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, ātūrus [**persevērus**, *very strict*], *persist;* (of a ship) *keep on its course.*

persolvō, persolvere, persolvī, persolūtus [**solvō**, *loose*], *pay* in full; **poenās persolvere**, *pay the penalty.*

perspiciō, perspicere, perspēxī, perspectus [**speciō**, *look*], *see through, see clearly, perceive, observe, examine, inspect, prove.*

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsūrus [**suādeō**, *urge*], *persuade, convince, convince of.*

perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritus [**terreō**, *frighten*], *frighten thoroughly, terrify, throw into a panic.*

pertinācia, -ae [**pertināx**, *persistent*], *f.*, *persistency, stubbornness.*

pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, — [**per**

+ **teneō**, *hold a course through* to the end], *reach, stretch, extend; tend, have to do with, belong to, be of concern to.*

perturbātiō, perturbātiōnis [**perturbō**], *f., disturbance, alarm, confusion.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**turbō**, *to disorder*], *disturb, alarm, throw into confusion;* **perturbārī** with an indir. quest., *be in confusion and uncertainty whether.*

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus [**vagor**, *wander*], *roam about.*

perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventūrus [**veniō**, *come*], *come through, come, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, *m., foot;* as a measure, *a foot;* **pedibus proeliārī**, *fight on foot;* **ad pedēs dēsilīre**, *leap to the ground* (from on horseback).

pestilentia, -ae [**pestilēns**, *unhealthy*], *f., malaria, fever.*

petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, *seek, look for, go to get, make for; ask, beg;* **fugam petere**, *take to flight.*

Petra, -ae, *f.*, a hill on the Illyrian coast southeast of Dyrrachium.

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southwestern Celtic Gaul.

Petrōnius, Petrōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Petronius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

phalanx, phalangis, *f., phalanx, compact mass* of troops.

Phoenīcē, -ēs (Greek form for Latin **Phoenīcia**), *f., Phoenicia*, a district along the coast of Syria. Tyre and Sidon were the chief cities.

Pictonēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Liger), whose name is preserved in *Poitou.*

pīlum, -ī, *n., javelin,* the missile of the Roman legionary; see Introd. § 39.

pīlus, -ī, *m., first maniple of a cohort,* regularly with **prīmus**, *the first maniple of the first cohort* of a legion; **prīmī pīlī centuriō** = **prīmipīlus**, *the first centurion* of a legion; see Introd. § 35.

pinna, -ae, *f., battlement.*

piscis, piscis, *m., fish.*

Pīsō, Pīsōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul 61 B.C. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, lieutenant of Cassius, slain by the Tigurini, 107 B.C.; grandfather of No. 3. (3) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul 58 B.C. (4) *Piso*, a brave Aquitanian in Caesar's army.

Placentia, -ae, *f.*, principal city of Cisalpine Gaul, on the Po; the modern *Piacenza.*

placet, placēre, placuit, *impers., it pleases, seems best to;* **maiōrī partī placuit**, *the majority voted* or *resolved.*

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **placet**], *conciliate, appease.*

plānē [**plānus**], *adv., flatly, plainly; quite, entirely.*

plānitiēs, plānitiēī [**plānus**], *f., a plain.*

plānus, -a, -um, *flat.*

plēbs or **plēbēs**, plēbis, *f., the common people, the commons, the masses.*

plēnē [**plēnus**], *adv., fully, completely.*

plēnus, -a, -um [cf. **-pleō** in **compleō**, *fill*], *full.*

plērumque, [n. acc. of **plērusque**], *adv., for the most part, generally.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, sing. rare, *most, the greater part, most of.*

Plōtius, Plōtī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Plotius*, a follower of Caesar in the Civil War.

plumbum, -ī, *n.*, *lead;* **plumbum album,** *tin.*

plūrimum, *adv.*, see **multum.**

plūrimus, see **multus.**

plūs, *adj.*, see **multus**; *adv.*, see **multum.**

pluteus, ī, *m.*, *screen*, of boards or wickerwork.

pōculum, -ī, *n.*, *drinking-cup.*

poena, -ae [cf. **pūniō,** *punish*], *f.*, *punishment, penalty.*

pollex, pollicis, *m.*, *thumb;* used also in apposition with **digitus.**

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus [**por-** (= **prō**) + **liceor,** *bid*], *offer, promise;* **līberāliter pollicitus,** *making generous promises.*

pollicitātiō, pollicitātiōnis [**pollicitor,** freq. of **polliceor**], *f.*, *promise.*

Pompēiānus, -a, -um, *of Pompey, Pompey's, occupied by Pompey;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *Pompey's followers, Pompeians.*

Pompēius, Pompēī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great;* see Introd. §§ 19 ff. (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, elder son of (1), a naval officer on his father's side in the Civil War. He inflicted severe losses on Caesar's fleet in the winter and spring of 48 B.C. He was killed at Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.

Pompēius, -a, -um, *of Pompey, Pompeian.*

pondus, ponderis [cf. **pendō,** *weigh*], *n.*, *weight, mass.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, put; lay down; deposit; pitch camp; build* redoubts; *station;* pass. sometimes, *be situated, lie; depend on.*

pōns, pontis, *m.*, *bridge.*

pontō, pontōnis, *m.*, a Gallic *transport.*

Pontus, -ī, *m.*, the northeastern district of Asia Minor, on the shore of the Black Sea. Its western part was organized with Bithynia by Pompey into a Roman province in 65 B.C.

populātiō, populātiōnis [**populor**], *f.*, *ravaging, devastating.*

populor, -ārī, ātus, *devastate, ravage, plunder.*

populus, -ī, *m.*, *a people, nation;* **populus Rōmānus,** *Roman people, Rome.* Not used of *people* as individuals, which = **hominēs.**

porrigō, porrigere, porrēxī, porrēctus [**por-** (= **prō**) + **regō,** *keep straight*], *stretch forth* or *out.*

porta, -ae, *f.*, *gate, entrance.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry, take.*

portōrium, portōrī [cf. **porta**], *n.*, *customs, duty, toll;* see on **63,** 5.

portus, -ūs [cf. **pōrta**], *m.*, *harbor, port.*

poscō, poscere, poposcī, —, *demand, call for.*

possessiō, possessiōnis [cf. **possideō**], *f.*, *possession; real estate.*

possideō, possidēre, possēdī, possessus [**por-** (= **prō**) + **sedeō,** *sit*], *possess, hold.*

possīdō, possīdere, possēdī, possessus [**por-** (= **prō**) + **sīdō,** *sit down*], *take possession of, seize.*

possum, posse, potuī, — [**pote,** *able,* + **sum,** *be*], *be able, can; have power* or *influence* or *strength;* **plūrimum posse,** *be the most powerful, be very strong* or *influential.*

post, (1) *adv.*, *afterwards, after;* (2) *prep.* with acc., *after, behind;* **post diem quārtum quam**, *three days after*, see on 117, 11; **annō post**, *a year later.*

posteā [**post ea**, *after this*], *adv.*, *afterwards, hereafter;* **posteā . . . quam** (usually united, see **posteāquam**), *after.*

posteāquam [**posteā quam**, *later than*], *conj.*, *after.*

posterus, -a, -um [cf. **post**], *next, following;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *posterity.*

postquam [**post quam**, *later than*], *conj.*, *after.*

postrēmō [abl. of **postrēmus** (sup. of **posterus**), *last*], *adv.*, *at last, finally, in short.*

postrīdiē [loc. **posterī diē**, *on the next day*], *adv.*, *on the next day;* **postrīdiē eius diēī**, *on the next day*, see on **diēī**, 66, 23.

postulātum, -ī [part. of **postulō**], *n.*, *demand, claim.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, ask, claim, require; expect* (see on **esse**, 108, 22); *accuse.*

Postumus, -ī, a Roman family name. See **Fulvius.**

potēns, potentis [part. of **possum**], *adj.*, *powerful;* comp. as *subst.*, *a man more powerful* than others.

potentia, -ae [**potēns**], *f.*, *might, political influence, power;* cf. **potestās.**

potestās, potestātis [**potis**, *able*], *f.*, *power* (in general, esp. civil and magisterial; cf. **potentia**, *might, political influence*, **imperium**, *military power*), *control; opportunity;* **potestātem facere**, *give an opportunity;* **potestās vītae**, *power over life.*

potior, potīrī, potītus [**potis**, *able*], *become master of, get possession of, acquire, obtain.*

potius, *comp. adv.*, *rather.* Sup. **potissimum**, *before all others, chiefly.*

prae [cf. **prō**], *prep.* with abl., *before;* in phrases of hindrance, *on account of, for.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um [**acūtus**, part. of **acuō**, *sharpen*], *sharpened at the end, pointed.*

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus [**prae** + **habeō**, *have*], (*hold before*), *offer, furnish, afford.*

praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessus [**cēdō**, *go*], *go before; surpass, be superior to.*

praeceps, praecipitis [**prae**, cf. **caput**, *head*], *adj.*, *headlong, in headlong haste; steep.*

praeceptum, -ī [part. of **praecipiō**], *n.*, *order, warning.*

praecipiō, praecipere, praecēpī, praeceptus [**capiō**, *take*], *seize in advance, anticipate; order, instruct.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**praeceps**], *throw headlong; rush down, come to an end.*

praecipuē [**praecipuus** (**prae**, cf. **capiō**, *take*), *taken before others*], *adv.*, *especially.*

praeclūdō, praeclūdere, praeclūsī, praeclūsus [**claudō**, *shut*], *shut off, close up, close in the face of.*

Praecōnīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. See **Valerius.**

praecurrō, praecurrere, praecucurrī or praecurrī, praecursūrus [**currō**, *run*], *run on ahead, go* or *come before.*

praeda, -ae [cf. **prēndō**, *seize*], *f.*, *booty, plunder, prey.*

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **dīcō**, *say*], *make known, announce, report, declare, emphasize; boast.*

praedīcō, praedīcere, praedīxī, praedictus [**dīcō**, *say*], *tell beforehand, charge.*

praedō, praedōnis [cf. **praedor**], *m.*, *plunderer, pirate.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus [**praeda**], *plunder, get booty.*

praedūcō, praedūcere, praedūxī, praeductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead before; build.*

praefectus, -ī [part. of **praeficiō**], *m.*, *prefect*, see Introd. § 37; *officer.*

praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus [**ferō**, *carry*], *put before, carry in front, display;* **sē praeferre**, *show one's self superior.*

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus [**faciō**, *make*], *put before* or *over, put in command of.*

praefīgō, praefīgere, praefīxī, praefīxus [**fīgo**, *fix*], *fix in front, drive on the edge.*

praegredior, praegredī, praegressus [**gradior**, *step*], *go on ahead.*

praeiūdicium, praeiūdicī [**iūdicium**, *judgment*], *n.*, (*anticipatory judgment*), *precedent.*

praemetuō, praemetuere, praemetuī, — [**metuō**, *fear*], *fear beforehand, be apprehensive* or *anxious.*

praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus [**mittō**, *send*], *send before* or *ahead.*

praemium, praemī, *n.*, *reward, prize.*

praemūniō, praemūnīre, praemūnīvī, praemūnītus [**mūniō**, *fortify*], *fortify* (*in front*), *secure.*

praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**occupō**, *seize*], *seize beforehand, preoccupy, surprise.*

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**optō**, *choose*], *choose rather, prefer.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**parō**, *prepare*], *prepare beforehand.*

praepōnō, praepōnere, praeposuī, praepositus [**pōnō**, *put*], *put before, put in charge of, put in command.*

praeripiō, praeripere, praeripuī, praereptus [**rapiō**, *seize*], *anticipate, forestall.*

praerumpō, praerumpere, praerūpī, praeruptus [**rumpō**, *break*], *break off.*

praeruptus, -a, -um [part. of **praerumpō**], *steep, precipitous.*

praesaepiō, praesaepīre, praesaepsī, praesaeptus [**saepiō**, *hedge in*], *fence off, barricade.*

praescrībō, praescrībere, praescrīpsī, praescrīptus [**scrībō**, *write*], *write before* or *at the beginning, prescribe, order, direct.*

praescrīptum, -ī [part. of **praescrībō**], *n.*, *previous instruction, order.*

praesēns, part. of **praesum.**

praesertim [cf. **serō**, *join*], *adv.*, (*put first*), *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, praesidī [**praeses**, *defender*], *n.*, *guard, garrison; camp, post; escort, convoy; protection, defense;* **praesidiō litterārum**, *with the help of writing.*

praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus [**stō**, *stand*], *stand* or *put before, excel, surpass; grant, furnish, afford, give, show; be responsible for;* **officium praestāre**, *do a duty;* **praestat**, impers., *it is better.*

praestōlor, -ārī, -ātus, *wait for.*

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, — [**sum**, *be*], *be before* or *over, be in charge of, hold* an office, *have command of;* pres. part. **praesēns**, *present, at hand;* **in praesentia** (sc. **tempora**), *for the present.*

praeter, *prep.* with acc., *beyond, besides, except; contrary to.*

praetereā [**praeter ea**, *besides this*], *adv.*, *besides, further.*

praetereō, praeterīre, praeteriī, praeteritus [**eō**, *go*], *pass by* or *over;* perf. part. as *adj.* or *n. subst.*, *past, the past.*

praetermittō, praetermittere, praetermīsī, praetermissus [**mittō**, *send*], *let go by, neglect, omit.*

praeterquam [**praeter** + **quam**, *than*], *adv.*, *except, other than.*

praetervehor, praetervehī, praetervectus [**vehō**, *carry*], *be carried past, sail past.*

praetor, praetōris [contr. from **praeitor**, *one who goes before*], *m.*, *commander; praetor*, a Roman magistrate, next in rank to the consul; see on **230, 1.**

praetōrium, praetōrī [**praetor**], *n.*, *general's tent;* see on **231, 27.**

praetōrius, -a, -um [**praetor**], *of a commander, of a praetor;* **porta praetōria**, *the front gate* of a Roman camp, connected by a straight street with the general's tent (**praetōrium**) in the middle of the camp; see Introd. § 44.

praetōrius, praetōrī [**praetōrius**], *m.*, *ex-praetor.*

praetūra, -ae [cf. **praetor**], *f.*, *praetorship.*

praeustus, -a, -um [**ustus**, part. of **ūrō**, *burn*], *burnt at the end.*

precēs, precum, *f.*, pl., *prayers, entreaties.*

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *press, press hard, oppress, embarrass, weigh down.*

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus [contr. from **prehendō**], *seize, grasp.*

pretium, pretī, *n.*, *price.*

prex, see **precēs.**

prīdiē [loc.; cf. **prō**, **diēs**, *day*; see **postrīdiē**], *adv.*, *on the day before.*

prīmipīlus, -ī [**prīmus** + **pīlus**, *first maniple of a cohort*], *m.*, *the first centurion* of a legion; see Introd. § 35.

prīmō [abl. of **prīmus**], *adv.*, *at first*, contrasted with what comes afterwards. Cf. **prīmum.**

prīmum [n. acc. of **prīmus**], *adv.*, *first* (in a series of events, cf. **prīmō**), *in the first place;* **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, see **prior.**

prīnceps, prīncipis [**prīmus**, cf. **capiō**, *take*], *adj.*, (*taking first rank*), *first, chief;* as *subst.*, *leading man, leader, chief, spokesman* or *chairman* (of an embassy); **prīnceps prior**, *first centurion of the second maniple;* see Introd. § 35.

prīncipātus, -ūs [cf. **prīnceps**], *m.*, *chief position, leadership*, implying personal influence merely, not official authority.

prior, prius [cf. **prō**], *comp. adj.*, *former, first* (of two), *previous.* Sup. **prīmus**, -a, -um, *first, first part of;* **in prīmīs**, *especially.*

prīstinus, -a, -um [for **prius-tinus**], *former, of* or *in former times, previous.*

prius [n. of **prior**], *adv.*, *before, sooner, first, rather;* **nōn prius dimittere quam**, *not to let go until.* **Prius** and **quam** are often united; see on **93, 17**, and cf. **priusquam.**

priusquam [**prius quam**, *sooner than*], *conj.*, *before.*

prīvātim [cf. **prīvātus**], *adv.*, *privately, as private citizens.*

prīvātus, -a, -um [part. of **prīvō**], *private; isolated;* as *subst.*, *private person.*

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**prīvus**, *one's own*], *deprive.*

prō, *prep.* with abl., *in front of, before; in behalf of, for; instead of, as; in proportion to, according to, considering, for, in return for.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**probus**, *good*], (*think good*), *approve, esteem, prove, show, make acceptable.*

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessūrus [**cēdō**, *go*], *go forward, proceed, advance, go* or *come forth.*

prōcōnsul, prōcōnsulis [**prō** + **cōnsul**, *consul*], *m*, *proconsul*, an ex-consul serving as governor of a Roman province.

procul, *adv.*, *in the distance, at some distance.*

prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubuī, — [cf. **cubō**, *lie*], *fall* (*forwards*); *lie down; lean.*

prōcūrātiō, prōcūrātiōnis [**prōcūrō**], *f.*, *management, charge.*

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**cūrō**, *attend to*], *attend to, have charge of.*

prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prōcurrī or prōcucurrī, prōcursūrus [**currō**, *run*], *run forward, charge.*

prōdeō, prōdīre, prōdiī, prōditūrus [**prōd-** (= **prō**) + **eō**, *go*], *go* or *come forth, go* or *come out.*

prōditiō, prōditiōnis [**prōdō**], *f.*, *betraying, betrayal.*

prōditor, prōditōris [**prōdō**], *m.*, *traitor.*

prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus [**dō**, *put*], (*put forth*), *hand down* (to posterity), *transmit, publish; betray, abandon;* **memoriae prōdere**, *record.*

prōdūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead forth* or *out, bring forward; prolong; lead on, induce.*

proelior, -ārī, -ātus [**proelium**], *fight.*

proelium, proelī, *n.*, *battle, engagement, skirmish.*

profectiō, profectiōnis [cf. **proficīscor**], *f.*, *start, departure, going away.*

prōferō, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātus [**ferō**, *bring*], *bring out.*

prōficiō, prōficere, prōfēcī, prōfectus [**faciō**, *make*], *make headway, gain, accomplish, be effective.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus [cf. **prōficiō**, *make headway*], *start, set out, depart, go.*

profiteor, profitērī, professus [**fateor**, *confess*], *confess freely, declare publicly, volunteer, promise.*

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**flīgō**, *strike*], *rout.*

prōfluō, prōfluere, prōflūxī, — [**fluō**, *flow*], *flow forth, rise.*

profugiō, profugere, profūgī, profugitūrus [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flee, run away.*

profundō, profundere, profūdī, profūsus [**fundō**, *pour*], *pour forth;* **sē profundere**, *rush forth.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um [**prō** + **(g)nātus**, *born*], *sprung, descended.*

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus [**gradior**, *step*], *go forward, advance; proceed, go.*

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus [**habeō**, *have*], *hold off, keep off, hinder, prevent, keep, forbid;* **ab iniūriā prohibēre**, *protect from wrongs.*

prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī prōiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw forward* or *down, cast, throw away; abandon;* **sē prōicere**, *throw himself down.*

proinde [**prō**, *forth*, + **inde**, *from there*], *adv.*, *therefore, and so; just;* **proinde ac sī**, *just as if.*

prōmineō, prōminēre, prōminuī, —, *lean forward* or *over*.

prōmiscuē [**prōmiscuus**, *mixed*], *adv.*, *in common, together*.

prōmissus, -a, -um [part. of **prōmittō**, *put forth*], *long* (of the hair).

prōmoveō, prōmovēre, prōmōvī, prōmōtus [**moveō**, *move*], *move forward*.

prōmptus, -a, -um [part. of **prōmō**, *bring forth*], *at hand, ready, disposed*.

prōmulgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring forward, propose*.

prōmunturium, prōmunturī [cf. **prōmineō**], *n.*, *headland, promontory*.

prōnē [**prōnus**, *inclined*], *adv.*, *leaning, inclined*.

prōnūntiātiō, prōnūntiātiōnis [**prōnūntiō**], *f.*, *announcement, declaration*.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūntiō**, *report*], *set forth, report, make an announcement, declare, call out, proclaim*.

prope, (1) *adv.*, *nearly, almost;* (2) *prep.* with acc., *near;* comp. **propius**, as *adv.* or *prep.*, *nearer;* sup. **proximē**, *most recently, last*.

prōpellō, prōpellere, prōpulī, prōpulsus [**pellō**, *drive*], *drive away, rout, put to flight*.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**properus**, *quick*], *hasten*.

propinquitās, propinquitātis [**propinquus**], *f.*, *nearness*.

propinquus, -a, -um [cf. **prope**], *near, neighboring;* as *subst.*, *m.* and *f.*, *relative, kinsman, kinswoman*.

propius, see **prope**.

prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus [**pōnō**, *place*], *put forward, set forth, state, publish; set before, present, offer, put out, display* (of a flag); with or without **animō**, *purpose, intend*.

prōpositum, -ī [part. of **prōpōnō**], *n.*, *plan, purpose*.

proprius, -a, -um [cf. **prope**], *one's own, particular; characteristic; permanent, complete;* **proprium virtūtis**, *a mark of valor*.

propter, *prep.* with acc., *on account of, owing to*.

propterea [**propter ea**, *on account of this*], *adv.*, *on that account;* **propterea quod**, *because*.

prōpugnātor, prōpugnātōris [**prōpugnō**], *m.*, *defender*.

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**pugnō**], *fight in defense, repel an assault; hurl forth weapons*.

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **prōpellō**], *drive off, repel, ward off*.

prōra, -ae, *f.*, *prow* of a ship.

prōruō, prōruere, prōruī, prōrutus [**ruō**, *dash down*], *demolish*.

prōsequor, prōsequī, prōsecūtus [**sequor**, *follow*], *follow up, pursue; escort, accompany*.

prōspectus, -ūs [cf. **prōspiciō**], *m.*, *outlook, view, sight*.

prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectus [**speciō**, *look*], *look forward, provide for, look out for*.

prōsternō, prōsternere, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus [**sternō**, *strew*], *strew before; overthrow, ruin*.

prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus [**tegō**, *cover*], *cover over, protect*.

prōterō, prōterere, prōtrīvī, prōtrītus [**terō**, *rub*], *tread under foot, trample down*.

prōterreō, prōterrēre, prōterruī, prōterritus [**terreō**, *frighten*], *frighten away, drive off in fear*.

prōtinus [**prō**, *forth*, + **tenus**, *as far*

as], *adv.*, *right on; straightway, forthwith.*

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**turbō**, *to disorder*], *drive in confusion, repulse.*

prout [**prō**, *in proportion to*, + **ut**, *as*], *conj.*, *according as, as.*

prōvehō, prōvehere, prōvēxī, prōvectus [**vehō**, *carry*], *carry forward;* **in altum prōvectae**, *putting out to sea;* **Āfricō prōvectus**, *wafted by the southwest wind.*

prōventus, -ūs [cf. **prōveniō**, *come forth*], *m.*, *outcome, result.*

prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvīdī, prōvīsus [**videō**, *see*], *foresee, look out for, provide;* **satis est prōvīsum**, *sufficient provision has been made.*

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, *province;* often *the Province* in southern Gaul, subject to Rome since 120 B.C.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, — [**volō**, *fly*], *fly forth, rush out.*

proximē, see **prope**.

proximus, -a, -um [sup. of **propior**, cf. **prope**], *nearest;* of that which follows or precedes, *next, last.*

Ptiānii, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of south central Aquitania.

Ptolomaeus, -ī, *m.*, name of the kings of Egypt after about 300 B.C. (1) *Ptolemy Auletes;* see on 189, 19. At his death in 51 B.C. he left the throne to his son and his famous daughter, Cleopatra. (2) *Ptolemy Dionysus*, son of (1); see on 244, 20. He fell in the Alexandrine War against Caesar, 48–47 B.C.

Ptolomāis, -idis, *f.*, a city of Phoenicia south of Tyre, famous during the Crusades under the French name *St. Jean d'Acre* or simply *Acre.*

pūblicē [**pūblicus**], *adv.*, *in the name of the state, for a state.*

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**pūblicus**], *make public, confiscate, annex.*

pūblicus, -a, -um [cf. **populus**, *people*], *of the people* or *state, public;* **in pūblicō**, *in public;* **in pūblicum referre**, *display publicly.*

pudēns, pudentis [part. of **pudeō**, *have a sense of shame*], *adj.*, *sensitive, honorable;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *men of honor.*

pudor, pudōris, *m.*, *sense of shame, decency, honor.*

puer, puerī, *m.*, *boy;* pl., *children* (boys and girls); **ā puerīs**, *from childhood.*

puerīlis, puerīle [**puer**], *of a child;* **puerīlī aetāte**, *during childhood.*

pugna, -ae, *f.*, *fight, combat, battle; fighting.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**pugna**], *fight;* often impers. pass., *there is fighting, the battle rages* or *is carried on*, etc.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, comp. **pulchrior**, sup. **pulcherrimus**, *beautiful, glorious.*

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Titus Pullo*, a centurion in Caesar's army in Gaul, who betrayed a division of his army and joined Pompey in the first year of the Civil War.

pulsus, part. of **pellō**.

pulsus, -ūs [cf. **pellō**, *strike*], *m.*, *stroke.*

pulvis, pulveris, *m.*, *dust.*

pūnctum, -ī [part. of **pungō**, *prick*], *n*, *point;* **temporis pūnctō**, *on the instant.*

puppis, puppis, *f.*, *stern* of a ship.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**pūrus**, *clean*, cf. **agō**, drive], *clean, clear, excuse.*

Puteolī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an old Greek city in Campania, on the bay of Naples, now *Pozzuoli.*

puteus, -ī, *m.*, *well.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe, consider.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *of the Pyrenees;* with **montēs**, *the Pyrenees*, between Gaul and Spain.

Q

Q. = **Quīntus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

quā [abl. of **quī**, *rel.*, sc. **parte**, *district*, or **viā**, *way*], *adv.*, *by which way, where.*

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a [cf. **quadrāgintā**], *distr. num.*, *forty each, forty in each instance.*

quadrāgintā or **XL** [cf. **quattuor**], *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, or **CCCC** [cf. **quattuor, centum**, *hundred*], *four hundred.*

quadrirēmis, quadrirēme [cf. **quattuor; rēmus**, *oar*], *with four banks of oars;* f. as *subst.* (sc. **nāvis**), *quadrireme.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *look for, ask, inquire about.*

quaestiō, quaestiōnis [cf. **quaerō**], *f.*, *inquiry, investigation.*

quaestor, quaestōris [cf. **quaerō**], *m.*, *quaestor, quartermaster;* see Introd. § 33.

quaestus, -ūs [cf. **quaerō**], *m.*, *acquisition, gain;* **ad quaestūs pecūniae**, *for pecuniary gains.*

quālis, quāle, *interrog. adj.*, *of what sort, what, what sort of.*

quam, *adv.*, *how; than, as;* **quam diū**, *as long as;* strengthening superlatives, **quam maximus**, *the greatest possible, as great as possible;* **post diem quārtum quam**, *three days after;* see on 117, 11.

quamquam [**quam** doubled, with generalizing force], *conj.*, *however, although.*

quamvīs [**quam** + **vīs** (from **volō**, *wish*)], *adv.*, *as you will, however.*

quandō, *adv.*, *ever, at any time.*

quantum [n. acc. of **quantus**], *adv.*, *so far as, as much as.*

quantus, -a, -um, *how great, how much; as;* **tantum . . . quantum**, *so much* or *only so much . . . as.*

quantuscumque, -tacumque, -tumcumque [**quantus** + **cumque**, with generalizing force], *however great* or *much;* **quantumcumque itineris**, *as long a march as.*

quārē [**quā rē**, *by which thing*], *adv.*, *wherefore, accordingly; by reason of which, why.*

quārtus, -a, -um [cf. **quattuor**], *fourth;* **post diem quārtum quam**, *three days after;* see on 117, 11.

quasi [**qua** (old n. pl. acc. of the rel.) + **sī**, *if*], *conj.*, *as if.*

quattuor or IIII, *four.*

quattuordecim or **XIIII** [**quattuor** + **decem**, *ten*], *fourteen.*

-que, *conj.*, enclitic, *and.*

queror, querī, questus, *complain, complain of.*

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, *who, which, that;* often implying an antecedent, *he who, that which*, etc.; frequently for a dem. or pers. pron. in Eng., *this, that, this man, he*, etc.; **quō**, with comparatives, *the*, **quō minus**, *the less.*

quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adj. pron.*, *what? which?* For the *interrog. subst. pron.*, see **quis.**

quī, qua, quod, *indef. adj.* or *subst. pron.*, *any; anybody;* generally

follows **sī, nisi, nē,** or **num.** Cf. **quis,** *indef.*

quī [old abl. of **quī,** *interrog.*], *interrog. adv., how?*

quicquam, see **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque [**quī,** *rel.,* + **cumque,** with generalizing force], *indef. pron., whoever, whichever, whatever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam and (as *adj.*) quoddam, *indef. subst.* or *adj. pron., a certain man* or *thing, some one, one; certain, some, a.*

quidem, *adv.* (emphasizing the word before it), *in fact, at least,* sometimes rendered merely by emphasizing the preceding word; *but, yet;* **nē . . . quidem** (inclosing the emphasized words), *not even, not . . . either.*

quiēs, quiētis, *f., rest, repose.*

quiētus, -a, -um [part of **quiēscō,** *to rest*], *quiet, still, unoccupied.*

quīn [**quī,** *how,* + **ne** = **nē,** *not*], *conj., but that, that,* often best rendered by *from, of, to, without; who . . . not;* **quīn etiam,** *nay even, in fact.*

Quīnctīlius, Quīnctīlī, *m.,* a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Vārus.**

quīncūnx, quīncūncis [**quīnque,** cf. **ūncia,** *ounce*], *f.* (the arrangement of dots marking a five-ounce piece of copper, :·:), *quincunx;* **in quīncūncem,** *in diagonal order,* :·:·:·:·:.

quīndecim or **XV** [**quīnque** + **decem,** *ten*], *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, or **D** [**quīnque** + **centum,** *hundred*], *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a [**quīnque**], *distr. num., five each, five at a time.*

quīnquāgintā or **L** [**quīnque**], *fifty.*

quīnque or **V,** *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, or **V.** [**quīnque**], *fifth.*

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. subst. pron., who? which? what? why?* For the *interrog. adj. pron.,* see **quī.**

quis, qua, quid, *indef. subst.* or *adj. pron., anybody, anything; any;* generally follows **sī, nisi, nē,** or **num.** Cf. **quī,** *indef.*

quisnam, quaenam, quidnam [**quis,** *interrog.,* + **nam,** with emphasizing force], *interrog. subst. pron., who? what? who in the world?*

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam, *indef. subst. pron., anybody, anything.*

quisquam, —, quicquam, *indef. subst. pron., anybody, anything;* **quicquam negōtī,** *any trouble* or *difficulty.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque and (as *adj.*) quodque [**quis,** *interrog.,* + **que,** with generalizing force], *indef. subst.* or *adj. pron., each* (of any number, cf. **uterque**), *every; each man, every man;* **ut quisque est amplissimus, ita plūrimōs clientēs habet,** *the more distinguished a man is, the more dependents he has.*

quisquis, —, quicquid [**quis** doubled, with generalizing force], *indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs and (as *adj.*) quodvīs [**quī,** *rel.,* + **vīs** (from **volō,** *wish*)], *indef. subst.* or *adj. pron., anybody you will; any whatsoever.*

quō [old dat. of **quī,** *rel.;* cf. **eō,** *thither*], *adv., whither, where, to* or *into which (place).*

quō [abl. of **quī,** *rel.*], *conj., that, in order that, whereby,* usual only when there is a comparative in the clause; **quam quō,** *than because;* **quō minus,** *that not,* usually best translated by *from* and a verbal in *-ing;*

tenērī quō minus . . . posset, *to be kept from being able.*
quoad [**quō,** *whither,* + **ad,** *to*], *conj.,* (*to which point*), *until; as long as.*
quod [acc. of **qui,** *rel.*], *conj., as to which, inasmuch as, because; in that, as to what, as for the fact that; that, the fact that;* **quod sī,** *but if.*
quō minus, see **quō,** *conj.*
quoniam [**quom,** old form of **cum,** *when, since,* + **iam,** *now*], *conj., since, seeing that.*
quoque, *conj., too, as well, also.* **Quoque** always follows the word it emphasizes, **etiam** usually precedes.
quōque [old dat. of **quisque,** cf. **eō,** *thither*], *adv.,* regularly followed by **versus,** *in every direction.*
quot, *indecl. adj., how many.*
quotannīs [**quot** + **annīs,** *in how many* (i.e. *in all the*) *years* there are], *adv., every year, yearly.*
quotiēns [**quot**], *adv., how often.*

R

rādīx, rādīcis, *f., root;* pl., *foot* (of a hill); **ad īnfimās rādīcēs,** *at the very foot.*
rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus, *shave.*
raeda, -ae, *f., wagon,* with four wheels.
rāmus, -ī, *m., branch, bough.*
rapiditās, rapiditātis [**rapidus,** *swift*], *f., swiftness, rapidity.*
rapīna, -ae [cf. **rapiō,** *seize*], *f., plunder, plundering, pillaging.*
rārus, -a, -um, *thin, rare; infrequent, few, scattered, in small parties.*
ratiō, ratiōnis [cf. **ratus,** part. of **reor,** *reckon*], *f., reckoning, calculation, account, transaction, business; judgment, reasoning, reason; plan, style, manner, way, method, nature; theory; system;* **ratiōnem habēre,** *keep an account, make a reckoning, have regard for, take care, consider, have a way, propose.*
ratis, ratis, *f., raft.*
Rauracī, -ōrum, *m.,* pl., a tribe on both banks of the upper Rhine, north of the Helvetii.
re-, red- (before vowels), used only in composition, *back, again.*
rebelliō, rebelliōnis [cf. **rebellō,** *renew hostilities*], *f., renewal of hostilities.*
Rebilus, -ī, *m.,* a Roman family name. See **Canīnius.**
recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessūrus [**cēdō,** *go*], *go back, retire.*
recēns, recentis, *adj., fresh, new, recent.*
recēnseō, recēnsēre, recēnsuī, recēnsus [**cēnseō,** *estimate*], *review.*
receptus, -ūs [cf. **recipiō**], *m., retreat, means of retreat.*
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus [**capiō,** *take*], *take back, recover; receive, admit, meet with, take; take on board; take possession of; take responsibility, guarantee;* **sē recipere,** *retreat, retire, return, recover themselves;* **signum recipiendī,** *signal for retreat.*
reclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**-clīnō,** *bend*], *bend back;* **reclīnātus,** *leaning;* **sē reclīnāre,** *lean.*
reconditus, -a, -um [part. of **recondō,** *hide*], *hidden, sequestered.*
recordor, -ārī, -ātus [**re-, cor,** *heart, mind*], *recall to mind, recollect.*
recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**creō,** *create*], *restore, revive.*
rēctē [**rēctus**], *adv., straight, rightly, well.*
rēctus, -a, -um [part. of **regō**], *straight.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **cupiō**, *desire*], *get back, recover.*

recūsātiō, recūsātiōnis [**recūsō**], *f.*, *objection, refusal.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **accūsō**, *accuse*], *bring objection against, decline, refuse.*

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus [**red-** (= **re-**) + **dō**, *put*], (*put back*), *restore, return; render, make, pay, observe.*

redeō, redīre, rediī, reditūrus [**red-** (= **re-**) + **eō**, *go*], *go back, return; be referred; fall to;* **ad gladiōs redīre**, *take to their swords.*

redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus [**red-**(= **re-**) + **agō**, *drive*], *drive back; reduce; make.*

redimō, redimere, redēmī, redemptus [**red-**(= **re-**) + **emō**, *buy*], *buy back, buy up, purchase.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**red-** (= **re-**) + **integrō**, *make whole*], *renew, revive, restore.*

reditiō, reditiōnis [cf. **redeō**], *f.*, *a returning, return.*

reditus, -ūs [cf. **redeō**], *m.*, *a returning, return.*

Redonēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northwestern Gaul, whose name survives in *Rennes.*

redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead* or *bring back.*

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus [**ferō**, *carry*], *carry back, bring back, bring, report; repay;* **referrī** or **pedem referre**, *retreat;* **in pūblicum referre**, *display publicly;* **grātiam referre**, *make requital, repay a favor.*

reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus [**faciō**, *make*], *repair, refresh, rest, reënforce.*

refugiō, refugere, refūgī, refugitūrus [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flee back, take to flight.*

Rēgīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; see **Antistius**.

regiō, regiōnis [cf. **regō**], *f.*, *direction; district, region, territory;* **rēctā regiōne**, *in a straight direction, parallel with.*

rēgius, -a, -um [**rēx**], *of the king, king's, royal.*

rēgnum, -ī [cf. **regō** and **rēx**], *n.*, *kingly rule, royal power, throne, kingdom.*

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *keep straight, direct, control, manage.*

reiciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *throw back, drive back, repulse; refer.*

relanguēscō, relanguēscere, relanguī, —[**re-** + inch. of **langueō**, *be faint*], *become enfeebled, be weakened.*

religiō, religiōnis [cf. **ligō**, *bind*], *f.*, *religious scruple, sacred obligation;* pl., *matters of religion.*

relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus [**linquō**, *leave*], *leave, leave behind, abandon; leave standing;* **pass.**, *be left, remain, the result is.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, left, the rest of;* pl., *the others, all other, the rest;* **nihil reliquī**, *nothing left;* **reliquum tempus**, *the future.* Cf. **cēterī** and **alius**.

remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsūrus [**maneō**, *stay*], *stay behind, remain.*

remedium, remedī [**re-**, cf. **medicor**, *heal*], *n.*, *remedy.*

rēmex, rēmigis [**rēmus**, cf. **agō**, *drive*], *m.*, *rower.*

Rēmī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., *the Remi*, a powerful tribe of southern Belgium, friendly to Rome. Their name sur-

vives in *Rheims* (the ancient Durocortorum).

rēmigō, -āre, —, — [**rēmex**], *row.*

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**migrō**, *move*], *move back, return.*

reminīscor, reminīscī, — [**re-**, cf. **meminī**, *remember*], *recall to mind; remember.*

remissus, -a, -um [part. of **remittō**], *relaxed;* **remissiōribus frīgoribus**, *the cold weather being less severe;* **remissiōre ventō**, *in a lighter wind.*

remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus [**mittō**, *send*], *send back, throw back; give back, return; relax, give up,* (of wind) *die down.*

remollēscō, remollēscere, —, — [**mollēscō**, *become soft*, cf. **mollis**], *become softened* or *enervated.*

removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus [**moveō**, *move*], *move back, send away, draw away.*

remulcum, -ī, *n.*, *tow-line.*

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, *oar.*

rēnō, rēnōnis, *m.*, *deer-skin.*

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**novō**, *renew*, from **novus**, *new*], *renew.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nūntiō**, *report*], *bring back word, report.*

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus [**pellō**, *drive away*], *drive back, repulse.*

repente [abl. of **repēns**, *sudden*], *adv.*, *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um [**repēns**, *sudden*], *sudden, unexpected.*

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus, *find* (by effort, cf. **inveniō**), *discover, ascertain.*

repetō, repetere, repetīvī, repetītus [**petō**, *look for*], *go back after; reckon backward.*

repōnō, repōnere, reposuī, repositus [**pōnō**, *put*], *put back, put.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**portō**, *carry*], *carry back.*

reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus [**prehendō**, *seize*], *hold back; blame, censure.*

reprimō, reprimere, repressī, repressus [**premō**, *press*], *keep back, check.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**repudium**, *divorce*], *reject.*

repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**pugnō**, *fight*], *resist, be opposed to.*

repulsus, part. of **repellō**.

requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvī, requiētus [**quiēscō**, *rest*], *rest.*

requīrō, requīrere, requīsīvī, requīsītus [**quaerō**, *look for, ask*], *look for, ask for.*

rēs, reī, *f.*, *thing* (in the most varied applications, to be translated according to the context); *matter, affair, business; fact, circumstance,* etc.; **rēs novae**, *revolution;* **omnibus rēbus**, *in all respects;* **rēs pūblica**, *the state, the public welfare, public interests;* **rēs gestae**, *exploits.*

rescindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus [**scindō**, *cut*], *cut away* or *down, destroy, pull down.*

rescīscō, rescīscere, rescīvī or resciī, rescītus [**scīscō**, *inquire*], *find out, learn.*

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**servō**, *keep*], *keep back, reserve.*

resideō, residēre, resēdī, — [**sedeō**, *sit*], *sit back, remain.*

resistō, resistere, restitī, — [**sistō**, *place* (one's self)], *make a stand, stop, stay; resist, oppose;* **resistēns** sometimes as *adj.*, *resolute, firm.*

respiciō, respicere, respēxī, respectus [**speciō**, *look*], *look back, look* (*back*) *at, consider, have regard for; devolve upon.*

respondeō, respondēre, respondī, re-

spōnsus [**spondeō**, *promise*], *reply, answer.*

respōnsum, -ī [part. of **respondeō**], *n., answer, reply.*

rēs pūblica, see **rēs.**

restāgnō, -āre, —, — [**stāgnō**, *overflow* and form a **stāgnum**, *pool*], *overflow; be overflowed.*

restitī, perf. of **resistō.**

restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus [**statuō**, *set up*], *restore, revive.*

retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus [**teneō**, *hold*], *hold back, detain, keep, preserve, maintain.*

revellō, revellere, revellī, revulsus [**vellō**, *pluck*], *pull up, tear away.*

revertor, revertī, reversus [**vertō**, *turn*], *dep.*, except in the perf., plpf., and fut. perf., which have **revertī**, etc. (from **revertō**), *turn back, return, come again.*

revinciō, revincīre, revīnxī, revīnctus [**vinciō**, *bind*], *bind back, make fast, fasten.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vocō**, *call*], *call back, call off.*

rēx, rēgis [cf. **regō**], *m., king;* pl., *monarchs* (king and queen).

Rhascypolis, -is, *m.*, a Macedonian, who joined Pompey's army with two hundred cavalrymen.

Rhēnus, -ī, *m., the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, -ī, *m., the Rhone.*

Rhodius, -a, -um, *Rhodian.*

Rhodus, -ī, *f., Rhodes*, an important maritime city on the island of Rhodes, a famous center of art and learning. The bronze colossus, some hundred feet in height, was one of the Seven Wonders of the world. The island retained its independence as an ally of Rome until the Emperor Claudius added it to the province of Asia, 44 A.D.

rīpa, -ae, *f., bank* of a stream.

rīvus, -ī, *m., stream, brook.*

rōbur, rōboris, *n., oak; strength.*

rogātiō, rogātiōnis [**rogō**], *f.*, an *asking* of the people's will upon any matter, *proposal, bill.*

rogitō, -āre, -āvī, — [*freq.* of **rogō**], *ask for over and over again.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask.*

Rōma, -ae, *f., Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um [**Rōma**], *Roman, of Rome;* pl. as *subst., the Romans.*

rōs, rōris, *m., dew.*

rōstrum, -ī [cf. **rōdō**, *gnaw*], *n., beak* of a ship of war; see Introd. § 48.

rota, -ae, *f., wheel.*

Roucillus, -ī, *m.*, an Allobrogan, paymaster in Caesar's Gallic cavalry.

rubus, -ī, *m., bramble-bush.*

Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; see **Sulpicius, Mārcius, Minucius, Vibullius, Acutius.**

rūmor, rūmōris, *m., rumor.*

rūrsus [for **revorsus**, old part. of **revertor**], *adv., back again, again, on the other hand, in turn.*

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southern Gaul, partly in the Province. The name is preserved in the modern *Rodez.*

Rutilus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; see **Semprōnius.**

S

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul.

Sabis, Sabis, *m., the Sambre*, a river of Belgic Gaul flowing into the Meuse (Mosa).

Saburra, -ae, *m.*, an officer of Juba, king of Numidia, by whose tactics Curio was drawn into his disastrous battle, August, 49 B.C.

sacerdōs, sacerdōtis [**sacer**, *sacred*], *m.*, *priest.*

sacerdōtium, sacerdōtī [**sacerdōs**], *n.*, *priesthood.*

sacrāmentum, -ī [**sacrō**, *set apart as sacred*], *n.*, *oath.*

Sacrātivir, Sacrātivirī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Marcus Sacrativir*, a Roman knight from Capua, in Caesar's army in the Civil War.

sacrificium, sacrificī [**sacrificus**, *sacrificial*], *n.*, *sacrifice.*

Sadala, -ae, *m.*, son of the Thracian king Cotys.

saepe, *adv.*, *often;* comp. **saepius**, *too often, repeatedly.*

saepēs, saepis, *f.*, *hedge.*

saeviō, saevīre, saeviī, saevītūrus [**saevus**, *raging*], *rage; blow a gale.*

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, *arrow.*

sagittārius, sagittārī [**sagitta**], *m.*, *bowman, archer.*

sāl, salis, *m.*, *salt.*

salīnae, -ārum [**sāl**], *f.*, pl., *salt-pits.*

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, *mountain forest.*

salūbris, salūbre, sup. **salūberrimus** [**salūs**], *healthful.*

salum, -ī [**sāl**], *n.*, *sea.*

salūs, salūtis [cf. **salvus**], *f.*, *safety, welfare, deliverance; place of safety;* **salūtī esse**, *bring deliverance, save.*

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**salūs**], *wish health, greet.*

salvus, -a, -um [cf. **salūs**], *safe, well.*

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus, *make sacred, establish unalterably, enact.*

sānctus, -a, -um [part. of **sanciō**], *holy, sacred, inviolable.*

sanguis, sanguinis, *m.*, *blood.*

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sānus**, *sound*], *make sound, restore to health.*

Santonī, -ōrum, or **Santonēs**, -um, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on the west coast of Gaul. The name is preserved in *Saintes* and *Saintonge;* see on **Tolōsātium**, 57, 18.

sarcinae, -ārum, *f.*, *soldiers' packs* or *bundles;* see Introd. § 42.

sarciō, sarcīre, sarsī, sartus, *patch, mend, repair.*

Sardinia, -ae, *f.*, *Sardinia.*

sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, *twig, light branch.*

Sāsōn, -ōnis, *f.*, a little island near Oricum and Apollonia, now *Saseno.*

satis, *adv.*, *enough, sufficiently; rather;* the weak *very;* sometimes as pred. adj., or neuter subst. with partit. gen.

satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactus [**satis faciō**, *do enough*], *give satisfaction, make reparation.*

satus, part. of **serō**.

saucius, -a, -um, *wounded.*

saxum, -ī, *n.*, *stone, rock.*

Scaeva, -ae, *m.*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army; see 213, 25 and note.

scāla, -ae [cf. **scandō**, *climb*], *f.*, *ladder, scaling-ladder.*

scapha, -ae, *f.*, *ship's boat, skiff.*

scelerātus, -a, -um [part. of **scelerō**, *pollute*, from **scelus**], *accursed, villainous.*

scelus, sceleris, *n.*, *crime, guilt, wickedness.*

scientia, -ae [**sciēns**, part. of **sciō**], *f.*, *knowledge, skill.*

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, *cut, tear down* a rampart by pulling up the stakes.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know, understand.*

Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio*, Pompey's father-in-law from 52 B.C., and his colleague in the consulship the last five months of that year. Second to Pompey in

command of the senatorial forces at Pharsalus, 48 B.C., and the chief commander at Thapsus, 46 B.C.

scopulus, -ī, *m.*, *cliff, rock.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*

Scrībōnius, Scrībōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Libō**.

scrobis, scrobis, *m.* and *f.*, *pit, hole.*

scutula, -ae, *f.*, *wooden roller.*

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, *shield*, of the Roman legionary soldier; see Introd. § 38.

sē, sēsē, see **suī**.

sēclūdō, sēclūdere, sēclūsī, sēclūsus [**sē(d)**, old *adv.*, *apart, by one's self,* + **claudō**, *shut*], *shut off, part.*

sēcrētō [abl. of **sēcrētus**, part. of **sēcernō**, *separate*], *adv.*, *in private, secretly.*

sectūra, -ae [cf. **secō**, *cut*], *f.*, *a cutting, quarry.*

secundum [n. acc. of **secundus**], *prep.* with acc., *along, following, according to.*

secundus, -a, -um [cf. **sequor**, *follow*], *second; favorable* (of winds, battles, etc.), *successful;* **secundae rēs**, *prosperity, success.*

secūris, secūris [cf. **secō**, *cut*], *f.*, *ax.*

sed, *conj.*, *but.*

sēdecim or **XVI** [**sex** + **decem**, *ten*], *sixteen.*

sēdēs, sēdis [cf. **sedeō**, *sit*], *f.*, *seat;* either sing. or pl., *dwelling-place, abode.*

sēditiōsus, -a, -um [**sēditiō**, *insurrection*], *insurrectionary, rebellious.*

sēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **sēdēs**], *allay, quiet.*

Sedulius, Sedulī, *m.*, a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe on the upper Rhone.

Segontiācī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a British tribe.

Segovax, -actis, *m.*, a British king in Kent.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe, adjoining the Province, with territory on both sides of the Saône (Arar).

semel, *num. adv.*, *once, the first time.*

sēmentis, sēmentis [**sēmen**, *seed*], *f.*, *sowing, planting.*

sēmita, -ae, *f.*, *path, byway.*

semper, *adv.*, *always, constantly.*

Semprōnius, Semprōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's cavalry officers.

senātor, senātōris [cf. **senex**], *m.*, *senator.*

senātōrius, -a, -um [**senātor**], *of a senator, senatorial.*

senātus, -ūs [cf. **senex**], *m.*, *senate, council of elders.*

senex, senis, *m.*, *old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a [**sex**], *distr. num.*, *six each, six at a time.*

Senonēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a tribe of northern Celtic Gaul, on the Seine (Sequana). The name is preserved in *Sens*, the modern name of their chief city, Agedincum.

sententia, -ae [cf. **sentiō**], *f.*, *opinion, view, way of thinking, proposition, decision, vote;* **sententiam dīcere**, *express an opinion;* **sententiam ferre**, *give a verdict.*

sentēs, sentium, *m.*, pl., *briers, thorns.*

sentīna, -ae, *f.*, *bilge-water.*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *perceive, see, be aware, feel, think, understand.*

sēparātim [cf. **sēparātus**], *adv.*, *separately.*

sēparātus, -a, -um [part. of **sēparō**, *separate*], *separate, distinct.*

septem or **VII**, *seven.*

septendecim or **XVII** [**septem** + **decem,** *ten*], *seventeen.*

septentriō, septentriōnis [**septem** + **triō,** *a plow ox*], *m.*, generally pl., *the north;* properly the seven stars forming the Dipper in the constellation of the Great Bear or the Wain.

Septimius, Septimī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Septimius,* at one time a centurion in Pompey's army, later in the service of the Egyptian king; one of Pompey's murderers.

septimus, -a, -um [**septem**], *seventh.*

septingentī, -ae, -a, or **DCC** [septem + **centum,** *hundred*], *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā or **LXX** [cf. **septem**], *seventy.*

sepultūra, -ae [cf. **sepeliō,** *bury*], *f.*, *burial.*

Sēquana, ae, *f.*, *the Seine.*

Sēquanus, -ī, *m.*, *a Sequanian;* pl., *the Sequani* or *Sequanians,* a powerful tribe of Celtic Gaul, adjoining the Helvetii.

sequor, sequī, secūtus, *follow, pursue, attend;* **poena eum sequitur,** *punishment befalls him;* **fidem sequī,** *seek the protection.*

Ser. = **Servius,** Servī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen or given name.

sermō, sermōnis [cf. **serō,** *weave*], *m.*, *conversation* (words of two or more persons woven into continuous discourse), *remark, discussion.*

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, *sow, plant.*

sērō [abl. of **sērus,** *late*], *adv.*, *late;* comp. **sērius,** *too late;* **quam sērissimē,** *as late as possible.*

Sertōrius, Sertōrī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Quintus Sertorius,* a leader of the Marian or democratic party, bitterly opposed to the senatorial government established by Sulla. In Spain he made the first attempt to Romanize the people of a province by introducing Roman dress and having Latin taught in schools; see on **96,** 18.

servīlis, servīle [**servus**], *of a slave;* **in servīlem modum,** *in the way that is used with slaves,* i.e. by torture.

Servīlius, Servīlī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Publius Servilius Vatia Isauricus,* consul with Caesar in 48 B.C., remaining in charge of affairs at Rome while Caesar conducted the war against Pompey.

serviō, servīre, servīvī, servītūrus [**servus**], *be a slave to, follow blindly;* **auribus servīre,** *tickle the ears.*

servitūs, servitūtis [**servus**], *f.*, *slavery, bondage;* **sēsē in servitūtem dicāre,** *attach themselves as slaves.*

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, keep, maintain, observe, keep watch of.*

servus, -ī, *m.*, *slave.*

sescēnārius, -a, -um [**sescēnī,** *six hundred each*], *of six hundred men each.*

sescentī, -ae, -a, or **DC** [**sex** + **centum,** *hundred*], *six hundred.*

sēsquipedālis, sēsquipedāle [**sēsquipēs,** *a foot and a half,* from **sēsqui,** *adv.*, *by a half,* + **pēs,** *foot*], *a foot and a half* in thickness.

sētius, *comp. adv.*, *less;* **nihilō sētius,** *none the less, nevertheless.*

seu, see **sīve.**

sevērē [**sevērus,** *stern*], *adv.*, *sternly, sharply.*

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sē(d),** old

adv., apart, by one's self, + **vocō,** *call*], *call apart, call away.*
sex or **VI,** *six.*
sexāgintā or **LX** [**sex**], *sixty.*
Sextius, Sextī, *m.,* a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Publius Sextius Baculus,* a centurion in Caesar's army. (2) *Titus Sextius,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.
Sextus, -ī, *m.,* a Roman praenomen or given name.
sī, *conj., if, whether; to see if.*
Sibusātēs, -ium, *m.,* pl., a tribe of southwestern Aquitania.
sīc, *adv., so, thus, in this way;* **ut . . . sīc,** *while . . . yet, as . . . so.*
siccitās, siccitātis [**siccus,** *dry*], *f., dryness.*
Sicilia, -ae, *f., Sicily.*
sīcut or **sīcutī** [**sīc** + **utī,** *as*], *conj., just as, as, as it were;* **sīcutī . . . ita,** *while . . . still, not only . . . but even.*
sīdus, sīderis, *n., heavenly body.*
sīgnifer, sīgniferī [**sīgnum,** cf. **ferō,** *bear*], *m., standard-bearer, color-sergeant.*
sīgnificātiō, sīgnificātiōnis [**sīgnificō**], *f., signaling, signal, sign.*
sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sīgnum,** cf. **faciō,** *make*], *make signs, show, indicate.*
sīgnum, -ī, *n., signal; standard,* see Introd. § 40; **sīgna convertere,** *change front, face about;* **sīgna ferre** or **īnferre,** *advance, charge;* **conversa sīgna īnferre,** *face about and charge;* **ab sīgnīs discēdere,** *withdraw from the ranks;* **sīgna legiōnis cōnsistunt,** *the legion halts;* **sīgna relinquere,** *run away.*
silentium, silentī [**silēns,** *silent*], *n., silence.*
Sīlius, Sīlī, *m.,* an officer in Caesar's army.
silva, -ae, *f., woods, forest.*
silvestris, silvestre [**silva**], *covered with woods, wooded.*
similis, simile, *like, similar.*
similiter [**similis**], *adv., in the same way.*
similitūdo, similitūdinis [**similis**], *f., likeness, resemblance.*
simul, *adv., at the same time, at once;* with or without **atque,** *as soon as;* **simul . . . simul,** *partly . . . partly.*
simulācrum, -ī [**simulō**], *n., likeness, image;* usually of gods, cf. **statua.**
simulātiō, simulātiōnis [**simulō**], *f., pretense, deceit;* **equitum simulātiōne,** *making a pretense of being cavalrymen;* **per simulātiōnem vulnerum,** *by pretending to be wounded.*
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **similis**], *make like, pretend.*
simultās, simultātis [cf. **simul**], *f., rivalry; enmity.*
sin [**sī** + **ne** = **nē,** *not*], *conj.* (*if not*), *but if.*
sine, *prep.* with abl., *without.*
singillātim [cf. **singulī**], *adv., singly, individually.*
singulāris, singulāre [**singulī**], *one by one, unique, unparalleled, unequaled, extraordinary.*
singulī, -ae, -a, *distr. num., one at a time, one by one; singly, severally, one apiece; single, separate;* **in annōs singulōs,** *for each year, for a year at a time.*
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left.*
sinistra, -ae [**sinister,** sc. **manus,** *hand*], *f., left hand.*
sinistrōrsus [**sinister** + **vorsus,** old

form of **versus**, *towards*, cf. **rūrsus**], *adv.*, *to the left.*

sinus, -ūs, *m.*, *bosom.*

situs, -ūs, *m.*, *situation, site.*

sīve or **seu** [**sī** + **-ve**, *or*], *conj.*, *or if;* **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu)**, *whether . . . or.*

socer, socerī, *m.*, *father-in-law.*

societās, societātis [**socius**], *f.*, *partnership, company; tax collecting company*, see on 188, 27; *alliance.*

socius, socī [cf. **sequor**], *m.*, *comrade, ally, partner.*

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, *the sun;* personified, *Sol, the Sun.*

soldurius, soldurī, *m.*, *retainer, follower;* see 95, 26 ff.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *semi-dep.*, *be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis [**sōlus**], *f.*, *loneliness; wilderness, desert waste.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sollicitus**, *all stirred up*], *rouse, incite, urge, tamper with.*

solum, -ī, *n.*, *bottom, soil;* **agrī solum**, *the bare ground.*

sōlum [n. acc. of **sōlus**], *adv.*, *only, merely.*

sōlus, -a, -um, *only, alone.*

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen;* with or without **nāvēs**, *set sail; pay.*

somnus, -ī, *m.*, *sleep.*

sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitus [**sonus**], *sound.*

sonus, -ī, *m.*, *sound.*

soror, sorōris, *f.*, *sister;* **soror ex mātre**, *half-sister* (*on the mother's side*).

Sōtiātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a strong tribe of north central Aquitania.

spatium, spatī, *n.*, *space, distance, course; interval, time, period.*

speciēs, speciēī [cf. **speciō**, *look*], *f.*, *sight, appearance, semblance.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **speciō**, *look*], *look, look at, regard, aim at;* of countries, *lie, face;* **spectāns sī posset**, *aiming to see if he could.*

speculātor, speculātōris [**speculor**, *spy out*], *m.*, *spy, scout.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um [**speculātor**], *of a spy, for reconnoitring.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**spēs**], *hope, hope for.*

spēs, speī, *f.*, *hope, expectation, hopefulness;* **in spem venīre**, *hope.*

Spinther, -eris, *m.*, a Roman family name; see on 232, 17.

spīritus, -ūs [cf. **spīrō**, *breathe*], *m.*, *breath; spirit, arrogance.*

spolia, -ōrum, *n.*, pl., *arms stripped from an enemy, spoils, trophies.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**spolia**], *strip, rob, despoil.*

sponte, abl. only, *f.*, *of one's own accord; by one's self, unaided.*

Staberius, Staberī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. Lucius Staberius, an officer of Pompey in the Civil War.

stabiliō, stabilīre, stabilīvī, stabilītus [**stabilis**, *steady*], *make steady* or *firm.*

stabilitās, stabilitātis [**stabilis**, *steady*], *f.*, *steadiness.*

statim [cf. **stō**], *adv.*, *on the spot, forthwith, immediately, at once.*

statiō, statiōnis [cf. **stō**], *f.* (*a standing*), *guard, picket, sentry; outpost; anchorage, harbor;* **in statiōne**, *on guard.*

Stātius, Stātī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Murcus**.

statīvus, -a, -um [cf. **stō**], *stationary, permanent.*

statua, -ae [cf. **statuō**], *f.*, *statue;* usually of men, cf. **simulācrum**.

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus

[**status**], *set up; decide, determine, think, make up one's mind.*

statūra, -ae [cf. **stō**], *f.* (*a standing*), *stature, height.*

status, -ūs [cf. **stō**], *m.* (*a standing*), *position, condition.*

stimulus, -ī, *m., goad, spur.* This name was jokingly given by Caesar's soldiers to one of his defensive devices at Alesia; see **158**, 6 ff.

stīpendium, stīpendī [**stips**, *contribution*, cf. **pendō**, *pay*], *n., pay.*

stīpes, stīpitis, *m., log, trunk.*

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, *stand;* of ships, *lie at anchor;* **dēcrētō stāre**, *stand by* or *abide by a decision.*

strāmentum, -ī [cf. **sternō**, *spread out*], *n., covering; pack-saddle.*

strepitus, -ūs [**strepō**, *make a noise*], *m., din, rattle.*

stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strīctus, *strip off; unsheathe, draw* a sword.

struō, struere, strūxī, strūctus, *arrange, build.*

studeō, studēre, studuī, — [cf. **studium**], *be eager for, desire; pay attention to, be devoted to.*

studiōsē [**studiōsus**, *eager*], *adv., eagerly.*

studium, studī [cf. **studeō**], *n., zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, energy, devotion; pursuit* (to which devotion is given).

stultitia, -ae [**stultus**], *f., folly.*

stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*

sub, *prep.* (1) with abl. (of position), *under, at the foot of;* **sub sinistrā**, *at the left;* (2) with acc. (of motion), *under;* of time, *just before.*

subdūcō, subdūcere, subdūxī, subductus [**dūcō**, *lead*], *lead up* from a lower position; of ships, *draw up* on shore.

subductiō, subductiōnis [cf. **subdūcō**], *f., a drawing up on shore, beaching.*

subeō, subīre, subiī, subitus [**eō**, *go*], *go under, undergo; come up* (from below, or to a wall), *come up to, meet.*

subiciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus [**iaciō**, *throw*], *put underneath; throw* or *thrust* (from below); *expose, subject, bring up to;* perf. part., *below, near.*

subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus [**agō**, *drive*], (*drive under*), *reduce, constrain.*

subitō [abl. of **subitus**], *adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.*

subitus, -a, -um [part. of **subeō**, *come up unexpectedly*], *sudden, unexpected.*

sublātus, part. of **tollō**.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**levō**, *lift*], *lift up; support, relieve, assist;* **sē sublevāre**, *rise.*

sublica, -ae, *f., pile, stake.*

subluō, subluere, subluī, sublūtus [**luō**, *wash*], (*wash below*), *wash, wash the base of.*

subnūbilus, -a, -um [**sub**, *a little*, + **nūbilus**, *cloudy*], *rather cloudy.*

subruō, subruere, subruī, subrutus [**ruō**, *cause to fall*], *undermine.*

subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus [**sequor**, *follow*], *follow on, follow, come on after, bring up the rear of.*

subsidium, subsidī [cf. **sedeō**, *sit*], *n.* (*a sitting in reserve*), *reserve, reenforcement; help, aid, relief, resources.*

subsīdō, subsīdere, subsēdī, subsessūrus [**sīdō**, *sit down*], *settle down, crouch down and watch, lie in ambush.*

subsistō, subsistere, substitī, — [**sistō**, *place* (one's self)], *make a stand, halt, stop.*

substrūctiō, substrūctiōnis [cf. **substruō**, *build under*], *f.*, *substructure.*

subsum, subesse, —, — [**sum**], *be under; be near, be near at hand.*

subvehō, subvehere, subvēxī, subvectus [**vehō**, *carry*], *bring up.*

subveniō, subvenīre, subvēnī, subventūrus [**veniō**, *come*], *come to the rescue* or *to the assistance of.*

succēdō, succēdere, successī, successūrus [**sub** + **cēdō**, *go*], *come up* (*from below*), *approach; take the place of, succeed;* **ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī**, *on a second side the Ubii come next to them* (lit., *come up to a second side*); **in statiōnem succēdere**, *to take their turn on guard.*

succendō, succendere, succendī, succēnsus [**sub**, cf. **candeō**, *shine*], *set on fire.*

succīdō, succīdere, succīdī, succīsus [**sub** + **caedō**, *cut*], *cut off below, cut down.*

succumbō, succumbere, succubuī, succubitūrus [cf. **cubō**, *lie*], *lie down* (*under*), *give in, succumb.*

succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursūrus [**sub** + **currō**, *run*], *run to one's aid, run up* (to aid); impers. pass., *aid comes up.*

sudis, sudis, *f.*, *stake.*

Suēbī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a powerful German tribe, or confederation of tribes. The name is preserved in the modern *Swabia.*

suffodiō, suffodere, suffōdī, suffossus [**sub** + **fodiō**, *dig*], *dig under, stab underneath, undermine.*

suffrāgium, suffrāgī, *n.*, *vote.*

Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German tribe opposite Belgium.

suī, sibi, sē or sēsē, *reflexive pron.* of third pers., *himself, herself, he, him,* etc.; with **inter** in reciprocal idea, *from, to,* or *with each other.*

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, commander against Mithridates, 88–84 B.C., dictator, 81–79 B.C. (2) *Publius Cornelius Sulla*, nephew of (1), a lieutenant of Caesar in the Civil War, in command of the right wing at the battle of Pharsalus. See also on **212**, 8.

Sulpicius, Sulpicī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul. (2) *Servius Sulpicius*, a Roman senator.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be, exist; happen;* **suī esse imperī**, *belong to his control.*

summa, -ae [**summus**, sc. **rēs**, *thing*], *f.*, *sum total, total; chief control, general management; substance;* **summa imperī**, *the chief command;* **in summā**, *in general;* **summa reī** or **rērum**, *the general situation.*

summē [**summus**], *adv.*, *very earnestly.*

summergō, summergere, summersī, summersus [**sub** + **mergō**, *dip*], *dip under, sink.*

sumministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sub** + **ministrō**, *wait upon*], *supply, furnish.*

summittō, summittere, summīsī, summissus [**sub** + **mittō**, *send*], *send up, send as aid, send.*

summoveō, summovēre, summōvī, summōtus [**sub** + **moveō**, *move*], *remove, drive back, dislodge.*

summus, see **superior.**

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [**sub** + **emō**, *take*], *take; spend* (of exertion); **supplicium sūmere dē**,

inflict punishment on; **sibi sūmere,** *take upon himself, assume.*

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [**sūmptus**], *expensive, costly, lavish.*

sūmptus, -ūs [cf. **sūmō**], *m., expense.*

super, *prep.* with acc., *above, over, upon.*

superior, superius [cf. **super**], *comp. adj., higher, upper; superior, stronger; former, earlier, previous.* Sup. **summus,** *highest; top of; most important, chief; utmost, extreme; very great;* **summīs cōpiīs,** *in full force;* **ab summō,** *at the end.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**superus,** *higher*], *overtop; overpower, conquer; surpass, be superior; outlive, survive;* pass., *be at a disadvantage, be overpowered.*

supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus [**sum**], (*"be over and above"*), *be left, remain, survive; be in excess.*

suppetō, suppetere, suppetīvī, suppetītūrus [**sub** + **petō,** *seek*], *be on hand, be available, hold out.*

supplēmentum, -ī [**suppleō,** *fill out*], *n., substitutes.*

supplex, supplicis [**sub,** cf. **plicō,** *fold*], *m.* and *f.* (*one who bends the knee*), *suppliant.*

supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis [**supplicō,** *kneel*], *f., public prayer, thanksgiving.*

suppliciter [**supplex**], *adv., suppliantly, as a suppliant.*

supplicium, supplicī [**supplex**], *n.* (*kneeling* in supplication or to be punished), *punishment, penalty.*

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sub** + **portō,** *carry*], *bring up, furnish.*

suprā [cf. **super**], *adv.,* and *prep.* with acc., *above; before.*

suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus [**subs** (=**sub**) + **capiō,** *take*], (*take up from beneath*), *take up, undertake.*

suspīciō, suspīciōnis [cf. **suspiciō,** *look askance at*], *f., suspicion, ground for believing, suspicious action;* **in suspīciōnem venīre,** *look suspicious.*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. **suspiciō,** *look askance at*], *suspect.*

sustentō, -āre, āvi, -ātus [freq. of **sustineō**], *uphold, support, mitigate.*

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus [**subs** (= **sub**) + **teneō**], *hold up* (*from below*), *support, endure; check, withstand;* without obj., *hold out, hold firm, stand their ground;* **sē sustinēre,** *stand.*

sustulī, perf. of **tollō.**

suus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* (reflexive, referring to subject), *his, her, its, their; his own,* etc.; *his favorable, his characteristic, favorable, suitable;* **suī,** *his* (*their*) *men, friends, people;* **sua,** *his* (*their*) *possessions.*

Syria, -ae, *f.,* organized by Pompey, in 64 B.C., as a Roman province, lying along the eastern coast of the Mediterranean.

Syriacus, -a, -um, *Syrian.*

T

T. = **Titus,** -ī, *m.,* a Roman praenomen or given name.

tabella, -ae [**tabula**], *f., tablet, ballot.*

tabernāculum, -ī [**taberna,** *hut*], *n., tent.*

tabula, -ae, *f., board;* writing *tablet, list; account book;* **novae tabulae,** *new accounts, abolition of debts.* See on 71, 1.

taceo, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, *be silent, say nothing; say nothing about.*

taeter, taetra, taetrum, *foul, repulsive.*

tālea, -ae, *f., rod, bar, stake.*

tam, *adv.*, *so.*

tamen, *adv.*, *yet, still, however, nevertheless, anyhow.*

Tamesis, -is, *m.*, *the Thames.*

tametsī [**tam** + **etsī**, *although*], *conj.*, *although, though.*

tandem, *adv.*, *at length, finally.*

tantulus, -a, -um [dim. of **tantus**], *so small, so trivial.*

tantum [n. acc. of **tantus**], *adv.*, *so far, to such an extent, only so far, so.*

tantummodo [**tantum modo**, *so much only*], *adv.*, *only, merely.*

tantundem [**tantus**], *adv.*, *just so far; the same distance.*

tantus, -a, -um [cf. **tam**], *so great, so much, such a great, that great; only so much, so few.*

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of southwestern Aquitania. The name survives in the modern *Tarbes.*

Tarcondārius, see **Castor.**

tardē [**tardus**], *adv.*, *slowly.*

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**tardus**], *retard, check, hinder.*

tardus, -a, -um, *slow.*

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe in west central Aquitania.

taurus, -ī, *m.*, *bull.*

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, a Briton, king of a part of Kent.

Tectosagēs, -um, *m.*, see **Volcae.**

tegimentum, -ī [**tegō**], *n.*, *covering.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover; hide, conceal; shelter, protect.*

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, *spear, javelin, weapon.*

temerārius, -a, -um [cf. **temere**], *rash, thoughtless, inconsiderate.*

temere, *adv.*, *casually, without strong reasons, rashly.*

temeritās, temeritātis [cf. **temere**], *f.*, *rashness, foolhardiness.*

tēmō, tēmōnis, *m.*, *pole* of a chariot or wagon.

temperantia, -ae [**temperāns**, *moderate*], *f.*, *moderation, self-control.*

temperātus, -a, -um [part. of **temperō**], *temperate, mild.*

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**tempus**, *a division of time*], (*observe due proportion*), *restrain one's self, refrain.*

tempestās, tempestātis [**tempus**], *f.*, *weather; bad weather, storm.*

templum, -ī, *n.*, *temple.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**tentus**, part. of **teneō**; for *p*, cf. *Thompson* (*Tom's son*)], *handle; test, attempt, tempt; assail, attack.*

tempus, temporis, *n.*, *time; season; circumstances;* **in reliquum tempus**, *for the future;* **ad tempus**, *promptly;* **ex tempore**, *according to circumstances.*

Tēncterī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German tribe which entered Belgium and was annihilated by Caesar, 55 B.C.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, *stretch out, stretch; pitch* a tent.

tenebrae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *darkness.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī (-tentus only in cpds.), *hold, keep, occupy, have; detain; restrain, bind;* **sē tenēre**, *remain;* **XI mīllia passuum tenēre**, *extend eleven miles.*

tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender, young.*

tenuis, tenue, *thin, narrow.*

tenuiter [**tenuis**], *adv.*, *thinly.*

teres, teretis [cf. **terō**, *rub*], *adj.*, *well-rounded, round, smooth.*

tergum, -ī, *n.*, *back;* **terga vertere**, *turn and run;* **post tergum**, *behind them* (*him*, etc.); **ā tergō**, *in the rear.*

ternī, -ae, -a [cf. **trēs**], *distr. num.*, *three each, three at a time.*

terra, -ae [cf. **torreō**, *dry up*], *f.*, *earth, ground; land, region;* pl., *the earth, world;* **in terrīs**, *on earth.*

Terrasidius, Terrasidī, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army.

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, *frighten, terrify.*

terrestris, terrestre [**terra**], *on land, land-.*

terror, terrōris [cf. **terreō**], *m.*, *fright, alarm, terror.*

tertiō [abl. of **tertius**], *adv.*, *in the third place, thirdly.*

tertius, -a, -um, *third;* **post diem tertium**, *in two days*, see on 104, 17; **tertius decimus**, *thirteenth.*

testimōnium, testimōnī [**testis**], *n.*, *evidence, testimony.*

testis, testis, *m.* and *f.*, *witness.*

testūdō, testūdinis, *f.*, *tortoise; tortoise-covering*, formed by soldiers in ranks holding their shields above their heads so as to overlap and ward off missiles thrown down from above; see Introd. § 47.

tetrarchēs, -ae [Greek = *ruler of a fourth part*], *m.*, *tetrarch.*

Teutomatus, -ī, *m.*, a king of the Nitiobroges.

Teutonēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a German people; see on 161, 24.

theātrum, -ī, *n.*, *theatre.*

Theophanēs, -is, *m.*, a Greek historian, confidant of Pompey; see on 198, 29.

Thessalī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., *Thessalians.*

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, *Thessaly*, the northeastern district of Greece, included in the province of Macedonia in 148 B.C.

Thrācēs, -um, *m.*, pl., *the Thracians.*

Thrācia, -ae, *f.*, *Thrace*, the country between Macedonia and the Black Sea, conquered by Rome in 73 B.C., but left practically independent under native princes.

Tīburtius, Tīburtī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Tiburtius*, a follower of Caesar in the Civil War.

tignum, -ī, *n.*, *log, timber.*

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini;* m. pl. as *subst.*, *the Tigurini*, one of the four cantons of the Helvetii, living near Zurich.

Tīllius, Tīllī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Quintus Tillius*, one of Caesar's followers in the Civil War.

timeō, timēre, timuī, —, *fear, be afraid.*

timidē [**timidus**, *fearful*], *adv.*, *with fear, timidly;* **nōn timidē**, *with no sign of fear.*

timor, timōris [cf. **timeō**], *m.*, *fear;* **timōre perterritus**, *panic-stricken.*

tīrō, tīrōnis, *m.*, *raw recruit.*

Titūrius, Titūrī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. See **Sabīnus**.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **tollō**], *bear, support, endure; keep alive;* **famem tolerāre**, *keep from starving.*

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift, raise; take on board; weigh* (of anchors); *elate, inspirit; take away, remove, dispel, annul, dismiss, quash;* **clāmōre sublātō**, *shouts arising.*

Tolōsa, -ae, *f.*, *Toulouse*, an important city in the western part of the Province.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., the people of Toulouse (Tolosa), a city in the western part of the Province.

tormentum, -ī [cf. **torqueō**, *twist*], *n.*, *hurling engine*, worked by twisted ropes; also *missile from a hurling engine; torture* (on the rack).

Torquātus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Lucius Manlius Torquatus*, an officer of Pompey in the Civil War.

tot, *indecl. adj., so many.*

totidem [cf. **tot**], *indecl. adj., just as many, the same number.*

tōtus, -a, -um, *the whole, the whole of, all.*

trabs, trabis, *f., timber, beam.*

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **trahō,** *draw*], *handle, discuss.*

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus [**trāns** + **dō,** *put*], (*put across*), *hand over, deliver up; hand down, teach; pass on* a report.

trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus [**trāns** + **dūcō,** *lead*], *lead across* or *over, lead; bring over, win over; promote.*

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a Gallic *lance.*

trāiciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectus [**trāns** + **iaciō,** *throw*], *throw across, take over; pierce, run through* (with a javelin).

trāiectus, -ūs [cf. **trāiciō**], *m., crossing over, passage.*

Trallēs, -ium, *f.*, pl., a city of western Asia Minor, near Ephesus.

tranquillitās, tranquillitātis [**tranquillus,** *still*], *f., stillness, quiet, calm;* **summa tranquillitās,** *a dead calm.*

trāns, *prep.* with acc., *across, over; beyond.*

trānscendō, trānscendere, trānscendī, trānscēnsus [**trāns** + **scandō,** *climb*], *climb over, board, cross.*

trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus [**eō,** *go*], *go across, pass over, cross, march through;* of time, *pass, go by.*

trānsferō, trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātus [**ferō,** *carry*], *carry across, bring over, transfer.*

trānsfīgō, trānsfīgere, trānsfīxī, trānsfīxus [**fīgō,** *fix*], *pierce, thrust through.*

trānsfodiō, trānsfodere, trānsfōdī, trānsfossus [**fodiō,** *dig*], (*dig through*), *pierce through, wound.*

trānsgredior, trānsgredī, trānsgressus [**gradior,** *step*], *go across* or *over, cross.*

trānslātus, part. of **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um [**trāns mare,** *across the sea*], *from across the sea, foreign.*

trānsmissus, -ūs [cf. **trānsmittō,** *send across*], *m., passage;* **parī spatiō trānsmissūs,** *lying just as far away* (lit., *with the same interval of passage*).

Trānspadānus, -a, -um [**trāns Padum,** *across the Po*], *beyond the Po,* i.e. from the point of view of the Romans; applied to territory between the Po and the Alps.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**portō,** *carry*], *carry across, bring over, transport.*

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um [**trāns Rhēnum,** *across the Rhine*], *beyond the Rhine;* m. pl. as *subst., people beyond the Rhine.*

trānstrum, -ī [**trāns**], *n., cross-beam;* see on 89, 8.

trānsvehō, trānsvehere, trānsvēxī, trānsvectus [**vehō,** *carry*], *carry* or *bring across.*

trānsversus, -a, -um [**versus,** part. of **vertō,** *turn*], *turned across, crosswise.*

Trebius, Trebī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Marcus Trebius Gallus,* an officer in Caesar's army.

Trebōnius, Trebōnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Gaius Trebonius,* a lieutenant of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil wars, who afterwards joined the conspiracy against his life.

trecentī, -ae, -a, or CCC [**trēs** + **centum**, *hundred*], *three hundred.*

trēs, tria, or III, *three.*

Trēverī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of Celtic Gaul bordering on the Rhine, south of Belgium.

Triārius, Triārī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Gaius Valerius Triarius*, a naval officer of Pompey in the Civil War.

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German tribe, probably occupying territory on both banks of the Rhine south of the Treveri.

tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, *tribune*, (1) an officer in the Roman army; see Introd. § 34. (2) **tribūnus plēbis**, *tribune of the commons*, originally a protector of the plebeians against patricians, but becoming in time the most powerful of the civil officials of Rome. Ten tribunes were elected each year. By their right of veto they could block all legislation and all acts of magistrates. It was unconstitutional to injure or interfere with a tribune.

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus [**tribus**, *tribe* (*a third part*)], (*divide by threes*), *assign, ascribe, give, devote.*

tribūtum, -ī [part. of **tribuō**], *n.* (*amount assigned* to be paid), *tribute, tax.*

trichila, -ae, *f.*, *bower, summer-house.*

trīduum, trīduī [**trēs**, cf. **diēs**, *day*], *n.*, *three days.*

triennium, triennī [**trēs**, **annus**, *year*], *n.*, a period of *three years.*

trīgintā or XXX [**trēs**], *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a [**trēs**], *distr. num.*, *three each;* with words used only in the pl., *three.*

Trinovantēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of Britain, on the east coast just north of the Thames.

tripertītō [abl. of **tripertītus** (from **trēs** + **partītus**, *divided*), *divided into three parts*], *adv.*, *in three divisions.*

triplex, triplicis [**trēs**, cf. **plicō**, *fold*], *adj.*, *threefold, triple.*

triquetrus, -a, -um, *three-cornered, triangular.*

trirēmis, trirēme [**trēs**, **rēmus**, *oar*], *with three banks of oars;* f. as *subst.* (sc. **nāvis**), *trireme*, a long and narrow ship of war, propelled by about fifty rowers sitting on three levels or banks; sometimes with, sometimes without, a complete deck; see Introd. § 48.

Troucillus, -ī, a distinguished Gaul; see **Valerius.**

truncus, -ī, *m.*, *trunk* of a tree.

tū, tuī, pl. **vōs**, *pers. pron.*, *you.*

tuba, -ae, *f.*, *trumpet*, straight with flaring end.

tueor, tuērī, tūtus, *watch, protect, guard, defend.*

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe, northern neighbors of the Helvetii.

Tullius, Tullī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name; see **Cicerō.**

Tullus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; see **Volcācius.**

tum, *adv.*, *then, at that time;* **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but furthermore, but also.*

tumultuōsē [**tumultuōsus**, *turbulent*], *adv.*, *turbulently, noisily.*

tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, *uproar, confusion, disorder; sudden attack.*

tumulus, -ī [cf. **tumeō**, *swell*], *m.*, *mound, hillock.*

tunica, -ae, *f.*, *tunic*, the ordinary garment of the Roman when at home

or working; it had short sleeves and reached to the knees.

turba, -ae, *f.*, *disorder*, *turmoil.*

turma, -ae, *f.*, *troop*, *squadron*, of cavalry, consisting of about thirty men.

turmātim [**turma**], *adv.*, *by squadrons.*

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of west central Gaul, on the Loire (Liger). Their name survives in *Tours.*

turpis, turpe, *shameful*, *disgraceful.*

turpiter [**turpis**], *adv.*, *shamefully*, *disgracefully.*

turpitūdō, turpitūdinis [**turpis**], *f.*, *disgrace.*

turris, turris, *f.*, *tower;* see Introd. § 47.

tūtē [**tūtus**], *adv.*, *safely.*

Tūticānus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name. *Tuticanus Gallus*, a senator's son in Caesar's army in the Civil War.

tūtō [abl. of **tūtus**], *adv.*, *in safety.*

tūtus, -a, -um [part. of **tueor**], *protected*, *safe*, *secure.*

tympanum, -ī, *n.*, *tambourine.*

U

ubi, *adv.* and *conj.*, *where; when*, *whenever;* **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as.*

Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a German tribe opposite Belgium and the Treveri, friendly to Caesar.

ubīque [**ubi** + **que**, with generalizing force, cf. **quisque**], *adv.*, *anywhere*, *everywhere.*

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, *avenge*, *punish.*

ūllus, -a, -um [for **ūnulus**, dim. of **ūnus**, *one*], *any*, *any one.*

ulterior, ulterius [cf. **ultrā**], *comp. adj.*, *farther*, *more distant;* **ulterior Gallia** or **prōvincia**, *farther Gaul*, i.e. on the side of the Alps farther from Rome. Sup. **ultimus**, -a, -um, *farthest*, *most distant.*

ultrā, *prep.* with acc., *beyond.*

ultrō, *adv.*, *voluntarily*, *without provocation; moreover.*

ululātus, -ūs [**ululō**, *yell*], *m.*, *yelling*, *yell.*

umerus, -ī, *m.*, *shoulder.*

umquam, *adv.*, *ever.*

ūnā [**ūnus**], *adv.*, *at one and the same time*, *at the same time*, *together;* **ūnā cum**, *together with*, *along with.*

unde, *adv.*, *whence*, *from which.*

ūndecim or XI [**ūnus** + **decem**, *ten*], *eleven.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um [**ūndecim**], *eleventh.*

ūndēvīgintī or XVIIII [**ūnus dē vīgintī**, *one from twenty*], *nineteen.*

undique [**unde** + **que**, with generalizing force], *from every side*, *on all sides.*

ūniversus, -a, -um [**ūnus** + part. of **vertō**, *turn*], *all together*, *all in a body*, *the whole of.*

ūnus, -a, -um, *one*, *only one*, *a single*, *alone*, *only;* **ad ūnum**, *to a man.*

ūnusquisque, ūnīuscuiusque [**ūnus** + **quisque**, *each*], *indef. subst. pron.*, *each one*, *every man.*

urbānus, -a, -um [**urbs**], *of* or *in the city.*

urbs, urbis, *f.*, *city;* often *the city*, of Rome.

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, *press*, *press hard.*

ūrus, -ī, *m.*, *wild ox.*

Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, pl., a German tribe, which entered Belgium and was annihilated by Caesar, 55 B.C.

usque, *adv.*, *all the way*, *uninterruptedly.*

ūsus, -ūs [cf. **ūtor**], *m.*, *use*, *practice*, *employment; experience; need*, *ne-*

cessity; service, advantage; **ūsus est,** *there is need;* **esse ūsuī,** *be of use;* **ex ūsū,** *of advantage.*

ut, utī, *adv.* and *conj.*, with indic., *as, when;* with subj., *that, in order that, so that; supposing, although;* **ut victōriā explōrātā,** *as if victory were certain;* **ut . . . sīc** (**ita**), *as . . . so, while . . . yet;* **ut quī,** in causal rel. clauses, *since he.* With obj. clauses of purpose best rendered by *to* and an infinitive; with appositive clauses, by *of* and a verbal in *-ing.*

uter, utra, utrum, *interrog.* or *rel. adj.*, *which* (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque [**uter** + **que,** with generalizing force], *each* (of two only, cf. **quisque**), *both, either;* pl. of two groups, **utrīque,** *both peoples, both sides.*

utī, see **ut.**

Utica, -ae, *f.*, the oldest Phoenician settlement in Africa, on the west shore of the Gulf of Carthage. It became the capital of the Roman province of Africa, organized in 146 B.C.

Uticēnsēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., *the citizens of Utica.*

ūtilis, ūtile [**ūtor**], *useful, serviceable.*

ūtilitās, ūtilitātis [**ūtilis**], *f.*, *usefulness, advantage.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, *use, adopt, avail one's self of, employ, show, practice, have, enjoy, receive, accept, find;* **fīnibus ūtī,** *remain in possession of territory;* **aequiōre imperiō ūtī,** *have juster government.*

utrimque [cf. **uterque**], *adv.*, *on both sides;* **bīnīs utrimque fībulīs,** *by two fasteners on each pair of logs.*

utrum [*n.* of **uter**], *conj.*, *whether.*

uxor, uxōris, *f.*, *wife.*

V

V = **quīnque,** *five;* **V.** = **quīntus,** *fifth;* **VI** = **sex;** **VIIII** = **novem.**

Vacalus, -ī, *m.*, *the Waal,* the south mouth of the Rhine, flowing into the Meuse (Mosa).

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [cf. **vacuus**], *be vacant* or *unoccupied, be free.*

vacuus, -a, -um [cf. **vacō**], *empty, clear, free, unoccupied.*

vadum, -ī, *n.*, *ford; shoal, shallow.*

vāgīna, -ae, *f.*, *scabbard, sheath.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, *wander, rove, roam about.*

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, *be strong, have weight* or *influence; tend.*

Valerius, Valerī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. (1) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus,* an eminent Gaul of the Province, interpreter for Caesar. (2) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus,* a Roman lieutenant, killed in Aquitania, otherwise unknown. (3) *Lucius Valerius Flaccus,* father and son. See on 213, 18.

valētūdō, valētūdinis [cf. **valeō**], *f.*, *state of health* (good or bad), *sickness.*

vallēs or **vallis,** vallis, *f.*, *valley.*

vāllum, -ī [n. of **vāllus**], *n.*, *fence of stakes, palisade; rampart, wall,* of earth set with stakes, the usual Roman fortification; see Introd. § 43.

vāllus, -ī, *m.*, *stake;* sometimes = **vāllum,** *rampart, wall.*

valvae, -ārum, *f.*, pl., *leaves of a folding door, door.*

varietās, varietātis [**varius**], *f.*, *variety, variety in color.*

varius, -a, -um, *various, different, varying.*

Varrō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family

name. *Aulus Terentius Varro*, one of Pompey's soldiers.

Vārus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. (1) *Publius Attius Varus*, a Pompeian officer in the Civil War. He was besieged by Curio in Utica, but was relieved by Juba, 49 B.C. See also on 170, 3. (2) *Sextus Quinctilius Varus*, a Pompeian officer in the Civil War. See on 174, 4.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vāstus**], *lay waste, devastate.*

vāstus, -a, -um, *waste; vast.*

Vatīnius, Vatīnī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Publius Vatinius*, a political supporter of Caesar, and his lieutenant in Gaul and in the Civil War. See also on 199, 13.

-ve, *conj.*, enclitic, *or.*

vectīgal, vectīgālis [cf. **vehō**, *carry*], *n.*, *tribute; tax, revenue;* see on 63, 6.

vectīgālis, vectīgāle [**vectīgal**], *tributary.*

vectis, vectis [cf. **vehō**, *carry*], *m.*, *bar, lever.*

vectōrius, -a, -um [**vector**, *carrier*, cf. **vehō**, *carry*], *carrying;* **vectōria nāvigia**, *transports.*

vectūra, -ae [cf. **vehō**, *carry*], *f.*, *carrying, transportation.*

vehementer [**vehemēns**, *violent*], *adv.*, *violently, furiously, exceedingly, earnestly, very greatly.*

vel [old imper. of **volō**, *wish*], *conj.*, *or* (*if you wish*); **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*

Velānius, Velānī, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Veliocassī, -ōrum, or **Veliocassēs**, -ium, *m.*, pl., a Belgic tribe on the lower Seine (Sequana).

Vellāviī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a small tribe of southern Gaul, bordering on the Province, dependents of the Arverni. The name survives in the modern *Velay.*

vēlōcitās, vēlōcitātis [**vēlōx**, *swift*], *f.*, *swiftness, speed.*

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, *sail.*

vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis [**vēnor**, *hunt*], *f.*, *hunting;* **in vēnātiōnibus**, *on hunting trips.*

vēnātor, vēnātōris [**vēnor**, *hunt*], *m.*, *hunter.*

vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditus [**vēnum dō**, *put to sale*], *sell.*

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe on the northern coast of Gaul.

Venetī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a powerful maritime nation of northwestern Gaul, with whom Caesar fought the only naval battle of the Gallic War.

Venetia, -ae, *f.*, the country of the Veneti, in modern Bretagne or Brittany.

Veneticus, -a, -um [**Venetī**], *of* or *with the Veneti, Venetan.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come.*

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, — [freq. of **veniō**], *come often, resort, keep coming.*

ventus, -ī, *m.*, *wind;* **sē ventō dare**, *run before the wind.*

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., an Alpine tribe southeast of Lake Geneva (Lacus Lemannus).

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*, one of the four cantons or divisions of the Helvetii.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, *word.*

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, an Arvernian noble, one of the Gallic commanders in the great uprising of 52 B.C.

Vercingetorīx, Vercingetorīgis, *m.*, an Arvernian prince, commander-in-chief of the Gauls in their last great

struggle for freedom, 52 B.C.; see summary of *B. G.* VII, p. 364 ff.

vērē [**vērus**], *adv., truly, really.*

vereor, verērī, veritus, *fear, be afraid.*

vergō, -ere, —, —, *incline, slope, lie.*

vergobretus, -ī, *vergobret*, the chief magistrate of the Haedui.

vērō [abl. of **vērus**], (1) *adv., in truth, in fact;* (2) *conj., but, while as to;* **equitēs vērō**, *while as to the cavalrymen, they*, etc.; **tum vērō**, *now at that very time.*

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **vertō**], *turn often, treat;* **fortūna utrumque versāvit**, *fortune sported with both of them;* pass. as dep., *turn one's self round and round, be engaged, be busy, be.*

versus, -ūs [cf. **vertō**], *m., verse, line* (the *turning* of the rhythm in poetry to begin anew).

versus [part. of **vertō**], *adv., towards;* **quōque versus**, *in every direction;* **Lārīsam versus**, *towards Larissa.*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn;* intr., *turn, change;* **sē vertere**, *change, wheel about;* **terga vertere**, *turn and run.*

Verucloetius, Verucloetī, *m.*, a Helvetian nobleman.

vērus, -a, -um, *true; right;* n. as *subst., truth*, in pl., *facts;* **vērī simile**, *probable.*

verūtum, -ī [**verū**, *a spit*], *n., dart, light spear.*

vesper, vesperī, abl. vespere, *m., evening.*

Vespillō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name; see **Lucrētius**.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *poss. pron., your, yours.*

vēstīgium, vēstīgī, *n., footprint, track; spot, place;* **in** or **ex vēstīgiō**, *on the spot, instantly;* **vēstīgiō temporis**, *in a moment.*

vestiō, vestīre, vestīvī, vestītus [**vestis**], *clothe;* pass., *wear.*

vestis, vestis, *f., clothing.*

vestītus, -ūs [**vestiō**], *m., clothing.*

veterānus, -a, -um [**vetus**], *veteran.*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *forbid.*

vetus, veteris, *adj., old, former, of long standing.*

vexillum, -ī, *n., banner, flag;* see Introd. § 40.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *harry, overrun.*

via, -ae, *f., way, route, road; journey;* **triduī via**, *a three days' journey.*

viātor, viātōris [as if from a verb **viāre**, from **via**], *m., wayfarer, traveler.*

Vibullius, Vibullī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Lucius Vibullius Rufus*, a prefect of Pompey in the Civil War.

vīcēnī, -ae, -a [cf. **vīgintī**], *distr. num., twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um [cf. **vīgintī**], *twentieth.*

vīciēs [cf. **vīgintī**], *num. adv., twenty times;* **vīciēs centum mīllium passuum**, *two thousand miles.*

vicis, vicis, *f., change, turn;* in Caesar only **in vicem**, *in turn.*

victima, -ae, *f., victim, sacrifice.*

victor, victōris [cf. **vincō**], *m., conqueror, victor;* as *adj., victorious.*

victōria, -ae [**victor**], *f., victory;* personified as a goddess, *Victory.*

vīctus, -ūs [cf. **vīvō**], *m., living;* (*means of living*), *food.*

vīcus, -ī [akin to Eng. *-wick* or *-wich; Norwich* = north village], *m., village.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see;* pass. often as dep., *seem, appear, seem best.*

vigilia, -ae [**vigil**, *awake*], *f.*, *watch.* The Romans did not divide the night like the day into twelve hours, but into four equal watches from sunset to sunrise; **dē tertiā vigiliā** *early in the third watch*, = 12–1 A.M.

vīgintī or **XX**, *twenty.*

vīmen, vīminis, *n.*, *pliant twig, withe, osier.*

vīmineus, -a, -um [**vīmen**], *of twigs.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat, win.*

vinculum, -ī [cf. **vinciō**, *bind*], *n.*, *chain, bond.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vindex**, *a maintainer*], *maintain a claim, demand;* **in aliquem vindicāre**, *punish somebody* (euphemistic, lit., *maintain a claim against one*).

vīnea, -ae, *f.*, *shed*, used as a shelter for soldiers in attacking fortified places; see Introd. § 47.

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, *wine.*

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **vīs**], *treat violently, injure.*

vir, virī, *m.*, *man; husband.*

virgō, virginis, *f.*, *maiden, virgin.*

virgulta, -ōrum, *n.*, pl., *thicket; brushwood.*

Viridomārus, -ī, *m.*, a Haeduan noble, one of the Gallic commanders in the great uprising of 52 B.C.

Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, a chief of the Venelli.

virītim [**vir**], *adv.*, *man by man, to each man separately.*

Viromanduī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul south of the Nervii.

virtūs, virtūtis [**vir**], *f.*, *manliness, courage, valor, merit, spirit.*

vīs, —, —, vim, vī, pl. vīrēs, -ium, etc., *f.*, *force, might, violence; influence; quantity;* pl., *strength;* **per vim**, *forcibly;* **summā vī**, *with might and main;* **vīs pulveris**, *cloud of dust.*

vīsus, part. of **videō**.

vīta, -ae [cf. **vīvō**], *f.*, *life.*

vitium, vitī, *n.*, *fault, defect; discomfort.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid, shun; escape.*

vitrum, -ī, *n.*, *woad*, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus, *live;* **lacte vīvere**, *live on milk.*

vīvus, -a, -um [cf. **vīvō**], *living, alive.*

vix, *adv.*, *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.*

Vocātēs, -ium, *m.*, pl., a tribe in northern Aquitania.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **vōx**], *call, summon; name.*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, *m.*, pl., a Celtic tribe in the eastern part of the Province.

Volcācius, Volcācī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or clan name. *Gaius Volcacius Tullus*, an officer of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars.

Volcae, -ārum, *m.*, a Gallic people in the Roman province. There were two branches, the **Arecomicī** just west of the Rhone, and the **Tectosagēs** north of the Pyrenees. A part of the latter tribe was settled in southern Germany. See 143, 1 ff., and notes on 143, 1 and 4.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *wish, be willing.*

voluntārius, -a, -um [**volēns**, part. of **volō**], *willing, volunteer.*

voluntās, voluntātis [**volēns**, part. of **volō**], *f.*, *wish, will, willingness, good-will, approval, consent.*

voluptās, voluptātis [cf. **volō**], *f.*, *pleasure, enjoyment.*

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune and cavalry officer of Caesar in the Gallic and the Civil Wars.

Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Lucius Vorenus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Vosegus, -ī, *m.*, *the Vosges Mountains*, in eastern Gaul, along the Rhine; see on 104, 24.

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow, promise solemnly.*

vōx, vōcis [cf **vocō**, *call*], *f.*, *voice, word;* pl., *talk, remarks.*

Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, *Vulcan*, the Roman god of fire and of the forge.

vulgō [abl. of **vulgus**], *adv.*, *in a crowd, generally, everywhere.*

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, *crowd, multitude, masses, commons;* **in vulgus efferrī**, *become common property.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vulnus**], *wound.*

vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, *wound.*

X

X = **decem**, *ten;* **XV** = **quīndecim**; **XX** = **vīgintī**; **XXX** = **trīgintā**; **XL** = **quadrāgintā**.

Greek Dictionaries

LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON

Revised and Enlarged. Compiled by HENRY GEORGE LIDDELL, D.D., and ROBERT SCOTT, D.D., assisted by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D. Large Quarto, 1794 pages. Sheep . . . $10.00

The present edition of this great work has been thoroughly revised, and large additions made to it. The editors have been favored with the co-operation of many scholars and several important articles have been entirely rewritten.

LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Intermediate

Revised Edition. Large Octavo, 910 pages.
Cloth, $3.50; Half Leather, $4.00

This Abridgment is an entirely new work, designed to meet the ordinary requirements of instructors. It differs from the smaller abridged edition in that it is made from the last edition of the large Lexicon, and contains a large amount of new matter.

LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Abridged

Revised Edition. Crown Octavo, 832 pages. Half Leather $1.25

This Abridgment is intended chiefly for use by students in Secondary and College Preparatory Schools.

THAYER'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT

Being Grimm's Wilke's Clavis Novi Testamenti. Translated, Revised, and Enlarged by JOSEPH HENRY THAYER, D.D., LL.D. Royal Quarto, 727 pages . Cloth, $5.00; Half Leather, $6.50

This great work embodies and represents the results of the latest researches in modern philology and biblical exegesis. It traces historically the signification and use of all words used in the New Testament, and carefully explains the difference between classical and sacred usage.

YONGE'S ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON

By C. D. YONGE. Edited by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D.
Royal Octavo, 903 pages. Sheep $4.50

AUTENRIETH'S HOMERIC DICTIONARY

Translated and Edited by ROBERT P. KEEP, Ph.D. New Edition. Revised by ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D.
12mo, 312 pages. Illustrated. Cloth $1.10

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York • Cincinnati • Chicago

(310)

Classical Dictionaries

HARPER'S DICTIONARY OF CLASSICAL LITERATURE AND ANTIQUITIES

Edited by H. T. PECK, Ph.D., Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Columbia University.

Royal Octavo, 1716 pages. Illustrated.

One Vol.	Cloth	$6.00	Two Vols.	Cloth	$7.00
One Vol.	Half Leather	8.00	Two Vols.	Half Leather	10.00

An encyclopaedia, giving the student, in a concise and intelligible form, the essential facts of classical antiquity. It also indicates the sources whence a fuller and more critical knowledge of these subjects can best be obtained. The articles, which are arranged alphabetically, include subjects in biography, mythology, geography, history, literature, antiquities, language, and bibliography. The illustrations are, for the most part, reproductions of ancient objects. The editor in preparing the book has received the co-operation and active assistance of the most eminent American and foreign scholars.

SMITH'S DICTIONARY OF GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES

Edited by WILLIAM SMITH, Ph.D. Revised by CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. Octavo, 1133 pages. Illustrated. Sheep $4.25

Carefully revised, giving the results of the latest researches in the history, philology, and antiquities of the ancients. In the work of revision, the American editor has had the assistance of the most distinguished scholars and scientists.

STUDENTS' CLASSICAL DICTIONARY

A Dictionary of Biography, Mythology, and Geography. Abridged. By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

12mo, 438 pages. Cloth $1.25

Designed for those schools and students who are excluded from the use of the larger Classical Dictionary, both by its size and its price. All names have been inserted which one would be likely to meet with at the beginning of classical study.

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York Cincinnati Chicago

(311)

ıe

d

s

=

our
tu-
on-
ed,
ng

e
e
t

:

Caesar
Episodes fro
Edited by Math

NAME	DATE